

MSX

Top Secret

3

THE FINAL COMPILATION OF MSX INFORMATION
2nd update – 21 oct 2022

Appendix

Edison Moraes [2019-2022]

AUTHOR'S NOTE

After the release of MSX Top Secret 2, in April 2004, I figured that there would be no need to update it anymore, since MSX is no longer commercially manufactured by large companies. In addition, the internet has evolved and a wide range of information has become available to everyone.

However, the information is sparse, leading to the need for multiple and tiring searches not always achieving complete success. That's why I thought it convenient to write this third – and final – edition of MSX Top Secret, gathering all the information I could find in one place.

As the amount of information is very large, I divided it into two volumes and, interestingly, the Appendix ended up being ready before the main volume, which is still in progress. Because of the time involved, I thought it best to publish the Appendix, which is the tome presented here.

Good research!

Edison Antonio Pires de Moraes (author)

Sorry for my english mistakes. I'm not fluent in english.

Suggestions and information about errors are welcome.

Send it to:

eapmoraes2012@gmail.com

Summary

1 – CHARACTERS AND KEYBOARD.....	13
1.1 – CHARACTER SETS.....	13
1.1.1 – Japanese Set.....	13
1.1.2 – Internacional Set.....	14
1.1.3 – Brazilian Set 1.0 (Expert 1.0).....	15
1.1.4 – Brazilian Set 1.1 (Expert 1.1 and Hotbit 1.2).....	16
1.1.5 – Russian Set.....	17
1.1.6 – Korean Set.....	18
1.1.7 – Arabic Set (AX-170).....	19
1.1.8 – Arabic Set (AX-500).....	20
1.2 – KEYBOARD MATRICES.....	21
1.2.1 – Japanese Matrix.....	21
1.2.1.1 – Japanese Matrix with locked かな /KANA key.....	22
1.2.2 – PX-7 Matrix.....	23
1.2.3 – Internacional Matrix.....	24
1.2.5 – Argentine / Spanish Matrix.....	25
1.2.6 – United Kingdom Matrix (England).....	25
1.2.7 – Russian Matrix.....	26
1.2.7.1 – Russian Matrix with locked РУС /CODE key.....	26
1.2.8 – Korean Matrix.....	27
1.2.8.1 – Korean Matrix with locked 한글 /CODE key.....	27
1.2.9 – Arabic Matrix.....	28
1.2.9.1 – Arabic matrix with Arabic mode activated.....	28
1.3 – KEYBOARD LAYOUTS.....	29
1.3.1 – Internacional Layout.....	29
1.3.2 – Japanese Layout (JIS).....	29
1.3.3 – Japanese Layout (ANSI).....	29
1.3.4 – Brazilian Layout 1.0 (Expert 1.0).....	30
1.3.5 – Brazilian Layout 1.1 (Hotbit / Expert 1.1).....	30
1.3.6 – United Kingdom Layout.....	30
1.3.7 – Argentine / Spanish Layout.....	31
1.3.8 – Russian Layout (Cyrillic).....	31
1.3.9 – Korean Layout (CPC-400).....	31
1.3.10 – Arabic Layout (AX-170).....	32
1.3.11 – French Layout (ML-F80).....	32

1.3.12 – German Layout (HB-F700D).....	32
1.4 – CONTROL CODES.....	33
2 – I/O PORTS MAP.....	34
3 – MSX-BASIC.....	39
3.1 – FORMAT.....	39
3.1.1 – Instructions Abbreviations.....	39
3.1.2 – Logical Operation Codes.....	39
3.1.3 – Code notations.....	40
3.1.4 – Format Notations.....	40
3.2 – INSTRUCTIONS DESCRIPTION.....	41
3.3 – EXTENDED COMMANDS.....	71
3.3.1 – Commands Description.....	77
A.....	77
B.....	80
C.....	83
D.....	94
E.....	97
F.....	99
G.....	102
H.....	103
I.....	104
J.....	106
K.....	107
L.....	111
M.....	116
N.....	123
O.....	143
P.....	145
Q.....	153
R.....	154
S.....	160
T.....	169
U.....	172
V.....	173
W.....	175
X.....	175
Y.....	176
3.4 – MSX-BASIC ERROR CODES.....	176

4 – MSXDOS.....	179
4.1 – FORMAT NOTATION.....	179
4.1.1 – Description of filenames extensions.....	180
4.2 – DESCRIPTION OF COMMANDS.....	188
4.3 – BDOS CALLS.....	202
4.3.1 – I/O Handling.....	202
4.3.2 – Definition and reading of parameters.....	204
4.3.3 – Absolute reading/writing of sectors.....	206
4.3.4 – Accessing files by using FCB.....	207
4.3.5 – Functions added by MSXDOS2.....	210
4.3.6 – Functions added by NEXTOR.....	224
4.4 – MSXDOS ERROR CODES.....	230
4.5 – MSXDOS2 ERROR CODES.....	231
4.5.1 – Disk Errors.....	231
4.5.2 – MSXDOS Functions Errors.....	232
4.5.3 – Errors Added by Nextor.....	233
4.5.4 – End Programs Errors.....	233
4.5.5 – Command Errors.....	233
5 – SYMBOS.....	234
5.1 – KERNEL ROUTINES.....	234
5.1.1 – Kernel Restarts.....	234
5.1.2 – Kernel Commands (Multitasking Management).....	236
5.1.3 – Kernel Responses (Multitasking Mangement).....	239
5.1.4 – Kernel Functions (Memory Management).....	240
5.1.5 – Kernel Functions (Banking Management).....	242
5.1.6 – Kernel Functions (Miscellaneous).....	245
5.2 – DESKTOP MANAGER COMMANDS.....	245
5.2.1 – Desktop Manager Responses.....	251
5.2.2 – Desktop Manager Services.....	254
5.2.3 – Desktop Manager Functions.....	257
5.2.4 – Desktop Manager Data Records.....	258
5.2.4.1 – Window Data Record.....	258
5.2.4.2 – Control Group Data Record.....	260
5.2.4.3 – Control Data Records.....	260
5.2.4.4 – Calculation Rule Data Record.....	261
5.3 – CONTROL TYPES.....	261
5.3.1 – Paint.....	261
5.3.2 – Graphics.....	264

5.3.3 – Buttons.....	266
5.3.4 – Miscellaneous.....	267
5.3.5 – Textinput.....	268
5.3.6 – Lists.....	271
5.3.7 – Pulldown Menus.....	273
5.4 – FONTS AND GRAPHICS.....	274
5.4.1 – Standard graphics.....	274
5.4.2 – Graphics with extended header.....	275
5.4.3 – Fonts.....	276
5.5 – SYSTEM MANAGER.....	277
5.5.1 – Application Management.....	277
5.5.2 – System Management.....	280
5.5.3 – Dilogue Services.....	281
5.5.4 – System Manager Functions.....	284
5.6 – FILE MANAGER.....	287
5.6.1 – System Manager Messages.....	287
5.6.2 – Error Codes.....	288
5.6.3 – Mass Storage Device Functions.....	289
5.6.4 – File Management Functions.....	291
5.6.5 – Directory Management Functions.....	295
5.6.6 – Device Manager Functions.....	301
5.7 – SYMSHELL TEXT TERMINAL.....	304
5.7.1 - Text terminal commands.....	304
5.7.1.1 - Default Applications.....	306
5.7.2 – SymShell Commands and responses.....	307
5.7.3 – Symshell Text Terminal Control.....	310
5.7.4 – Extended ASCII Codes.....	312
5.7.5 – Keyboard Scan Codes.....	312
5.8 – SYSTEM CONFIGURATION.....	313
5.8.1 – Header.....	313
5.8.2 – Core Area Part.....	313
5.8.2.1 – Mass storage devices.....	313
5.8.2.2 – Display and miscellaneous (1).....	314
5.8.2.3 – Keyboard (1) and mouse.....	314
5.8.2.4 – Miscellaneous (2) and Desktop Links.....	315
5.8.3 – Data Area Part.....	316
5.8.3.1 – Desktop Links (2).....	316
5.8.3.2 – Screen Saver.....	316

5.8.3.3 – Keyboard (2).....	316
5.8.3.4 – Security.....	317
5.9 – SCREENSAVER APPLICATIONS.....	317
5.10 – SYMBOS MEMORY MAP.....	318
5.10.1 – General Memory Usage.....	318
5.10.2 – Application Memory Usage.....	319
5.10.3 – Memory Configurations.....	319
5.11 – SCREEN MANAGER.....	320
5.12 – NETWORK DAEMON.....	321
5.12.1 – Configuration.....	321
5.12.2 – Transportation Layer Services.....	321
5.12.3 – Application Layer Services.....	322
5.13 – SYMBOS CONSTANTS.....	322
5.13.1 – Process-IDs.....	322
5.13.2 – Messages.....	323
5.13.3 – Kernel Commands.....	323
5.13.4 – Kernel Responses.....	323
5.13.5 – System Commands.....	324
5.13.6 – System Responses.....	325
5.13.7 – Desktop Commands.....	325
5.13.8 – Desktop Responses.....	326
5.13.9 – Shell Commands.....	327
5.13.10 – Shell Responses.....	328
5.13.11 – Screensaver Messages.....	328
5.13.12 – Desktop Actions.....	328
5.13.13 – Desktop Services.....	329
5.13.14 – Jumps.....	329
5.13.15 – Filemanager Functions (call via MSC_SYS_SYSFIL).....	330
6 – UZIX.....	332
6.1 – COMMANDS.....	332
6.1.1 – Conventions.....	332
6.1.1.1 – Format Notations.....	332
6.1.2 – Commands Description.....	333
6.2 – HIERARCHICAL STRUCTURE.....	348
6.3 – MEMORY MAPPING.....	349
6.4 – SYSTEM CALLS.....	350
6.4.1 – Direct System Calls.....	350
6.4.2 – Indirect System Call.....	365

6.4.3 – Calls via GETSET.....	365
6.4.4 – TCP/IP module.....	368
6.4.5 – Error codes.....	371
6.5 – VT-5 TERMINAL CODES.....	372
7 – WiOS.....	374
7.1 – FILESYSTEM DRIVER.....	374
7.2 – EXTERNAL DRIVER.....	377
7.3 – GRAPHIC I/O DRIVER.....	378
7.4 – GRAPHIC DRIVER.....	379
7.5 – MEMORY DRIVER.....	383
7.6 – STANDARD DRIVER.....	385
7.7 – TASK DRIVER.....	386
7.8 – WINDOW DRIVER.....	388
7.8.1 – Window Structure.....	388
7.8.2 – Window Driver Functions.....	390
7.8.3 – Redrawing Windows.....	393
7.9 – EVENT DEFINITION.....	394
7.9.1 – Data sent with the ‘E_EDRAG’ event.....	397
7.9.2 – Data sent with the ‘E_USERMSG’ event.....	397
7.10 – GDA REFERENCE.....	399
7.11 – MENU BLOCK STRUCTURE.....	401
8 – SYSTEM VARIABLES.....	405
8.1 – SYSTEM AREA FOR MSXDOS1.....	405
8.1.1 – Hooks called by disk routines.....	407
8.1.2 – Other DOS data.....	408
8.1.3 – Hooks for the ‘COM:’ port.....	410
8.1.4 – Keyboard.....	410
8.1.5 – MSXDOS Variables.....	410
8.1.6 – DPB addresses.....	411
8.1.7 – Routines used by MSXDOS.....	412
8.1.8 – Inter-slot movement routines.....	412
8.2 – SYSTEM AREA FOR MSXDOS2.....	413
8.2.1 – Physical information about disks.....	413
8.2.2 – Hooks called by disk routines (1).....	413
8.2.3 – Logical information about disks.....	415
8.2.4 – Hooks called by disk routines.....	415
8.2.5 – MSXDOS2 variables.....	416
8.2.6 – Pointers and buffers (FAT, DTA, FCB, DPB).....	419

8.2.7 – System jumps.....	420
8.3 – INTER-SLOT SUBROUTINES.....	420
8.4 – USR FUNCTION AND TEXT MODES.....	421
8.5 – AREA USED BY THE SCREEN.....	422
8.5.1 – Screen 0.....	422
8.5.2 – Screen 1.....	423
8.5.3 – Screen 2.....	423
8.5.4 – Screen 3.....	424
8.5.5 – Other Screen Values.....	424
8.6 – VDP REGISTERS AREA.....	425
8.6.1 – Area used for the V9938.....	426
8.6.2 – Area used for the V9958.....	427
8.7 – MISCELLANEOUS.....	427
8.8 – AREA USED BY PLAY COMMAND.....	428
8.8.1 – Play statement queues.....	430
8.8.2 – Offset for PLAY buffer parameter control.....	430
8.8.3 – Data area for the parameter buffer.....	431
8.9 – KEYBOARD AREA.....	431
8.10 – AREA USED BY CASSETTE.....	432
8.11 – AREA USED BY CIRCLE COMMAND.....	433
8.12 – AREA INTERNALLY USED BY BASIC.....	434
8.12.1 – BASIC text buffers.....	435
8.12.2 – General data.....	436
8.12.3 – BASIC lines control at runtime.....	438
8.12.4 – BASIC text storage addresses.....	439
8.12.5 – Area for user functions.....	440
8.12.6 – Interpreter data area.....	441
8.13 – MATH-PACK AREA.....	442
8.14 – DISK SYSTEM DATA AREA.....	443
8.15 – AREA USED BY PAINT COMMAND.....	445
8.16 – ADDED AREA FOR MSX2.....	446
8.17 – AREA USED BY RS232C.....	448
8.18 – GENERAL DATA AREA.....	450
8.19 – BIOS EXPANSION ROUTINES.....	455
8.20 – DATA AREA FOR SLOTS AND PAGES.....	455
8.20.1 – Main-ROM slot.....	457
8.20.2 – Secondary slot register.....	458
8.21 – HOOKS DESCRIPTION.....	458

9 – BIOS ROUTINES.....	471
9.1 – Main-ROM ROUTINES.....	471
9.1.1 – RST Routines.....	471
9.1.2 – Routines for I/O initialization.....	474
9.1.3 – Routines for accessing the VDP.....	474
9.1.4 – Routines for access to PSG.....	480
9.1.5 – Routines for accessing keyboard, screen and printer.....	481
9.1.6 – I/O access routines for games.....	484
9.1.7 – I/O access routines for cassette register.....	486
9.1.8 – Routines for the PSG queue.....	487
9.1.9 – Routines for MSX1 graphics screens.....	488
9.1.10 – Miscellaneous.....	491
9.1.11 – Routines for accessing the disk system.....	493
9.1.12 – Routines added for MSX2.....	494
9.1.13 – Routines added for MSX2+.....	496
9.1.14 – Routines added for the MSX turbo R.....	497
9.1.15 – Inter-slot work area routines.....	498
9.2 – SubROM ROUTINES.....	499
9.2.1 – Routines for BASIC graphical functions.....	499
9.2.2 – Routines for graphical functions.....	502
9.2.3 – Duplicate routines (same as MainROM).....	506
9.2.4 – Various routines for MSX2 or higher.....	508
9.2.5 – Color palette handling routines.....	513
9.2.6 – Various routines used by BASIC.....	513
9.2.7 – Block transfer routines (bit-blit).....	515
9.3 – MATH-PACK ROUTINES.....	518
9.3.1 – Floating point mathematical functions.....	518
9.3.2 – Operations with integer numbers.....	518
9.3.3 – Special functions.....	519
9.3.4 – Movement.....	519
9.3.5 – Conversions.....	520
9.4 – BASIC INTERPRETER ROUTINES.....	522
9.4.1 – Execution routines.....	522
9.4.2 – Command and function routines.....	525
9.5 – EXTENDED BIOS ROUTINES.....	529
9.5.1 – Extended BIOS Entry.....	529
9.5.2 – Internal commands (broadcast commands).....	530
9.5.3 –Memory Mapper.....	531

9.5.3.1 – Memory Mapper Manipulation Routines.....	533
9.5.4 – RS232C Serial Port and MSX Modem.....	538
9.5.4.1 – Parameter Bytes.....	539
9.5.4.2 – RS232C serial port manipulation routines.....	540
9.5.4.3 – MSX Modem manipulation routines.....	543
9.5.5 – MSX-AUDIO.....	549
9.5.5.1 – Startup routines.....	550
9.5.5.2 – PCM/ADPCM Routines.....	552
9.5.5.3 – Musical keyboard routines.....	555
9.5.5.4 – FM synthesizer routines.....	556
9.5.5.5 – MBIOS routines (Music BIOS).....	558
9.5.6 – MSX-JE.....	585
9.5.6.1 – Calling MSX-JE functions.....	586
9.5.6.2 – MSX-JE dictionary interface.....	588
9.5.7 – MSX UNAPI.....	593
9.5.7.1 – RAM Helper.....	593
9.5.7.2 – API for Ethernet cartridges.....	595
9.5.8 – MemMan.....	599
9.5.8.1 – Fast Calls (Preferred alternative entries).....	599
9.5.8.2 – MemMan Functions.....	601
9.5.9 – System commands.....	606
9.6 – DISC INTERFACE ROUTINES.....	607
9.6.1 – Interface Initialization.....	607
9.6.2 – Standard interface routines.....	608
9.6.3 – Routines for accessing standard IDE Hard-Disks.....	613
9.6.4 – Routines added by NEXTOR.....	615
9.6.4.1 – Routines for disk device drivers.....	618
9.6.4.2 – Routines for drivers of other devices.....	625
9.6.4 – Routines for accessing standard SCSI Hard-Disks.....	627
9.7 – MSX-MUSIC ROUTINES (FM/OPLL).....	638
10 – MSX-HID (Human Interface Device).....	642
10.1 – FINGERPRINTS OF MSX DEVICES.....	642
10.2 – FINGERPRINTS OF SEGA COMPATIBLE DEVICES.....	642
10.3 – FINGERPRINTS OF DEVICES THAT CONFLICT.....	642
10.4 – HOMEBREW DEVICES.....	643
10.5 – RESERVED FINGERPRINTS (DO NOT USE).....	643
11 – Z80/R800 MNEMONICS.....	644
11.1 – 8-BIT LOAD GROUP.....	644

11.2 – 16-BIT LOAD GROUP.....	646
11.3 – 8-BIT ARITHMETIC GROUP.....	648
11.4 – 16-BIT ARITHMETIC GROUP.....	651
11.5 – EXCHANGE GROUP.....	652
11.6 – BLOCK TRANSFER GROUP.....	653
11.7 – SEARCH GROUP.....	654
11.8 – COMPARISON GROUP.....	655
11.9 – LOGICAL GROUP.....	656
11.10 – ROTATE AND SHIFT GROUP.....	658
11.11 – BIT SET, RESET AND TEST GROUP.....	661
11.12 – JUMP GROUP.....	663
11.13 – CALL AND RETURN GROUP.....	664
11.14 – INPUT AND OUTPUT GROUP.....	665
11.15 – GENERAL PURPOSE AND CONTROL GROUPS.....	667
12 – STANDARD CHIPS REGISTERS MAPS.....	668
12.1 – MAP OF THE REGISTERS OF THE V9918/38/58.....	668
12.1.1 – Access ports for VDPs V9918/38/38.....	673
12.1.2 – Standard color chart.....	674
12.2 – MAP OF THE V9990 REGISTERS.....	675
12.2.1 – Access ports to V9990.....	680
12.3 – MAP OF PSG REGISTERS (AY-3-8910).....	682
12.3.1 – Access ports to PSG.....	683
12.4 – MAP OF FM-OPLL REGISTERS (YM2413).....	684
12.4.1 – Access ports to OPLL.....	686
12.5 – MSX-AUDIO REGISTERS MAP (Y8950).....	687
12.5.1 – MSX-Audio access ports.....	690
12.6 – MAP OF THE OPL4 REGISTERS (YMF278).....	691
12.6.1 – Register Array #0.....	691
12.6.2 – Register Array #1.....	693
12.6.3 – Wave synthesis.....	696
12.6.4 – OLP4 access ports.....	699
12.6.5 – Wave table synthesis header.....	699
12.6.6 – Wave data length.....	700
12.7 – MAP OF THE SCC REGISTERS (2212/2312).....	701
12.7.1 – Access addresses for SCC.....	702
BIBLIOGRAPHIC REFERENCES.....	704
OTHER BOOKS BY THE AUTHOR.....	707

1.1.4 – Brazilian Set 1.1 (Expert 1.1 and Hotbit 1.2)

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NULL	GRPH	CTRL B	CTRL C	CTRL D	CTRL E	CTRL F	BEEP	BS	TAB	LF	HOME	CLS	RET	CTRL N	CTRL O
1	CTRL P	CTRL R	INS	CTRL S	CTRL T	CTRL U	CTRL V	CTRL W	SEL	CTRL Y	CTRL Z	ESC	→	←	↑	↓
2		!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/
3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
4	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
5	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\]	^	_
6	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
7	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	DEL
8	ç	ü	é	â	À	à	ˆ	ç	ê	í	ó	Ó	Ä	É	Ô	À
9	É	æ	Æ	ô	ö	ò	ô	ù	ÿ	ö	Ü	¢	£	¥	Q	f
A	á	í	ó	ú	ñ	Ñ	º	º	¿	¬	½	¼	i	<<	>>	
B	ä	ä	ÿ	ÿ	ö	ö	ü	ü	ÿ	ÿ	¼	ˆ	◊	∞	∞	∞
C	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
D	◀	⌘	⌘	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
E	α	β	Γ	Π	Σ	σ	μ	γ	Φ	θ	Ω	δ	∞	∞	€	∏
F	≡	±	≥	≤	↑	J	÷	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
4		☺	☹	♥	♠	♣	♠	•	◻	◻	◻	♂	♀	♫	♫	*
5	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+

Obs.: The character in the 9EH position (Cz) was “Pt” in the first HOTBIT version.

1.1.6 – Korean Set

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NULL	GRPH	CTRL B	CTRL C	CTRL D	CTRL E	CTRL F	BEEP	BS	TAB	LF	HOME	CLS	RET	CTRL N	CTRL O
1	CTRL P	CTRL R	INS	CTRL S	CTRL T	CTRL U	CTRL V	CTRL W	SEL	CTRL Y	CTRL Z	ESC	→	←	↑	↓
2		!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/
3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
4	0	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
5	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\]	^	_
6	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
7	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	DEL
8	☉	☪	☉	☪	○	●	ㄱ	ㅋ	ㄴ	ㄷ	ㄹ	ㅁ	ㅂ	ㅅ	ㅈ	ㅊ
9	ㅍ	ㅇ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ
A	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ
B	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ
C	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ
D	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ
E	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ
F	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
4			ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ
5	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅈ

1.1.7 – Arabic Set (AX-170)

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NULL	GRPH	CTRL B	CTRL C	CTRL D	CTRL E	CTRL F	BEEP	BS	TAB	LF	HOME	CLS	RET	CTRL N	CTRL O
1	CTRL P	CTRL R	INS	CTRL S	CTRL T	CTRL U	CTRL V	CTRL W	SEL	CTRL Y	CTRL Z	ESC	→	←	↑	↓
2		!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/
3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
4	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
5	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\]	^	_
6	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
7	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	DEL
8		!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/
9	*	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
A	@	آ	أ	ب	ج	د	هـ	و	ز	ح	ط	ظ	ع	ف	ق	ك
B	هـ	خ	د	ذ	ر	ز	س	ش	ص	ض	ط	ظ	ع	ف	ق	ك
C	ك	خ	د	ذ	ر	ز	س	ش	ص	ض	ط	ظ	ع	ف	ق	ك
D	ل	ل	م	ن	هـ	و	ز	ح	ط	ظ	ع	ف	ق	ك	ل	م
E	ن	هـ	و	ز	ح	ط	ظ	ع	ف	ق	ك	ل	م	ن	هـ	و
F	هـ	و	ز	ح	ط	ظ	ع	ف	ق	ك	ل	م	ن	هـ	و	ز

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	
4																	
5	é	â	à	ç	ë	ë	ë	î	î	ô	ô	ù	ù	ö	°		

1.1.8 – Arabic Set (AX-500)

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	
0	NULL	GRPH	CTRL B	CTRL C	CTRL D	CTRL E	CTRL F	BEEP	BS	TAB	LF	HOME	CLS	RET	CTRL N	CTRL O	
1	CTRL P	CTRL R	INS	CTRL S	CTRL T	CTRL U	CTRL V	CTRL W	SEL	CTRL Y	CTRL Z	ESC	→	←	↑	↓	
2		!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/	
3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?	
4	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	
5	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\]	^	_	
6	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	
7	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	DEL	
8		!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*	+	,	-	.	/	
9	*	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?	
A	@	أ	ب	ج	د	هـ	و	ز	ح	ط	ق	ك	ل	م	ن	هـ	
B	ف	ظ	غ	ف	ص	ظ	ف	ظ	ف	ظ	ف	ظ]	\	[^	_
C	ك	خ	ح	خ	ح	خ	ح	خ	ح	خ	ح	خ	ح	خ	ح	خ	ح
D	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل
E	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و	و
F	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز	ز

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
4																
5	π	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	×			

1.2 – KEYBOARD MATRICES

1.2.1 – Japanese Matrix

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	7 &	6 ^	5 %	4 \$	3 #	2 @	1 !	0)
Col. 1	; :	] }	[ {	\ |	= +	- _	9 (	8 *
Col. 2	b B	a A	_	/ ?	. >	, <	' ~	` ``
Col. 3	j J	i I	h H	g G	f F	e E	d D	c C
Col. 4	r R	q Q	p P	o O	n N	m M	l L	k K
Col. 5	z Z	y Y	x X	w W	v V	u U	t T	s S
Col. 6	F3	F2	F1	かな	CAPS	GRAPH	CTRL	SHIFT
Col. 7	RET	SLCT	BS	STOP	TAB	ESC	F5	F4
Col. 8	→	↓	↑	←	DEL	INS	HOME	SPACE
Col. 9	Num4	Num3	Num2	Num1	Num0	Num/	Num+	Num*
Col. 10	Num.	Num,	Num-	Num9	Num8	Num7	Num6	Num5
Col. 11					実行		取消	

Obs.1: Column 11 is used only by Panasonic models FS-A1WX, FS-A1WSX and turbo R, for access to the internal software in ROM. “実行” means “select” and “取消” means “cancel”.

Obs.2: The “かな” position is the “KANJI” key and corresponds to the CODE key in the international version.

1.2.1.1 – Japanese Matrix with locked かな/KANA key

JIS	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	や	お	え	う	あ	ふ	め	わ
Col. 1	れ	°「	ゝ	ー	へ	ほ	よ	ゆ
Col. 2	こ	ち	ろ	め・	る。	ね、	む」	け
Col. 3	ま	に	く	き	は	い	し	そ
Col. 4	す	た	せ	ら	み	も	り	の
Col. 5	っ	ん	さ	て	ひ	な	か	と

ANSI	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	に	な	お	え	う	い	あ	の
Col. 1	も	ろ「	れ	る	り	ら	ね	ぬ
Col. 2	と	さ	ん・	を。	わ、	よ	°」	ゝー
Col. 3	み	ふ	ま	そ	せ	く	す	っ
Col. 4	け	か	ほ	へ	や	ゆ	め	む
Col. 5	た	は	ち	き	て	ひ	こ	し

GRAPH	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	土	金	木	水	火	月	日	万
Col. 1	♣	○		円		ー	千	百
Col. 2	」		◆	♠	大	小	●	♥
Col. 3		|	時	十	十	「	ト	⊥
Col. 4	⊥		π			分	中	
Col. 5		年	X		⊥		⌋	秒

1.2.2 – PX-7 Matrix

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	7 &	6 ^	5 %	4 \$	3 #	2 @	1 !	0)
Col. 1	; :	] }	[ {	\ |	= +	- _	9 (	8 *
Col. 2	b B	a A	, " \ ^	/ ?	. >	, <	' ~	` ``
Col. 3	j J	i I	h H	g G	f F	e E	d D	c C
Col. 4	r R	q Q	p P	o O	n N	m M	l L	k K
Col. 5	z Z	y Y	x X	w W	v V	u U	t T	s S
Col. 6	F3	F2	F1	かな	CAPS	GRAPH	CTRL	SHIFT
Col. 7	RET	SLCT	BS	STOP	TAB	ESC	F5	F4
Col. 8	→	↓	↑	←	DEL	INS	HOME	SPACE
Col. 9						SupI	Video	Comp

SupI → Superimpose

Video → Video

Comp → Computer

Obs.: The PX-7 does not have a separate numeric keypad.

1.2.3 – Internacional Matrix

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	7 &	6 ^	5 %	4 \$	3 #	2 @	1 !	0)
Col. 1	; :	] }	[ {	\ |	= +	- _	9 (	8 *
Col. 2	b B	a A		/ ?	. >	, <	' ~	` ``
Col. 3	j J	i I	h H	g G	f F	e E	d D	c C
Col. 4	r R	q Q	p P	o O	n N	m M	l L	k K
Col. 5	z Z	y Y	x X	w W	v V	u U	t T	s S
Col. 6	F3	F2	F1	CODE	CAPS	GRAPH	CTRL	SHIFT
Col. 7	RET	SLCT	BS	STOP	TAB	ESC	F5	F4
Col. 8	→	↓	↑	←	DEL	INS	HOME	SPACE
Col. 9	Num4	Num3	Num2	Num1	Num0	Num/	Num+	Num*
Col. 10	Num.	Num,	Num-	Num9	Num8	Num7	Num6	Num5

1.2.4 – Brazilian Matrix (Expert 1.1 and Hotbit)

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	7 &	6 "	5 %	4 \$	3 #	2 @	1 !	0)
Col. 1	ç Ç	· ' /	' \	\ ^	= +	- _	9 (	8 *
Col. 2	b B	a A	< >	/ ?	. :	, ;	[]	~ ^
Col. 3	j J	i I	h H	g G	f F	e E	d D	c C
Col. 4	r R	q Q	p P	o O	n N	m M	l L	k K
Col. 5	z Z	y Y	x X	w W	v V	u U	t T	s S
Col. 6	F3	F2	F1	CODE	CAPS	GRAPH	CTRL	SHIFT
Col. 7	RET	SLCT	BS	STOP	TAB	ESC	F5	F4
Col. 8	→	↓	↑	←	DEL	INS	HOME	SPACE
Col. 9	4	3	2	1	0	/	+	*
Col. 10	.	,	-	9	8	7	6	5

Obs: The Expert 1.0 uses the international matrix.

1.2.5 – Argentine / Spanish Matrix

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	7 &	6 ^	5 %	4 \$	3 #	2 @	1 !	0)
Col. 1	ñ Ñ	] }	[ {	\ |	= +	- _	9 (	8 *
Col. 2	b B	a A		/ ?	. >	, <	; :	' "
Col. 3	j J	i I	h H	g G	f F	e E	d D	c C
Col. 4	r R	q Q	p P	o O	n N	m M	l L	k K
Col. 5	z Z	y Y	x X	w W	v V	u U	t T	s S
Col. 6	F3	F2	F1	CODE	CAPS	GRAPH	CTRL	SHIFT
Col. 7	RET	SLCT	BS	STOP	TAB	ESC	F5	F4
Col. 8	→	↓	↑	←	DEL	INS	HOME	SPACE
Col. 9	Num4	Num3	Num2	Num1	Num0	Num/	Num+	Num*
Col. 10	Num.	Num,	Num-	Num9	Num8	Num7	Num6	Num5

Obs.: Only columns 1 and 2 differ from the international.

1.2.6 – United Kingdom Matrix (England)

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	7 &	6 ^	5 %	4 \$	3 #	2 @	1 !	0)
Col. 1	; :	] }	[ {	\ |	= +	- _	9 (	8 *
Col. 2	b B	a A	£	/ ?	. >	, <	` ~	' "
Col. 3	j J	i I	h H	g G	f F	e E	d D	c C
Col. 4	r R	q Q	p P	o O	n N	m M	l L	k K
Col. 5	z Z	y Y	x X	w W	v V	u U	t T	s S
Col. 6	F3	F2	F1	CODE	CAPS	GRAPH	CTRL	SHIFT
Col. 7	RET	SLCT	BS	STOP	TAB	ESC	F5	F4
Col. 8	→	↓	↑	←	DEL	INS	HOME	SPACE
Col. 9	Num4	Num3	Num2	Num1	Num0	Num/	Num+	Num*
Col. 10	Num.	Num,	Num-	Num9	Num8	Num7	Num6	Num5

Obs.: Only column 2 differ from the international.

1.2.7 – Russian Matrix

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	& 6	% 5	¤ 4	# 3	" 2	! 1	+ ;	) 9
Col. 1	v V	* :	h H	- ^	= _	\$ 0	(8	' 7
Col. 2	i I	f F	? /	< ,	@	b B	> .	\
Col. 3	o O	[]	r R	p P	a A	u U	w W	s S
Col. 4	k K	j J	z Z	] }	t T	x X	d D	l L
Col. 5	q Q	n N	| ~	c C	m M	g G	e E	y Y
Col. 6	F3	F2	F1	PYC	CAPS	GRAPH	CTRL	SHIFT
Col. 7	RET	SLCT	BS	STOP	TAB	ESC	F5	F4
Col. 8	→	↓	↑	←	DEL	INS	HOME	SPACE
Col. 9	Num4	Num3	Num2	Num1	Num0	Num/	Num+	Num*
Col. 10	Num.	Num,	Num-	Num9	Num8	Num7	Num6	Num5

1.2.7.1 – Russian Matrix with locked PУC/CODE key

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	& 6	% 5	¤ 4	# 3	" 2	! 1	+ ;	) 9
Col. 1	ж Ж	* :	х Х	ъ Ъ	= _	\$ 0	(8	' 7
Col. 2	и И	ф Ф	? /	< ,	ю Ю	б Б	> .	э Э
Col. 3	о О	ш Ш	р Р	п П	а А	у У	в В	с С
Col. 4	к К	й Й	э Э	щ Щ	т Т	ь Ь	д Д	л Л
Col. 5	я Я	н Н	ч Ч	ц Ц	м М	г Г	е Е	ы Ы

1.2.8 – Korean Matrix

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	7 ' 6 &	5 % 4 \$ 3 # 2 "	1 ! 0 0					
Col. 1	; + [ { @ `	₩ | ^ ~ - = 9)	8 (
Col. 2	b B a A _ / ?	. > , <] }	: *					
Col. 3	j J i I h H g G f F e E d D c C							
Col. 4	r R q Q p P o O n N m M l L k K							
Col. 5	z Z y Y x X w W v V u U t T s S							
Col. 6	F3 F2 F1 한글	CAPS GRAPH CTRL	SHIFT					
Col. 7	RET SLCT BS STOP	TAB ESC F5 F4						
Col. 8	→ ↓ ↑ ←	DEL INS HOME	SPACE					
Col. 9	Num4 Num3 Num2 Num1 Num0 Num/ Num+ Num*							
Col. 10	Num. Num, Num- Num9 Num8 Num7 Num6 Num5							

1.2.8.1 – Korean Matrix with locked 한글CODE key

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0								
Col. 1								
Col. 2	ㅍ	ㅑ						
Col. 3	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅗ	ㅛ	ㅜ	ㅠ	ㅇ	ㅜ
Col. 4	ㄱ ㄲ	ㅅ ㅆ	ㅈ ㅊ	ㅋ ㆁ	ㄷ	ㅡ	ㅣ	ㅌ
Col. 5	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅑ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅗ	ㅛ

1.2.9 – Arabic Matrix

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	7 &	6 ^	5 %	4 \$	3 #	2 @	1 !	0)
Col. 1	; :	] }	[ {	\ |	= +	- _	9 (	8 *
Col. 2	b B	a A		/ ?	. >	, <	' ~	` ``
Col. 3	j J	i I	h H	g G	f F	e E	d D	c C
Col. 4	r R	q Q	p P	o O	n N	m M	l L	k K
Col. 5	z Z	y Y	x X	w W	v V	u U	t T	s S
Col. 6	F3	F2	F1	CODE	CAPS	GRAPH	CTRL	SHIFT
Col. 7	RET	SLCT	BS	STOP	TAB	ESC	F5	F4
Col. 8	→	↓	↑	←	DEL	INS	HOME	SPACE
Col. 9	Num4	Num3	Num2	Num1	Num0	Num/	Num+	Num*
Col. 10	Num.	Num,	Num-	Num9	Num8	Num7	Num6	Num5

1.2.9.1 – Arabic matrix with Arabic mode activated

	bit 7	bit 6	bit 5	bit 4	bit 3	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0
Col. 0	٧	٦	٥	٤	٣	٢	١	٠
Col. 1	ك		ج				٩	٨
Col. 2	لا	آ ش		؟		،	؛	”
Col. 3	ت	هـ °	أ ا	ل ل	ب	ث °	ن ي	ذ د
Col. 4	ق °	ض °	ح [	خ °	لآة	ؤ و	م	ن
Col. 5	ظ ط	غ °	ى ء	ص °	ز ر	ع °	ف °	ش !

1.3 – KEYBOARD LAYOUTS

1.3.1 – Internacional Layout

ESC	! 1	@ 2	# 3	\$ 4	% 5	^ 6	& 7	* 8	(9) 0	-	=	| \	BS
TAB	Q	W	E	R	T	Y	U	I	O	P	{ [	} ]	RETURN
CTRL	A	S	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	:	"	~	←	
SHIFT	Z	X	C	V	B	N	M	<	>	?	'	^	SHIFT	
	CAPS		GRAPH		SPACE							CODE		

1.3.2 – Japanese Layout (JIS)

ESC	! 1 め	" 2 ふ	# 3 あ	\$ 4 う	% 5 え	& 6 お	' 7 や	(8 ゆ	) 9 よ	を 0 わ	= -	~ ^	| ¥	—	BS
TAB	Q た	W て	E い	R す	T か	Y ん	U な	I に	O ら	P せ	@	、	{ [	} ]	RETURN
CTRL	A ち	S と	D し	F は	G き	H く	J ま	K の	L り	+ ;	* れ	、	} む	」	←
SHIFT	Z っ	X さ	C そ	V ひ	B こ	N み	M も	< 、	> ね	? る	・ れ	め	- ろ	SHIFT	
	CAPS		GRAPH		SPACE							かな			

1.3.3 – Japanese Layout (ANSI)

ESC	! 1 あ	" 2 い	# 3 う	\$ 4 え	% 5 お	& 6 な	' 7 に	(8 ん	) 9 ね	0 の	= -	~ ^	| ¥	る	BS
TAB	Q か	W き	E く	R け	T こ	Y は	U ひ	I ふ	O へ	P ほ	@ れ	{ [	} ]	RETURN	
CTRL	A さ	S し	D す	F せ	G そ	H ま	J み	K む	L れ	+ ;	* も	、	} ん	」	←
SHIFT	Z た	X ち	C っ	V て	B と	N や	M ゆ	< よ	> ね	? る	・ れ	を	- ん	SHIFT	
	CAPS		GRAPH		SPACE							かな			

1.3.4 – Brazilian Layout 1.0 (Expert 1.0)

ESC	!	@	#	\$	%	^	&	*	()	-	+		BS
TAB	Q	W	E	R	T	Y	U	I	O	P	{	}	RETURN	
CTRL	A	S	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	:	"	~	↵	
SHIFT	Z	X	C	V	B	N	M	<	>	?	'	^	SHIFT	
	CAPS	L GRA	SPACE									R GRA		

1.3.5 – Brazilian Layout 1.1 (Hotbit / Expert 1.1)

ESC	!	@	#	\$	%	"	&	*	()	-	+	^	BS
TAB	Q	W	E	R	T	Y	U	I	O	P	,	'	RETURN	
CTRL	A	S	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	Ç	^	[↵	
SHIFT	Z	X	C	V	B	N	M	;	:	?	>	<	SHIFT	
	CAPS	SPACE									GRAPH	CODE		

Note: For Expert, the GRAPH and CODE keys are renamed to L GRA and R GRA, in the same position as version 1.0.

1.3.6 – United Kingdom Layout

ESC	!	@	#	\$	%	^	&	*	()	-	+		BS
TAB	Q	W	E	R	T	Y	U	I	O	P	{	}	RETURN	
CTRL	A	S	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	:	"	~	↵	
SHIFT	Z	X	C	V	B	N	M	<	>	?	'	^	SHIFT	
	CAPS	GRAPH	SPACE									CODE		

1.3.7 – Argentine / Spanish Layout

ESC	! 1	@ 2	# 3	\$ 4	% 5	^ 6	& 7	* 8	(9) 0	-	+ =	| \	BS
TAB	Q	W	E	R	T	Y	U	I	O	P	{	}	RETURN	
CTRL	A	S	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	Ñ	"	;	↵	
SHIFT	Z	X	C	V	B	N	M	<	>	?	'	^	SHIFT	
	CAPS	GRAPH	SPACE									CODE		

1.3.8 – Russian Layout (Cyrillic)

ESC	; +	1 !	2 "	3 #	4 ѿ	5 %	6 &	7 ' (	8)	9 0	- \$	=	Ъ ^	BS
TAB	Й J	Ц C	У U	К K	Е e	Н H	Г Г	Ш [	{	Щ]	} 3 Z	X H	:	RETURN
CTRL	Ф F	Ы Y	В W	А a	П P	Р R	О o	Л L	Д D	Ж V	Э \	.	>	↵
SHIFT	Я Q	Ч |	~	С S	М m	И i	Т t	ь x	Б b	Ю @	,	/	?	SHIFT
	CAPS	GRAPH	SPACE									РУС		

1.3.9 – Korean Layout (CPC-400)

ESC	! 1	" 2	# 3	\$ 4	% 5	& 6	˘ 7	(8) 9	0	=	~ ^	| ₩	BS
TAB	Q ^ㅁ	W ^ㅂ	E ^ㅅ	R ^ㅈ	T ^ㅊ	Y ^ㅋ	U ^ㆁ	I ^ㆁ	O ^ㅅ	P ^ㅅ	' @	{	RETURN	
CTRL	A ^ㅁ	S ^ㄴ	D ^ㅇ	F ^ㅉ	G ^ㅇ	H ^ㅊ	J ^ㅊ	K ^ㅊ	L ^ㅊ}	| ;	+ :	}	↵	
SHIFT	Z ^ㅁ	X ^ㅅ	C ^ㅈ	V ^ㅅ	B ^ㅅ	N ^ㅅ	M ^ㅅ	<	>	?	/	-	SHIFT	
	CAPS	GRAPH	SPACE									한글		

1.3.10 – Arabic Layout (AX-170)

ESC	! 1	@ 2	# 3	\$ 4	% 5	^ 6	& 7	* 8	(9) 0	-	+	|	BS
TAB	Q ّ	W ّ	E ّ	R ّ	T ّ	Y ّ	U ّ	I ّ	O ّ	P [{ }]	RETURN			
CTRL	A ّ	S ّ	D ّ	F ّ	G ّ	H ّ	J ّ	K ّ	L ّ	:	"	“	~	←
SHIFT	Z ّ	X ّ	C ّ	V ّ	B ّ	N ّ	M ّ	<	>	?	/	⊗	SHIFT	
	CAPS		GRAPH		SPACE							CODE		

1.3.11 – French Layout (ML-F80)

ESC	1 &	2 é	3 “	4 ’	5 (6 ſ	7 è	8 !	9 ç	0 à	°	-	>	BS
TAB	A	Z	E	R	T	Y	U	I	O	P	¨	*	\$	RETURN
CTRL	Q	S	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	M	%	£	←	
SHIFT	W	X	C	V	B	N	M	?	:	/	+	=	SHIFT	
	CAPS		GRAPH		SPACE							CODE		

1.3.12 – German Layout (HB-F700D)

ESC	! 1	" 2	§ 3	\$ 4	% 5	& 6	/ 7	(8	) 9	= 0	? β	`	BS
TAB	Q	W	E	R	T	Y	U	I	O	P	Ü	* +	RETURN
CTRL	A	S	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	Ö	Ä	^ #	←
SHIFT	> <	Z	X	C	V	B	N	M	;	:	-	SHIFT	
	CAPS		GRAPH		SPACE							CODE	

1.4 - CONTROL CODES

Shortcut	DEC	HEX	Function
Ctrl+A	001	01H	Determines graphic character.
Ctrl+B	002	02H	Deflects cursor to start of the previous word.
Ctrl+C	003	03H	Closes the entry condition.
Ctrl+D	004	04H	
Ctrl+E	005	05H	Cancel character from cursor to end of line.
Ctrl+F	006	06H	Deflect cursor to start the next word.
Ctrl+G	007	07H	Generates a beep.
Ctrl+H	008	08H	Deletes the letter before the cursor (BS).
Ctrl+I	009	09H	Move cursor to the next TAB position (TAB).
Ctrl+J	010	0AH	Line change (Linefeed).
Ctrl+K	011	0BH	Returns cursor to position 1.1 (HOME).
Ctrl+L	012	0CH	Clears the screen and puts the cursor in 1.1 pos.
Ctrl+M	013	0DH	Carriage Return (RETURN).
Ctrl+N	014	0EH	Moves the cursor to the end of the line.
Ctrl+O	015	0FH	
Ctrl+P	016	10H	
Ctrl+Q	017	11H	
Ctrl+R	018	12H	Turn on/off insertion mode (INS).
Ctrl+S	019	13H	
Ctrl+T	020	14H	
Ctrl+U	021	15H	Delete the entire line on which the cursor is.
Ctrl+V	022	16H	
Ctrl+W	023	17H	
Ctrl+X	024	18H	(SELECT).
Ctrl+Y	025	19H	
Ctrl+Z	026	1AH	(EOF) – End of File.
Ctrl+[	027	1BH	(ESC) – Escape.
Ctrl+\	028	1CH	Moves the cursor to the right.
Ctrl+]	029	1DH	Moves the cursor to the left.
Ctrl+ ^	030	1EH	Move the cursor up.
Ctrl+ _	031	1FH	Moves the cursor down.
Delete	127	7FH	Deletes the character under the cursor (DEL).

2 – I/O PORTS MAP

00H~01H	Music Module MIDI (output) port (do not use at the same time with Sony Sensor Kid Cartridge).
00H~01H	Sony Sensor Kid Cartridge (do not use with Music Module).
02H~03H	FAC MIDI Interface (mirrored at 00H~07H).
04H~05H	Music Module MIDI (input).
00H~07H	MD Telcom modem.
08H~09H	No known use.
0AH	DAC of the Music Module.
08H~0EH	No known use.
0FH	MegaRAM Zemina.
10H~11H	PSG emulation for MegaflashROM in FPGA.
12H~13H	No known use.
14H~17H	YM2608 OPNA Cartridge.
18H~19H	Philips NMS 1170/20 barcode reader.
1AH~1FH	No known use.
20H~28H	Philips Modem NMS1251 (config. 30H~38H via jumper). Miniware M4000 modem (config. 30H~38H via jumper).
21H~27H	Sunrise MP3 player.
27H~2FH	Philips NMS serial interface 1210/1211/1212. (configurable in 37H~3FH via jumper).
28H~29H	DenYoNet ethernet interface.
2AH~2BH	PlaySoniq cartridge (setting registers).
30H~38H	Philips Modem NMS1251 (config. 20H~28H via jumper). Miniware M4000 modem (config. 20H~28H via jumper). Green-Mak SCSI interface. Philips NMS 0210 CD-ROM interface.
37H~3FH	Philips NMS serial interface 1210/1211/1212 (configurable in 27H~2FH via jumper).
3CH	Musical Memory Mapper control register.
3FH	Register of the SN76489 of the Musical Memory Mapper.
40H~4FH	Access to switchable I/O ports.
40H	(R/W) Device ID.
41H~4FH	(R/W) access to the device.
48H~49H	Franky Cartridge (SN76489 and VDP).
50H~5DH	No known use.
5EH~5FH	GR8NET interface (Ethernet).

- 60H~6FH VDP V9990:
- 60H (R/W) Access to VRAM.
 - 61H (R/W) Access to the color palette.
 - 62H (R/W) Access to hardware commands.
 - 63H (R/W) Access to registers.
 - 64H (W) Selection of registers.
 - 65H (R) Status port.
 - 66H (W) Interruption flag.
 - 67H (W) System control.
 - 68H (W) Address of Kanji-ROM (low) – 1.
 - 69H (R/W) Kanji-ROM address (high) and data – 1.
 - 6AH (W) Address of the Kanji-ROM (low) – 2.
 - 6BH (R/W) Kanji-ROM (high) address and data – 2.
 - 6CH~6FH Not used.
- 70H~73H Saurus MIDI Cartridge.
- 74H~76H No known use.
- 77H Super Game 90.
- 78H~7BH No known use.
- 7CH~7DH MSX-MUSIC (YM2413):
- 7CH (W) Selects registers.
 - 7DH (W) Data port.
- 7EH~7FH Moonsound Cartridge (OPL4) – PCM synthesis:
- 7EH PCM registers (wave).
 - 7FH PCM data (wave).
- 80H~87H Standard RS232C serial interface:
- 80H (R/W) USART 8251 – Data logger.
 - 81H (R/W) USART 8251 – Status and command log.
 - 82H (R/W) USART 8251 – Status / communication.
 - 83H (R/W) Interrupt mask.
 - 84H (R/W) 8253 – Counter 1.
 - 85H (R/W) 8253 – Counter 2.
 - 86H (R/W) 8253 – Counter 3.
 - 87H (W) Meter control.
- 88H~8BH Access to external V9938.
- 8CH~8DH MSX Modem.
- 8EH~8FH Megaram:
- 8EH Page selection.
 - 8FH Megaram-Disk.

90H~91H	Printer: 90H (R) Status. 91H (W) Data.
92H~93H	No known use.
94H	Direction to printer port (non-standard).
95H~97H	No known use.
98H~9BH	VDP TMS9918 / V9938 / V9958: 98H (R/W) Read /Write data in VRAM. 99H (R/W) Read status register; Write to the control register. 9AH (W) Writes to the palette registers. 9BH (W) Write in indirectly specified register.
9CH~9FH	No known use.
A0H~A2H	PSG AY-3-8910: A0H (W) Address port. A1H (W) Data writing port. A2H (R) Data readout port.
A3H	No known use.
A4H~A5H	PCM (Turbo R): A4H (R/W) Data port. A5H (R/W) Control port.
A6H	No known use.
A7H	Controls panel lights on the MSX turbo R: bit 1 = LED Pause. bit 7 = turbo LED.
A8H~ABH	PPI 8255: A8H (R/W) PPI port A (slot selection). A9H (R/W) PPI port B (keyboard reading). AAH (R/W) PPI port C (keyboard line / click keys). ABH (W) PPI control port.
ACH~AFH	MSX-Engine (1chipMSX control).
B0H~B3H	Memory expansion (SONY 8255 specification): B0H Address lines A0~A7. B1H Address lines A8~A10, A13~A15, control, R/W. B2H Address lines A11~A12 and data D0~D7.
B4H~B5H	Clock IC (RP-5C01): B4H Address of the registers. B5H Read/write data.

B6H~B7H	Card reader?
B8H~BBH	Lightpen control (SANYO specification).
BCH~BFH	VHD Control (JVC 8255 specification).
C0H~C1H	MSX-Audio Y8950: C0H (R/W) Selects regs and reads reg. status. C1H (R/W) Write or read reg. specified.
C0H~C3H	Alternative ports for Moonsound / OPL4.
C4H~C7H	Moonsound Cartridge (OPL4) – FM synthesis: C4H FM register array 0 (bank 1) and reg. status. C5H FM (data). C6H FM register array 1 (bank 2). C7H Mirror of (access via C5H is preferred).
C8H~CCH	Asynchronous serial interface.
CDH~CFH	No known use.
D0H~D7H	Reserved for disk interface.
D8H~D9H	Kanji-ROM Jis 1: D8H (W) Address lines A0~A5. D9H (R/W) Address lines A6~A11 and data D0~D7.
DAH~DBH	Kanji-ROM Jis 2: DAH (W) Address lines A0~A5. DBH (R/W) Address lines A6~A11 and data D0~D7.
DCH~DDH	Playsoniq Cartridge (Sega Gamepad support).
DEH~DFH	No known use.
E0H~E2H	MSX-MIDI external: E0H Data transmission / reception. E1H Control port. E2H Selection port.
E3H	No known use.
E4H~E7H	Access to the S1990 (MSX turbo R): E4H Registers addresses. E5H Data. E6H 16-bit counter (LSB) and counter reset. E7H 16-bit counter (MSB).
E8H~EFH	MSX-MIDI: E8H Data transmission / reception. E9H Control port. EAH Latch of signals (written only). EBH Mirror from EAH.

	ECH	Counter 0.
	EDH	Counter 1.
	EEH	Counter 2.
	EFH	Control of counters (write only).
F0H~F2H		No known use.
F3H		Current screen mode (MSX2+ only):
	bit 0 = M3	bit 4 = M1
	bit 1 = M4	bit 5 = TP
	bit 2 = M5	bit 6 = YUV
	bit 3 = M2	bit 7 = YAE
F4H		RESET status for MSX2+ and MSX turbo R:
	bit 5	– Flag to indicate that the system is already initialized.
	bit 7	– 0 = hard reset; 1 = Soft reset.
		Note: in some MSX2+, the read data must be inverted to obtain the correct value.
F5H		System control (setting the bit to 1 enables):
	b0	– Kanji-ROM
	b1	– Reserved Kanji
	b2	– MSX-Audio
	b3	– Superimpose
	b4	– MSX-Interface
	b5	– Serial RS232C
	b6	– Lightpen
	b7	– Clock IC
F6H		Color I/O bus (Color Bus).
F7H		AV Control (setting the bit to 1 enables):
	b0	– Simultaneous right and left audio.
	b1	– Audio L (left) only.
	b2	– Select video input (RGB21).
	b3	– Flag indicating whether there is a video input or not.
	b4	– AV Control (RGB21).
	b5	– Ym control (RGB21).
	b6	– Inverse of bit 4 of reg. # 9 of the VDP.
	b7	– Inverse of bit 5 of the VDP reg. # 9.
F8H		Access to PAL A/V control register.
F8H~FBH		Access to the 8-bit MSB of the 16-bit register of the Playsoniq cartridge (they are the same ports used in some MSX that are disabled by default).
FCH~FFH		Memory Mapper:
	FCH (R/W)	Physical page 0 (0000H~3FFFH).
	FDH (R/W)	Physical page 1 (4000H~7FFFH).
	FEH (R/W)	Physical page 2 (8000H~BFFFH).
	FFH (R/W)	Physical page 3 (C000H~FFFFH).

3 – MSX-BASIC

3.1 – FORMAT

INSTRUCTION NAME (instruction type, BASIC version)

Format: Valid formats for the instruction.

Function: Form of operation of the instruction.

There are five types of instructions, namely: declarations, commands, functions, system variables and logical operators.

The BASIC version indicates the version for which the instruction is implemented. Values separated by “-” indicate that there are differences in syntax or behavior for different versions.

1~4 MSX-BASIC version

M MSX-MUSIC BASIC

K Kanji-ROM required

D Disk-BASIC 1.0

D2 Disk-BASIC 2.0

3.1.1 – Instructions Abbreviations

REM ‘

PRINT ?

CALL _

3.1.2 – Logical Operation Codes

PSET TPSET Uses the specified color (default)

PRESET TPRESET Makes “NOT (color specified)”

XOR TXOR Makes “(target color) XOR (specified color)”

OR TOR Makes “(target color) OR (specified color)”

AND TAND Makes “(target color) AND (specified color)”

Note: when the operation is preceded by "T", no operation will be performed when the color is transparent.

3.1.3 – Code notations

&B	Precedes a constant in binary form
&O	Precedes a constant in octal form
&H	Precedes a constant in hexadecimal form
%	Marks variable as integer
!	Marks variable as simple precision
#	Marks variable as double precision
\$	Marks variable as alphanumeric
-	Mathematical operator for subtraction
+	Mathematical operator for addition
/	Mathematical operator for division
*	Mathematical operator for multiplication
^	Mathematical operator for potentiation
=	Denotes equality and assigns values
<>	Denotes difference

3.1.4 – Format Notations

<exprA>	variable, constant, or string or numeric expression.
<exprN>	variable, constant or numeric expression.
<expr\$>	variable, constant, or string expression.
<n>	is a defined number. When in parentheses it can be an expression or numeric variable.
[]	delimits optional parameter.
|	it means that only one of the items can be used.
{ }	delimits option.
X	any variable.
X%	any integer variable.
X!	any single precision variable.
X#	any double precision variable.
X\$	any alphanumeric variable.

Characters in parentheses after multiple formats for an instruction indicate the version of BASIC in which that instruction format is available.

3.2 – INSTRUCTIONS DESCRIPTION

ABS (function, 1)

Format: X = ABS (<exprN>)

Function: Returns in X the absolute value (module) of <exprN>.

AND (logical operator, 1)

Format: <exprA1> AND <exprA2>

Function: Performs logical AND operation between <exprA1> and <exprA2>.

0 and 0 → 0 1 and 0 → 0

0 and 1 → 0 1 and 1 → 1

ASC (function, 1)

Format: X = ASC (<expr\$>)

Function: Returns the ASCII code of the first character of expr\$ in X.

ATN (function, 1)

Format: X = ATN (<exprN>)

Function: Returns in X the arcotangent of exprN (exprN must be expressed in radians).

AUTO (command, 1)

Format: AUTO [numline, [increment]]

Function: Automatically generates line numbers, starting with [numline] and incremented with the value of [increment].

BASE (system variable, 1-2-3)

Format: X = BASE (<n>)

BASE (<n>) = <exprN>

Function: Returns in X or sets the starting addresses of the tables in VRAM for each screen mode. <n> is an integer that follows the following table:

	SCREEN MODES												Table of ...
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	10	11	12	
BASE VALUE	0	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	50	55	60	pattern names
	-	6	11	16	21	26	31	36	41	51	56	61	colors
	2	7	12	17	22	27	32	37	42	52	57	62	pattern generator
	-	8	13	18	23	28	33	38	43	53	58	63	sprites attributes
	-	9	14	19	24	29	34	39	44	54	59	64	sprites generator

BEEP (declaration, 1)

Format: BEEP

Function: Generates a beep.

BIN\$ (function, 1)

Format: X\$ = BIN\$ (<exprN>)

Function: Converts the value of <exprN> to a string of binary codes and returns the value obtained in X\$.

BLOAD (command, 1-D)

Format: BLOAD "<filename>" [,R [,<offset>]]

BLOAD "<filename>" [{,R | ,S}] [,<offset>]] (D)

Function: Load a binary block into RAM or, if specified [,S], into VRAM (Disk Basic only). If specified [,R], executes a program in machine code.

BSAVE (command, 1-D)

Format: BSAVE "<filename>",<endini>, <endfim> [,<endexec>]

BSAVE "<filename>",<endini>, <endfim> [,<endexec> [, S]]

Function: Saves a binary block to disk or tape. [,S] saves a VRAM block (option available only under Disk Basic).

CALL (declaration, 1-2-3-4-D-M-Nextor)

Format: CALL <extended command> [(<argument> [, argument>...])]

Function: Executes extended commands through ROM cartridges or routines loaded in RAM. See the section "DESCRIPTION OF EXTENDED COMMANDS".

CDBL (function, 1)

Format: X# = CDBL (<exprN>)

Function: Converts the value of <exprN> to a double precision value and returns the value obtained in the variable X#.

CHR\$ (function, 1)

Format: X\$ = CHR\$ (<exprN>)

Function: Returns in X\$ the character whose ASCII code is expressed in <exprN>.

- CINT** (function, 1)
 Format: X% = CINT (<exprN>)
 Function: Converts the value of <exprN> to an integer number and loads it in the variable X%.
- CIRCLE** (statement, 1-2)
 Format: CIRCLE {(X, Y) | STEP (X, Y)},<radio> [,<color> [,<start angle> [,<end angle> [,<aspect ratio>]]]]
 Function: Draws a circle with a central point at (X, Y). If STEP is specified, the coordinates will be calculated from the current one. <start angle> and <end angle> must be specified in radians. <proportion> is the relation for ellipse; <1> being perfect circumference.
- CLEAR** (statement, 1)
 Format: CLEAR [<string area size> [, upper memory limit->]]
 Function: Initializes the BASIC variables and sets the size of the string area and the upper limit of memory used by BASIC.
- CLOAD** (command, 1)
 Format: CLOAD [<filename>]
 Function: Loads a BASIC program from the tape.
- CLOAD?** (command, 1)
 Format: CLOAD? [<filename>]
 Function: Compares a BASIC program on the cassette with the one that is in the memory.
- CLOSE** (command, 1-D)
 Format: CLOSE [[#]<file number> [, [#]<file number> ...]]
 Function: Closes the specified files. If no file is specified, close all opened files.
- CLS** (declaration, 1)
 Format: CLS
 Function: Clears the screen.
- CMD** (command, 1)
 Format: No format defined.
 Function: Reserved for implementing new commands.

COLOR (statement, 1-2)

Format: COLOR [<front color> [,<background color> [,<border color>]]] (1-2)

Function: Specifies the colors of the screen.

COLOR = (declaration, 2)

Format: COLOR = (<palette number>, <red level>, <green level>, <blue level>)

Function: Specifies the colors of the palette. The level can vary from 0 to 7 for each color.

COLOR = NEW (declaration, 2)

Format: COLOR [= NEW]

Function: Initializes the color palette.

COLOR = RESTORE (declaration, 2)

Format: COLOR = RESTORE

Function: Copies the contents of the color palette stored in VRAM to the VDP palette registers.

COLOR SPRITE (statement, 1-2)

Format: COLOR SPRITE (<sprite plane number>) = <color>

Function: Specifies the color of the sprites.

COLOR SPRITE\$ (declaration, 2)

Format: COLOR SPRITE\$ (<sprite plan number>) = <expr\$>

Function: Specifies the color of each line of the sprites.
<expr\$> = CHR\$ (1st line color) + CHR\$ (2nd line color) ...

CONT (command, 1)

Format: CONT

Function: Continues the execution of a program that was interrupted.

COPY (declaration, 1-2-D)

Format: COPY <filename1> [TO <filename2>] (1-D)

Function: Copy the contents of <filename1> to <filename2>.

Format: COPY (X1, X2) - (Y1, Y2) [,<source page>] TO (X3, Y3) [, <target page> [,<logical operation>]] (2)

Function: Copies a rectangular area of the screen to another.

DEFUSR (statement, 1)

Format: DEFUSR [<number>] = <address>

Function: Defines an initial address for executing an assembly program to be called by the USR function. <number> can vary from 0 to 9.

DELETE (command, 1)

Format: DELETE {<start line> – <end line> | <line> | – <end line>}

Function: Deletes the specified lines from the BASIC text.

DIM (declaration, 1)

Format: DIM <variable> (<max index> [,<max index> ...])

Function: Defines an variable array and allocates space in memory.

DRAW (macro declaration, 1)

Format: DRAW <expr\$>

Function: Draw a line according to <expr\$>. The valid commands for <expr\$> are as follows:

Un	to up	Dn	to down
Ln	to left	Rn	to right
En	up and right	Fn	down and right
Gn	low and left	Hn	up and left
B	move no drawing	N	back to origin
Mx,y	goes to X, Y	An	rotates n*90 degrees
Sn	scale n / 4	Cn	color n
Xseries	runs macro in series.		

Ex. A\$ = "C15U10" → DRAW "XA\$"
 = <variable> – Place a parameter as an integer after the
 command. Ex. A\$="C15U10", S=50,
 → DRAW "XA\$;R=S;D=S"

DSKF (function, D)

Format: X = DSKF (<drive number>)

Function: Returns the free space on the specified drive in clusters. If Nextor is installed, it will return the space in Kbytes.

EOF (function, 1-D)

Format: X = EOF (<file number>)

Function: Returns -1 if the end of the file is detected.

ERASE (declaration, 1)

Format: ERASE <matrix variable> [,<matrix variable>...]

Function: Delete the specified matrix variables.

EQV (logical operator, 1)

Format: <exprA1> EQV <exprA2>

Function: Performs EQV logical operation between <exprA1> and <exprA2>. The result will be 1 if the two bits are equal and zero if they are different.

0 eqv 0 → 1 1 eqv 0 → 0

0 eqv 1 → 0 1 eqv 1 → 1

ERL (system variable, 1)

Format: X = ERL

Function: Contains the line number where the last error occurred.

ERR (system variable, 1)

Format: X = ERR

Function: Contains the error code of the last error occurred.

ERROR (statement, 1)

Format: ERROR <error code>

Function: Puts the program in error condition.

EXP (function, 1)

Format: X = EXP (<exprN>)

Function: Returns in X the value of the natural potentiation of <exprN>.

FIELD (statement, D)

Format: FIELD [#]<file number>, <field size> AS <string variable>
[,<field size> AS <string variable> ...]

Function: Assigns <string variable> for random disk access.

FILES (command, D)

Format: FILES [<filename>]

Function: Displays the directory of the disc according to <filename>. If <filename> is omitted, it displays the names of all files on the disk.

INSTR (function, 1)

Format: X = INSTR ([<exprN>,<expr\$1>, <expr\$2>)

Function: Searches for the occurrence of <expr\$2> in <expr\$1> from the position <exprN> and returns the value obtained in X. If <expr\$1> is not found, returns 0.

INT (function, 1)

Format: X = INT (<exprN>)

Function: Returns in X the entire part of <exprN>, rounding off.

INTERVAL (statement, 1)

Format: INTERVAL {ON | OFF | STOP}

Function: Activate, deactivate or suspend interruption for a period of time.

IPL (command, 1)

Format: No defined format.

Function: Reserved for implementing new commands.

KEY (command / declaration, 1)

Format: KEY <key number>, <expr\$>

Function: Assign the content of the specified function key.

Format: KEY (<key number>) {ON | OFF | STOP}

Function: Enables, disables or suspends function key interruption.

Format: KEY {ON | OFF}

Function: Turns on or off the display of the content of the function keys on the bottom screen line.

KEY LIST (command, 1)

Format: KEY LIST

Function: Lists the content of the function keys.

KILL (command, D)

Format: KILL <expr\$>

Function: Delete files on the disk. <expr\$> must contain a valid filename.

LEFT\$ (function, 1)

Format: X\$ = LEFT\$ (<expr\$>, <exprN>)

Function: Returns the <exprN> left <expr\$> characters in X\$.

LEN (function, 1)

Format: X = LEN (<expr\$>)

Function: Returns in X the number of characters in <expr\$>.

LET (declaration, 1)

Format: [LET]<variable name> = <exprA>

Function: Stores the value of <exprA> in the variable.

LFILES (command, 1)

Format: LFILES [<filename>]

Function: Lists the filenames of the disk in the printer according to <filename>. If <filename> is omitted, it lists the names of all files on the disk.

LINE (statement, 1-2)

Format: LINE [{(X1, Y1) | STEP (X1, Y1)}] – {(X2, Y2) | STEP (X2, Y2)}
[,<color> [, {B | BF} [,<logical operation>]]]

Function: Draws a line, an empty rectangle (,B) or a painted rectangle (,BF). The STEP subcommand, when specified, defines the offset.

LINE INPUT (statement, 1)

Format: LINE INPUT [“<prompt>”];<string variable>

Function: Reads a sequence of characters from the keyboard and stores the value read in the <string variable>.

LINE INPUT# (declaration, 1-D)

Format: LINE INPUT#<file number>, <string variable>

Function: Reads a sequence of characters from a file and stores the value read in the <string variable>.

LIST (command, 1)

Format: LIST [[<start line>] – [<end line>]]

Function: List on the screen the BASIC program that is in memory.

LLIST (command, 1)

Format: LLIST [[<start line>] – [<end line>]]

Function: Lists the BASIC program in the printer.

- LOAD** (command, 1-D)
 Format: LOAD "<filename>" [,R]
 Function: Load a program into memory. The [,R] parameter makes the program to be executed after loading.
- LOC** (function, D)
 Format: X = LOC (<file number>)
 Function: Returns in X the number of the last accessed record of the file.
- LOCATE** (declaration, 1-2)
 Format: LOCATE [<X coord.> [,<Y coord.> [,<cursor type>]]]
 Function: Position the cursor on the text screens. If <cursor type> is 0 (default value) the cursor will not be displayed when the computer is busy; if any other value, the cursor will always be displayed.
- LOF** (function, D)
 Format: X = LOF (<file number>)
 Function: Returns the specified file size in X.
- LOG** (function, 1)
 Format: X = LOG (<exprN>)
 Function: Returns in X the natural logarithm of <exprN>.
- LPOS** (system variable, 1)
 Format: X = LPOS
 Function: Stores the horizontal location of the printer head.
- LPRINT** (declaration, 1)
 Format: LPRINT [<exprA> [{; | } <exprA> ...]]
 Function: Send the characters in the the expressions <exprA> to the printer. ";" prints the next character immediately after, "," prints the character in the next tab stop.
- LPRINT USING** (statement, 1)
 Format: LPRINT USING <"format">; <exprA> [{; | } <exprA>...]
 LPRINT USING <"expr\$ formatted">

Function: Send to the printer the characters corresponding to the expressions <exprN> or <expr\$>, formatting. ";" prints the next character immediately after, "," prints the character at the next tab stop. The characters used to format the output are as follows:

→ Numeric formatting:
Space for one digit
. Includes decimal point
+ Indicates + or -; used before or after the number
- Indicates -; used after the number
\$\$ Put\$ to the left of the number
** Replaces leading spaces with asterisks
**\$ Places a\$ to the left preceded by asterisks
^^^ Displays the number in scientific notation
→ Alphanumeric formatting:
\\ Character space
! Space for a character
& Variable spacing
_ Next character is printed normally
other Print character

LSET (declaration, D)

Format: LSET <string variable> = <expr\$>

Function: Stores the contents of <expr\$> on the left of the variable string defined by the FIELD statement.

MAXFILES (declaration, 1-D)

Format: MAXFILES = <number of files>

Function: Defines the maximum number of files that can be opened at the same time.

MERGE (command, 1-D)

Format: MERGE <filename>

Function: Merges the program in memory with a program saved in ASCII format on disk or tape.

MID\$ (function / declaration, 1)

Format: X\$ = MID\$ (<expr\$>, <exprN1> [, <exprN2>])

Function: Returns, in X\$, <exprN2> characters from the character <exprN1> of <expr\$>.

- Format: MID\$ (<string variable>, <exprN1> [,<exprN2>]) = <expr\$>
 Function: Defines <expr\$> using <exprN2> characters from the <exprN1> position of the <string variable>.
- MKD\$** (function, D)
 Format: X\$ = MKD\$ (<double precision value>)
 Function: Convert a double precision value to an 8-byte string and store it in X\$.
- MKI\$** (function, D)
 Format: X\$ = MKI\$ (<integer value>)
 Function: Convert an integer value to a 2-byte string and store it in X\$.
- MKS\$** (function, D)
 Format: X\$ = MKS\$ (<simple precision value>)
 Function: Converts a simple precision value to a 4-byte string and store it in X\$.
- MOTOR** (control, 1)
 Format: MOTOR [{ON | OFF}]
 Function: Turns the cassette motor on or off.
- NAME** (command, D)
 Format: NAME <filename1> AS <filename2>
 Function: Rename the file <filename1> to <filename2>.
- NEW** (command, 1)
 Format: NEW
 Function: Deletes the program from memory and clears the variables.
- NEXT** (declaration, 1)
 Format: NEXT [<variable name> [,<variable name>...]]
 Function: Indicates the end of the FOR loop.
- NOT** (logical operator, 1)
 Format: NOT (<exprA>)
 Function: Performs the negation of <exprA>.
 not 0 → 1
 not 1 → 0

OCT\$ (function, 1)

Format: X\$ = OCT\$ (<exprN>)

Function: Converts the value of <exprN> to an octal string and returns it in X\$.

ON ERROR GOTO (statement, 1)

Format: ON ERROR GOTO <line number>

Function: Defines the starting line of the error handling routine.

ON GOSUB (statement, 1)

Format: ON <exprN> GOSUB <line number> [,<line number> ...]

Function: Executes the subroutine that starts in the <line number> according to <exprN>.

ON GOTO (statement, 1)

Format: ON <exprN> GOTO <line number> [,<line number> ...]

Function: Jump to the line <line number> according to <exprN>.

ON INTERVAL GOSUB (statement, 1)

Format: ON INTERVAL = <time> GOSUB <line number>

Function: Defines the interval and the line number for time interruption. <time> is defined in 1/60 second units on a NTSC machines and in 1/50 seconds in PAL machines.

ON KEY GOSUB (statement, 1)

Format: ON KEY GOSUB <line number> [,<line number> ...]

Function: Defines the line numbers for interrupting function keys.

ON SPRITE GOSUB (statement, 1)

Format: ON SPRITE GOSUB <line number>

Function: Defines the line number for sprite collision interruption.

ON STOP GOSUB (statement, 1)

Format: ON STOP GOSUB <line number>

Function: Defines the line number for interruption by pressing the CTRL+STOP keys.

ON STRIG GOSUB (statement, 1)

Format: ON STRIG GOSUB <line number> [,<line number> ...]

Function: Defines the line numbers for interruption by pressing the joystick trigger buttons.

OPEN (declaration, 1-D)

Format: OPEN <filename> [FOR {INPUT | OUTPUT}]
AS#<file number> [LEN = <record size>]

Function: Open a file on tape or disk.

OR (logical operator, 1)

Format: <exprA1> OR <exprA2>

Function: Performs logical OR operation between <exprA1> and <exprA2>.

0 or 0 → 1 1 or 0 → 0

0 or 1 → 0 1 or 1 → 1

OUT (statement, 1)

Format OUT <port number>, <exprN>

Function: Writes the value of <exprN> to an I/O port of the Z80.

PAD (function, 1-2)

Format: X = PAD (<exprN>)

Function: Examines the state of the mouse, trackball, lightpen or digitizer tablet and returns the value obtained in X.

<exprN> can be:

0 – Check touch pad on port 1 (255 if connected)

1 – Returns the X coordinate (horizontal).

2 – Returns the Y (vertical) coordinate.

3 – Returns the key state (255 if pressed).

4 – Check touch pad on port 2 (255 if connected).

5 – Returns the X (horizontal) coordinate.

6 – Returns the Y (vertical) coordinate.

7 – Returns the key state (255 if pressed).

8 – Check lightpen (255 if connected or touching the screen).

9 – Returns the X (horizontal) coordinate.

10 – Returns the Y (vertical) coordinate.

11 – Returns the key state (255 if pressed).

12 – Check mouse on port 1 (255 if connected).

13 – Returns X coordinate offset (horizontal).

14 – Returns Y coordinate offset (vertical).

15 – Always 0.

16 – Check mouse on port 2 (255 if connected).

17 – Returns X coordinate offset (horizontal).

- 18 – Returns Y coordinate offset (vertical).
 - 19 – Always 0.
 - 20 – Checks 2nd lightpen (255 if connected or touching the screen). * obs
 - 21 – Returns the X (horizontal) coordinate. * obs
 - 22 – Returns the Y (vertical) coordinate. * obs
 - 23 – Returns the key state (255 if pressed). * obs
- Note: Values 20 to 23 require the use of the CALL ADJUST statement beforehand. Only available for MSX2 manufactured by Daewoo.

PAINT (statement, 1-2)
 Format: PAINT {(X, Y) | STEP (X, Y)} [,<color> [,<border color>]]
 Function: Fills the area enclosed by a line with the color <border color> with the color <color>.

PDL (function, 1)
 Format: X = PDL (<paddle number>)
 Function: Returns in X the state of the specified paddle. The paddle number can be:
 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11 – Paddles connected to port 1.
 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12 – Paddles connected to port 2.

PEEK (function, 1)
 Format: X = PEEK (<address>)
 Function: Returns in X the value of the byte contained in <address>.

PLAY (macro statement, 1)
 Format: PLAY <expr\$ 1> [,<expr\$ 2> [, <expr\$ 3>]]
 Function: Plays the notes specified by <expr\$> on PSG. The valid commands for <expr\$> are as follows:
 An~Gn Plays an encrypted note with duration n (1~64, default is 4).
 Rn Pause of duration n (1~64, default is 4).
 # or + Sustain
 – Flat
 . Duration increase by 50%
 On Octave (default is 4)

→ For battery parts, the commands are as follows:

B Bass Drum

S Snare Drum

W Tom Tom

C Cymbals

H Hi hat

@Vn Detailed volume change (0~127)

@Nn Maintains the duration defined by n (1~64, default Ln)

n The “n”th note is paused (1~64)

! Accentuates the previous note

@An Sets the volume for accented voices (0~15)

→ Obs.: Tn, Vn, @Vn, Rn, X, = x; and . are identical to the other instruments.

POINT (function, 1)

Format: X = POINT (X, Y)

Function: Returns in X the color code of the point (X, Y) of the graphic screen.

POKE (statement, 1)

Format: POKE <address>, <data>

Function: Writes a byte of data to the memory <address>.
<data> must be a numeric value between 0 and 255.

POS (system variable, 1)

Format: X = POS (0)

Function: Stores the horizontal position of the cursor in text mode.

PRESET (statement, 1-2)

Format: PRESET {(X, Y) | STEP (X, Y)} [, <color> [, <logical oper>]]

Function: Turns off the point specified by (X, Y) on the graphic screen. “STEP”, if specified, defines the offset.

PRINT (declaration, 1)

Format: PRINT [<exprA> [{; | } <exprA> ...]]

Function: Displays the characters corresponding to the expressions <exprA> on the screen. ";" does not generate linefeed and “;” advances to the next tab position.

PRINT# (declaration, 1-D)

Format: PRINT# <file number>, [<exprA> [{; | ,} <exprA> ...]]

Function: Writes the value of <exprA> to the specified file. ";" does not generate linefeed and "," advances to the next tab position.

PRINT USING (statement, 1)

Format: PRINT USING <"format">; <exprN> [{; | ,} <exprN> ...]
PRINT USING <"expr\$ format">

Function: Displays on the screen the characters corresponding to the expressions <exprN> or <expr\$>, formatting. ";" does not generate linefeed and "," advances to the next tab position.

The formatting characters are described below:

→ Numeric formatting:

Space for one digit

. Includes decimal point

+ Indicates + or -; used before or after the number

- Indicates -; used after the number

\$\$ Put "\$" to the left of the number

** Replaces leading spaces with asterisks

**\$ Places a "\$" to the left preceded by asterisks

^^^^ Displays the number in scientific notation

→ Alphanumeric formatting:

\ \ Character space

! Space for a character & Variable spacing

_ Next character will print normally

other Print character

PRINT# USING (declaration, 1-D)

Format: PRINT# <file number> USING <"format">; <exprA> [{; | ,} <exprA>...]

Function: Writes the value of <exprA> to the specified file, formatting. The formatting characters are the same as those for PRINT USING.

PSET (statement, 1)

Format: PSET {(X, Y) | STEP (X, Y)} [, <color> [, <logical operation>]]

Function: Draws the point specified by (X, Y) on the graphic screen. "STEP", if specified, defines the offset.

PUT (statement, D)

Format: PUT [#]<file number> [,<record number>]

Function: Writes a record to a random file.

PUT HAN (declaration, Daewoo CPC 400 / 400S)

Format: PUT HAN [(X, Y)],<Hangul code> [,<color> [,<logical operation> [,<mode>]]]

Function: Displays a Korean Hangul character on the screen.

<mode> sets the size of the Hangul character:

0 – 16x16 points

1 – 16x8 points (shows only odd lines)

2 – 16x8 points (shows only even lines)

PUT KANJI (statement, 1-2-Kanji)

Format: PUT KANJI [(X, Y)],<JIS code> [,<color> [,<logical operation> [,<mode>]]]

Function: Displays a Kanji character on the screen. <JIS code> may vary from &H2120 to &H4F53 for JIS1 and from &H5020 to &H7424 for JIS2.

<mode> defines the size of the Kanji:

0 – 16x16 points

1 – 16x8 points (shows only odd lines)

2 – 16x8 points (shows only even lines)

PUT SPRITE (statement, 1-2)

Format: PUT SPRITE <sprite plane> [, {(X, Y) | STEP (X, Y)} [,<color> [,<pattern number>]]]

Function: Displays a sprite on the screen. “STEP”, if specified, sets the offset. <sprite plan> is a number from 0 to 31 and specifies the display priority. Larger numbers will be displayed over smaller numbers. <pattern number> defines the pattern to be displayed. It can vary from 0 to 255 for 8x8 sprites and from 0 to 63 for 16x16 sprites. If not specified, it will be the same as <sprite plan>.

READ (statement, 1)

Format: READ <variable name> [,<variable name> ...]

Function: Reads data from the DATA command and stores it in <variable name>'s.

- REM** (statement, 1)
 Format: REM <comments>
 Function: Put comments (remarks) in the program.
- RENUM** (command, 1)
 Format: RENUM [<new line number> [,<old line number>
 [,<increment>]]]
 Function: Renumber program lines.
- RESTORE** (declaration, 1)
 Format: RESTORE [<line number>]
 Function: Specifies the initial DATA line number to be read by READ.
- RESUME** (statement, 1)
 Format: RESUME {[0] | NEXT | <line number>}
 Function: Ends error handling routine.
 0 – Execution returns to the same command where the error occurred.
 NEXT – Execution continues on the command following the one from which the error occurred.
 <line number> – Execution will continue on the specified line.
- RETURN** (statement, 1)
 Format: RETURN [<line number>]
 Function: Returns from a subroutine.
- RIGHT\$** (function, 1)
 Format: X\$ = RIGHT\$ (<expr\$>, <exprN>)
 Function: Returns the <exprN> right <expr\$> characters in X\$.
- RND** (function, 1)
 Format: X = RND [(<exprN>)]
 Function: Returns in X a random number between 0 and 1. It is advisable to use “-TIME” in <exprN> to obtain better randomness.
- RSET** (declaration, D)
 Format: RSET <string variable> = <expr\$>
 Function: Stores the content of <expr\$> on the right of the string variable defined by the FIELD declaration.

RUN (command, 1-D)

Format: RUN [{<line number> | "filename"]

Function: Run a BASIC program in memory or load a program from disk and execute it. If <line number> is specified, execution will start on that line.

SAVE (command, 1-D)

Format: SAVE "<filename>" [,A]

Function: Saves the BASIC program to disk or tape. If "A" is specified, save in ASCII form and not in tokenized form.

SCREEN (statement, 1-2-3)

Format: SCREEN <screen mode> [,<sprite size> [,<key click> [,<cassette rate> [,<printer type> [,<interlace>]]]]]

Function: Selects screen mode and other values.

<screen mode> – 0 to 12, depending on the MSX version.

“Screen 9” only works on Korean computers or those loaded with Hangul BASIC.

<sprite size> – 0 → 8x8 sprites (default)

1 → 8x8 sprites expanded to 16x16

2 → 16x16 sprites

3 → 16x16 sprites enlarged to 32x32

<click keys> – 0 → turn off “click”

1 → turn on “click” (default)

<cassette rate> – 1 → write at 1200 baud (default)

2 → write at 2400 baud

<printer type> – 0 → MSX printer (default)

1 → non-MSX printer

<interlace> – 0 → normal (default)

1 → interlaced (Screen 0 standard)

2 → normal (alternate display)

3 → interlaced (alternate display)

SET ADJUST (statement, 2)

Format: SET ADJUST (<X coordinate>, <Y coordinate>)

Function: Changes the location of the screen. X and Y can vary from -7 to 8.

SET BEEP (declaration, 2)

Format: SET BEEP <timbre>, <volume>

Function: Selects the beep type and volume. <timbre> can vary from 1 to 4 and <volume> from 0 to 15.

SET DATE (declaration, 2)

Format: SET DATE <expr\$> [,A]

Function: Changes the date of the clock. [,A] changes the alarm date. <expr\$> must contain a valid date specification.

SET HAN (statement, Hangul-BASIC 2nd version)

Format: SET HAN [<size>], [<screen>], [<printer>]

Function: Defines how the Hangul characters will be displayed in Screen 0 to 8 and on the printer.

<size> - 0 → 8x8 point characters

1 → 8x16 point characters

<screen> - 0 → ungrouped characters

1 → characters grouped in blocks

<printer> - 0 → ungrouped characters

1 → characters grouped in blocks

SET PAGE (declaration, 2)

Format: SET PAGE <displayed page>, <active page>

Function: Select video pages. <displayed page> is the page that is being displayed on the screen and <active page> is the page on which the commands will be executed.

SET PASSWORD (declaration, 2)

Format: SET PASSWORD <expr\$>

Function: Activates the password. <expr\$> must contain a password with a maximum of 6 characters.

SET PROMPT (declaration, 2)

Format: SET PROMPT <expr\$>

Function: Activates a new prompt for BASIC. <expr\$> must contain the new prompt with a maximum of 6 characters.

SET SYSTEM (statement, Daewoo CPC300 / 400 / 400S)

Format: SET SYSTEM (<mode>) [CPC 300]

Function: Defines how the computer boots.

<mode> – 0 → starts the additional software in ROM
 1 → starts BASIC

Format: SET SYSTEM [<dummy>], [<screen>], [<printer>]
[CPC 400 / 400S]

Function: Defines the initial parameters for the Hangul system.

<dummy> – Null action for any specified value
 <screen> – 0 → ungrouped characters
 1 → characters grouped in blocks
 <printer> – 0 → ungrouped characters
 1 → characters grouped in blocks

SET SCREEN (statement, 2)

Format: SET SCREEN

Function: Writes the data defined in the SCREEN statement to the SRAM of the clock.

SET TIME (statement, 2)

Format: SET TIME <expr\$> [,A]

Function: Changes the clock time. [,A] changes the alarm time.
 <expr\$> must contain a valid time specification.

SET TITLE (declaration, 2)

Format: SET TITLE <expr\$> [,<title color>]

Function: Defines the title and color of the home screen. <expr\$>
 must contain the title with a maximum of 6 characters.
 <title color> can vary from 1 to 4

SET VIDEO (declaration, 2, optional)

Format: SET VIDEO [<mode> [,<Ym> [,<CB> [,<sync> [,<audio>
[,<video output> [,<AV control>]]]]]]]]

Function: Defines superimposition and other modes.

<mode> can range from 0 to 3:
 0 – Internal synchronization (default value)
 1 – Digitization (external synchronization)
 2 – Superimpose (external synchronization)
 3 – External video (external synchronization)

<Ym> (external luminance): 0 = normal; 1 = halftone
 <CB> (color bus): 0 = Input; 1 = Output
 <sync> (synchronization mode): 0 = Internal; 1 = external
 <audio> – Select the audio source:
 0 – Computer only
 1 – Computer + external right channel
 2 – Computer + external left channel
 3 – Computer + external right and left channels
 <video out> – Select the video out mode:
 0 – RGB; 1 – Composite video
 <AV control> – Selects the RGB output for audio and video.
 0 – Not selected; 1 – Selected.

SGN (function, 1)

Format: X = SGN (<exprN>)

Function: Returns the result of the <exprN> sign in X.

–1 → Negative expression

0 → The results of the expression is zero

1 → Positive expression

SIN (function, 1)

Format: X = SIN (<exprN>)

Function: Returns in X the sine value of <exprN> (exprN must be expressed in radians).

SOUND (statement, 1)

Format: SOUND <register number>, <data>

Function: Writes the value of <data> to the PSG register. <register number> can range from 0 to 13 and <data> from 0 to 255.

SPACE\$ (function, 1)

Format: X\$ = SPACE\$ (<exprN>)

Function: Returns a string with <exprN> spaces in X\$.

SPC (function, 1)

Format: PRINT SPC (<exprN>)

Function: Prints <exprN> spaces.

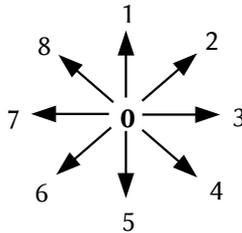
SPRITE (statement, 1)
 Format: `SPRITE {ON | OFF | STOP}`
 Function: Enables, disables or suspends interruption due to sprite collision.

SPRITE\$ (statement or system variable, 1)
 Format: `SPRITE$ (<sprite number>) = <expr$>`
`X$ = SPRITE$ (<sprite$>)`
 Function: Sets or reads the sprites pattern.

SQR (function, 1)
 Format: `X = SQR (<exprN>)`
 Function: Returns in X the square root value of <exprN>.

STICK (function, 1)
 Format: `X = STICK (<joystick port number>)`
 Function: Examines the direction of the joystick and loads the result in X.
 <joystick port number> - 0 → Keyboard
 1 → port #1
 2 → port #2

The "X" value is illustrated below, according direction:



STOP (statement, 1)
 Format: `STOP`
 Function: It paralyzes the execution of a program.
 Format: `STOP {ON | OFF | STOP}`
 Function: Enables, disables or supposes interruption by pressing the CTRL+STOP keys.

STRIG (function / declaration, 1)
 Format: `X = STRIG (<joystick port number>)`

Function: Examines the state of the trigger buttons and returns the result in X. The value will be -1 if it is being pressed or 0 otherwise.

<joystick port number> can be:

0 = Space bar

1 = joystick on port 1, button A

2 = joystick on port 2, button A

3 = joystick on port 1, button B

4 = joystick on port 2, button B

Format: STRIG (<joystick port number>) {ON | OFF | STOP}

Function: Enables, disables or suspend interruption by pressing the trigger buttons.

STR\$ (function, 1)

Format: X\$ = STR\$ (<exprN>)

Function: Converts the value of <exprN> to a decimal string and returns the value obtained in X\$.

STRING\$ (statement, 1)

Format: X\$ = STRING\$ (<exprN1>, {<expr\$> | <exprN2>})

Function: Returns in X\$ a string of length <exprN1>, where all characters are equal, formed by the first character of <expr\$> or by the character whose ASCII code is represented by <exprN2>.

SWAP (declaration, 1)

Format: SWAP <variable name>, <variable name>

Function: Exchanges the content of two variables. The variables must be of the same type.

TAB (function, 1)

Format: PRINT TAB (<exprN>)

Function: Produces <exprN> spaces for the PRINT instructions.

TAN (function, 1)

Format: X = TAN (<exprN>)

Function: Returns in X the tangent value of <exprN> (exprN must be expressed in radians).

- TIME** (system variable, 1)
 Format: X = TIME
 Function: Returns the value of TIME (it is an integer variable that is continuously incremented 60 times per second in NTSC machines and 50 times in PAL machines).
 Format: TIME = <exprN>
 Function: Assigns the value of <exprN> to the TIME variable. It must be an integer value.
- TROFF** (command, 1)
 Format: TROFF
 Function: Turn off the line tracking of the running program.
- TRON** (command, 1)
 Format: TRON
 Function: Turn on the line tracking of the running program.
- USR** (function, 1)
 Format: X – USR [<number>] (<argument>)
 Function: Executes an assembly routine. <number> can be a value from 0 to 9.
- VAL** (function, 1)
 Format: X = VAL (<expr\$>)
 Function: Converts <expr\$> to a numeric value and stores it in X.
- VARPTR** (function, 1-D)
 Format: X = VARPTR (<variable name> | #<file number>)
 Function: Returns in X the address where the <variable> is stored or the FCB address of <file number>
- VDP** (system variable, 1-2-3)
 Format: X = VDP (<register number>)
 VDP (<register number>) = <data>
 Function: Read or write data in a VDP register. <data> must be a numeric value between 0 and 255.
- VPEEK** (function, 1-2)
 Format: X = VPEEK (<address>)
 Function: Returns in X the content of the VRAM byte specified by <address>.

VPOKE (statement, 1-2)

Format: VPOKE <address>, <data>

Function: Writes a data byte in the <address> of the VRAM. <data> must be a numeric value between 0 and 255.

WAIT (statement, 1)

Format: WAIT <port number>, <exprN1> [,<exprN2>]

Function: Stops the execution of the program until the specified port value matches the value of <exprN1> or <exprN2>.

WIDTH (declaration, 1-2)

Format: WIDTH <number>

Function: Specifies the number of characters per line in text modes (Screen 0 and 1).

XOR (logical operator, 1)

Format: <exprA1> XOR <exprA2>

Function: Performs logical XOR operation between <exprA1> and <exprA2>.

0 xor 0 → 0	1 xor 0 → 1
0 xor 1 → 1	1 xor 1 → 0

3.3 – EXTENDED COMMANDS

The CALL command allows the MSX-BASIC instructions to be expanded indefinitely, allowing access to new devices in cartridges or new features. Below is described a majority of the instructions available through the CALL command.

DM-System2 BASIC

(Installable extension for BASIC)

BGMOFF	BLOCK	COS	FILES
BGMON	CALL	DMM	FSIZE
BGMTMP	CELLO	DMMINI	HELP
BGMTRS	CHGCPU	DMMOFF	HMMM
BGMVOL	CHGDRV	DMMON	HMMV
BGMWAIT	CHGPLT	EXT	INTWAIT
BINLOAD	COLOR=	EXTCOPY	KBOLD

KCOLOR	PACSAVE	SEOFF	UPPER
KINIT	PAUSE	SEON	VCOPY
KPRINT	PCMON	SETBIN	VDPWAIT
KPUT	PEEK	SETPLT	VMOFF
KSIZE	PEEKS	SETSE	VMON
LMMM	PEEKW	SIN	VMWAIT
LMMV	POKE	STATUS	WAIT
LOAD	POKES	SYSOFF	XY
MALLOC	POKEW	SYSON	YMMM
PACLOAD	SAVE	SYSTEM	

FM-X BASIC

(Available with the Fujitsu MB22450 interface when inserted into the FM-X expansion slot)

CALL MON CALL PRINTERSETUP

FormatMaster-BASIC

(Available with an installable extension that comes on the Future Magazine Extra disc. FORMAT.BIN – FORMAT.MEM – FORMAT.TXT files)

CALL FORMAT

GR8NET BASIC

(Available with the installation of the GR8NET cartridge)

DSK	FLUPDATE	NETDUMP	NETGETMAP
DSKCFG	NET	NETEXPRT	NETGETMASK
DSKFMT	NETBITOV	NETFIX	NETGETMD
DSKGETIMG	NETBLOAD	NETFKOPLLR	NETGETMEM
DSKLDIMG	NETBROWSE	NETFWUPDATE	NETGETMIX
DSKHELP	NETBTOV	NETGETCLK	NETGETMMV
DSKLDIMG	NETCDTOF	NETGETCLOUD	NETGETNAME
DSKSETIMG	NETCFG	NETGETDA	NETGETNTP
DSKSVIMG	NETCODE	NETGETDNS	NETGETOPL
DSKSTATE	NETDHCP	NETGETGW	NETGETPATH
FLINFO	NETDIAG	NETGETHOST	NETGETPORT
FLLIST	NETDNS	NETGETIP	NETGETPSG

NETGETQSTR	NETRESST	NETSETMEM	NETSTAT
NETGETTSHN	NETSAVE	NETSETMIX	NETSYSINFO
NETGW	NETSDCRD	NETSETMMV	NETRCHKS
NETHELP	NETSETCLK	NETSETNAME	NETTELNET
NETIMPRT	NETSETCLOUD	NETSETNTP	NETTERM
NETIP	NETSETDA	NETSETOPL	NETTGTMAP
NETLDBUF	NETSETDM	NETSETPATH	NETTSYNC
NETLDRAM	NETSETDNS	NETSETPORT	NETVARBRSTR
NETMASK	NETSETGW	NETSETPSG	NETVARBSIZE
NETNTP	NETSETHOST	NETSETQSTR	NETVARRWTH
NETPLAYBUF	NETSETIP	NETSETTSHN	NETVARUDTO
NETPLAYVID	NETSETMAP	NETSNDDTG	NETVER
NETPLAYWAV	NETSETMASK	NETSNDVOL	

Hangul-BASIC

(Disponível em micros coreanos. Veja também PUT HAN, SET HAN e SET SYSTEM)

CLS	HELP	KLEN	REBOOT
ENG	KCHR	KMID	RTCINI
FONT	KCODE	KTYPE	VER
HANOFF	KEXT	MODE9	
HANON	KINSTR	PALETTE	

Hitachi-BASIC

(Disponível em alguns micros Hitachi)

- A versão 1 está disponível no modelo MB-H1 (MSX1)
- A versão 2 está disponível no modelo MB-H2 (MSX1)
- A versão 3 está disponível no modelo MB-H3 (MSX2)

AUTOMUTE	CMT	MON	REW
BLSCAN	CSCAN	MUTE	SCOPY
CCOPY	CSCOPY	NSCAN	STDBY
CDCOPY	FF	PAUSE	STOP
CFILES	HCOPY	PLAY	TABOFF
CHCOPY	IDTRACE	REC	TABON

Kanji-BASIC

(Disponível em micros japoneses MSX2+ ou superior. Veja também PUT KANJI)

AKCNV	KACNV	KLEN	PALETTE
ANK	KANJI	KMID	SJIS
CLS	KEXT	KNJ	
JIS	KINSTR	KTYPE	

Mega Assembler

(Disponível com a instalação do cartucho Mega-Assembler)

ASM	START
-----	-------

MSX-Aid BASIC

(Disponível com a instalação do cartucho MSX-AID)

CFILES	MESSAGE	TRACE ON
FIND	MON	VARLIST
HELP	TRACE OFF	XREF

MSX-Audio BASIC

(Disponível com a instalação de cartuchos com o MSX-Audio BIOS)

APEEK	COPY PCM	MK VOICE	RECMOD
APOKE	INMK	MK VOL	REC PCM
APPEND MK	KEY OFF	PCM FREQ	SAVE PCM
AUDIO	KEY ON	PCM VOL	SET PCM
AUDREG	LOAD PCM	PITCH	STOPM
BGM	MK PCM	PLAY	TEMPER
CONT MK	MK STAT	PLAY MK	TRANPOSE
CONVA	MK TEMPO	PLAY PCM	VOICE
CONVP	MK VEL	REC MK	VOICE COPY

MSX-Music BASIC

(Disponível através de cartuchos ou internamente)

AUDREG	MUSIC	STOPM	VOICE
BGM	PITCH	TEMPER	VOICE COPY
MDR (*)	PLAY	TRANPOSE	

(*) Disponível apenas no MSX turbo R FS-A1GT

Network-BASIC

(Extensão BASIC disponível apenas nos computadores MSX2 Yamaha YIS-503IIR e YIS-805/128R2, usados em escolas da União Soviética)

BRECEIVE	NETEND	PON	SNDRUN
BSEND	NETINIT	RCVMAIL	STOP
CHECK	OFFLINE	RECEIVE	TALK
DISCOM	ONLINE	RUN	WHO
ENACOM	PEEK	SEND	
HELP	POFF	SNDCMD	
MESSAGE	POKE	SNDMAIL	

NewModem-BASIC

(Disponível para os modems Philips NMS 1255 e Micro Technology MT-Telcom II)

ANSWER	FILEOUT	LOGFILE	RECFILE
BREAK	GET	LS	RTSOFF
CARRIER	INIMDM	MC	RTSON
CHKMDM	INITMD	MRING	SENDFILE
CONNECT	LINEOFF	MSTART	SPEAKEROFF
DTROFF	LINEON	MSTOP	SPEAKERON
DTRON	LB	OFFHOOK	TDIAL
ECHOOFF	LEN	ONHOOK	TERMINAL
ECHOOON	LO	PDIAL	

Nextor-BASIC

(Disponível através de cartuchos IDE com Nextor)

CURDRV	DRVINFO	MAPDRV	NEXTOR
DRIVERS	LOCKDRV	MAPDRV L	USR

Pioneer-BASIC (P-BASIC)

(Disponível nos micros da Pioneer PX-7, PX-V7 e PX-V60)

BLIND	FRAME	MUTE	SEARCH
CHAPTER	FRAME OFF	PAN	SYMBOL
CHAPTER OFF	IMPOSE	REMOTE	VIDEO
DEF UNIV	LCOPY	SCLOAD	
EXTV	LD	SCSAVE	

Printer-BASIC

(Disponível nos micros da Toshiba HX20 até HX23F e HX31 até HX34)

LCOPY	SPOLOFF	SPOLON
-------	---------	--------

QuickDisk BASIC

(Disponível nos micros Daewoo (versão 1.0) e Casio, Philips e Sanyo (versão 1.1))

BLOAD	LOAD	QDFORMAT	RUN
BSAVE	MERGE	QDKEY	SAVE
CASQD	QDFILES	QDKILL	

RMSX BASIC

(Extensão que vem com o emulador RMSX para o MSX Turbo R)

?	CHCAS	FILES	LICENSE
CASAUTOREW	CHDIR	HELP	MUTE
CASREW	CHDSK	HZ	PALETTE
CASRUN	EXIT	IOSOUND	RESET

RookieDrive BASIC

(Disponível com a instalação do cartucho RookieDrive)

CREATEDISK	HELP	REBOOT	USBRESET
EJECT	INSERTDISK	USBCD	
FNAME	LOADROM	USBERROR	
FORMAT	MOUNT	USBFILES	

SFG-BASIC

(Disponível com a instalação do cartucho Yamaha FM Music Macro)

CANCEL	PATTERN	STOP
CLDVOICE	PHRASE	SYNCOUT
ERASE	PLAY	TEMPO
EVENT ON/OFF/STOP	RCANCEL	TIMER
INIT	REPORT	TRACK
INMKEY	RHYTHM	TRANPOSE
INST	RSTOP	TSTOP
LENGTH	SELPATTERN	TUNE
LFO	SELVOICE	USERHYTHM
LOOK	SOUND	VLIST
MODINST	STANDBY	WAIT
ON EVENT...GOSUB	START	

StudioFM BASIC

(Disponível com a instalação do StudioFM para tocar músicas .MUS geradas pelo FAC Soundtracker. Usar BLOAD"SFMDRV1.BIN",R)

MFADE	MLOAD	MPLAY	MSTOP
-------	-------	-------	-------

SVI-Modem BASIC

(Disponível apenas no modem Spectravideo SVI-737)

COMBREAK	COMOFF	COMTERM	TDIAL
COMDTR	COMON	OFFLINE	
COM...GOSUB	COMSTAT	ONLINE	
COMINI	COMSTOP	PDIAL	

X-BASIC

(Disponível com a instalação do compilador em tempo real X-BASIC)

'#C	CALL BC	CALL TURBO ON
'#I	CALL RUN	CALL TURBO OFF
'#N		

3.3.1 – Commands Description

? (statement, RMSX-BASIC)

Format: CALL ?

Function: Displays help for RMSX-BASIC. It is equivalent to the CALL HELP command.

ADJUST (command, Daewoo)

Format: CALL ADJUST

Function: Enables the internal lightpen interface. Available only for MSX2 manufactured by Daewoo.

AKCNV (statement, Kanji-BASIC)

Format: CALL AKCNV (<variable>, "<character string>")

Function: Converts single-byte characters to 2-byte Kanji. <string variable> receives the converted characters. <character string> are the ASCII characters to be converted.

ANK (statement, Kanji-BASIC)

Format: CALL ANK

Function: Exits Kanji mode (the memory used by the Kanji driver is not released).

ANSWER (function, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL ANSWER (<speed>)

Function: Detects the speed of a connection. This instruction works only in BBS programs. The detected speeds are:

Value	Standard	Recep. speed	Transm. speed
1	V21	300 baud	300 baud
2	V23	1200 baud	75 baud
3	V23	75 baud	1200 baud

APEEK (function, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL APEEK (<address>, X)

Function: Returns in X the value of the byte corresponding to the memory address of MSX-Audio. The address can range from 0000H to 7FFFH.

APOKE (statement, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL APOKE (<address>, <data>)

Function: Writes a byte of data to the <address> of the audio memory. <data> must be a numeric value between 0 and 255. The address can range from 0000H to 7FFFH.

APPEND MK (statement, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL APPEND MK (<matrix name>)

CALL APPEND MK (<start address>, <end address>)

CALL APPEND MK (A), where the sequence A must be previously declared in the DIM and REC MK instructions.

Function: Adds an additional recording played on the musical keyboard.

ASM (command, Mega Assembler)

Format: CALL ASM

Function: Calls the Mega Assembler without initializing the variables. To call the MA by initializing the variables, use CALL START.

AUDIO (statement, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL AUDIO (<mode>, <channels with instruments>, <channels for string 1>, <channels for string 2>,, <channels for string 9>)

<mode> defines the use of MSX-Audio. The default is 1.

Mode	FM melody	PCM	FM rhythm	Type
0	9 voices			Normal
1	6 voices		3 voices	Normal
2	9 voices	1 voice		Normal
3	6 voices	1 voice	3 voices	Normal
4	9 voices			CSM
5	6 voices		3 voices	CSM
6	9 voices	1 voice		CSM
7	6 voices	1 voice	3 voices	CSM

In CSM mode, the control of all FM sounds (melody and rhythm) is invalid. CSM stands for Composite Sinusoidal Modeling. Using all operators in parallel, this mode can be used to synthesize speech.

<channels with instruments> defines how many channels will be assigned to an instrument.

<channels for string n> defines how many channels will be used for each string related to the FM melody in the PLAY instruction.

AUDREG (declaration, MSX-Music and MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL AUDREG <register>, <data> [, <channel>]

Function: Writes the value of <data> in the OPLL or MSX-Audio register. <channel> specifies the channel to be used (MSX-Audio only). It can be 0 or 1, the default is 0.

Note: Previous use of CALL MUSIC or CALL AUDIO is required.

AUTOMUTE (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2)

Format: CALL AUTOMUTE

Function: Adds a 4 second pause before activating the internal data reader of some Hitachi computers.

- BGM** (declaration, MSX-Music and MSX-Audio)
 Format: CALL BGM (n)
 Function: Arrow executing commands while the music is being played. <n> can be 0 or 1, as below:
 0 – No commands can be executed during the music.
 1 – Commands can be executed during music (default).
- BGMOFF** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL BGMOFF (<fade>)
 Function: Mutes the music played by OPLL / MSX Music. Requires BGM driver.
 <fade> – 1 → without fade (immediate stop)
 2 → with fade out
- BGMON** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL BGMON (<start address> [,<num of repetitions>])
 Function: Plays music using the BGM driver. Requires BGM driver.
 <start address> is a pointer to the BGM data in the Main RAM.
 <repetition number> is the number of times the song will be played. "0" indicates infinite repetitions.
- BGMTMP** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL BGMTMP (<time>)
 Function: Adjusts the "tempo" of the song. Requires BGM driver.
 <time> is a value between 0 and 255 representing the percentage. The default value is 100.
- BGMTRS** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL BGMTRS (<transpose>)
 Function: Adjusts the key of the music. Requires BGM driver.
 <transpose> is a one-byte value between -128 and +127.
 The default value is 0.
- BGMVOL** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL BGMVOL ([<Master>] [,<OPLL>] [,<PSG>] [,<SCC>])
 Function: Adjusts the volume of the various sound generators individually. It can vary from 0 to 15 for each one and the default value for all is 15. Requires BGM driver.

BGMWAIT (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

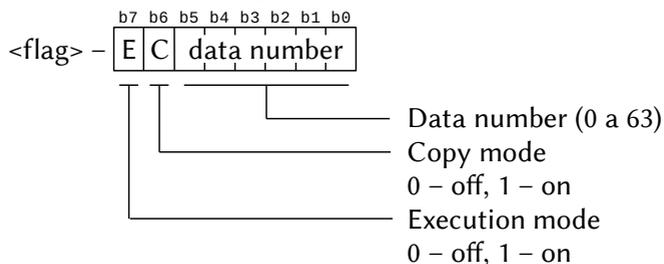
Format: CALL BGMWAIT

Function: Pause or restart the BGM. Requires BGM driver.

BINLOAD (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL BINLOAD (<flag> [,<flag 2>] [,<destination address>] [,<size>])

Function: Transfers concatenated data from the binary table in VRAM to RAM, being able to execute it.



<flag 2> – Value of a byte that replaces the same flag in the binary table. By default, the table flag is used.

<destination address> – 2-byte value that specifies the initial destination address for the data.

<size> – 2-byte value that specifies the number of bytes to be transferred.

Obs. – <destination address> and <size> must be omitted when the data format has the same format as the COPY instruction (the first byte is the X coordinate and the second is the Y coordinate).

BLIND (statement, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL BLIND ([<string>], [S | L])

Function: Delete or re-enable the display of the screen. Works only on Screen 2.

<string> can range from 0 to 9 and specifies the sequence in which the screen will be cleared or enabled.

S – Saves the screen while it is being erased

L – Loads the screen previously saved by “S”.

BLOAD (command, QuickDisk BASIC)

Format: CALL BLOAD ("[QD [n]:]"<filename>" {[,R] | [,S]} [, offset])

Function: Load the binary code from the QuickDisk device.

QD [n] specifies the QuickDisk device to be used. It can range from 0 to 7, the default being 0.

<filename> must be in the format 8.3 characters.

“, R” automatically executes the binary code of the loaded file

“, S” uploads the content to VRAM.

<displacement> indicates that the program will be loaded at the start address + offset. This parameter also affects the execution address.

BLOCK (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL BLOCK ([@]<source address>, [@]<destination address>, <size>)

Function: Copy data between Main RAM and VRAM. If the <address> is preceded by “@”, VRAM will be specified. To avoid error messages, decimal numbers should be used for addresses greater than FFFFH (65 535).

BLSCAN (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2)

Format: CALL BLSCAN

Function: Makes the internal data reader of the Hitachi micro MB-H2 searches for files recorded with BSAVE and that can be loaded with BLOAD.

BREAK (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL BREAK

Function: Assign the interrupt call to the CODE key. This will allow you to interrupt the RING and DIAL routines just by pressing the CODE key.

BRECEIVE (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL BRECEIVE ([[<unit name>:]<filename>] [,<student number>] [,<start address>] [,<end address>] [,S])

CANCEL (declaration, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL CANCEL (<instrument number>)

Function: Cancels an instrument. <instrument number> can vary from 1 to 4. Short version: `_CANC`.

CARRIER (statement, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL CARRIER (: GOSUB <line number>)

Function: Specifies the GOSUB routine to be performed when the operator is absent for an unknown reason or because the caller has just hung up. This instruction is only useful in BBS programs.

CASAUTOREW (command, RMSX-BASIC)

Format: CALL CASAUTOREW [ON] | [OFF]

Function: Enables or disables the automatic rewinding of a tape image (CAS file) back to the beginning. Without a parameter, this instruction switches between the two options.

ON – Enables automatic rewinding of the tape image.

OFF – Disables automatic rewinding

CASQD (command, QuickDisk BASIC)

Format: CALL CASQD [("[CAS:]" <filename1> ") [, "[QD [n]:"
[" <filename2> "]")]

Function: Transfer the specified file from cassette to QuickDisk.

Without parameters, this command transfers the tape file to the standard QuickDisk device with the same name.

QD [n] specifies the QuickDisk device to be used. It can range from 0 to 7, the default being 0.

<filename1> is the name of the file to be copied from the tape.

<filename2> is the name of the file to be written to the Quick Disk. The format is limited to 6 characters with no extension. If <filename2> is omitted, <filename1> is repeated.

CASREW (command, RMSX-BASIC)

Format: CALL CASREW

Function: Manually rewind a tape image (CAS file) back to the beginning.

- CASRUN** (command, RMSX-BASIC)
 Format: CALL CASRUN [("[<drive letter>:] [\<path> \] <filename.CAS>"])]
 Function: Load and execute files contained in the specified tape image (CAS file). If <filename.CAS> is omitted, the first file in the image inserted with CALL CHCAS will be executed. <Drive letter>: can go from A: to H:.
- CCOPY** (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 3)
 Format: CALL CCOPY
 Function: Sends to the printer a darker copy of a graphic screen in Screens 2, 4 or 5 simulating shades of gray.
- CDCOPY** (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 3)
 Format: CALL CDCOPY
 Function: Sends to the printer a copy of a graphical screen in Screens 2, 4 or 5 using only white and black dots.
- CELLO** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL CELLO (<X0>, <Y0>) – [STEP] (<X1>, <Y1>) [,<n0>] [,<n1>] [,<n2>]
 Function: Changes the colors of a specified rectangular area of the screen. Does not work on Screens 0 to 4.
 Screens 5, 6, 7: Replaces one color with another
 Screen 8: Modify colors according to RGB
 Screen 10, 11, 12: Modify the Y values of the colors
 <X0>, <Y0> coords of the starting corner of the rectangle
 <X1>, <Y1> coordinates of the final corner of the rectangle
 <n0> color to replace in Screens 5 to 7 (0~15);
 value to add to the red in Scr 8 (-7~+ 7);
 value to add Y to Scr 10 to 12 (-31~+ 31).
 <n1> new color for Screens 5 to 7 (0~15);
 value to add to green on Screen 8 (-7~+ 7).
 <n2> value to add to the blue on Screen 8 (-7~+ 7).
- CFILES** (command, Hitachi-BASIC, MSX Aid BASIC)
 Format: CALL CFILES [Hitachi-BASIC 2]
 Function: Lists the contents of the tape inserted in the internal data reader of some Hitachi computers. It is recommended to rewind the tape with the CALL REW command first.

Format: CALL CFILES [MSX Aid BASIC]

Function: Lists the contents of the tape inserted in the data reader connected to the MSX. The list specifies whether a file is binary (OBJ), BASIC (BAS) or ASCII (ASC). It also returns the size of the binary files. It is recommended to rewind the tape first.

CHAPTER (statement, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL CHAPTER (<chapter num>, GOSUB <line num>)
CALL CHAPTER OFF

Function: Specifies the subroutine line number that will be executed when the chapter <chapter number> is reached. <chapter number> should be in the range between 50 and 54,000. If "OFF" is specified, cancel the line number assignment. This command is specific for use with the Pioneer Laser Vision Player LD-700 and cannot be used in conjunction with the FRAME command.

CHCAS (control, RMSX-BASIC)

Format: CALL CHCAS ("[<drive letter>:] [\<path>]\<filename.CAS>")

Function: Assembles (inserts) the specified tape image (CAS file) in the virtual cassette player of the MSX1 or MSX2 computer emulated on a Turbo R with the rMSX emulator.
<drive letter>: can range from A: to H :

CHCOPY (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 3)

Format: CALL CHCOPY

Function: Sends to the printer a lighter copy of a graphic screen in Screens 2, 4 or 5 simulating shades of gray.

CHDIR (declaration, Disk-BASIC 2nd version, RMSX-BASIC)

Format: CALL CHDIR ([<drive letter>:] [\<path>) [Disk-BASIC 2]

Function: Change subdirectory. The argument can also be just "." or "" to return directories.

Format: CALL CHDIR ([<drive letter>:] [\<path>) [RMSX-BASIC]

Function: Change the current working directory of an actual disk on an MSX Turbo R drive, used as a host for an MSX1/MSX2 computer emulated on this machine with the rMSX emulator. The argument can also be just "." or "" to return directories.

CHDRV (command, Disk-BASIC 2nd version)

Format: CALL CHDRV (<drive letter> :)

Function: Change the drive according to "<drive letter>:". If Nextor is installed, the argument can be replaced with a number (1 = A:, 2 = B:, etc.); otherwise, you must indicate the drive letter (A: up to H:).

CHKDSK (command, RMSX-BASIC)

Format: CALL CHKDSK (see parameters below)

Function: Mount (insert) the specified disk image (DSK file) on the virtual disk drive of the MSX1 / MSX2 computer emulated on a Turbo R with the rMSX emulator and / or activate a specified disk number (the Turbo disk drive R can also be used with a real disc).

→ To mount the disk image to the current disk number (if the parameter is not provided or is empty, the actual disk unit will be used)

```
CALL CHDSK ["[<drive letter>:] [\<path>\]
                                     <filename.DSK> ") ]
```

→ To mount the disk image on the specified disk number (without activation)

```
CALL CHDSK ("[<drive letter>:] [\<path>\]
                                     <filename.DSK> "), <disk number>
```

→ To activate the specified disc number and eventually mount the disc image on it

```
CALL CHDSK (<drive letter>), ["[<device name>:]
                               [\<path>\]<filename.DSK>") ]
```

CHECK (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL CHECK ([<connection variable>] [,<communication variable>])

Function: Checks which students are connected to the network and / or which students are able to communicate with others. This instruction is only available to the teacher. <connection variable> contains the binary representation of connected / unconnected students. <communication variable> contains the binary representation of students with extended communication enabled or disabled. Both are 16-bit integer variables, where bit 0 is associated with

student 1, bit 1 is associated with student 2 and so on, up to bit 14. "0" means connected or active student and "1" means disconnected or inactive student.

CHGCPU (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL CHGCPU ([<mode>] [,<variable>])

Function: Switch or return CPU mode on MSX turbo R.

<mode> – Mode to be applied

<variable> – Value before being changed to <mode>

The two parameters have the following format:

CHGDRV (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL CHGDRV ([<drive number>] [,<variable>])

Function: Change or return the current drive unit.

<drive number> – Must be a number between 1 and 8,
where 1 = A ;, 2 = B ;, etc.

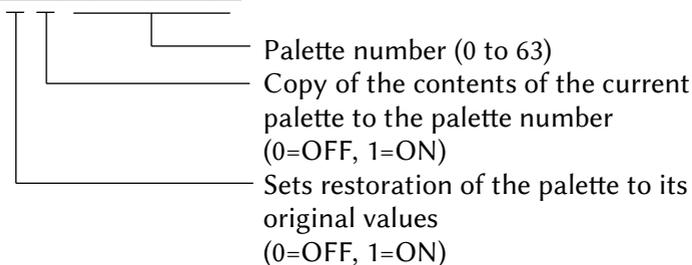
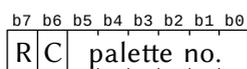
<variable> – Numeric variable that will receive the file size.

CHGPLT (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL CHGPLT (<number>)

Function: Change the colors of the palette. The palette data must be previously placed in RAM.

<number> is a one-byte value with the following format:



CKHMDM (function, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL CKHMDM (<numeric variable>)

Function: Checks whether the modem is present. If <numeric variable> is 0, the modem has been detected, otherwise there is no modem.

COMINI (command, Modem BASIC, SVI Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL COMINI ([<data>] [,<reception speed>]
[,<transmission speed>] [,<timeout>])

Function: Initializes the modem with the <data> provided.

<data> is an alphanumeric string of up to 10 characters, the default of which, if omitted is "0: 8N1XHNNN". The starting number is the RS232C port followed by ":" and the following characters represent:

3rd - word size (5 to 8) or "del"

4th - parity (E-even, O-odd, I-ignore, N-without parity) or "ins"

5th - size. stop bit: 1- 1 bit, 2- 1.5 bits, 3- 2 bits

6th - XON / XOFF: X- xon, N- xoff

7th - H- handshaking, N- without handshaking

8th - LF: A- inserts LF, N- does not insert LF

9th - LF: A- delete LF, N- do not delete LF

10th - Shift in / out: S- enable, N- disabled

<reception speed> can vary from 50 to 1200. Valid values are: 50, 75, 110, 300, 600, 1200, 1800, 2000, 2400, 3600, 4800, 7200, 9600, 19200. If omitted, it will assume 1200.

<transmission speed> can vary from 50 to 1200. If omitted, it assumes the same as <speed. reception>.

<timeout> is specified in seconds and can range from 0 to 255. If omitted, it will assume 0.

COMOFF (remote, BASIC Modem, SVI BASIC Modem)

Format: CALL COMOFF ([<"port number:">])

Function: Disables the interruption coming from the RS232-C port.

COMON (command, Modem BASIC, SVI Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL COMON ([<"port number:">])

Function: Enables the interruption coming from the RS232-C port.

COMSTAT (function, Modem BASIC, SVI Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL COMSTAT ([<"port number:">],<integer variable>)

Function: Returns the status of the RS232-C port.

<"Port number:"> should vary and 0: to 4 :. If omitted, it will be 0 :.

<integer variable> returns the following values:

- bit 15: Receive buffer overflow error
0- no error, 1- error occurred
- bit 14: Timeout error
0- no error, 1- error occurred
- bit 13: Framing error (binary bit "0" was received instead of the stop bit.)
0- no error, 1- error occurred
- bit 12: Saturation error (data received before the receive buffer is empty)
0- no error, 1- error occurred
- bit 11: Parity error
0- no error, 1- error occurred
- bit 10: Pressing [CTRL] + [STOP]
0- not pressed, 1- pressed
- bit 9: Reserved
- bit 8: Reserved
- bit 7: CS signal status (CTS)
0- off, 1- on
- bit 6: Timer/counter set for timeout error detection
0- not defined, 1-defined
- bit 5: Reserved
- bit 4: Reserved
- bit 3: DR signal status (DSR)
0- off, 1- on
- bit 2: Stop sequence detected while COMSTAT is executed
0- not detected, 1- detected
- bit 1: Reserved
- bit 0: CD signal status
0- off, 1- on

COMSTOP (command, Modem BASIC, SVI Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL COMSTOP ([<"port number:">])

Function: Suspend the interruption coming from the RS232-C port. <"Port number:"> should vary and 0: to 4:. If omitted, it will be 0:.

COMTERM (command, Modem BASIC, SVI Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL COMTERM ([<"port number:">])

Function: Puts the MSX in terminal mode. To exit terminal mode, press CTRL+STOP together. <"Port number:"> should vary and 0: to 4 :. If omitted, it will be 0 :. Once in terminal mode, use the following keys:

[SHIFT] + [F1] – Displays the received control codes.

[SHIFT] + [F2] – Displays the pressed keys.

[SHIFT] + [F3] – Displays and prints the pressed keys.

[STOP] – Press and hold to send the interrupt sequence to the host.

CONNECT (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL CONNECT (<numeric variable>)

Function: Establishes connection in a Terminal program, with the speed defined in CALL INIMDM.

<numeric variable> stores the result of the operation:

0 – An error occurred while trying to connect

1 – Operator detected – The modem is connected

2 – The routine was aborted by pressing the CODE key

3 – The phone number is busy

CONT MK (command, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL CONT MK

Function: Continues a playback or recording of the musical keyboard that was canceled by the STOPM command.

CONVA (declaration, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL CONVA (<source file>, <destination file>)

Function: Convert PCM data to ADPCM data. <source file> and <destination file> are defined by a number that can vary from 0 to 15.

CONVP (declaration, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL CONVP (<source file>, <destination file>)

Function: Convert PCM data to ADPCM data. <source file> and <destination file> are defined by a number that can vary from 0 to 15.

COPY PCM (remote, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL COPY PCM (<source file>, <dest file>, [<source offset>, [<file size>, [<dest offset>]]])

Function: Copies ADPCM and PCM data.

<source file> and <dest file> are defined by a number that can vary from 0 to 15.

<source offset> and <dest offset> define the offset in units of 256 bytes.

<file size> is the file size in bytes.

COS (function, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL COS (<variable>, <angle>, <value>)

Function: Returns the cosine of an angle. The result is obtained by multiplying the cosine of the angle by a numerical value.

<variable> – Numeric variable that will receive the result.

<angle> – Is the angle value in degrees.

<value> – Number of two bytes (integer value).

CREATEDISK (command, RookieDrive BASIC)

Format: CALL CREATEDISK (<disc name>)

Function: Creates a new disk image without formatting it. The created disk image is full of 0XFFH characters.

Experimental instruction and not fully implemented (limited to 720 Kbytes disks).

CSCAN (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2)

Format: CALL CSCAN

Function: Makes the internal data reader of the Hitachi micro MB-H2 searches for files recorded with CSAVE and that can be loaded with CLOAD.

CSCOPY (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 3)

Format: CALL CSCOPY (<c1> [,<c2>, <c3>, <c4>.... <c15>])

Function: Sends to the printer a copy of a graphic screen in Screens 2, 4 or 5 using a formula based on the selected colors. The difference with CALL SCOPY is unknown.

CURDRV (statement, Nextor)

Format: CALL CURDRV

Function: Displays the active drive unit.

DEF UNIV (command, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL DEF UNIV (<device number>, <device code>)

Function: Defines the device to be controlled by the REMOTE command. <device number> can range from 3 to 15 and <device code> can range from 1 to 255.

DISCOM (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL DISCOM (<student number>)

Function: Disables the sending of messages from a student. This instruction is only available to the teacher. By default, after initialization, students can only send messages to the teacher. <student number> can vary from 1 to 15. Short version: `_DISC`.

DMM (function, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL DMM (<variable> [,<time>]) [,S])

Function: Performs the device entry and returns the result in <variable>. It can be aborted by CTRL+STOP. (Requires DEV driver).

<variable> must be numeric. The return values are:

0 – Not pressed 10 – GRAPH 13 – ESC

1 to 8 – 8 directions 11 – STOP 14 – HOME

9 – Space 12 – TAB 15 – SELECT

<time> that the command awaits, in units of 1/60 sec.

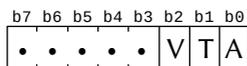
[, S] – If specified, the sprite defined in "CALL DMMINI" will be moved automatically.

DMMINI (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL DMMINI ([<mode>] [,<sprite number>])

Function: Defines the device entry. When DM-System2 is started, the mouse and joystick are configured as input devices. (Requires DEV driver).

<mode> is a one-byte value with the following format (default values are 0):



Action to be taken:

0 – coordinate update

1 – return value

Screen output:

0 – loop, 1 – don't move

Vertical loop range:

0 – 192/212, 1 – 256

<sprite number> is a 1-byte value that specifies the sprite displayed when running CALL DMM. If omitted, "0" is used.

DMMON (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL DMMON ([<address>])

Function: Activates continuous device verification, placing the result in the DM-System2 information area. <address> defines the execution address when a device event is detected. Requires DEV driver.

DMMOFF (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL DMMOFF

Function: Disables continuous device verification. Requires DEV driver.

DRIVERS (statement, Nextor)

Format: CALL DRIVERS

Function: Displays information about the drivers available for Nextor and MSXDOS.

DRVINFO (statement, Nextor)

Format: CALL DRVINFO

Function: Displays information about all available drive letters.

DSK (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL DSK

Function: Displays help and status and makes diagnostics.

- DSKCFG** (command, GR8NET-BASIC)
Format: CALL DSKCFG (<max num of pages>, <num of pages>)
Function: Get or manage the state of the disk image.
<max number of pages> is a variable that receives the maximum number of logical pages from RAM-Disk.
<number of pages> is a variable or constant that defines the size of the RAM-Disk. It must be between 0 and <max num of pages>.
- DSKFMT** (command, GR8NET-BASIC)
Format: CALL DSKFMT
Function: Initializes the image in RAM-Disk.
- DSKGETIMG** (function, GR8NET-BASIC)
Format: CALL DSKGETIMG [(<string variable>)]
Function: Gets the current location of the disk image and returns the path in the <string variable>.
- DSKHELP** (declaration, GR8NET-BASIC)
Format: CALL DSKHELP
Function: Displays help for GR8NET.
- DSKLDIMG** (command, GR8NET-BASIC)
Format: CALL DSKLDIMG
Function: Load the current disk image into the GR8NET buffer.
- DSKSETIMG** (command, GR8NET-BASIC)
Format: CALL DSKSETIMG [(<path>)]
Function: Defines the location of the image according to <path>, which can be a string variable or an alphanumeric expression.
- DSKSVIMG** (command, GR8NET-BASIC)
Format: CALL DSKSVIMG [(<path>)]
Function: Saves the disk image of the GR8NET buffer to the SD card. If <path> is omitted, the path defined by DSKSETIMG will be used.

DSKSTATE (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

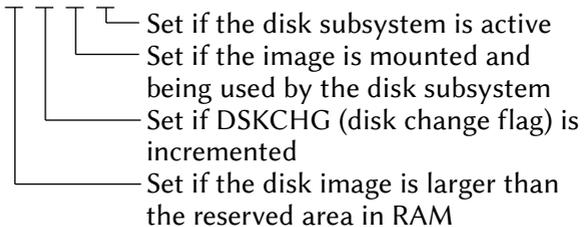
Format: CALL DSKSTATE (<status>, <flags>)

Function: Gets or sets disk subsystem.

<status> defines the state of the system. If it is 0, the disk will be disabled; if it is 1, it will be activated. The change will take effect on the next warm start of the system. Hardware boot will force the return to the default.

<flags> will return with the following values:

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
0	0	0	0	R	D	M	A

**DTROFF** (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL DTROFF

Function: Disables the DTR (Data Terminal Ready) signal.

DTRON (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL DTRON

Function: Enables the DTR (Data Terminal Ready) signal.

ECHOOFF (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL ECHOFF

Function: Send characters to the phone line only. The screen will display only received characters.

ECHOON (remote, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL ECHOON

Function: Enables the sending of characters simultaneously to the telephone line and to the screen.

EJECT (command, RookieDrive BASIC)

Format: CALL EJECT

Function: Ejects the currently inserted disk image and deletes its name from the USBMSX.INI file.

- ENACOM** (command, Network-BASIC)
 Format: CALL ENACOM (<student number>)
 Function: Enables the sending of messages to a student. This instruction is only available to the teacher. By default, after initialization, students can only send messages to the teacher. <student number> can vary from 1 to 15. Short version: `_ENAC`.
- ENG** (command, Hangul-BASIC 3)
 Format: CALL ENG
 Function: Returns to Screen 0 text mode.
- ERASE** (command, SFG-BASIC)
 Format: CALL ERASE (<track number>)
 Function: Deletes the content of the specified track. <track number> can range from 1 to the number specified by CALL TRACK. Short version: `_ERAS`.
- EVENT** (command, SFG-BASIC)
 Format: CALL EVENT ([<event number>]) ON | OFF | STOP
 Function: Enables, disables or interrupts the interruption by event specified in ON EVENT... GOSUB. <event number> can be:
 1~4 – Stops when playback of the specified instrument ends.
 5 – Stops when rhythm playback ends.
 6 – Interrupts according to the time programmed in the FM unit timer.
 If <event number> is omitted, the command will be applied to all events. Short version: `_EVEN`.
- EXIT** (command, RMSX-BASIC)
 Format: CALL EXIT
 Function: Exits the rMSX emulator and returns to the 'normal' use of the MSX Turbo R computer.
- EXT** (command, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL EXT ([@]<source address>, [@]<dest address>)
 Function: Extract compressed data in BPE format.
 <source address> is the address of the compressed data.

<destination address> is the destination address of the unzipped data.

Note: If “@” is specified, it means VRAM.

EXTCOPY (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL EXTCOPY ([@]<source address>, <X>, <Y>
[,<direction>]) [<logical operator>]

Function: Unzips data in BPE format to a rectangular area on the screen.

<source address> – Address of the compressed data. If “@” is specified, it means VRAM (maximum 64K).

<X> – Horizontal destination coordinate (0 to 511)

<Y> – Vertical destination coordinate (0 to 1023)

<direction> – Is the unpacking direction on the screen.

0 – Right and down (default)

1 – Left and down

2 – Right and up

3 – Left and up

<logical operator> can be [T]PSET, [T]PRESET, [T]XOR, [T]OR or [T]AND. The default is PSET.

EXTV (remote, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL EXTV (<variable>)

Function: Checks if there is an external video signal at the input terminal and returns the result in <variable>, that can be:

0 – There is no video signal at the input

1 – External video signal detected

FF (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2)

Format: CALL FF

Function: Puts the Hitachi MB-H2 computer’s built-in data reader into fast search mode.

FILEOUT (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL FILEOUT (“[<device>:]<filename>”,<variable>)

Function: Send a text file or the typed text directly to a terminal.

<variable> contains an option on the question

“More? (Y/ N)” and then stores a control code.

FLINFO (declaration, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL FLINFO

Function: Displays information about the serial flash memory.

FLLIST (declaration, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL FLLIST

Function: Lists the contents of the serial flash memory.

FLUPDATE (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL FLUPDATE (<sector> [,F])

Function: Updates the contents of the serial flash memory. <sector> specifies the sector number where the update will begin. If parameter “, F” is included, the update will start immediately without asking for confirmation.

FNAME (declaration, RookieDrive BASIC)

Format: ?

Function: ?

FONT (remote, Hangeul-BASIC 4)

Format: CALL FONT

Function: Enables alternation between Korean characters (HANGUL key) and non-Korean characters available through the KANA, CYRILLIC or CODE keys. It will return error if used in Screen 9.

FORMAT (command, Disk-BASIC, FormatM. BASIC, RookieD. BASIC)

Format: CALL FORMAT [Disk-BASIC]

Function: Formats a floppy disk. It offers two options:

1 – 1 side, double track (single face, 360K)

2 – 2 sides, double track (double side, 720K)

Format: CALL FORMAT [FormatMaster-BASIC]

Function: Formats a floppy disk offering additional options. Disk-BASIC version 1 required (this instruction is not compatible with Disk-BASIC version 2).

1) 40 tracks – 8 sectors per track – FA

2) 80 tracks – 8 sectors per track – FB

3) 40 tracks – 9 sectors per track – F8

4) 80 tracks – 9 sectors per track – F9

- HANOFF** (command, HanguL-BASIC 1)
 Format: CALL HANOFF
 Function: Disables the feature to group characters in blocks (characteristic of HanguL characters, used in Korea, available after pressing the HANGUL key). Returns error if used in Screen 9.
- HANON** (command, HanguL-BASIC 1)
 Format: CALL HANON
 Function: Enables the feature to group characters in blocks (characteristic of HanguL characters, used in Korea, available after pressing the HANGUL key). Returns error if used in Screen 9.
- HCOPY** (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2-3)
 Format: CALL HCOPY
 Function: Sends to the printer a copy of the text screen (Screens 0 or 1), on Hitachi MB-H2 and MB-H3 computers.
- HELP** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC, HanguL-BASIC 4, MSX Aid BASIC, Netw. BASIC, RMSX BASIC, RookieD. BASIC)
 Format: CALL HELP
 Function: Shows help on BASIC in use.
- HIRO** (remote, MSX turbo R model FS-A1ST)
 Format: CALL HIRO
 Function: Calls the menu for programs in ROM on the MSX turbo R model FS-A1ST. For FS-A1GT, use CALL MWR.
- HMMM** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL HMMM (<X0>, <Y0>) – [STEP] (<X1>, <Y1>) TO (<X2>, <Y2>)
 Function: Executes the VDP HMMM (quick copy in bytes) command. Available for Screens 5 to 12.
 <X0> – X coordinate of the first point in the source area.
 <Y0> – Y coordinate of the first point in the source area.
 <X1> – X coordinate of the second point in the source area.
 <Y1> – Y coordinate of the second point in the source area.
 <X2> – Left X coordinate of the target area.
 <Y2> – Upper Y coordinate of the target area.
 STEP, if specified, indicates relative coordinates.
 Note: <X> can vary from 0 to 511 and <Y> from 0 to 1023.

HMMV (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL HMMV (<X0>, <Y0>) – [STEP] (<X1>, <Y1>) <v>

Function: Executes the VDP's HMMV command (Quick Paint VRAM). Available for Screens 5 to 12.

<X0> – X coordinate of the first point in the area.

<Y0> – Y coordinate of the first point in the area.

<X1> – X coordinate of the second point in the area.

<Y1> – Y coordinate of the second point in the area.

<v> - byte to be sent to VRAM. Specifies one point for Screens 8 to 12, two points for Screens 5 and 7, and four points for Screen 6.

STEP, if specified, indicates relative coordinates.

Note: <X> can vary from 0 to 511 and <Y> from 0 to 1023.

HZ (control, RMSX-BASIC)

Format: CALL HZ [50 | 60]

Function: Select the screen refresh rate (VDP frequency). No parameter toggles rates.

50 - The VDP will have a frequency of 50 Hz (European, Russian or Arabic MSX).

60 - The VDP will have a frequency of 60 Hz (Japanese, Korean or Brazilian MSX).

IDTRACE (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2)

Format: CALL IDTRACE

Function: Puts the built-in data reader of the Hitachi MB-H2 in ID tracking mode to verify if the correct tape has been inserted in the reader.

IMPOSE (remote, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL IMPOSE (<mode>)

Function: Selects the video mode.

<mode> can be:

0 – Computer screen (internal synchronization)

1 – Superimpose (composite video)

2 – External video

INIMDM (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL INIMDM (<variable>)

Function: Initializes the modem speed according the <variable>, whose value is described in the table below:

Value	Standard	Recep. Speed	Transm. Speed	Note
0	V21	300 baud	300 baud	Caller
1	V21	300 baud	300 baud	Receiver
2	V23	1200 baud	75 baud	-
3	V23	75 baud	1200 baud	-
4	V23	1200 baud	75 baud	for bad connection
5	V23	75 baud	1200 baud	for bad connection
6	V23	600 baud	75 baud	-
7	V23	75 baud	600 baud	-

INIT (command, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL INIT

Function: Initializes the FM Music Macro.

INITMD (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL INITMD

Function: Initializes the X8N1 communication protocol.

X = Xon / Xoff protocol enabled

8 = 8 bits of data

N = without parity

1 = One stop bit

INMK (function, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL INMK [[<variable 1>] [, [<variable 2>]] [, <variable 3>]]]

Function: Reports changes when using the musical keyboard.

<variable 1> – key number (0 to 127)

<variable 2> – key status (0 if pressed, otherwise 1)

<variable 3> – Frequency of ADPCM corresponding to the key pressed.

INMKEY (function, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL INMKEY (<variable>)

Function: Checks if any key on the musical keyboard is being pressed. <variable> returns the key code. If it is 0, no key is being pressed. Short version: `_INMK`.

KACNV (statement, Kanji-BASIC)

Format: CALL KACNV (<string variable>, <character string>)

Function: Converts two-byte Kanji characters to one-byte characters. <string variable> receives the converted characters <character string> contains the Kanji characters to be converted.

KANJI (command, Kanji-BASIC)

Format: CALL KANJI [<n>]

Function: Activates Kanji mode. <n> can range from 0 to 3, but modes 1 to 3 only work on an MSX2 or higher. When in Kanji mode, press CTRL + SPACE or GRAPH + SELECT to activate Kanji input mode.

0 – 13 lines of 32 or 64 characters (16x16 or 8x16)

1 – 13 lines of 40 or 80 characters (12x16 or 6x16)

2 – 24 lines of 32 or 64 characters in interlaced mode (16x16 or 8x16)

3 – 24 lines of 40 or 80 characters in interlaced mode (16x16 or 8x16)

Note: In Kanji mode, the commands CLS, COLOR= And SCREEN 9 are disabled.

KBOLD (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL KBOLD ([<width>] [,<height>] [,<X edge>] [,<Y edge>] [,<X shadow>] [,<Y shadow>])

Function: Defines the style of the text characters. (Requires FNT driver).

<width> of the character (1 to 16, default is 1)

<height> of the character (1 to 16, default is 1)

<edge X> – X edge thickness (1 to 8, default is 1)

<edge Y> – Y edge thickness (1 to 8, default is 1)

<shadow X> – Horizontal thickness of the shadow character (1 to 32, default is 1)

<shadow Y> – Vertical thickness of the shadow character (1 to 32, default is 1)

If the thickness of the shadow is 0, it will be determined automatically.

KCHR (function, Hangul-BASIC 3)

Format: CALL KCHR (<string variable>, <hexadecimal code>)

Function: Returns in <string variable> the Korean character specified by the 4-digit <hexadecimal code>.

KCODE (function, Hangul-BASIC 3)

Format: CALL KCHR (<string variable>, <string>)

Function: Returns in <string variable> the 4-digit hexadecimal code of the first Korean character in <string>.

KCOLOR (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL KCOLOR ([<character color>] [,<background color>]
,<border color>] [,<shadow color>])

Function: Defines the text characters colors. (Requires FNT driver).
<character color> can range from 0 to 15 (default: 15)
<background color> can range from 0 to 15 (default: 0)
<border color> works only for the “border” function. It can vary from 0 to 15 and the default is 1.
<shadow color> works only for the “shadow” function. It can vary from 0 to 15 and the default is 14.

KEXT (function, Kanji-BASIC, Hangul-BASIC 3)

Format: CALL KEXT (<string variable>, <char string>, <function>)

Function: Extracts only 2 bytes or 1 byte characters from a string.
<string variable> receives the extracted characters
<character string> contains the characters to be extracted.
<function> – If 0, only one byte character will be extracted for Kanji-BASIC or non-Korean characters for Hangul-BASIC. If it is 1, only 2 byte characters will be extracted for Kanji-BASIC or Korean characters for Hangul-BASIC.

KEY ON / OFF (function, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL KEY ON (<key number>, <speed>)

CALL KEY OFF (<key number>)

Function: Informs if the key is pressed or released regardless of its real condition.

<key number> can range from 0 to 127.

<speed> can range from 0 to 15 (8 is the default).

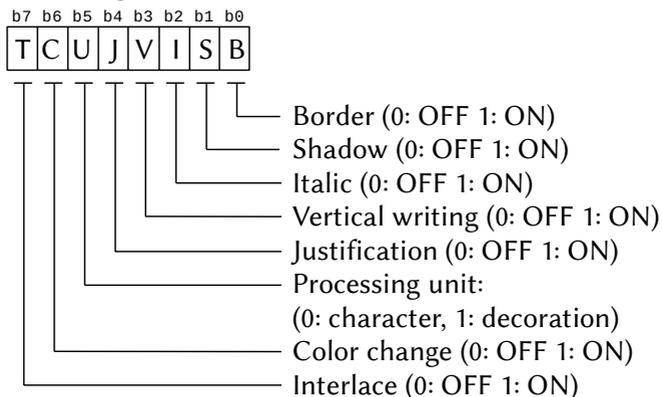
KINIT (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL KINIT

Function: Returns all text definitions, including KBOLD and KSIZE, to their default values. (Requires FNT driver).

Format: CALL KINIT ([<configuration>] [,<shadow X>] [,<shadow Y>] [,<italic>] [,<color table>])

Function: Defines all the decoration options for the character. <configuration> is a one-byte value, with the following flags (the initial value for all is 0):



<shadow X> and <shadow Y> define the position of the shadow in relation to the upper left corner of the character, which can vary between -128 and 127.

<italic> defines the offset to the right of each line of the character, including the border, which can vary between -128 and 127. If omitted, system values will be used.

<color table> defines the colors for each character line from the top, including the border. If omitted, the system color table will be used. The default value is C000H.

KINSTR (function, Kanji-BASIC, Hangul-BASIC 3)

Format: CALL KINSTR (<numeric variable> [<search start>], <string 1>, <string 2>)

Function: Searches for the occurrence of <string 2> in <string 1> and returns the position in <numeric variable>. If there are no occurrences, it returns 0. <search start> is an optional value and indicates the position of the start char for the search.

KSIZE (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL KPUT (<width>, <height> [,<separation>])

Function: Defines the character size of a byte. (Requires FNT driver).
 <width> can vary from 1 to 32 (default: 8)
 <height> can vary from 1 to 64 (default: 16)
 <partition> defines the space between characters and can vary from 0 to 15 (default: 0)

KTYPE (function, Kanji-BASIC, Hangul-BASIC 3)

Format: CALL KTYPE (<numeric variable>, <character string>, <character position>)

Function: Returns in the <numeric variable> the value 0 if the character corresponding to the <character position> in the <character string> is one byte and the value 1 if the character is 2 bytes.

LB (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL LB (<string variable>) [;]

Function: Sends a text to the screen and/or the phone line according to the following table:

Eco	Line	Screen	Phone
CALL ECHOON	CALL LINEON	Yes	Yes
CALL ECHOON	CALL LINEOFF	Yes	No
CALL ECHOOFF	CALL LINEON	No	Yes

The text can be paused with CTRL+S but cannot be interrupted.

LCOPY (remote, Printer-BASIC or Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL LCOPY [Printer-BASIC]

Function: Prints the data that is still in the temporary buffer of 32 Kbytes when the print spooler is used.

Format: CALL LCOPY (<mode>) [Pioneer-BASIC]

Send a copy of the Screen 2 to the printer. If <mode> is 0, make a positive copy and if it is 1, make a negative copy.

LD (remote, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL LD

Function: Executes the interactive software present on a CPE (Computer Program Encoded) disk.

LEN (function, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL LEN (<string variable>),<numeric variable>

Function: Returns the length of a string, without the final control chars (space, tab, return, etc.). The <numeric variable> will return the length in printable characters of the <string var>.

LENGTH (function, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL LENGTH ([<track 1>] [,<track 2>]... [,<track 8>])

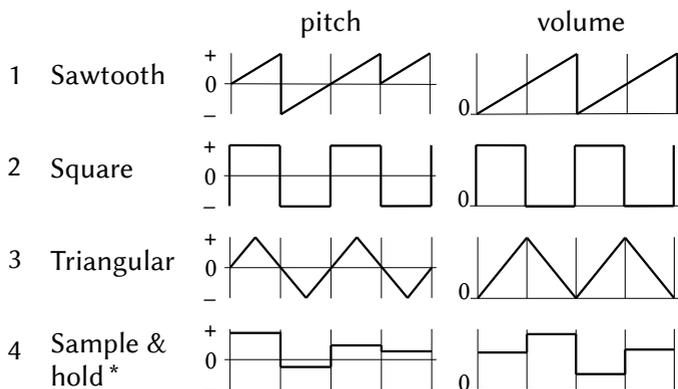
Function: Returns the size of the data on a music track. The units returned correspond to 1/192 of an entire note. <track 1> to <track 8> are numeric variables.

LFO (declaration, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL LFO (<waveform number> [,<speed>] [,<tremolo>]
[,<vibrate>])

Function: Defines the LFO (Low Frequency Oscillator) data.

<waveform number> can vary from 1 to 4:



*“Sample & Hold” values are random.

<speed> specifies the frequency of the LFO in relation to the volume. It can vary from 1 to 100. The higher, the higher the frequency and the speed.

<tremolo> specifies the modulation in relation to the volume. It can vary from 1 to 100. The higher, the more the volume will be changed.

<vibrate> specifies the frequency modulation (pitch). It can vary from 1 to 100. The higher, the more the pitch will be changed.

LICENSE (declaration, RMSX-BASIC)

Format: CALL LICENSE

Function: Displays license information about the used version of the rMSX emulator, developed by the Finnish NYIRIKKI for Turbo R. computers.

LINEOFF (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL LINEOFF

Function: Hang up the phone line but keep the connection active.

LINEON (remote, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL LINEON

Function: Connects the telephone line.

LMMM (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)Format: CALL LMMM (<X0>, <Y0>) – [STEP] (<X1>, <Y1>) TO
(<X2>, <Y2>) [,<logical operator>]

Function: Executes the VDP command LMMM (logical copy in points). Available for Screens 5 to 12.

<X0> – X coordinate of the first point in the source area.

<Y0> – Y coordinate of the first point in the source area.

STEP, if specified, indicates relative coordinates.

<X1> – X coordinate of the second point in the source area.

<Y1> – Y coordinate of the second point in the source area.

<X2> – Left X coordinate of the target area.

<Y2> – Upper Y coordinate of the target area.

<logical operator> can be [T] PSET, [T] PRESET, [T] XOR,
[T] OR or [T] AND. The default is PSET.

Note: <X> can vary from 0 to 511 and <Y> from 0 to 1023.

LMMV (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)Format: CALL LMMV (<X0>, <Y0>) – [STEP] (<X1>, <Y1>),<color>
[,<logical operator>]

Function: Executes the LMMV command (logical copy in points from VDP to VRAM). Available for Screens 5 to 12.

<X0> – X coord of the first point in the destination area.

<Y0> – Y coord of the first point in the destination area.

STEP, if specified, indicates relative coordinates.

<X1> – X coord of the second point in the destination area.
 <Y1> – Y coord of the second point in the destination area.
 <color> specifies the color of the rectangle to be painted.
 <logical operator> can be [T] PSET, [T] PRESET, [T] XOR,
 [T] OR or [T] AND. The default is PSET.
 Note: <X> can vary from 0 to 511 and <Y> from 0 to 1023.

LO (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL LO (<string variable>) [;],<variable>

Function: Sends a text to the screen and/or the phone line according to the following table:

Eco	Line	Screen	Phone
CALL ECHOON	CALL LINEON	Yes	Yes
CALL ECHOON	CALL LINEOFF	Yes	No
CALL ECHOOFF	CALL LINEON	No	Yes

Any characters received are ignored, except for the pause, abort and continue keys. The key buffers remain empty; no keys are stored. The final control codes are sent with the text.

<variable> parameter returns the result of the execution:

0 = the text was sent correctly

3 = the operation was aborted with CTRL+C or C

LOAD (command, DM-System2 BASIC, QuickDisk BASIC)

Format: CALL LOAD ("<device>:" [\ <path>] [\ <filename>"], [@
 <destination address> [,<size>] [,<offset>])
 [DM-System2 BASIC]

Function: Reads a file or part of it.

<device> can be drive A: to H: or COM: for computers connected with RS232C.

<path> specifies the location of the folder or file.

<filename> is the file to be read.

<destination address> is the destination address for the data. If preceded by "@" it means VRAM.

<size> specifies the number of bytes to read.

<offset> specifies the offset in the source file.

Format: CALL LOAD ([QD[n]:]"<filename>"[,R]) [QuickDisk-BASIC]

Function: Load a non-binary file from the specified Quick Disk device. It can be a BASIC file in tokenized mode or in ASCII text. QD [n] specifies the QuickDisk device to be used. It can range from 0 to 7, the default being 0. <filename> must be in the format 8 chars + "." + 3 chars. [,R], if specified, runs the BASIC file right after loading.

LOAD PCM (command, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL LOAD PCM (<"filename">, <file number>)

Function: Load ADPCM and PCM data from disk. <filename> – filename on disk. <file number> – File number in the audio memory. It can range from 0 to 15.

LOADROM (command, RookieDrive BASIC)

Format: CALL LOADROM ("<filename>")

Function: Loads an 8kb, 16kb or 32kb ROM file into RAM and starts its execution by restarting the computer. The ROM file must be located in the root directory of the USB device. <filename> must be in 8.3 format.

LOCKDRV (command, Nextor)

Format: CALL LOCKDRV (<drive letter>: N)

Function: Lock or unlock drive letters, or display the list of blocked drives. If "N" is 0, it unlocks the drive; any other number locks.

LOGFILE (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL LOGFILE (<filename>) [;],<variable>

Function: Stores everything on the screen in a text file. <filename> must be a string variable.

LOOK (function, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL LOOK ([<instrument 1>] [,<instrument 2>] [,<instrument 3>] [,<instrument 4>])

Function: Returns the status of the instrument, whether it is being played or not. The <instrument 'n'> parameters are numeric variables. For instrument not defined by _INST, it returns 0.

LS (remote, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL LS (<string variable>) [;],<variable>

Function: Sends a text to the screen and / or the phone line according to the following table:

Eco	Line	Screen	Phone
CALL ECHOON	CALL LINEON	Yes	Yes
CALL ECHOON	CALL LINEOFF	Yes	No
CALL ECHOOFF	CALL LINEON	No	Yes

Any characters received are ignored, except for the pause, abort and continue keys. The key buffers remain empty; no keys are stored. The final control codes are sent with the text. The <variable> parameter returns the result of the execution:

0 = the text was sent correctly.

3 = the operation was aborted with CTRL+C or C.

MALLOC (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL MALLOC ([<number of pages>] [,<variable>])

Function: Enables access to the Memory Mapper.

<number of pages> is the number of pages to be allocated.

If it is 0, the allocated pages will be released. If omitted, the current number of allocated pages will return in <variable>.

<variable> is a numeric variable that will contain the number of pages actually allocated.

MAPDRV (command, Nextor)

Format: CALL MAPDRV (<drive> [,<partition> [,<device> [,<slot> | 0]])

Function: Maps a drive unit in the Nextor system.

<drive> letter or drive number to be mapped

<partition> is a number as following:

0 – The drive will be mapped from the device's absolute zero sector.

1 – First primary partition

2 to 4 – Refer to extended partitions 2.1 to 2.4, if partition 2 is extended; otherwise, they refer to primary partitions.

5 – Onwards refer to extended partitions.

<device> – Device index (1 to 7)
 <slot> – Slot number (0 to 3). If the slot is expanded, use the formula <main slot> + 4 * <subslot>. If “0” is specified, the primary unit slot will be selected.

MAPDRV (command, Nextor)

Format: CALL MAPDRV (<drive> [, <partition> [, <device> [, <slot> | 0]])

Function: Maps a drive unit in the Nextor system and locks the specified drive. The parameters are identical to MAPDRV.

MC (declaration, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL MC (<string variable>)

Function: Converts the alphabetic characters of the <string variable> to uppercase.

MDR (command, MSX turbo R model FS-A1GT)

Format: CALL MDR

Function: Activates the MSX-MUSIC output to the MIDI interface. Only MSX turbo R model FS-A1GT.

MEMINI (command, 2)

Format: CALL MEMINI [(RAM disk size)]

Function: Activates the RAM disk in the lower 32K of memory.

MERGE (command, QuickDisk BASIC)

Format: CALL MERGE ("[QD [n]:]<filename>")

Function: Merges a BASIC or DATA program saved in ASCII on the QuickDisk device with the program that is in the MSX memory.

QD [n] specifies the QuickDisk device to be used. It can range from 0 to 7, the default being 0.

<filename> must be in the format 8 chars + “.” + 3 chars.

MESSAGE (statement, MSX-Aid BASIC, Network BASIC)

Format: CALL MESSAGE [MSX-Aid BASIC]

Function: Displays an encouraging message for programmers using MSX-Aid.

Format: CALL MESSAGE (<message>, [<student number>])
[Network BASIC]

Function: Sends a message of up to 56 characters to a specific student. This instruction is only available to the teacher. <student number> can range from 1 to 15. The short version: `_MESS` can be used.

MFADE (declaration, StudioFM BASIC)

Format: CALL MFADE (<degree of fade>)

Function: Produces a fade-out when playing back .MUS files in the Studio FM. <degree of fade> can vary between 0 and 255, with 0 no fade and 255 will produce the longest fade-out.

MFILES (command, 2)

Format: CALL MFILES

Function: Lists the RAM disk files of the lower 32K of memory.

MK PCM (declaration, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL MK PCM (<file number>)

CALL MK PCM OFF

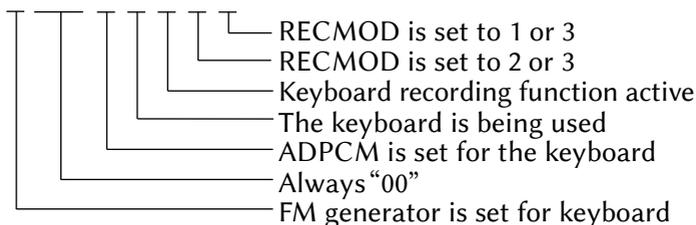
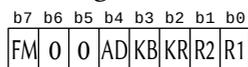
Function: Defines which ADPCM file will be played as an instrument. If specified OFF, it cancels the previously defined instrument. <file number> can range from 0 to 15.

MK STAT (function, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL MK STAT (<variable>)

Function: Returns the recording or playback status of the musical keyboard.

<variable> is a numerical value defined according to the figure below.



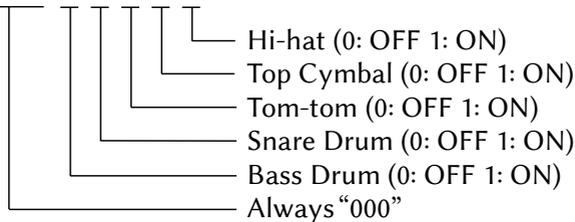
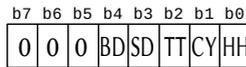
MK TEMPO (statement, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL MK TEMPO (<speed>, <percussion map>)

Function: Specifies the recording / playback speed of the musical keyboard or activates the metronome function. In this case, the AUDIO command must be previously defined. This command affects the speed of the MK PLAY, MK REC and MK APPEND instructions.

<speed> must be in the range 25~360, the initial value being 120.

<percussion map> is a numerical value defined according to the figure below.

**MK VEL** (statement, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL MK VEL (<speed>)

Function: Specifies the speed, or pressure force, that is applied to a key on the musical keyboard.

<speed> can range from 0 to 15, the initial value being 8.

MK VOICE (statement, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL MK VOICE ([@]<instrument number>)

Function: Defines the instrument to be associated with the musical keyboard. <instrument number> is a numeric variable that defines the instrument number, which can vary from 0 to 63. If there is no @, the variable will be assumed to be a matrix, where the values in sequence define the instrument.

MK VOL (statement, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL MK VOL (<volume>)

Function: Defines the volume associated with the musical keyboard. <volume> can range from 0 to 63.

- <volume> sets the volume separately for each instrument. It can vary from 0 to 100, with 100 being the maximum volume.
- <portamento> can take two values:
 - 0 – Portamento only during playback
 - 1 – Portamento all the time
- <portamento speed> can vary from 0 to 100, with 100 being the slowest. 0 turns off the portamento.
- <support> can take on two values:
 - 0 – Standard lift time
 - 1 – Support time is doubled
- <trigger mode> determines whether to trigger when the keys pressed are released.
 - 0 – “attack” when the keys are released
 - 1 – No “attack” during legacy playback
- <LFO sync> determines whether there will be synchronization with the LFO when the pressed keys are released.
 - 0 – No synchronization
 - 1 – The LFO starts the waveform whenever a key is released.
- <tremolo> specifies the degree of the tremolo. It can vary from 0 to 100, with 100 being the highest degree of sensitivity. (despite the range 0 to 100, there are only 4 degrees of tremolo).
- <vibrate> specifies the degree of vibrato. It can vary from 0 to 100, with 100 being the highest degree of sensitivity. (despite the range 0 to 100, there are only 8 degrees of vibrato).

MON (command, FM-X BASIC, Hitachi BASIC, MSXAid BASIC)
 Format: CALL MON [FM-X BASIC]
 Function: Starts the monitor when the Fujitsu FM-X is connected to the FM-7 machine with the MB22450 interface.

Format: CALL MON [Hitachi BASIC 1-2]
 Function: Starts the System Monitor Utility command line on the Hitachi MB-H1 and MB-H2 computers. For a list of all commands available in this utility, type H on the command line.

Function: Starts MSX-MUSIC and determines which voices will be used and how.

<n1> can be:

0 – Select pure melody mode (n3~n9 can be specified)

1 – Select melody + battery mode (n3~n6 can be specified)

<n3> to <n9> can be:

1 – Select melody

2 – Select battery

MUTE (control, Hitachi-BASIC, Pioneer-BASIC, RMSX-BASIC)

Format: CALL MUTE [Hitachi-BASIC 2]

Function: Adds a 4 second pause before recording data to the internal register of the Hitachi HB-M2.

Format: CALL MUTE [R | L] [Pioneer-BASIC]
CALL MUTE OFF

Function: Mutes the right (R), left (L) audio channels or both if there is no channel specification. If OFF is specified, the mute function is canceled.

Format: CALL MUTE [ON] | [OFF] [RMSX-BASIC]

Function: Enables or disables the audio output. If the parameter is omitted, it just reverses the state.

MWP (command, MSX turbo R model FS-A1GT)

Format: CALL MWP

Function: Calls the menu for programs in ROM on the MSX turbo R model FS-A1GT. For FS-A1ST, use CALL HIRO.

NET (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NET

Function: Displays GR8NET help.

NETBITOV (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETBITOV (<page>, <address>, <VRAM bank>, <VRAM address>)

Function: Transfer the image of the GR8NET buffer icon to VRAM.

<page> is the logical page number of the icon data.

<address> is the address of the icon data and can only vary from 6000H to 7FFFH.

<VRAM bank> must be 0 for 0000H~FFFFH or 1 for 10000H~1FFFFH.

<VRAM address> is the address within the selected VRAM bank.

NETBLOAD (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETBLOAD (<url>, <execution flag>, <logical page>, <GR8NET address>)

Function: Load binary file from SD card or remote web server using HTTP.

<url> is the URL string for remote access. For the first partition on the SD card, use "SDC://".

<execution flag> indicates the action to be taken for executable files.

0 – Data will not be loaded (default value)

1 – Data will be loaded but not executed

2 – The file will be loaded and executed.

<logical page> of the GR8NET (00H to 7FH)

<GR8NET address> can vary from 6000H to 7FFFH.

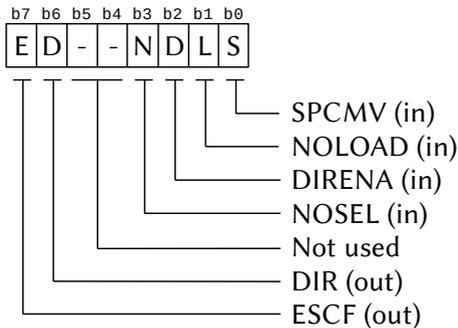
NETBROWSE (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETBROWSE (<url>, <flags>)

Function: Calls the web browser and SD card.

<url> is the starting URL string.

<flags> is a one-byte value with the following meanings:



SPCMV: if this bit is set, when the user presses the SPACE key in the selection, the url will be loaded into the GR8NET RAM, but no action will be performed and the browser exits;

NOLOAD: if this bit is set, the browser will not load the selected url in the GR8NET RAM.

DIRENA: if this bit is set, when pressing the space bar in the directory it will be selected and the browser will be closed; if this bit is reset, pressing space in the directory will load the content and navigation will continue.

NOSEL: if set, it does not force the source device selection page (Internet / SD card), and navigation proceeds directly to the device identified by the URL string.

DIR: this bit returns set if the content is a directory entry or a page with a list of directories generated by the WEB server.

ESCF: this bit returns set when the browser is closed with the ESC key.

NETBTOV (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETBTOV (<VRAM bank>, <offset address>)

Function: Moves binary data from the GR8NET buffer to the VRAM. <VRAM bank> must be 0 for 0000H~FFFFH or 1 for 10000H~1FFFFH.

<address offset> is the offset of the address specified in the header of the binary file.

NETCDTOF (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETCDTOF

Function: Copy the DHCP configuration to the fixed IP address configuration.

NETCFG (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETCFG

Function: Activates the interactive configuration of the GR8NET.

NETCODE (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETCODE (<error_code>, [<http_oper>])

Function: Returns the status of the last operation and the HTTP response code.

NETDHCP (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETDHCP

Function: Performs DHCP search and makes its dynamic configuration.

NETDIAG (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETDIAG (<V>)

Function: Turns on / off diagnostic mode. If <V> is 0, it turns off; otherwise it turns on.

NETDNS (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETDNS [([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])]

Function: Gets the IP of the current DNS domain. If there are no arguments, print the address on the screen.

NETDUMP (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETDHCP

Function: Performs DHCP search and makes its dynamic configuration.

NETEND (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETEND

Function: Disables the MSX network (MSX Network). Short version: _NETE.

NETEXPRT (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETEXPRT

Function: Create BASIC program containing GR8NET config data.

NETFIX (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETFIX

Function: Configure fixed IP address information for the network.

NETFKOPLLR (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETFKOPLLR

Function: Load the OPLL ROM (MSX-Music) into the mapped memory. This command is intended for software that runs in GR8NET mapper modes 1 to 6 (game mapper) and cannot be run in mode 8 when MSX-Music ROM is available in GR8NET subslot 3.

NETFWUPDATE (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETFWUPDATE ([<argument>])

Function: Updates the GR8NET firmware. If <argument> is omitted or is 0, it only displays information about the current firmware. If it is 1 (one), it updates only the main firmware and if it is 3 (three) it also updates the configuration area.

NETGETCLK (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETCLK ([<source>],<frequency>)

Function: Returns the clock frequency. If <source> returns zero, the frequency will be that of the MSX main bus; if it is different from zero, the frequency of the GR8NET internal oscillator will return. <frequency> must be a numeric variable.

NETGETCLOUD (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETCLOUD

Function: Prints the status of the GR8cloud virtual volume on the screen.

NETGETDA (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETDA (<adapter number>, <active adapters>)

Function: Returns the number of the standard adapter in <adapter number> and the list of active adapters in <active adapters>. <adapter number> must be a numeric variable. <active adapters> must be a numeric variable where bits 0 to 3 will receive the state of the adapters (the respective bit will be set if the device is active).

NETGETDNS (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETDNS ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Gets the DNS address of the fixed IP. [<A>], [], [<C>] and [<D>] must be numeric variables.

NETGETGW (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETGW ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Get fixed IP address of the gateway. [<A>], [], [<C>] and [<D>] must be numeric variables.

NETGETHOST (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETHOST (<flag>, <name> | <A>, , <C>, <D>)

Function: Gets the name and IP address of the remote host. <A>, , <C> and <D> and <flag> must be numeric variables and <name> must be an alphanumeric variable.

NETGETIP (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETIP ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Gets the fixed IP address. [<A>], [], [<C>] and [<D>] must be numeric variables.

NETGETMAP (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETMAP (<flags>)

Function: Gets the type of Memory Mapper and other data. <flags> must be a 16-bit numeric variable, where bits 0 to 7 contain the current logical page of the Memory Mapper and bits 8, 13 and 4 are bits of the system mode register.

NETGETMASK (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETMASK ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Obtains the fixed IP address mask. [<A>], [], [<C>] and [<D>] must be numeric variables.

NETGETMD (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETMD (<logical page>, <address>, variable)

Function: Get a 4-byte (32-bit) word from memory, convert and store it in a BASIC variable.

<logical page> is the number of the logical page in bank 1 of the GR8NET (6000-7FFF).

<address> is the address visible by the Z80

<variable> is a BASIC variable capable of accommodating the read value (single or double precision).

NETGETMEM (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETMEM (<logical page>, <address>, [<A>],
[], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Reads a sequence of 4 bytes in memory.

<logic page> logic page number in bank 1 of the GR8NET (6000H~7FFFH).

<address> is the memory address visible to the Z80.

<A> = Address, = Address + 1, etc.

NETGETMIX (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETMIX ([<number>])

Function: Returns the configuration of the audio mixer. If bit 15 is 0, the audio is mono, if it is 1 it is stereo. If <number> is omitted, the setting will be printed on the screen.

<number> is a 16-bit numeric value:

b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
S	0	0	0	PSG	Y8950	OPLL	Wave	SCC	PCM						

Where each 2 bits represent the following:

00 – Mute 10 – Right channel

01 – Left channel 11 – Both channels

NETGETMMV (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETMMV ([<user home page>], [<top of RAM>]
[<disk image start page>], [maximum no. of pages],
[<init page of Y8950 RAM>])

Function: Returns the configuration of the memory manager. All are numeric values and any can be omitted. If all are omitted, the command prints the values on the screen.

NETGETNAME (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETNAME ([<filename>])

Function: Returns the filename of the remote resource.

NETGETNTP (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETNTP ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

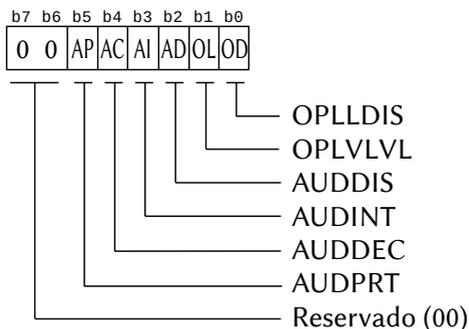
Function: Gets the properties on the NTP server in the fixed IP address configuration. [<A>], [], [<C>] and [<D>] must be numeric variables.

NETGETOPL (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETOPL (<OPL state>, <num sample RAM
pages>, <sample RAM size>)

Function: Gets the status of the OPLL / Y8950 and the size of the Sample RAM.

<OPL state> is a byte of flags with the following format:



- OPLLDIS – 0 – OPLL output is active (default)
 1 – OPLL output turned off
- OPLVLVL – 0 – Normal volume OPLL / Y8950 (default)
 1 – Duplicated volume OPLL / Y8950
- AUDDIS – 0 – MSX-Audio is enabled (default)
 1 – MSX-Audio disabled
- AUDINT – 0 – Interrupt. MSX-Audio enabled (default)
 1 – MSX-Audio interrupts disabled
- AUDDEC – 0 – MSX-Audio unconfigured / unavailable
 1 – MSX-Audio configured in AUDPRT
- AUDPRT – 0 – MSX-Audio configured port C0-C1
 1 – MSX-Audio configured port C2-C3
- <num sample RAM pages> allocated (8K each)
 <sample RAM size> required for 8K pages

NETGETPATH (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETPATH ([<path>])

Function: Returns the <path> of the remote resource. <path> must be an alphanumeric variable. If omitted, print the path on the screen.

NETGETPORT (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

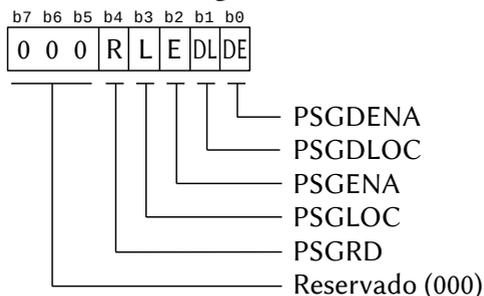
Format: CALL NETGETPATH ([<remote port>], [<local port>])

Function: Returns the <remote port> and <local port> (must be numeric variables).

NETGETPSG (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETPSG ([<flags>])

Function: Returns some data from the PSG. <flags> is a data byte with the following format:



Where:

- PSGDENA and PSGDLOC are the desired initial state of PSG (see _NETSETPSG);
- PSGENA and PSGLOC are the real state (1 = Activated) and the location (0 = 0xA0, 1 = 0x10) of the PSG;
- If PSGRD is 1, the PSG registers can be read and if it is 0 the PSG is in write-only mode.

NETGETQSTR (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETQSTR ([<query string>])

Function: Returns the <query string> defined for the remote resource. If the argument is omitted, print the result on the screen.

NETGETTSHN (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGETTSHN ([<time server>])

Function: Returns the host name of the <time server>. If the argument is omitted, print the result on the screen.

NETGW (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETGW ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Returns the configuration of the current gateway. <A>, , <C> and <D> must be numeric variables.

NETHELP (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETHELP <command>

Function: Displays help for the specified GR8NET <command>. If <command> is omitted, print a list of all available commands.

NETIMPRT (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETIMPRT

Function: Fill the GR8NET system variables with data from the BASIC program created by NETEXPRT.

NETINIT (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETINIT

Function: Initializes the MSX network. Use only after CALL NETEND, as the network is automatically started when the computer is turned on. Short version: _NETI

NETIP (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETIP ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Gets the IP address of the current adapter. <A>, , <C> and <D> must be numeric variables.

NETLDBUF (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETLDBUF (<adapter page>, <adapter address>, <block size>, <RAM address>, [<mapper type>])

Function: Copy data from main memory to the adapter's buffer.

NETLDRAM (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETLDRAM (<adapter page>, <adapter address>, <block size>, <RAM address>)

Function: Downloads data from the adapter's buffer to main memory. <adapter address> must be between &H6000 and &H7FFF.

NETMASK (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETMASK ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Gets the subnet mask of the current adapter. <A>, , <C> and <D> must be numeric variables.

NETNTP (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETNTP (<A>, , <C>, <D>, <TZF>)

Function: Obtains the effective configuration of the NTP server. <A>, , <C>, <D> and <TZF> must be variables or constants numeric. If bit 7 of TZF is set, the RTC will be synchronized with the NTP server. Bits 0 to 6 represent a positive or negative value (-64 [40H] to +63 [3FH]) and define the time zone in 15-minute increments.

NETPLAYBUF[#]A (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETPLAYBUF[#]A (<logical page>, <address>, <size>)

Function: Defines the address and initial size of buffer No. [#] for the PCM. <logical page> must be between 00H~7FH, <address> between 6000H~7FFFH and <size> must be calculated so as not to exceed the GR8NET memory of 1 MB. [#] must be between 0 and 9.

NETPLAYBUF[#]C (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETPLAYBUF[#]C

Function: Continue playback by refilling PCM buffer [#], which must be between 0 and 9.

NETPLAYBUF[#]P (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETPLAYBUF[#]P (<size>, <frequency>)

Function: Start the reproduction of the data pre-stored in the PCM buffer n° [#]. <size> can be 8 or 16 bits and <frequency> can range from 1 to 65,536. [#] must be between 0 and 9. To prevent the buffer from emptying, the command _NETPLAYBUF[#]C must be used.

NETPLAYBUF[#]R (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETPLAYBUF[#]R

Function: Reset the buffer [#] reproduction mechanism, which must be between 0 and 9.

NETPLAYBUF[#]S (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETPLAYBUF[#]S (<state>)

Function: Return the playback status of buffer [#]. <state> must be a numeric variable. If <state> returns -1, playback has ended and if it returns 0, data is still being played. [#] must be between 0 and 9.

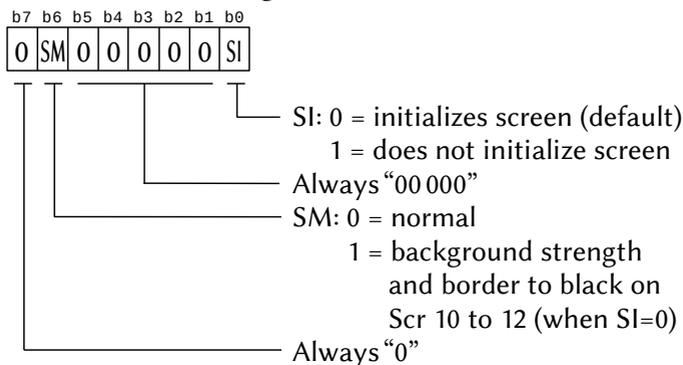
NETPLAYVID (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETPLAYVID (<path> [,<flags>])

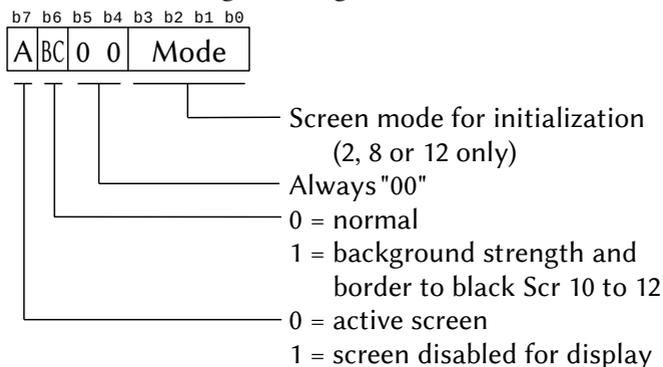
CALL NETPLAYVID (<screen mode>)

Function: Play video from the SD card. It works in two ways, depending on the first argument. If string, specify the

<path> of the video file on the SD card. <flags> is an 8-bit value whose meanings are described below:



If the first argument is an integer, its lowest 8 bits are flags with the following meanings:



NETPLAYWAV (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETPLAYWAV (<path>)

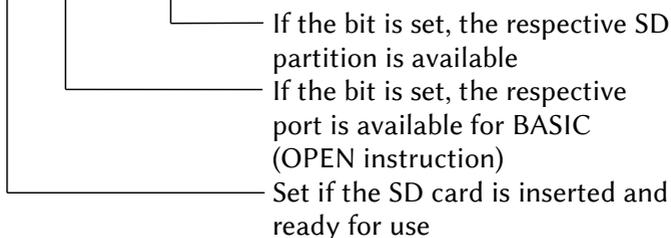
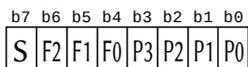
Function: Play audio in wave format. <path> is a name or string variable that identifies the location of the URI of the remote wave file.

NETRESST (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETRESST (<flags>)

CALL NETRESST (<inbound URI>, <outbound URI>,
<flags>, <size>)

Function: Return the resource's state. If the first argument is an integer variable, the lowest 8 bits will contain the flags as described below. If it is alphanumeric, <input URI> and <output URI> will contain the respective paths and <size> is a numeric variable that returns the size of the resource. <flags> is an integer variable whose lowest 8 bits are mapped as follows:



NETSAVE (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSAVE

Function: Save the current configuration of the ROM configuration page.

NETSDCRD (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSDCRD (<logical page>, <address>, <sector>, <number of sectors to read>)

Function: Read sectors from the SD card. <logical page> is the page number in bank 1 of the GR8NET (6000H~7FFFH), <address> is the visible address for the Z80 and <sector> is the number of the first sector to be read.

NETSETCLK (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETCLK (<source>)

Function: Defines the frequency source for speed measurement. If <source> is 0, the frequency of the MSX internal bus will be used; if different from 0, the frequency of the GR8NET internal oscillator (3.579545 MHz) will be used.

NETSETCLOUD (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETCLOUD (<hostname: port>, <password>)
CALL NETSETCLOUD (<activation flag>)

Function: Configure access to the GR8NET virtual volume.
<hostname: port> can be up to 70 characters long, with the port number separated by a colon. The access <password> can be up to 16 characters. To enable the GR8cloud subsystem, <activation flag> must contain the numeric value 1, but the volume will only be fully accessible after the restart.

NETSETDA (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETDA (<adapter number>)

Function: Defines the number of the standard adapter.
<adapter number> must be a value from 0 to 3.

NETSETDM (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETDM (<logical page>, <address>, <variable>)

Function: Gets the value of a BASIC variable, converts it to a 32-bit value and stores it in memory.
<logic page> logic page number in bank 1 of the GR8NET (6000H~7FFFH).
<address> is the memory address visible to the Z80.
<variable> can be a number, an expression or a numeric variable of any type.

NETSETDNS (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETDNS ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Defines fixed IP address. At least one of the <A>, , <C> or <D> values must be defined.

NETSETGW (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETGW ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Defines the fixed IP address of the gateway. At least one of the <A>, , <C> or <D> values must be defined.

NETSETHOST (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETHOST (<URI>)
CALL NETSETHOST (<A>, , <C>, <D>)

Function: Defines the name of the remote host and, if necessary, performs a simple DNS query. The <URI> must be written without a protocol definition and without the final slash (eg “www.gr8bit.ru”)

NETSETIP (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETIP ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Defines fixed IP address. At least one of the <A>, , <C> or <D> values must be defined.

NETSETMAP (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETMAP [<A>, <M>, <MRPD>]

Function: Defines the type of Memory Mapper and restarts the system.

<A> identifies the type of memory mapped and the location of the special register set.

<M> 0 – Reading disabled.

1 – Reading enabled.

2 – Automatic detection (default)

<MRPD> RAM mapped with pending disable bit
(0 – Enable; 1 – Disable).

NETSETMASK (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETMASK ([<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Sets the mask for the fixed IP address. At least one of the <A>, , <C> or <D> values must be defined.

NETSETMEM (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETMEM (<logical page>, <address>, [<A>], [], [<C>], [<D>])

Function: Writes a sequence of 4 bytes in the memory.

<logic page> logic page number in bank 1 of the GR8NET (6000H~7FFFH).

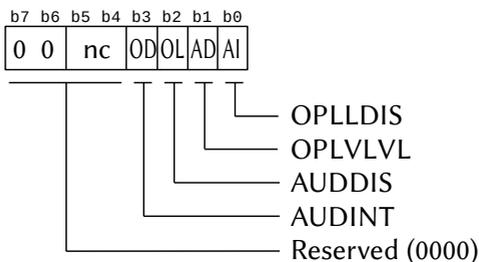
<address> is the memory address visible to the Z80.

<A> = Address, = Address + 1, etc.

NETSETMIX (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETMIX (<number>)

CALL NETSETMIX (<string>)



- OPLLDIS – 0 – Enable OPLL output
 1 – Disable OPLL output
- OPLVLVL – 0 – Normal volume OPLL / Y8950 (default)
 1 – Duplicated volume OPLL / Y8950
- AUDDIS – 0 – Enables MSX-Audio (default)
 1 – Disable MSX-Audio
- AUDINT – 0 – Enables interrupt. MSX-Audio (default)
 1 – Disable MSX-Audio interrupts

NETSETPATH (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETPATH (<path>)

Function: Defines the path of the remote resource. <path> is a name or string variable with a maximum length of 239 characters and no trailing bar and represents the absolute value.

NETSETPORT (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETPORT (<remote port>, <local port>)

Function: Defines the communication port numbers in the standard URI structure. If <local port> is 0, dynamic port number (default value) will be used. This command does not check the validity of the ports.

NETSETPSG (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETPSG (<value>)

Function: Configure the PSG.

<value> is a variable or bitmap constant, where bit set 0 defines whether PSG should be activated in (re) configuration and bit set 1 designates the port location to 0x10 if, on reset, the port is 0xA0 (built-in mirrored PSG). If the argument is omitted, the PSG will be reconfigured.

NETSETQSTR (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETQSTR (<parameter>)

Function: Defines the sequence of queries for processing remote resources. <parameter> is a variable or string constant that must start with the character “?” and have a maximum of 63 characters.

NETSETTSHN (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSETTSHN (<name>)

Function: Defines the name of the time server. <name> is a variable or string constant that must have a maximum of 63 chars.

NETSNDDTG (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSNDDTG (<file number> [, <A>, , <C>, <D>]
[, <RP>])

Function: Sends pending datagram / data to the remote host.
<file number> is the BASIC file number. <A>, , <C> and <D> represent the IP address of the remote device (can be omitted). RP is the port number of the remote device and can also be omitted.

NETSNDVOL (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSNDVOL (<principal>, <SCC>, <waveform>,
<PCM>, <OPLL>, <Y8950>, <PSG>)

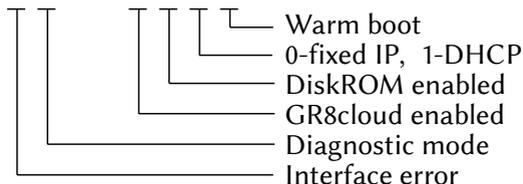
Function: Read or change the volume of the audio generators. All arguments must be in the range 0 (mute) to 128 (maximum volume) and anyone can be omitted.

NETSTAT (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSTAT (<Mode:>)

Function: Displays adapter status information. “Mode:” is a one-byte value with the following meaning:

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
E	D	0	0	C	D	I	W



NETSYSINFO (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETSYSINFO (<MSX version>, <clock frequency>, <T cycle performance>, <VDP version>, <vertical rate / VRAM size>)

Function: Returns system performance information and data.
 <MSX version> – 0=MSX1; 1=MSX2; 3=MSX2+, 4 = MSX TR.
 For MSX turbo R, bit5 = 0 → R800; bit5 = 1 → Z80
 and bit6 = 0 → DRAM mode; bit6 = 1 → ROM mode
 <clock frequency> returns the slot clock (3579560)
 <T cycle performance> returns the total number of times a 51 T cycle instruction (plus 8 of the M1 cycle) is executed in one second ($60\,671 * (51 + 8)$)
 <VDP version> – 0 = TMS; 1 = V9938; 2 = V9958
 <vertical rate / VRAM size> – Value of two bytes, where the lowest byte returns the frame rate (0 = 60 Hz, 1 = 50 Hz, 255 = error) and the highest byte returns the size of the block VRAM (1 = 8K; 2 = 16K; 4 = 32K; 8 = 64K; 16 = 128K; 255 = error).

NETRCHKS (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETRCHKS (<data block>, <address>, <number of bytes> <[, checksum]>)

Function: Calculates the 16-bit checksum of the contents of the RAM buffer of <data block> in bank 1 of the GR8NET. If the <checksum> variable is provided, it will receive the checksum, otherwise, the sum will be printed on the screen.

NETTELNET (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETTELNET ([<url | IP: port>], <signal>)

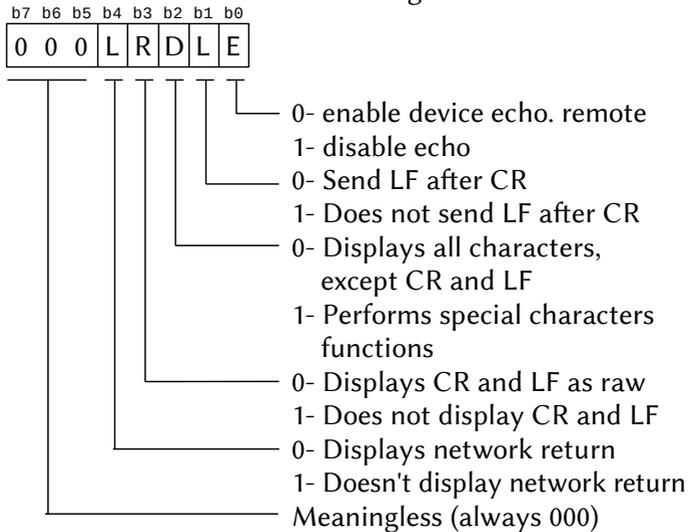
Function: Run telnet session using TCP. <signal> is a one-byte value where only bit 1 has meaning. If it is 1, it means that the telnet application does not add the character LF after the CR; if it is 0, pressing RETURN will send CR + LF to the remote host.

NETTERM (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETTERM ([<url | IP: port>], <flags>)

Function: Run telnet session using TCP. This command does not perform special translation of ESC code (&H1B). <flags>

must be kept at 0 if the remote device echoes what it receives back to the GR8NET. The meaning of the bits is as follows:



NETTGTMAP (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETTGTMAP [(**<A>**, **<M>**, **<MRPD>**)]

Function: Defines the type of Memory Mapper. Unlike NETSETMAP and that this command does not restart the machine.

<A> identifies the type of memory mapped and the location of the special register set.

<M> 0 – Reading disabled

1 – Reading enabled

2 – Automatic detection (default)

<MRPD> RAM mapped with pending disable bit

(0 – Enable; 1 – Disable)

NETTSYNC (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETTSYNC

Function: Displays and synchronizes the system time.

NETVARBRSTR (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETVARBRSTR (**<alphanumeric variable>**)

Function: Get the URL string of the location selected by the user in the browser and store it in **<alphanumeric variable>**. If the length exceeds 254 characters, an error will be generated.

NETVARBSIZE (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETVARBSIZE (<numeric variable>)

Function: Gets the size of the data loaded in bytes and stores it in <numeric variable>.

NETVARRWTH (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETVARRWTH (<current value>, <new limit>)

Function: Define the limit of the network RX window. <current value> must be a numeric variable that receives the current size (default is 0). <new limit> can be variable or numeric constant between 0 and 2047.

NETVARUDTO (command, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETVARUDTO (<current value>, <new limit>)

Function: Set UDP packet timeout for DHCP and DNS operations. <current value> is a variable that receives the current timeout and DHCP request retry count value. <new limit> is variable or constant, setting a new timeout value and counting DHCP request retries. Bits 7~0 identify the UDP timeout value (0-255), in periods of 100 ms. The default is 20 (2s). Bits 11~8 identify the number of DHCP request attempts attempted when GR8NET is started.

NETVER (function, GR8NET-BASIC)

Format: CALL NETVER

Function: Displays the GR8NET firmware version in the screen.

NEXTOR (command, Nextor)

Format: CALL NEXTOR

Function: Displays the list of commands added by Nextor.

NSCAN (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2)

Format: CALL NSCAN

Function: Causes the Hitachi MB-H2 micro's built-in data reader to search for empty parts on the tape.

OFFHOOK (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL OFFHOOK

Function: Lift the phone handset.

OFFLINE (command, Network-BASIC, SVI-Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL OFFLINE [Network-BASIC]

Function: Disconnects the computer from the network. This instruction is only available to students and must be preceded by CALL NETINIT. Short version: _OFFL.

Format: CALL OFFLINE [SVI-Modem BASIC]

Function: Take the modem offline.

ON EVENT (n) GOSUB (statement, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL ON EVENT (<event number>) GOSUB

Function: Defines the subroutine that will be executed when a specific event occurs. <event number> can be:

1~4 – Stops when playback of the specified instrument ends.

5 – Stops when rhythm playback ends.

6 – Interrupts according to the time programmed in the FM unit timer.

If <event number> is omitted, the command will be applied to all events. The priority of the events is as follows:

1st – BASIC	5th – Instrument 4
2nd – Instrument 1	6th – Rhythm
3rd – Instrument 2	7th – Timer
4th – Instrument 3	

Short version: _ON EVEN (<event number>) GOSUB.

ONHOOK (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL ONHOOK

Function: Hangs up the telephone handset.

ONLINE (command, Network-BASIC, SVI-Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL ONLINE [Network-BASIC]

Function: Connect the computer to the network. This instruction is only available to students. Eventually it may be necessary to run CALL NETINIT beforehand. Short version: _ONLI.

Format: CALL ONLINE [SVI-Modem BASIC]

Function: Put the modem in online mode.

PACLOAD (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL PACLOAD (<PAC address>, [@]<destination address> [,<length>])

Function: Reads data from the PAC SRAM (Pana Amusement Cartridge).

<PAC address> is the absolute address of the PAC cartridge and can vary from 0000H to 1FFDH.

<destination address> is the address to which the scanned data will be transferred. If preceded by "@", it means VRAM.

<length> is the number of bytes read. If omitted, 1024 bytes (1 block) will be read.

PACSAVE (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL PACSAVE ([@]<starting address>, <PAC address> ,<length>])

Function: Writes data in the PAC SRAM (Pana Amusement Cartridge).

<start address> is the address from which the data will be read. If preceded by "@", it means VRAM.

<PAC address> is the absolute address of the PAC cartridge and can vary from 0000H to 1FFDH.

<length> is the number of bytes to write. If omitted, 1024 bytes (1 block) will be written.

PALETTE (declaration, 3, Kanji-BASIC, Hangul-BASIC, RMSX BASIC)

Format: CALL PALETTE (<palette number>, <R>, <G>,)
[MSX-BASIC version 3, Kanji-BASIC, Hangul-BASIC]

Function: Specifies the colors for the palette. <palette number> can range from 0 to 15 and "<R>, <G>, " from 0 to 7. All BASIC versions have the same syntax, except RMSX-BASIC.

Format: CALL PALETTE <palette/monitor> [RMSX BASIC]

Function: Selects the palette or monitor emulation to be used on the MSX1 computer emulated on a Turbo R machine by the rMSX emulator. <palette/monitor> can be MSX1, MSX2, GREEN or GRAY.

PAN (statement, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL PAN (<X axis>, <volume>, <string>)

Function: Generates sound according to the parameters provided.

<X axis> – Location of the generated sound. It can range from 0 to 255, with 0 corresponding to the extreme left and 255 to the extreme right.

<volume> can range from 0 to 7.

<string> – Macrocommands identical to those of the PLAY instruction for PSG, except for V, S, M and X. The string can contain up to 79 characters.

PATTERN (statement, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL PATTERN (<standard number>, <alphanum var (n)>)

Function: Defines the patterns of the rhythms through an alpha numeric matrix of one dimension (vector). Short version: PATT.

<standard number> can be 7 or 8 (only two patterns can be defined).

<alphanum var (n)> points to a vector whose indices define different aspects:

xx\$ (0) defines the size:

"3" – A quarter note times 3

"4" – A quarter note times 4

"8" – A quarter note times 8

xx\$ (1) defines "close high-hat"

xx\$ (2) defines "open high hat"

xx\$ (3) defines "bass drum"

xx\$ (4) defines "high tomtom"

xx\$ (5) defines "low tomtom"

"Close high-hat" and "open high hat" cannot be played simultaneously.

The string for indices (1) to (5) must be composed of a sequence of "0" s and "1" s that represent units of 1/12 of a quarter note. The size depends on the value defined by xx\$ (0):

xx\$ (0) = "3" → 36 characters

xx\$ (0) = "4" → 48 characters

xx\$ (0) = "8" → 96 characters

PAUSE (command, MSX-BASIC 4, ChakkariCopy BASIC,
DM- System2 BASIC, Hitachi BASIC 2)

Format: CALL PAUSE (<time>)
[MSX-BASIC 4] [DM-System2 BASIC]

Function: Pauses the execution of the program in BASIC. <time> is specified in milliseconds and can range from 0 to 65,535. It can be aborted by CTRL+STOP.

Format: CALL PAUSE [ChakkariCopy BASIC]

Function: Put the Chakkari Copy cartridge in pause mode.

Format: CALL PAUSE [Hitachi BASIC 2]

Function: Put the internal data reader of the Hitachi MB-H2 micro in pause mode.

PCM FREQ (command, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL PCM FREQ (<frequency>)

Function: Defines the sampling frequency for ADPCM. <frequency> can range from 1,800 to 49,716 Hz.

PCM VOL (controller, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL PCM VOL (<volume>)

Function: Sets the reproduction volume for ADPCM and PCM. <volume> can range from 0 to 63. Initial values are 55 for ADPCM and 32 for PCM.

PCMON (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL PCMON ([@]<starting address>, [@]<ending
address>, <rate> [,<loop>])

Function: Plays data through PCM on MSX2 onwards. Requires PCM driver.

<start address> of the data to be reproduced. If preceded by "@", it means VRAM.

<final address> of the data to be reproduced. If preceded by "@", it means VRAM.

<rate> can be: 0 → 15.75 Khz 2 → 5.25 KHz
1 → 7.875 Khz 3 → 3.9375 KHz

<loop> defines the number of times the data will be played. It can vary from 1 to 255. 0 = Infinite loop.

<address> – Is the address to be read. If greater than 65 534, the Memory Mapper specifications will be used. If it is preceded by “@”, it indicates VRAM.

<variable> is a numeric variable that will receive the value of the byte read. If omitted, the value will be displayed on the screen.

Format: CALL PEEK (<variable>, <address>[, <student number>]
[,<N>]) [Network-BASIC]

Function: Reads a byte of data from NetRAM (student or teacher) or NetRAM / RAM (teacher only).

<variable> receives the value of the read byte.

<address> must be between 7800H and 7FFFH for NetRAM.

<student number> is a number between 1 and 15. Only the teacher can use this parameter.

<N> must be used to read an address in NetRAM. Useful only for the teacher.

PEEKs (function, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL PEEKs ([@]<address>, <size>, <string variable>)

Function: Reads several consecutive bytes in Main RAM, VRAM or Memory Mapper, converts them to characters and stores them in a string variable.

<address> – Is the address to be read. If greater than 65 534, the Memory Mapper specifications will be used. If it is preceded by “@”, it indicates VRAM.

<size> – Number of bytes to be read, ranging from 1 to 255.

<string variable> receives the bytes read.

PEEKw (function, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL PEEKw ([@]<address> [,<variable>])

Function: Reads two consecutive bytes in Main RAM, VRAM or Memory Mapper.

<address> – Is the address to be read. If greater than 65 534, the Memory Mapper specifications will be used. If it is preceded by “@”, it indicates VRAM.

<variable> receives the value read. If not specified, the value read will be displayed on the screen in hex format.

PHRASE (macro-declaration, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL PHRASE (<track number>, <playlist> [,<brand>])

Function: Writes the audio playback data to the specified track.

Short version: _PHRA.

<track number> can vary from 1 to the value defined by _PLAY.

<brand> is a number that can vary from 1 to 254. If omitted, it will be considered equal to <track number>.

<playlist> contains the music macros.

A~G Plays an encrypted note with duration n (1~64, pattern 4).

or + Sustain.

- Flat.

! Returns the note to its original value (K and S commands).

On Octave (n → 1 to 8; the default is 3).

Nn Pitch (n → 25 to 120).

Ln Note length (n → 1 to 64, default: 4).

. Duration increased by 50%.

Rn Pause of duration n (n → 1 to 64, default is 4).

Wn Note duration in 1/96 units (n: 1 to 96).

Tn Time (n → 1 to 200, specified by _TEMPO).

Vn Volume (n → 1 to 100, the default is 50)

& Ligature

Mn Period in units of n / 4 (n → 3 to 8)

// The string between two bars will be considered a block of duration specified by Mn.

Sn "n" specifies the number of "Sharps" (#).

Kn "n" specifies the number of "Flats" (b).

% n "Staccato" and "tenuto". "n" specifies the time proportion of the note will be played (0% to 100%).

[] Wake up. Comma-separated strings inside the bracket are played simultaneously.

{ }n Define the notes between {} in n. (n = 1~64, default is Ln)

PITCH (declaration, MSX-Music)

Format: CALL PITCH (<n>)

Function: Fine adjustment of the sound. <n> can range from 410 to 459, the default value being 440 (central "La" tone).

PLAY (macro-declaration, MSX-Music/Audio, Hitachi-BASIC, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL PLAY (<n>, <numeric variable>) [Music /Audio]

Function: Returns in the <numeric variable> the state of the voice <n> of the OPLL (touching [-1] or not [0]). <n> can range from 0 to 9. If 0, all voices are checked. 1 to 9 checks the respective voice.

Format: CALL PLAY [Hitachi-BASIC 2]

Function: Puts the internal data reader of the Hitachi MB-H2 micro in playback mode. This instruction does not support files in ASCII mode (BASIC or data).

Format: CALL PLAY (<instrument>, <range> [,<brand>]) [SFG-BASIC]

Function: Play the previously written song with the CALL PHRASE instruction.

<instrument> is a number from 1 to 4

<range> is a number from 1 to 9, with 2 to 8 having to be previously defined by the CALL TRACK instruction and 9 when reproducing via the musical keyboard.

<brand> is a number between 1 and 255 to specify the CALL PHRASE tag used for reproduction. If omitted, the same <track> number is considered.

PLAY MK (statement, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL PLAY MK (<matrix name>)

CALL PLAY MK (<start address>, <end address>)

CALL PLAY MK (A), where the sequence A must be previously declared in the DIM and REC MK instructions.

Function: Plays file recorded by the musical keyboard.

PLAY PCM (statement, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL PLAY PCM (<file number>, <offset>, <size>, <sampling frequency>)

Function: Plays an audio file via PCM /ADPCM.

<file number> – Audio file number (0 to 15).

<offset> – Offset in units of 256 bytes.

<size> – Size in bytes of the audio file.

<sampling frequency> – Can range from 1,800 to 49,716 Hz for ADPCM and from 1,800 to 16,000 Hz for PCM.

- POKE** (statement, DM-System2 BASIC, Network-BASIC)
 Format: CALL POKE ([@]<address>, <value>) [DM-System2 BASIC]
 Function: Writes a byte in any area of Main RAM, VRAM or Memory Mapper.
 <address> – Is the address to be read. If greater than 65 534, the Memory Mapper specifications will be used. If it is preceded by “@”, it indicates VRAM.
 <value> is the value to be written. It must be in decimal between 0 and 255, it can also be an expression.
 Format: CALL POKE (<value>, <address> [,<student number>] [,<N>]) [Network-BASIC]
 Function: Writes a byte of data in NetRAM (student or teacher) or NetRAM / RAM (teacher only).
 <value> must be a decimal number between 0 and 255.
 <address> must be between 7800H and 7FFFH for NetRAM.
 <student number> is a number between 1 and 15. Only the teacher can use this parameter.
 <N> must be used to write an address on NetRAM. Useful only for the teacher.
- POKES** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL POKES ([@]<address>, <string>)
 Function: Converts a string to a sequence of bytes and saves them in any area of Main RAM, VRAM or Memory Mapper.
 <address> – Is the writing start address. If greater than 65 534, the Memory Mapper specifications will be used. “@” Indicates VRAM.
 <string> = String of characters to be converted to bytes.
- POKEW** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL POKEW ([@]<address>, <value>)
 Function: Writes two consecutive bytes to Main RAM, VRAM or Memory Mapper.
 <address> – Is the address to be written. If greater than 65 534, the Memory Mapper specifications will be used. If it is preceded by “@”, it indicates VRAM.
 <value> is the value to be written. It must be in decimal between 0 and 65,535, it can also be an expression.

PON (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL PON

Function: Starts the student search. This instruction is only available to the teacher.

PRINTERSETUP (command, FM-X BASIC)

Format: CALL PRINTERSETUP

Function: It allows printing hiragana and graphic characters on the printer connected to the Fujitsu FM-7 computer when this machine is connected to the micro FM-X using the MB22450 interface.

QDFILES (command, QuickDisk BASIC)

Format: CALL QDFILES [("QD [n]:")]

Function: Lists the contents of the specified Quick Disk device in long format, with filenames, attributes and file sizes. The listed attributes are as follows:

01 – MainRAM binary file

02 – BASIC in tokenized format

03 – BASIC or DATA in ASCII format

0B – VRAM binary file

QD [n] specifies the QuickDisk device to be used. It can range from 0 to 7, the default being 0.

QDFORMAT (command, QuickDisk BASIC)

Format: CALL QDFORMAT

Function: Formats a QuickDisk excluding all existing files. The data is recorded on a spiral track on a 2.8 inch disc. A QuickDisk can save a maximum of 20 files and has a capacity of 64 Kbytes each side, with a maximum capacity of 128 Kbytes.

QDKEY (command, QuickDisk BASIC)

Format: CALL QDKEY (<parameter>)

Function: Modifies the content of the function keys, except F7, when a QuickDisk unit is connected. When one MSX is started with a connected QuickDisk drive, the contents of most function keys are modified. CALL QDKEY allows you to switch between content.

Key	Content	New Command
F1	_RUN	CALL RUN
F2	_LOAD	CALL LOAD
F3	_BLOAD	CALL BLOAD
F4 (*)	list	LIST
F5 (*)	run	RUN + [RETURN]
F6 (**)	color 15,4,7	COLOR 15,4,7 + [RETURN]
F7	_QDKEY	CALL QDKEY
F8	_SAVE ("QD:	CALL SAVE ("QD:
F9	_BSAVE ("QD:	CALL BSAVE ("QD:
F10	_QDFILES	CALL QDFILES

(*) Generally unchanged

(**) Unchanged on Japanese, Korean machines, Philips VG-8000 and VG-8010 (not on version 8010F), Sanyo PHC-28S
 <parameter> – If 0, the default key content will be reloaded (except F7). With any other number or without a parameter the QuickDisk content will be loaded.

QDKILL (command, QuickDisk BASIC)

Format: CALL QDKEY ("QD [n:]<filename>")

Function: Deletes the last QuickDisk file. Attempting to delete another file will return an error message.

QD [n] specifies the QuickDisk device to be accessed. It can range from 0 to 7, the default being 0.

<filename> is the file to be deleted and must be in the format 8.3 characters.

RAMDISK (command, Disk-BASIC 2nd version)

Format: CALL RAMDISK (<max size>, [<created size>])

Function: Creates a RAMDISK with <maximum size> and optionally returns the actual <created size>. RAMDISK is accessed via the H: drive.

RCANCEL (command, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL RCANCEL

Function: Cancels the rhythm instruments. Using this instruction, the total of simultaneous voices goes from 6 to 8.

RCVMAIL (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL RCVMAIL (<student number>)

Function: Receives data from a student's sending mailbox in the teacher's receiving mailbox. This instruction is only available to the teacher. Mailboxes are special 256-byte areas reserved in the teacher and student's NetRAM. <student number> can vary from 1 to 15. Short version: _RCVM.

REBOOT (remote, Hangul-BASIC 4, Rookie Drive BASIC)

Format: CALL REBOOT

Function: Causes a "hot" restart of the system.

REC (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2)

Format: CALL REC

Function: Puts the internal data reader of the Hitachi MB-H2 micro in recording mode. This instruction does not support files in ASCII mode (BASIC or data).

REC MK (remote, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL REC MK (<matrix name>)

CALL REC MK (<start address>, <end address>)

Function: Records a file played by the musical keyboard.

REC PCM (command, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL REC PCM (<file number> [, SYNC] [,<offset>
[,<size>] [,<sampling frequency>])

Function: Record audio in memory through the microphone.
 <file number> – Number of the file to be written (0 to 15)
 SYNC – If 0, MSX-Audio waits until an audio signal is detected. If it is 1, recording starts immediately.
 <offset> – Offset in units of 256 bytes
 <size> – Size of the audio file
 <sampling frequency> – Can range from 1,800 to 49,716 Hz for ADPCM and from 1,800 to 16,000 Hz for PCM.

RECEIVE (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL RECEIVE ([[<drive letter>:] <filename>],
 <student number>)

Function: Receives the BASIC program from a student's computer. This instruction can be used by the teacher and students who have been authorized by the teacher with CALL ENACOM. <drive letter> can be "A:" or "B:" and can only be used by the teacher. <student number> can vary from 1 to 15. Short version: _RECE.

RECFILE (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL RECFILE (<string variable>), <numeric variable>

Function: Receive a file using a specific protocol

<string variable> contains the name of the file to be received (may include the name of the drive, if omitted, the file will be saved to the current active drive). If a file with the same name already exists on the disk, the first letter will be replaced by "\$", which will occur up to the fourth character.

<numeric variable> stores the protocol:

0 – Xmodem or Xmodem-1K

3 – Ymodem (allows you to receive multiple files simultaneously)

Upon return, <numeric variable> will contain the status:

0 – Receipt was done correctly

1 – Signal dropped (usually the connection is broken)

2 – Timed out (download has not started)

3 – Aborted operation with CTRL + X

4 – Many breaks (waiting times)

5 – Not used (no effect)

6 – Disk full

7 – File not found

8 – Recording error (write-protected disc or there is no disc)

9 – Empty file

10 – Too many attempts

RECMOD (command, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL RECMOD (<recording mode>)

Function: Sets the recording mode for the musical keyboard.

<recording mode> is a value from 0 to 3:

- 0 - Mute (does not record)
- 1 - Records the melody played on the keyboard (def)
- 2 - Records, in another area, the reproduction of a melody already recorded
- 3 - Records the performance and playback of a melody already recorded

REMOTE (remote, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL REMOTE (<device number>, <string>)

Function: Controls external devices.

<device number> can range from 0 to 15, but devices 0, 1 and 2 are already assigned (Commands 3 to 15 must be assigned with CALL DEF UNIV.):

0 – Pioneer Laser Vision Player LD-700

1 – Pioneer Laser Vision Player LD-1100

2 – Pioneer Component Display SD-26

<string> contains a character code of up to 16 commands according to the following table (the “+” character can be omitted):

Functions of the LD-700 model (device 0):

A+	48	Repeat A	M+	58	Multi-speed forward
A-	44	Repeat B	M-	55	Multi-speed reverse
C+	47	Inc. multi-speed	P+	17	Play
C-	46	Dec. multi-speed	P@	16	Reject
D+	43	Presents number of frame/chapter	P/	18	Pause
F+	10	Quick search	S+	54	Pauses frame to frame forward
F-	11	Rev. quick search	S-	50	Pauses frame to frame reverse
L+	4B	Audio 1 / left	T+	51	Fast forward (3x)
L-	49	Audio 2 / right	T-	59	Fast rew (3x)
L@	4A	Estéreo	X+	45	Clear

Functions of the LD-1100 model (device 1):

D+	Displays frame num	P+	Play
D-	Displays chapter num	P@	Reject
F+	Quick search	P/	Pausa
F-	Rev. quick search	S+	Pauses frame to frame forward
L+	Audio 1 / left	S-	Pauses frame to frame reverse
L-	Audio 2 / right	T+	Fast forward (3x)
M+	Slow search ahead	T-	Fast rew (3x)
M-	Slow search reverse		

Functions of the SD-26 model (device 2):

1	01	Channel A	F+	10	Increment channel (+)
2	02	Channel B	F-	11	Decrement channel (-)
3	03	Channel C	K1	0C	Input: TV
4	04	Channel D	K2	0D	Input: Video-Disc
5	05	Channel E	K3	0E	Input: Video 1
6	06	Channel F	K4	0F	Input: Video 2
7	07	Channel G	O@	1C	Turns on / off
8	08	Channel H	V+	0A	Increases volume (+)
9	00	Channel I	V-	0B	Decrease volume (-)
0	00	Channel J		48	Sleep
C-	46	Channel K		49	Mute
C+	47	Channel L		4A	Display call
		4D			Channel M
		4E			Channel N
		4F			Channel O
		50			Channel P

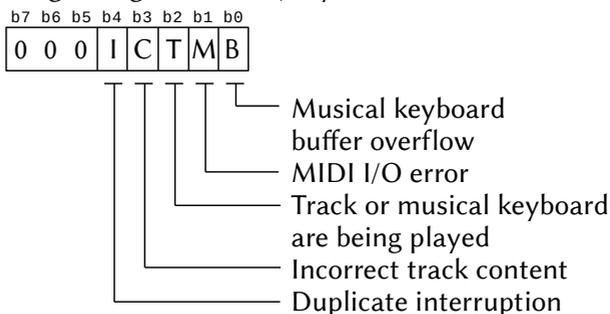
Other functions:

M@	ID	Turns on / off tape monitor
P-	15	Reverse play (for tape-deck)
W		Hold video (for laser vision player)
R+	14	Records (for tape-deck)
R-	12	Mute record (for tape-deck)

REPORT (System variable, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL REPORT ([<error flag>] [, <mark number>]
[, <number of repetitions remaining>])

Function: Returns the system variables. Short version: _REPO.
<error flag> integer variable (only the lowest 5 bits are valid):



<mark number> is an integer variable that returns the mark number of the last reproduced section.

<number of repetitions remaining> returns the number of times the rhythm will still be played.

- RESET** (command, RMSX BASIC)
 Format: CALL RESET
 Function: Restart the MSX1 or MSX2 computer emulated on a Turbo R machine by the rMSX emulator. It is a hot reset, as with DEFUSR=0: X=USR (0).
- REW** (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2)
 Format: CALL REW
 Function: Causes the internal data reader of the Hitachi MB-H2 micro to rewind the tape.
- RHYTHM** (statement, SFG-BASIC)
 Format: CALL RHYTHM (<repetition number> [,<brand number>])
 Function: Reproduces the rhythm patterns selected by the CALL SELPATTERN command. Short version: _RHYT.
 <number of repetitions> specifies the number of repetitions in 1/4 note units.
 <brand number> can range from 1 to 254. If omitted, the value 10 will be used.
- RMDIR** (command, Disk-BASIC 2nd version)
 Format: CALL RMDIR (<subdirectory>)
 Function: Removes the specified <subdirectory>.
- RSTOP** (declaration, SFG-BASIC)
 Format: CALL RSTOP
 Function: Stops rhythm playback. Short version: _RSTO.
- RTCINI** (command, Hangul-BASIC 3)
 Format: CALL RTCINI
 Function: Resets the content of the RTC SRAM to the initial standard corresponding to MSX1.
- RTSOFF** (command, New Modem BASIC)
 Format: CALL RTSOFF
 Function: Turns off the carrier wave (RTS = Request To Send). This instruction works only when the DTR (Data Terminal Ready) signal is active (CALL DTRON).

Format: CALL SAVE ("[QD [n]:]" <filename> "[,A])
 [QuickDisk-BASIC]

Function: Saves data from memory or a BASIC program to a QuickDisk device. The data will always be saved in ASCII text. The BASIC program can be saved in ASCII or tokenized text.

QD [n] specifies the QuickDisk device to be used. It can range from 0 to 7, the default being 0.

<filename> must be in the format 8.3 characters.

[,A], if specified, saves the BASIC file as ASCII text.

SAVE PCM (command, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL SAVE PCM (<filename>, <file number>)

Function: Save audio file to disk.

<filename> is name of the file to be written to the disc

<file number> is the file number in the audio memory. It can range from 0 to 15.

SCLOAD (command, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL SCLOAD [(<filename>)]

Function: Load data from the cassette to VRAM for display on the screen (only available for Screen 2)

SCOPY (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 3)

Format: CALL SCOPY (<c1> [,<c2>, <c3>, <c4>... <c15>])

Function: Sends to the printer a copy of a graphic screen in Screens 2, 4 or 5 using a formula based on the selected colors. The difference with CALL CSCOPY is unknown.

SCSAVE (remote, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL SCSAVE (<filename>, [<baud rate>])

Function: Records VRAM data on the cassette. <baud rate> can be 1 (for 1200 baud) or 2 (for 2400 baud). If not specified, the baud rate defined in SCREEN will be used. Command available only for Screen 2.

SEARCH (remote, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL SEARCH (<type>, {F | C}, <frame/chapter number>)

Function: Search the specified frame or chapter in the Laser Vision Player. <type> can be 0 for LD-700 or 1 for LD-1100. “F” search for a frame and “C” search for a chapter. <frame/ chapter number> can vary between 0 and 54000.

SELPATTERN (statement, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL SELPATTERN (<standard number>)

Function: Select the rhythm patterns for playback. Short

version: _SELP.

<pattern number> can vary from 1 to 8, with 1 to 6 being the ROM patterns and 7 and 8 being the patterns defined by the _PATTERN command. The ROM defaults are:

1 – 16 beats	4 – Rock
2 – Slow rock	5 – Disco
3 – Waltz	6 – Swing

SELVOICE (statement, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL SELVOICE ([<voice 1>] [, <voice 2>]... [, <voice 8>])

Function: Select up to 8 voices chosen from the data loaded by the _CLDVOICE command and execute them. <voice x> must correspond to the voice number created by the FM Voicing Program. The numbers from 49 to 56 are voices defined by the _MODISNT command (these numbers will be used by default if the voice parameters are omitted).

SEND (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL SEND ([[<unit name>:] <filename>] [, <student number>]])

Function: Sends the BASIC program to (other) students' computers. This instruction can be used by the teacher and students who have been authorized by the teacher with CALL ENACOM. <unit name> can be “A:” or “B:” and <student number> can range from 0 to 15. If <filename> is omitted, the BASIC program that is in the micro sender's memory will be sent.

SENDFILE (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL SENDFILE (<string variable>), <numeric variable>

Function: Send a file using a specific protocol.

<string variable> contains the name of the file to be sent (may include the name of the drive, if omitted, the file will be read from the current active drive).

<numeric variable> stores the protocol to be used:

1 – Xmodem.

2 – Ymodem-1K.

3 – Ymodem (allows only one file at a time).

Upon return, <numeric variable> will contain the status:

0 – Submission was successful.

1 – Signal dropped (usually the connection is broken).

2 – Timed out (upload has not started).

3 – Aborted operation with CTRL + X.

4 – Many breaks (waiting times).

5 – Not used (no effect).

6 – Disk full.

7 – File not found.

8 – Recording error (write-protected disc or no disc).

9 – Empty file.

10 – Too many attempts.

SEOFF (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL SEOFF

Function: Stops the playback of the sound effect. Requires SE driver.

SEON (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL SEON (<number>)

Function: Reproduces a sound effect from a table. Requires SE driver. <number> is the number of the sound effect to be played. It can range from 0 to 255, with 0 interrupting playback.

SET PCM (command, MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL SET PCM (<file number>, <device number>, <mode>, <parameter 1>, <parameter 2>, <sampling freq>)

Function: Defines parameters for the audio files. The parameters are defined for the following commands:

CONVA CONVP COPY PCM
 LOAD PCM MK PCM PLAY PCM
 REC PCM SAVE PCM

<file number> – File number in the audio memory. It can range from 0 to 15.

<device number> follows the table below:

device	Device name	Mode	Parameter 1	Parameter 2
0	External RAM	0/1	–	Size
5	VRAM	0/1	Address	Size

The address and size are defined in units of 256 bytes.

<mode> can be: 0 – ADPCM, 1 – PCM

<sampling freq> can range from 1,800 to 49,716 Hz for ADPCM and from 1,800 to 16,000 Hz for PCM.

SETBIN (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL SETBIN (@<address>)

Function: Specifies the starting address of the binary table according to the binary system. <address> is the starting address of the binary table. The least significant bit is ignored. It is necessary to use "@" in front of <address> to put it in VRAM, otherwise an error will occur because the table cannot be placed in the Main RAM.

SETPLT (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL SETPLT (<address>)

Function: Defines the starting address of the color palette table. The table is 32 bytes long and the default address is C0000H.

SETSE (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL SETSE (<address>)

Function: Defines the starting address of the sound effects table. (Requires SE driver). <address> is the starting address of the table (0 to FFFFH), the initialization value being C000H.

SIN (function, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL SIN (<variable>, <angle>, <value>)

Function: Returns the sine of an angle. The result is obtained by multiplying the sine of the angle by a numerical value.

<variable> is a numeric variable that will receive the result.
 <angle> is the angle value in degrees.
 <value> is a number of two bytes (integer value).

SJIS (statement, Kanji-BASIC)

Format: CALL SJIS (<string variable>, <Kanji characters>)

Function: Converts a character in JIS code to a value of 4 hexadecimal digits.

<string variable> receives the 4 hexadecimal digits in ASCII
 <Kanji characters> is a 2-byte Kanji character string where only the first one will be converted.

SNDCMD (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL SNDCMD (<instruction>, [<student number>])

Function: Sends BASIC instructions to the student's computer and executes them. CHR\$(13) is sent at the end of the instruction and it is possible to send several by separating them with CHR\$(13). This instruction is only available to the teacher. <student number> can vary from 1 to 15. Short version: _SNDC.

SNDMAIL (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL SNDMAIL (<student number>)

Function: Sends data from the teacher's mailbox to a student's mailbox. This instruction is only available to the teacher. Mailboxes are special 256-byte areas reserved in the teacher and student NetRAM. <student number> can vary from 1 to 15. Short version: _SNDM.

SNDRUN (command, Network-BASIC)

Format: CALL SNDRUN ([[<unit name>:]<filename>] [,<student number>])

Function: Send the BASIC program to the student's computer and execute it. This instruction is only available to the teacher. If a student already has a BASIC program in memory, it will be deleted and the student will receive a new one. <unit name> can be "A:" or "B:" and <student number> can range from 0 to 15. If <filename> is omitted, the BASIC program that is in the micro sender's memory will be sent. Short version _SNDR.

SOUND (statement, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL SOUND (<instrument number>, <control mode>
 [,<pitch>] [,<fine tuning>] [,<speed>] [,<volume>])

Function: Controls instruments directly.

<instrument number> chooses the instrument from those defined by the _INST instruction.

<control mode> can be:

0 – No key on / offline key

1 – Key on (note is audible)

2 – Key off (the note is at zero volume)

<pitch> can range from 25 to 120.

<fine adjustment> of the pitch. It can range from 0 to 100.

<volume> can range from 0 to 100, with 100 being the maximum volume (default).

SPEAKEROFF (remote, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL SPEAKEROFF

Function: Turns off the speaker.

SPEAKERON (remote, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL SPEAKERON

Function: Turn on the speaker.

SPOLOFF (command, Printer-BASIC)

Format: CALL SPOLOFF

Function: Disables the print spooler but does not empty the 32 Kbyte buffer. To clear the temporary buffer, it is necessary to use LPRINT or LLIST.

SPOLON (command, Printer-BASIC)

Format: CALL SPOLON

Function: Activates the print spooler, reserving a 32 Kbyte buffer for it.

STANBY (statement, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL STANDBY

Function: Temporarily stop playback. Short version: _STAN.

- START** (command, Mega Assembler, SFG-BASIC)
 Format: CALL START [Mega Assembler]
 Function: Calls the Mega Assembler by initializing its variables. To call the MA without initializing, use `_ASM`.
 Format: CALL START [SFG-BASIC]
 Function: Resumes playback interrupted by `_STANDBY`. Short version: `_STAR`.
- STATUS** (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL STATUS
 Function: Displays the list of installed drivers for DM-System2.
- STDBY** (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 2)
 Format: CALL STDBY
 Function: Puts the internal data reader of the Hitachi MB-H2 micro in standby/suspend mode to save battery power.
- STOP** (command, Hitachi-BASIC, Network-BASIC, SFG-BASIC)
 Format: CALL STOP [Hitachi-BASIC 2]
 Function: Stops the tape movement in the internal data reader of the Hitachi MB-H2 micro.
 Format: CALL STOP (<student number>) [Network-BASIC]
 Function: Stops the BASIC program running on the student's computer. This instruction is only available to the teacher. <student number> can vary from 1 to 15. If omitted or equal to zero, execution will be interrupted on all student computers.
 Format: CALL STOP (<instrument>) [SFG-BASIC]
 Function: Suspend the playback of a specific instrument and, optionally, the digitization of the musical keyboard (when assigned to an instrument instead of a track by the CALL PLAY instruction). <instrument> must be a number between 1 and 4.
- STOPM** (statement, MSX-Audio, MSX-Music)
 Format: CALL STOPM
 Function: Stops the music played by MSX-Audio or MSX-Music.

SYMBOL (statement, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL SYMBOL (X, Y), CHR\$ (<character code>), [<hor>],
 [<vert>], [<color>], [<rotation>]

Function: Displays a character in Screen 2 in the coordinates

(X, Y). Optional parameters are as follows:

<character code> – ASCII character code

<hor> – Horizontal size multiplier. It can be between 1 and 32. If omitted, the value used will be 1.

<vert> – Vertical size multiplier. It can be between 1 and 24. If omitted, the value used will be 1.

<color> – Color code from 0 to 15. If omitted, the color defined by the COLOR command will be used.

<rotation> defines the character rotation.

0 – No rotation

1 – 90 degree rotation to the right

2 – 180 degree rotation to the right

3 – 270 degree rotation to the right

SYNCOUT (command, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL SYNCOUT

Function: Sends a synchronization signal to the cassette register.

Short version: _SYNC.

SYSOFF (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL SYSOFF

Function: Uninstall DM-System2 BASIC and return to standard MSX-BASIC.

SYSON (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL SYSON

Function: Initializes the DM-System2 BASIC.

SYSTEM (command, Disk-BASIC, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL SYSTEM [Disk-BASIC version 1]

Function: Calls MSXDOS.

Format: CALL SYSTEM ["[<device>:] [\ <path>] [[\<filename>]"]]
 [Disk-BASIC version 2]

Function: Calls MSXDOS2, optionally executing the specified file or entering the subdirectory.

- Format: CALL SYSTEM [DM-System2 BASIC]
 Function: Uninstall DM-System2 and return to the standard MSX-BASIC. If preceded by CALL SYSOFF, uninstall DM-System2 and call MSXDOS.
- TABOFF** (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 3)
 Format: CALL TABOFF
 Function: Disables the Drawing Tablet application on the Hitachi MB-H3 micro.
- TABON** (command, Hitachi-BASIC version 3)
 Format: CALL TABON
 Function: Launch the Drawing Tablet application on the Hitachi micro MB-H3.
- TALK** (statement, Network BASIC)
 Format: CALL TALK (<message>, [<micro number>])
 Function: Sends a message of up to 56 characters to the teacher or another student, when allowed by the teacher with CALL ENACOM. This instruction is only available to students. <micro number> can vary from 1 to 15 and can be obtained through CALL WHO. If it is 0, the message will be sent to the teacher. If, after sending the message, <micro number> contains 255, it failed, if it contains 0, the message was sent successfully.
- TDIAL** (remote, New Modem BASIC, SVI Modem BASIC)
 Format: CALL TDIAL (<string variable>,<numeric variable> [New Modem BASIC])
 Function: Calls a specific phone number via tone dialing. This instruction can only be used in a Terminal program. <string variable> stores the phone number to be called, where only the characters “0 123456789-AaBbCcDd*#” are allowed (the character “-” corresponds to a 1 second wait). <numeric variable> returns the state: if it is 0, the input value is correct; otherwise not.
 Format: CALL TDIAL (“<phone number>”) [SVI Modem BASIC]
 Function: Calls a specific phone number via tone dialing. <phone number> must be in quotation marks and only the characters “0 123456789AaBbCcDd” are allowed.

TEMPER (declaration, MSX-Music and MSX-Audio)

Format: CALL TEMPER (<n>)

Function: Sets the battery mode for OPLL. <n> can range from 0 to 21, the meaning of which is as follows:

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 0 – Pythograph | 11 – Pure Rhythm Cis + (B-) |
| 1 – Mintone | 12 – Pure rhythm D + (H-) |
| 2 – Welkmeyster | 13 – Pure rhythm Es + (C-) |
| 3 – Welkmeyster (adjusted) | 14 – Pure rhythm E + (Cis-) |
| 4 – Welkmeyster (separate) | 15 – Pure rhythm F + (D-) |
| 5 – Kilanbuger | 16 – Pure rhythm Fis + (Es-) |
| 6 – Kilanbuger (adjusted) | 17 – Pure rhythm G + (E-) |
| 7 – Velotte Young | 18 – Pure Rhythm Gis + (F-) |
| 8 – Lamour | 19 – Pure rhythm A + (Fis-) |
| 9 – Perfect rhythm (default) | 20 – Pure rhythm B- (G-) |
| 10 – Pure rhythm C + (A-) | 21 – Pure rhythm H- (Gis-) |

TEMPO (statement, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL TEMPO (<time value>)

Function: Defines the “time” in quarter note units that will be played in one minute. It can range from 0 to 200, with 0 interrupting playback. Short version: _TEMP.

TERMINAL (command, New Modem BASIC)

Format: CALL TERMINAL (<numeric variable>)

Function: Allows you to communicate with a BBS. Almost all keys pressed are sent over the phone line and what comes from the phone line is displayed on the screen. This instruction can only be used in a Terminal program. <numeric variable> stores the state:

- 1 – The signal has dropped (usually broken connection).
- 5 – The automatic login character (from the BBS) was received.
- 11 – The HOME key was pressed to return to BASIC. It can be used to return to the Terminal menu.
- 220 – GRAPH+I was pressed to return to BASIC. They can be used to manually send the name and password to a BBS without automatic login.

TIMER (command, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL TIMER (<period> [,<brand number>])

Function: Starts and sets the timer period.

<period> is defined in units of 1/100 seconds and can vary from 1 to 24,000.

<brand number> can be any number between 1 and 254. If omitted, the number 11 will be used.

TRACE OFF (command, MSX Aid BASIC)

Format: CALL TRACE OFF

Function: Stops program execution tracking.

TRACE ON (command, MSX Aid BASIC)

Format: CALL TRACE ON

Function: It starts tracking the execution of the program in the same way as the TRON instruction, but whenever the execution skips to another line, it sends the number of the executed line to the printer.

TRACK (declaration, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL TRACK (<number of tracks>)

Function: Defines the number of tracks used by _PHRASE or _PLAY. <number of tracks> for varying from 1 to 8; if omitted, the value will be 1. Short version: _TRAC.

TRANSPOSE (declaration, MSX-Music and MSX-Audio, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL TRANSPOSE (<n>) [MSX Music /Audio]

Function: Changes the key. <n> can vary from -12799 to +12799, with 100 units corresponding to halftone. The default value is 0.

Format: CALL TRANSPOSE (<n>) [SFG-BASIC]

Function: Changes the key. <n> can range from -12 to +12 in halftone increments. The default value is 0.

TSTOP (command, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL TSTOP

Function: Stops the timer. The _INIT statement also interrupts the timer. Short version: _TSTO.

- TUNE** (command, SFG-BASIC)
 Format: CALL TUNE (<numeric value>)
 Function: Tunes the FM Tone Generation system with the other instruments. <numeric value> can range from -100 to +100, which corresponds to a semitone.
- UPPER** (function, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL UPPER (<variable>, <alphanumeric string>)
 Function: Converts the alphabetic characters of the <alphanumeric string> to uppercase and returns it in the <variable>.
- USBCD** (remote, RookieDrive BASIC)
 Format: CALL USBCD ("<directory>")
 Function: Change the active directory on the USB device.
- USBERROR** (statement, RookieDrive BASIC)
 Format: CALL USBERROR
 Function: Displays the stored error code whenever a USB transaction fails for any reason. Only the error of the last executed USB transaction is stored.
- USBFILES** (remote, RookieDrive BASIC)
 Format: CALL USBFILES
 Function: Displays the list of disk images that are in the root directory of the USB virtual drive. The execution of this instruction takes the disk to the "offline" state. To return to the "online" state, use CALL INSERTDISK or CALL REBOOT.
- USBRESET** (remote, RookieDrive BASIC)
 Format: CALL USBRESET
 Function: Repeat the initialization procedure that is performed when a standard USB floppy drive is connected to a Rookie Drive interface.
- USERHYTHM** (statement, SFG-BASIC)
 Format: CALL USERHYTHM
 Function: Enables the rhythm instruments (drums) for use. These instruments use two FM voices; so the number of available voices drops from 8 to 6 with the rhythm enabled. Short version: _USER.

USR (command, Nextor)

Format: CALL USR (<execution address>, [<registers>])

Function: Calls a routine in Assembler, optionally loading registers with specific values beforehand.

<execution address> is the starting address of the routine.

If “-1” is specified, the routine will only return without error (useful for detecting Nextor in BASIC).

<registradores> is a pointer to a 12-byte buffer where the values of the registers are specified in the sequence “F, A, C, B, E, D, L, H, IXl, IXh, IYl, Iyh”.

VARLIST (command, MSX Aid BASIC)

Format: CALL VARLIST [(["<variable>"] [, P]])]

Function: Displays a list of all variables already used by the MSX-BASIC program that is in memory. If <variable> is specified (1 or 2 characters), line numbers with the variable in question will be listed. If the second character is an asterisk (*), all variables that start with the first character are considered. With parameter P, the data will be sent to the printer. Without any parameters, the complete list will be displayed on the screen.

VCOPY (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL VCOPY (<X0>, <Y0>) - (<X1>, <Y1>) [,<PgF>] TO
 (<X2>, <Y2> - <X3>, <Y3>) [,<PgD>] [,<R>]
 [ON (<X4>, <Y4>)] [,<logical operator>]

Function: Copies a rectangular area of VRAM to another with zoom in / out and rotation.

<X0> - X coordinate of the first point in the source area.

<Y0> - Y coordinate of the first point in the source area.

<X1> - X coordinate of the second point in the source area.

<Y1> - Y coordinate of the second point in the source area.

<PgF> - VRAM source page.

<X2> - X coord of the first corner of the destination area.

<Y2> - Y coord of the first corner of the destination area.

<X3> - X coord of the opposite corner of the target area.

<Y3> - Y coord of the opposite corner of the target area.

<PgD> - VRAM's landing page.

<R> – Clockwise rotation in degrees.

<X4> – X coordinate of the rotation axis (X2 is standard).

<Y4> – Y coordinate of the rotation axis (Y2 is standard).

Note: <X> can vary from 0 to 511 and <Y> from 0 to 1023.

<LO> is the logical operator and can be [T]PSET, [T]PRESET, [T]XOR, [T]OR or [T]AND. The default is PSET.

VDPWAIT (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL VDPWAIT

Function: Wait until the VDP finishes executing the command.

SEE (statement, Hangul-BASIC 4)

Format: CALL VER

Function: Displays the version of Hangul-BASIC.

VIDEO (function, Pioneer-BASIC)

Format: CALL VIDEO (<variable>)

Function: Returns in the <variable> the type of video selection currently active. The returned value can be:
 0 – Computer screen (internal synchronization)
 1 – Superimpose
 2 – External video

VLIST (declaration, SFG-BASIC)

Format: CALL VLIST

Function: Displays the instrument table on the screen.

VMOFF (control, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL VMOFF [(<segment number>)]

Function: Aborts the macro operation.

VMON (command, DM-System2 BASIC)

Format: CALL VMON (<start address>, [<start value>])

Function: VDP processing macro operation.

<start address> specifies the start of the macro code.

<initial value>, if specified, causes the macro operation to start only after being stored in the VDP macro variable.

- VMWAIT** (command, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL VMWAIT
 Function: Puts the system on hold until the VDP macro operation is complete. CTRL+STOP can be used to exit this command.
- VOICE** (declaration, MSX-Music and MSX-Audio)
 Format: CALL VOICE ([@ <n1>], [@ <n2>], [@ <n9>])
 Function: Specifies the instruments to be used in each voice. <nx> can range from 0 to 63. The default value is 0.
- VOICE COPY** (statement, MSX-Music and MSX-Audio)
 Format: CALL VOICE COPY (@<n1>, - <n2>)
 Function: Copies data related to the instruments to / from a matrix variable type DIM A%(16). <n1> is the source and <n2> the destination. <n1> can range from 0 to 63 and <n2> can only be 63, or <n1> and <n2> can be a matrix variable.
- WAIT** (command, DM-System2 BASIC, SFG-BASIC)
 Format: CALL WAIT (<time>) [DM-System2 BASIC]
 Function: Wait for a defined time. It can be aborted by CTRL+STOP. <time> is defined in 1/60 second units and can range from 0 to 32767.
 Format: CALL WAIT (<event number>) [SFG-BASIC]
 Function: Suspend the interruption when the melody is being played. <event number> can be:
 1~4 – Suspend while playing the respective instrument.
 5 – Suspend during rhythm playback.
 6 – Suspend until the timer time is zero.
- WHO** (statement, Network BASIC)
 Format: CALL WHO (<micro number>)
 Function: Returns the number of the computer in the MSX network. <micro number> can range from 0 to 15, where 0 is the teacher's micro.
- XREF** (statement, MSX Aid BASIC)
 Format: CALL XREF [([<line number>] [, P]])

Function: Displays a list with all the linked lines of an MSX-BASIC program that is in memory (GOSUB, GOTO, RESUME, RESTORE, RETURN instructions). <line number> is used to limit the list to a specified line number. With parameter P, the data will be sent to the printer. Without any parameters, the complete list will be displayed on the screen.

XY (command, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL XY (<X coordinate>, <Y coordinate>)
 Function: Changes the coordinates of the graphic accumulator.

YMMM (declaration, DM-System2 BASIC)
 Format: CALL YMMM (<X0>, <Y0>) – [STEP] (<X1>, <Y1>) TO (<X2>, <Y2>)
 Function: Executes the YMMM command (quick copy in bytes in the Y direction) of the VDP. Available for Screens 5 to 12.
 <X0> – X coordinate of the first point in the source area.
 <Y0> – Y coordinate of the first point in the source area.
 <X1> – X coordinate of the second point in the source area.
 <Y1> – Y coordinate of the second point in the source area.
 <X2> – Left X coordinate of the target area.
 <Y2> – Upper Y coordinate of the target area.
 STEP, if specified, indicates relative coordinates.
 Note: <X> can vary from 0 to 511 and <Y> from 0 to 1023.

3.4 – MSX-BASIC ERROR CODES

- 01 NEXT without FOR
- 02 Syntax error
- 03 RETURN without GOSUB
- 04 Out of DATA
- 05 Illegal function call
- 06 Overflow
- 07 Out of memory
- 08 Undefined line number
- 09 Subscript out of range
- 10 Redimensioned array
- 11 Division by zero

- 12 Illegal direct
- 13 Type mismatch
- 14 Out of string space
- 15 String too long
- 16 String formula too complex
- 17 Can't CONTINUE
- 18 Undefined user function
- 19 Device I/O error
- 20 Verify error
- 21 No RESUME
- 22 RESUME without error
- 23 Unprintable error
- 24 Missing operand
- 25 Line buffer overflow
- 26~49 Unprintable error
- 50 FIELD overflow
- 51 Internal error
- 52 Bad file number
- 53 File not found
- 54 File already open
- 55 Input past end
- 56 Bad filename
- 57 Direct statement in file
- 58 Sequential I/O only
- 59 File not OPEN
- 60 Bad FAT
- 61 Bad file mode
- 62 Bad drive name
- 63 Bad sector
- 64 File still open
- 65 File already exists
- 66 Disk full
- 67 Too many files
- 68 Disk write protected
- 69 Disk I/O error
- 70 Disk offline
- 71 RENAME across disk
- 72 File write protected

- 73 Directory already exists
- 74 Directory not found
- 75 RAM disk already exists
- 76 Invalid device driver *
- 77 Invalid device or LUN *
- 78 Invalid partition number *
- 79 Partition already in use *
- 80~255 Unprintable error

Obs. The codes marked with “*” (76 a 79) are for Nextor only.

4 – MSXDOS

COMMAND NAME (command type, COMMAND version)

Format: Valid formats for the command

Function: Command operation mode

Internal commands are commands executed directly by COMMAND.COM, and external commands are loaded from the disk.

The COMMAND version indicates the version for which the command is implemented. Values separated by “-” indicate that there are differences in syntax or behavior for different versions. Next there is a short description of the versions.

1 – MSXDOS version 1.0

2 – MSXDOS version 2.0 (Command up to version 2.3)

2.41 – MSXDOS version 2.0 (Command version 2.41)

K – Kanji-ROM required

4.1 – FORMAT NOTATION

<filename> – Filename in the form: A:\ dir1 \ dir2 \ file.ext

<compound filename> – Multiple filenames in the above format

<path> – Path in the form: A:\ dir1 \ dir2 \

[] delimits optional parameter.

| it means that only one of the items can be used (OR).

{ } delimits option.

Chars in parentheses after some options for some commands indicate the version of COMMAND for which that option is available.

A <device> can be:

CON Console (Keyboard)

CRT Video

PRN Printer

NULL Null

AUX Auxiliary

COM Serial port

Or whatever is installed.

4.1.1 – Description of filenames extensions

- ACC Music Creator accompaniment data files
- ARC File(s) compressed in ARC format by System Enhancement Associates (SEA). Tools to extract are UNARC.COM (v1.6) and UNP.COM (v1.0 by Pierre Gielen).
- ARC File(s) compressed in Russian ARC format, incompatible with SEA's ARC format. Tools to extract are XARC.COM (v1.01) and ARCDE.COM (v1.03).
- ARJ File(s) compressed in ARJ format. Tool to extract are UNARC.COM (v1.10) and UNP.COM (v1.0 by Pierre Gielen).
- APT Studio FM pattern data file.
- ASC Plain text (ASCII format) that can contain a BASIC program or data.
- ASM Assembler text file.
- ASN Assignment files for MIDI Blaster
- BAS BASIC program listing tokenized. These files can be executed from MSX-DOS with the BASIC name.bas command.
- BAT Batch files (plain text) interpreted by MSX-DOS.
- BGM MuSICA binary music file. MuSICA is a software developed by ASCII to create music on 17 voices with PSG, FM and Konami's SCC.
- BGM MSX-FAN music file. Not to be confused with MuSICA files. Songs in this format were contained in all their disk magazines, and later a specific player was released that even supported playback on MIDI.
- BGM Bloable MSX-MUSIC file created by the BIT2BGM.COM utility of Uwe Schröder that converts Synth Saurus musical files.
- BIN Binary file created with the BASIC BSAVE instruction. Loads with BLOAD. The header have a length of 7 bytes (FEh + Start address + End address + execution address). It can contain machine language and data.

- BMP Image file in format . Viewable in SCREEN 7 or 8 with BMP.COM (v1.01 by SEIGA).
- BOK MSX View Picture book.
- BTM Batch files supported by MSX-DOS 2 v.2.40 or later.
- CAS BIOS level cassette image for emulators, needs a separate tool to run or write to cassette. SofaCas allows to convert software on tape to CAS file and also play it using a homemade cable PC sound output to MSX cassette input. On MSX turbo R, we can use TRCAS (by Martos) to run CAS played by SofaCas.
- CMP Compressed screen 5 image, including palette, created with DD-Graph (Dot Designer's Graph) (aka DD-Graph).
- CMP Compressed image, including palette, created with GIOS. GIOS, aka Graphical Input/Output System
- COM Command containing a binary executable under MSX-DOS. Can be also an executable file compressed with POPCOM.COM (v1.0 by Perpermint-Star).
- CPM .COM file renamed to .CPM, either to be used in some CPM emulators, or to be able to workaround GMail's nanny protection against executable files. Just rename those back to .COM to be able to run them.
- DRM File for the drums editor of the First Rate Music Hall tracker.
- DAT Synthesizer configuration file for MIDI Blaster
- DSK Disk image for emulators, needs a separate tool to run or write to normal disk. Can be launched on real MSX with SofaRunit or using Nextor's EMUFILE command.
- DUA Music-BOX dual data file (melody + sample)
- EDI File for the song editor of the First Rate Music Hall tracker.
- EMx Disk image for the floppy disk emulator (HDDEMU.COM) for MSX Turbo R by Tsuyoshi. Internal structure is same as in DSK-files. Protected disks have additional information stored to files with HED-extension.

EVA	Video file in EVA format.
EVG	Yamaha SFG-05 event data file.
FM	MSX-MUSIC BASIC file.
FMP	MSX-MUSIC BASIC file.
FMS	Synth Saurus sound file.
FNT	Font file for the Scroll Power utility.
FON	MSX View font.
G9B	Library graphic format for GFX-9000.
GE5	Synonym for .SC5. See the .SCx file description.
GEN	Plain text that contain Z80 assembly source code, used with GEN80 compiler.
GIF	Graphics Interchange Format. They can be viewed with GIFI.COM (by Kakami Hiroyuki) and converted in MSX format with ENGIF.COM (v1.2 by Pierre Gielen), SHOWEM.COM (by Steven van Loef) and GIFDUMP.COM (by Francesco Duranti)
GLx	Graph Saurus image file like BASIC instruction COPY. Can be used under BASIC.
GRA	Image file in QLD format. The viewer BLS.COM (v2.00 by SEIGA) support it.
GRP	Synonym for .SC2. See the .SCx file description. Can also be a compressed image for Graph Saurus.
GZ	File compressed in GZIP format by PC gzipers. Tool to extract is GUNZIP.COM.
HLP	MSX-DOS 2 help file (plain text).
INS	File for the instruments editor of the First Rate Music Hall tracker.
IPS	Patch for file. Needs IPS patcher.
ISH	Compressed file.

- JPG Compressed image file in format JPEG. Some viewer can show image until 1024x1024: JPD.COM (v0.23 by APi), JLD.COM (v1.11 by SEIGA) or BLS.COM (v2.00 by SEIGA). JPEG file can be produced on MSX from SCREEN 12 images with JSV.COM (v0.1 by SEIGA).
- KSS MSX music file that contains also player code. Use KSS-PLAY.COM (by NYYRIKKI) to play it.
- LDR Tokenized Basic file usually BASIC program LoadR used to load and run a program consisting of several BAS files.
- LHA File(s) compressed in LHA format. Tools to create a LHA archive are LHPACK.COM (v1.03 by H.Saito) or LHA.COM (v1.05a by Kyouju). Tools to extract are PMM.COM (v1.20 by Iita), LHARC.COM and LHEXT.COM (v1.33 by Kyouju).
- LPF Loop file for the Scroll Power utility.
- LZH Synonym for LHA.
- MAG Maki-chan V2 image file mainly used on PC-9801 and Sharp X68000. Viewable with BLS.COM (v2.00 by SEIGA)
- MAX Synonym for MAG.
- MBK Sample kit file for the music tracker MoonBlaster.
- MBM Music file for the music tracker MoonBlaster.
- MBS Sample file for the music tracker MoonBlaster.
- MBV Voice file for the music tracker MoonBlaster.
- MBW Wave song for the music tracker MoonBlaster.
- MCM Micro Cabin music file. Played by MCDRV.EXE.
- MDT MSX Music-System music data file.
- MDX Music file in a format designed for Sharp X68000. These files can be played by MPX2.COM (when driver installed with MXDRV.COM). Optional PDX files are PCM samples. Require the YAMAHA SFG-01/05 cartridge or the MFP PCM cartridge.

- MEG Plain text that contain Z80 assembly MegaAssembler source code. Extension also used for Mega-Rom images.
- MEL Music-BOX melody data file.
- MFM FM song for MoonBlaster.
- MGS Music file in format developed by AIN. Played by MGSEL.COM (when driver installed with MGSDRV.COM).
- MID Standard MIDI file (can be played using MIDI-interface or MoonSound software)
- MIF Compressed image file (MSX Image Format). Can be viewed with MIFVIEW.COM.
- MIO MIODRV Music file. Played by MIODRV Player.
- MKI Maki-chan V1 image file maintly used on Sharp X68000. Viewable with BLS.COM (v2.00 by SEIGA).
- MOD Amiga MOD file. Can be played on MSX turbo R or MoonSound.
- MP3 MPEG Audio Layer III file. MP3s can be played with Sunrise MP3 player, MPX Cartridge r1.1 by Junsoft or SE-ONE by TMT logic.
- MPK Music Player K-kaz song. Require WAMPK Player.
- MSx Synth Saurus score file.
- MSD MuSICA source music file (MML). We can also use KINROU4 (by Masarun), an alternative compiler.
- MUE HAL Music Editor MUE music file. There's a patch to add mouse support here.
- MUS FAC Soundtracker music file.
- MUS MGSDRV source MML file. Needs to be compiled to a MGS file with MGSC.COM. OTOH, MGSCR.COM can decompile MGS files back to the MUS source.
- MUS Studio FM music file (not recommended).

- MWK MoonSound Wave sample kit.
- MWM MoonBlaster for MoonSound Wave song.
- OPX OPLL driver music format.
- PAC Dump of SRAM contents (save games) of PAC or FM-PAC cartridge.
- PAT Studio FM pattern file.
- PCM Sound sample file for MSX-Turbo R.
- PCK Packaged file for First Rate Music Hall tracker. Includes 4 songs with all instruments and drums data.
- PCT Dynamic Publisher page files.
- PDX Optional PCM sample file used with an MDX file. You can play a PDX with PDXLOAD.COM by AIN. See also MDX extension.
- PIC Phillips Video Graphics image. Synonym for .SC8, so check the .SCx description. Also specific image format used of X68000, it is viewable with BLS.COM (v2.00 by SEIGA)
- PLx Graph Saurus colors palette file in Raw format (contains 8 sets of palettes with two bytes by color RG 0B). It's a companion for the respective .SRx file, so both files must always be copied together.
- PMA File(s) compressed in PMARC format. Tools to create an archive are PMARC.COM, PMARC2.COM (v2.0 by Sybex) and UNP.COM (v1.0 by Pierre Gielen). Tools to extract are PMM.COM (v1.20 by lita), PMEXE.COM (v2.0) and PMEXT.COM (v2.22). PMEXT has been ported on Windows (v1.21 by Yoshihiko Mino). To extract a PMA file on a Mac use The Unarchiver.
- PRO Music file for Pro-Tracker (by Tyfoon Soft).
- PSG PSG Sampler sample file.
- RDT MSX Music-System rhythm data file.
- RLT Music Creator real time data files.

ROM	Raw ROM image dump. Used by ROM loaders or emulators.
RTM	Synth Saurus rhythm file.
S1x	Contains the odd lines of an interlace image. For more info, see the SCx file.
S3M	See MOD file.
SAM	Music-BOX sample data file (used as drumkit file in Music Creator)
SBM	Music data for SCC and PSG soundchips.
SBS	Instruments data for SCC and PSG soundchips.
SCx	Screen-x binary image file. Can have a companion .S1x file that will contain the extra interlaced lines to double the vertical resolution. Used by image editors or BLOAD instruction with the parameter S. SC2 images can be viewed under MSX-DOS with SC2VIEW.COM (by GDX), and SC5 to SCC files with BLS.COM (by SEIGA).
SCR	Screen-2 image created with Graphos III. It's an executable file with a loader that produces an effect. Loadable on MSX-BASIC with BLOAD"file",R.
SDT	MSX Music-System sound data file (= voice data)
SDT	SCMD Music file for MSX made a MML compiler for Windows. The player is SC.COM.
SEE	Sound Effect data, for use in Sound Effect Editor (Shareware by Fuzzy Logic)
SEQ	Music Creator sequence data files.
SFM	Studio FM music file.
SMx	FAC Soundtracker sample file.
SMP	Sample file for Covox/SIMPL or MSX Turbo R.
SNG	Music file for the music editor SCC-Musixx by Tyfoon Soft.

SPT	Music Creator step time data files.
SPT	Text file for the Scroll Power utility.
SRx	Graph Saurus Image file. Requires the respective .PLx file. Can be optionally compressed with run-lenght. Uncompressed files can be loaded on MSX-BASIC with a BLOAD"FILE.SRx",S, but the external palette will have to be loaded with OPEN#1.
STP	Dynamic Publisher stamp files. Contains an image that can be loaded on a page (.STP).
Tlx	Graph Saurus tile file.
TSR	Terminate and Stay Resident programs to be used with MemMan 2.0 and higher.
TXT	Plain text file generally coded in ASCII, Ank or JIS.
VCD	Voice file for the MSX Voice Recorder (HAL Laboratory).
VCD	MuSICA voice file.
VGM	Music file that supports many sound chips, playable by VGMPLOY.COM (by Laurens Holst)
VOC	Music Creator voice data files.
VOC	Studio FM voice data file.
VOG	Yamaha SFG-05 voice data file.
WAV	Sound sample file. Can be played with the MPX Cartridge r1.1 by Junsoft.
WB	Assembler Project file. For the The WBASS2 Z80 Assembler.
XM	See MOD file.
XPC	ROM Patch file for EXECROM.COM (A&L Software)
ZIP	File(s) compressed in ZIP format by PC zipers. The best tool to extract is SUZ.COM (v1.3 by Loutrax).

4.2 – DESCRIPTION OF COMMANDS

ALIAS (internal, 2.41)

Format: ALIAS [/P] [name] [=] [value] | /R | {/L | /S} <filename>

Function: Displays or sets the alias command.

[/P] Pauses the listing when completing a screen.

[/R] Removes all defined aliases.

[/L] Loads an alias defined in <filename>.

[/S] Saves the current alias to file <filename>.

[name] is the name of the new command.

[value] is the command or string that will be assigned to
[name]

<filename> is the file on disk to which it will be written or
where the defined alias will be retrieved.

ASSIGN (internal, 2)

Format: ASSIGN [d1: [d2:]]

Function: Redirects access to drive d1: to drive d2:.

ATDIR (internal, 2)

Format: ATDIR + | -H [/H] [/P] <filename>

Function: Enables / disables hidden directory attributes.

[/P] pauses error messages when completing a screen.

+H marks file as hidden.

-H turns off the hidden file attribute, and must be followed
by /H.

ATTRIB (internal, 2-2.41)

Format: ATTRIB {+ | -H | + | -R | + | -S | + | -A} [/H] [/P] <filename>

Function: Change attributes of hidden file (H) read-only (R), system
file (S, 2.4.1 only) or archived (A, 2.4.1 only). “-H” must be
used with “/H”.

[/P] pauses error messages when completing a screen.

BASIC (internal, 1)

Format: BASIC [<prog name>]

Function: It transfers control to the BASIC interpreter and optionally
loads and executes the program <prog name>.

BEEP (internal, 2.41)

Format: BEEP

Function: Generates a beep.

BOOT (internal, 2.41)

Format: BOOT [drive]

Function: Exchanges the MSXDOS boot drive from BASIC.

BUFFERS (internal, 2)

Format: BUFFERS [number]

Function: Displays or sets the number of system I/O buffers.

CD (internal, 2)

Format: CD [[d:] [path] | -]

CHDIR [[d:] [path] | -]

Function: Display or change the current subdirectory. If “-” is specified, returns to the previous directory.

CDD (internal, 2.41)

Format: CDD [[d:] [path] | -]

Function: Displays or changes the current subdirectory and drive. If “-” is specified, it returns to the previous drive / directory.

CDPATH (internal, 2.41)

Format: CDPATH [[+ | -] [d:] path [[d:] path ...]]]

Function: Displays or sets the search path.

CHDIR (internal, 2)

Format: The same as the CD command.

Function: The same as the CD command.

CHKDSK (internal, 2)

Format: CHKDSK [d:] [/F]

Function: Checks the integrity of the files on the disk. If [/F] is specified, files will not be corrected; only information about the integrity fault will be shown.

CLS (internal, 2)

Format: CLS

Function: Clears the screen.

DEL (internal, 1)

Format: DEL [/S] [/H] [/P] <compound filename>
 ERA [/S] [/H] [/P] <compound filename>
 ERASE [/S] [/H] [/P] <compound filename>

Function: Delete one or more files.
 [/S] System files will also be deleted (2.41).
 [/H] Hidden files will also be deleted.
 [/P] Pause messages when completing a screen.

DELALL (external, Nextor)

Format: DELALL <drive letter>:
 Function: Quick format for a drive unit.

DEVINFO (external, Nextor)

Format: DEVINFO <driver slot> – [<driver subslot>]
 Function: Displays information about devices controlled by Nextor.

DIR (internal, 1-2-2.41)

Format: DIR [/S] [/H] [/W] [/P] [/2] [<compound filename>]
 Function: Displays the filenames of the disk.
 [/S] System files will also be listed (2.41)
 [/H] Hidden files will also be listed
 [/W] List filenames only
 [/P] Pauses the listing when completing a screen
 [/2] List in two columns (2.41)

DISKCOPY (external, 2)

Format: DISKCOPY [d1: [d2:]] [/X]
 Function: Copies an entire disk (d1:) to another (d2:)
 [/X] Suppress messages during copying.

DRIVERS (external, Nextor)

Format: DRIVERS
 Function: Displays information about the drivers available for Nextor and MSXDOS.

DRVINFO (external, Nextor)

Format: DRVINFO
 Function: Displays information about all available drive letters.

DSKCHK (internal, 2.41)

Format: DSKCHK [ON | OFF]

Function: Displays or sets the check status of the disc.

ECHO (internal, 1)

Format: ECHO [text]

Function: Prints a text while executing a batch file with line feed at the end.

ECHOS (internal, 1)

Format: ECHOS [text]

Function: Prints a text during the execution of a batch file without line feed at the end.

ELSE (internal, 2.41)

Format: ELSE [command]

Function: Conditional command execution. Without the [command] parameter, toggle Command Mode between ON/OFF.

END (internal, 2.41)

Format: END

Function: Ends a batch file (batch).

ENDIFF (internal, 2.41)

Format: ENDIFF [command]

Function: Increase a level and restore Command Mode.

ERA (internal, 1)

Format: The same as the DEL command.

Function: The same as the DEL command.

ERASE (internal, 1)

Format: The same as the DEL command.

Function: The same as the DEL command.

EXIT (internal, 2)

Format: EXIT [number]

Function: Exits the program executed by the COMMAND2 command. [number] is the user's error code (the default is 0).

FASTOUT (external, Nextor)

Format: FASTOUT [ON | OFF]

Function: Turns on/off the quick output for the STROUT routine, or displays the current STROUT status.

FIXDISK (external, 2)

Format: FIXDISK [d:] [/S]

Function: Updates a disk to the MSXDOS2 format.
[/S] Update complete.

FORMAT (internal, 1-2.41)

Format: FORMAT [d:] (1)

FORMAT [d: [option [/X]]] (2.41)

Function: Formats a disc. If [option] is specified, it formats with that option, without displaying a list of options.
[/X] Starts immediate formatting, without displaying a message.

FREE (internal, 2.41)

Format: FREE [d:]

Function: Displays the total, free and used space of the disk.

GOSUB (internal, 2.41)

Format: GOSUB~label

Function: Executes a subroutine within a batch file.

GOTO (internal, 2.41)

Format: GOTO~label

Function: Jump to the label within a batch file.

HELP (internal, 2)

Format: HELP [<filename>]

Function: Displays the help file <filename>.HLP or lists all if there is no argument.

HISTORY (internal, 2.41)

Format: HISTORY [/P]

Function: Displays the command history.
[/P] pauses history when completing a screen.

IF (internal, 2.41)

Format: IF [NOT] EXIST [d:] [<path>] <filename> [THEN] <command>
 or
 IF [NOT] <expr1> == | EQ | LT | GT <expr2> [AND | OR |
 XOR [NOT] <expr3> == | EQ | LT | GT <expr4>
 [AND | OR | XOR ...]] [THEN] <command>

Function: Executes a command if the given equation is true.

EQ → Equivalence (equality)

LT → Less than

GT → Greater than

IFF (internal, 2.41)

Format: IFF [NOT] EXIST [d:] [<path>] <filename> [THEN] <command>
 ;
 ENDIFF [<command>]
 or
 IFF [NOT] <expr1> == | EQ | LT | GT <expr2> [AND | OR |
 XOR [NOT] <expr3> == | EQ | LT | GT <expr4>
 [AND | OR | XOR ...]] [THEN] <command>
 ;
 ENDIFF [<command>]

Function: Turn on Command Mode if the given equation is true and turn off otherwise.

EQ → Equivalence (equality)

LT → Less than

GT → Greater than

INKEY (internal, 2.41)

Format: INKEY [<string>] %%<environment variable>

Function: Reads the value of a key pressed and stores the value read in the <environment variable>.

INPUT (internal, 2.41)

Format: INPUT [<string>] %%<environment variable>

Function: Reads a string from the keyboard or device and stores the value read in the <environment variable>.

KMODE (external, 2-K)

Format: KMODE [mode | OFF] [/S] [d:]

Function: Select or turn off the Kanji mode or update the boot to automatically install the Kanji driver.

[/S] Updates the boot code for the [d:] drive.

LOCK (external, Nextor)

Format: LOCK [<drive letter>: [ON | OFF]]

Function: Lock or unlock drive letters, or display the list of locked drives.

MAPDRV (external, Nextor)

Format: MAPDRV [/L] <drive>: <partition> | d | u [<disp index> – <LUN index>] [<driver slot> [- <subslot of the driver>]]

Function: Maps a drive unit in the Nextor system.

[/L] Locks the unit right after mapping

<drive> drive letter to be mapped

<partition>: 0 – the drive will be mapped from the device's absolute zero sector.

1 – First primary partition

2 to 4 – Refer to extended partitions 2.1 to 2.4 if partition 2 is extended; otherwise, they refer to primary partitions.

5 or more refer to extended partitions.

d – The default unit will be mapped

u – The drive will not be mapped

MD (internal, 2)

Format: MD [d:] <path>

MKDIR [d:] <path>

Function: Create a subdirectory

MEMORY (internal, 2.41)

Format: MEMORY [/K] [/P]

Function: Displays information about the system's RAM.

[/K] Displays in Kbytes.

[/P] Pause messages when completing a screen.

MKDIR (internal, 2)

Format: The same as the MD command.

Function: The same as the MD command.

MODE (internal, 1-2.41)

Format: MODE <number of characters> [<lines>]

Function: Changes the number of characters per horizontal line (1, 2 and 2.41) and the number of screen lines (only 2.41).

MORE (external, 1-2.41)

Format: <command> | MORE

Function: Display command. The output of the <command> is redirected to the MORE command. At the end of the screen, the display is paused with the message MORE until a key is pressed. <ESC> or <N> abort the command.

MOVE (internal, 2)

Format: MOVE [/H] [/P] [/S] <filename> <path>

Function: Moves files to another part of the disk.

[/H] Hidden files will also be moved.

[/S] System files will also be moved (2.41).

[/P] Pause messages when completing a screen.

MVDIR (internal, 2)

Format: MVDIR [/H] [/P] <filename> <path>

Function: Moves directories to another part of the disk.

[/H] Hidden directories will also be moved.

[/P] Pause messages when completing a screen.

NSYSVER (external, Nextor)

Format: NSYSVER <major version>. <Minor version>

Function: Changes the version number of DOS returned by the system.

PATH (internal, 2)

Format: PATH [[+ | -] [d:] <path> [[d:] <path> ...]]

Function: Displays or sets the search path for .COM and .BAT execution files.

+ Delete paths with the same name and recreate them

- Delete the specified paths

Note: without +/-, delete all existing paths and create the specified path.

PAUSE (internal, 2)

Format: PAUSE [comment]

Function: Stops the execution of a batch file (batch) until a key is pressed.

POPD (internal, 2.41)

Format: POPD [/N]

Function: Retrieves the current drive and directory.
[N] only the last drive/directory are removed from the list.

PUSHD (internal, 2.41)

Format: PUSHD [d:] [<path>]

Function: Change the default directory and drive, saving the chains.

RAMDISK (internal, 2)

Format: RAMDISK [=] [<size> [K]] [/D]

Function: Displays the size or creates a RAMDISK.
[D] Delete the existing RAMDISK and create another one.

RALLOC (external, Nextor)

Format: RALLOC [<drive letter>: [ON | OFF]]

Function: Enables or disables the reduction of allocation space for a drive unit, or displays the list of drives with reduced allocation.

RD (internal, 2)

Format: RD [/H] [/P] <filename>

RMDIR [/H] [/P] <filename>

Function: Removes one or more subdirectories.
[H] Hidden files will also be moved
[P] Pause messages when completing a screen

REM (internal, 1)

Format: REM [comments]

Function: Insert comments in a batch file.

REN (internal, 1-2.41)

Format: REN [/H] [/P] [/S] <filename 1> <filename 2>

RENAME [/H] [/P] [/S] <filename 1> <filename 2>

Function: Rename the file <filename 1> to <filename 2>.
[H] Hidden files will also be renamed
[S] System files will also be renamed (2.41)
[P] Pause messages when completing a screen

RENAME (internal, 1)

Format: The same as the REN command.

Function: The same as the REN command.

RESET (internal, 2.41)

Format: RESET

Function: Reset the system.

RETURN (internal, 2.41)

Format: RETURN [~label]

Function: Returns from a subroutine in a batch file.

RMDIR (internal, 2)

Format: The same as the RD command.

Function: The same as the RD command.

RNDIR (internal, 2)

Format: RNDIR [/H] [/P] <directory name 1> <directory name 2>

Function: Renames the subdirectory <directory name 1> with <directory name 2>.

[/H] Hidden files will also be renamed.

[/P] Pause messages when completing a screen.

SET (internal, 2-2.41)

Format: SET [/P] [name] [=] [value]

Function: Defines or displays environment items.

[/P] Pause messages when completing a screen.

The default values are as follows:

EXPAND = ON (2.41)

SEPAR = ON (2.41)

ALIAS = ON (2.41)

REDE = ON

LOWER = ON (2.41)

UPPER = OFF

ECHO = OFF

EXPERT = ON (2.41)

PROMPT =% _CWD%> (modified in 2.41)

CDPATH =; (2.41)

PATH =;

TIME = 24
 DATE = yy-mm-dd
 TEMP = A:\
 HELP = A:\ HELP
 SHELL = A:\ COMMAND2.COM

SHIFT (internal, 2.41)

Format: SHIFT [/<number>]

Function: Shifts the arguments of the batch file one position to the left. If /<number> is specified, the argument in this position will be the first to be moved; previous arguments will not be affected.

THEN (internal, 2.41)

Format: THEN [<command>]

Function: Executes a command (THEN is ignored).

TIME (internal, 1)

Format: TIME [<time>]

Function: Displays or changes the system time.

TO (internal, 2.41)

Format: TO <part_name_subdirectory> [/N] [/X | F | P | L]

TO [d:] /S [/H]

TO [d:] ...

TO [d:] -n

TO [d:] \

TO [d:] <directory_name> /M | /C [/H]

TO [d:] <directory_name> /D

TO [d:] <old name> <new name> /R

TO [d:] <source_dir> <dest_dir> /V

Function: Change, create, delete, rename or remove a directory.

[/N] Lists the directories containing <part_name_subdir>.

[/C] Create a new directory and enter it.

[/D] Remove directory.

[/F] Searches only at the beginning of the name.

[/H] Makes /S also search for hidden files
or /M or /C create a hidden directory.

[/L] Searches only at the end of the name.

- [/M] Create a new directory.
- [/P] Searches for the entire name.
- [/R] Rename first directory.
- [/S] Searches all directories and creates the TO.LST file.
- [/V] Moves subdirectory.
- [/X] Only exact names are searched.
- n Level of subdirectories.
- \ Go to the root directory.

TREE (internal, 2.41)

Format: TREE [d:] [<path>] [/P] [/?]

Function: Displays the directory tree on the disk.

- [/P] Pauses the listing when completing a screen.
- [/?] Displays a help screen.

TYPE (internal, 1-2.41)

Format: TYPE [/S] [/H] [/P] [/B] <filename> | ">" <device>
TYPE <device> <filename>

Function: Displays data from a file / device or create a file from specified device. To end <device> to <filename> entry, press CTRL+Z and RETURN.

- [/S] System files will also be displayed (only 2.41).
- [/H] Hidden files will also be displayed.
- [/P] Pauses the presentation when completing a screen.
- [/B] Disables checking of control codes.

TYPEWW (external, 1-2.41)

Format: TYPEWW <filename> [/S] [/H] [/B]

Function: Displays data from a file. Unlike the TYPE command, <filename> cannot be ambiguous.

- [/S] System files will also be displayed (only 2.41).
- [/H] Hidden files will also be displayed.
- [/P] Pauses the presentation when completing a screen.

UNDEL (external, 2)

Format: UNDEL [<filename>]

Function: Recovers deleted files.

SEE (internal, 2)

Format: SEE

Function: Displays the system version.

VERIFY (internal, 2)

Format: VERIFY [ON | OFF]

Function: Displays or changes the writing verification status.

VOL (internal, 2)

Format: VOL [d:] [<volume name>]

Function: Displays or changes the volume name of the disk.

XCOPY (external, 2)

Format: XCOPY [<source filename> [<dest filename>]] [/T] [/A]
 [/M] [/S] [/E] [/P] [/W] [/V]

Function: Copies files and directories. The options are:

[/T] Changes the date of the copied file to the current one

[/A] Only files with the “file” attribute set are copied.

[/M] Similar to /A, but the “file” attribute is reset after copying.

[/S] Subdirectories are also copied.

[/E] Makes /S create all subdirectories, even empty ones.

[/P] Pause after copying each file.

[/W] Pause after copying some files.

[/V] Checks copied files.

XDIR (external, 2)

Format: XDIR [<filename>] [/H]

Function: Lists all files in the current subdirectory, in a tree.

[/H] Hidden files will also be listed.

Z80MODE (external, Nextor)

Format: Z80MODE <slot driver> [- <subslot driver>]] [ON | OFF]

Function: Enables or disables Z80 access mode for the specified MSXDOS driver.

4.3 – BDOS CALLS

4.3.1 – I/O Handling

CONIN (01H)

Function: Keyboard input.

Setup: None.

Output: A – keyboard character code.

Note: Character input with wait and echo on screen. The following control sequences are checked by this routine:
CTRL+C → Return the system to the command level.
CTRL+P → Turn on echo for the printer. Anything written on the screen will be output to the printer.
CTRL+N → Turns off echo for the printer.
CTRL+S → Stops displaying characters until a key is pressed.

CONOUT (02H)

Function: Displays the character contained in the E-register on the screen. The control sequences described above are checked.

Input: E – Character code.

Output: None.

AUXIN (03H)

Function: External auxiliary device input (modem, for example). The four control sequences are checked.

Input: None.

Output: A – Auxiliary device character code.

AUXOUT (04H)

Function: Output to external device. This function checks the four control sequences.

Input: E – Code of the character to be sent.

Output: None.

LSTOUT (05H)

Function: Character output to printer. This function checks the four control sequences.

Input: E – Code of the character to be sent.

Output: None.

DIRIO (06H)

Function: String input or output. Does not support control characters, but checks all four control sequences.

Input: E – Character code to be printed on the screen.
If it is FFH, the character will be received.

Output: If E is FFH on input, the ASCII code of the key will return in A. If A returns 00H, no key was pressed.

DIRIN (07H)

Function: Reads a character from keyboard (with wait) and prints to screen. This function does not support control characters.

Input: None.

Output: A – ASCII code of the character.

INNOE (08H)

Function: Reads a character from the keyboard (with wait) but does not print to the screen. This function does not support control characters.

Input: None.

Output: A – ASCII code of the character.

STROUT (09H)

Function: String output. The 24H ASCII character (\$) marks the end of the string and will not print to the screen. This function checks the four control sequences.

Input: DE – Starting address of the string to be sent.

Output: None.

BUFIN (0AH)

Function: String input. The reading of characters ends when the RETURN key is pressed. If the number of characters exceeds the maximum indicated by DE, these will be ignored and a "beep" will be emitted for each extra character. This function checks the four control sequences.

Input: DE must point to a buffer with the following structure:
DE+0 → number of characters to read.
DE+1 → number of characters actually read.
DE+2 onwards: codes of the characters read.

Output: The second byte of the buffer pointed to by DE contains the number of characters actually read and from the third byte onwards are the ASCII codes of the characters read.

CONST (0BH)

Function: Check keyboard status. This function checks the four control sequences.

Input: None.

Output: If any key was pressed, register A returns with FFH, otherwise, it returns with the value 00H.

4.3.2 - Definition and reading of parameters

TERMO (00H)

Function: System reset. When this function is called under DOS, it will cause MSXDOS to reload. When called under DISK-BASIC, it will cause a full reset.

Input: None.

Output: None.

CPMVER (0CH)

Function: Reading the system version. In the case of MSX, it will always return the value 0022H, indicating compatibility with CP/M 2.2.

Input: None.

Output: HL – System version.

DSKRST (0DH)

Function: Disk reset. All buffers are cleared (FCB, DPB, etc.), the current drive will be A: and DTA will be 0080H.

Input: None.

Output: None.

SELDSK (0EH)

Function: Select current drive. The current drive number is stored in address 0004H.

Input: E – Drive number (A:=00H, B:=01H, etc.).

Output: A – Number of available drives (1 to 8).

LOGIN (18H)

Function: Reading of drives connected to the computer.

Input: None.

Output: HL – Connected drives

H → Always “00 000 000”

L → |b7|b6|b5|b4|b3|b2|b1|b0|

drive: |H:|G:|F:|E:|D:|C:|B:|A:|

The bit will contain 0 if the drive is not connected and 1 if it is. If B: = 1 and A: = 0 (b1=1 and b0=0), it means that there is just one physical drive connected as A: and B:

CURDRV (19H)

Function: Reading the current (current) drive.

Input: None.

Output: A – Current drive number (A:=00H; B:=01H, etc.).

SETDTA (1AH)

Function: Sets the address for data transfer.

Input: DE – Start address of DTA (Disk Transfer Address).

Output: None.

Note: At system reset, DTA is set to 0080H.

ALLOC (1BH)

Function: Reading information about the disk.

Input: E – Desired drive number (0=current; 1=A:; etc.).

Output: A = FFH → Drive specification is invalid; otherwise:

A – Number of logical sectors per cluster;

BC – Sector size in bytes (typically 512);

DE – Total number of clusters on disk;

HL – Number of free (unused) clusters;

IX – Starting address of DPB in RAM;

IY – Starting FAT address in RAM.

GDATE (2AH)

Function: Returns the system date.

Input: None.

Output: HL – Year (1980 to 2079);

D – Month (1=January, 2=February, etc.);

E – Day of the month (1 to 31)

A – Day of the week (0=Sunday, 1=Monday, etc.).

SDATE (2BH)

Function: Modify system date.

Input: HL – Year (1980 to 2079);

D – Month (1=January, 2=February, etc.);

E – Day of the month (1 to 31).

Output: A = 00H → Date specification is valid;
FFH → The specification is invalid.

GTIME (2CH)

Function: Returns system time.

Input: None.

Output: H – Hours;

L – Minutes;

D – Seconds;

E – Hundredths of a second.

TIME (2DH)

Function: Modify system time.

Input: H – Hours;

L – Minutes;

D – Seconds;

E – Hundredths of a second.

Output: A = 00H → The time specification is valid;
FFH → The specification is invalid.

VERIFY (2EH)

Function: Disk write check.

Input: E = 0 → Disables disk write verification mode.

E ≠ 0 → Enable disk write check.

Output: None.

4.3.3 – Absolute reading/writing of sectors**RDABS** (2FH)

Function: Read logical sectors from disk. The sectors read are placed from the DTA.

Input: DE – Number of the first logical sector to read;

H – Number of sectors to read;

L – Drive number (0=A:, 1=B:, etc.).

Output: A = 0 → The reading was successful;
A ≠ 0 → Error code.

WRABS (30H)

Function: Writing of logical sectors to disk. The data to be written to disk will be read into RAM from DTA.

Input: DE – Number of the first logical sector to be written;
 H – Number of sectors to write;
 L – Drive number (0=A:, 1=B:, etc.).

Output: A = 0 → The writing was successful;
 A ≠ 0 → Error code.

4.3.4 – Accessing files by using FCB**FOPEN** (0FH)

Function: Open file (FCB).

Input: DE – Start address of an unopened FCB.

Output: A = 0 → The operation was successful;
 A ≠ 0 → Error code.

FCLOSE (10H)

Function: Close file (FCB).

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.

Output: A = 0 → The operation was successful;
 A ≠ 0 → Error code.

SFIRST (11H)

Function: Search for the first file. This function accepts wildcard characters (* and ?).

Input: DE – Start address of an unopened FCB.

Output: A = 0 → The file was found;
 A ≠ 0 → The file was not found.

SNEXT (12H)

Function: Search for the next file. This function accepts wildcard characters (* and ?).

Input: None.

Output: A = 0 → The file was found;
 A ≠ 0 → The file was not found.

FDEL (13H)

Function: Delete files. Wildcard characters (* and ?) can be used.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.

Output: A = 0 → The operation was successful;

A ≠ 0 → Error code.

RDSEQ (14H)

Function: Sequential reading.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.

Current block in FCB – Initial block for reading.

Current record in FCB – Initial record for reading.

Output: A = 0 → The reading was successful;

A ≠ 0 → Error code.

WRSEQ (15H)

Function: Sequential writing.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.

Current block in FCB – Initial block for writing.

Current record in FCB – Initial record for writing.

Initial 128 bytes of DTA – Data to be written.

Output: A = 0 → The writing was successful;

A ≠ 0 → Error code.

FMAKE (16H)

Function: Create files.

Input: DE – Start address of an unopened FCB.

Output: A = 0 → The operation was successful;

A ≠ 0 → Error code.

FREN (17H)

Function: Rename files. The wildcard character "?" can be used to rename multiple files simultaneously.

Input: DE – FCB start address with the name of the file to be renamed. In the first position of the FCB, the drive number must be placed followed by the name of the file to be renamed. From the 18th byte (FCB+11H) to the 28th, the new filename must be entered.

Output: A = 0 → The renaming was successful;

A ≠ 0 → Error code.

RDRND (21H)

Function: Random reading. The read record will be placed in the area indicated by the DTA and has a fixed size of 128 bytes.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.

Random register in FCB – number of the register to read.

Output: A = 0 → The reading was successful;

A ≠ 0 → Error code.

WRRND (22H)

Function: Random writing.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.

Random register in FCB – Register number to be written.

128 bytes from DTA – Data to be written.

Output: A = 0 → The writing was successful;

A ≠ 0 → Error code.

FSIZE (23H)

Function: Read file size. The size returns in the first three bytes in the FCB's random file size field in 128-byte increments. So, if a file contains 1 to 128 bytes, the returned value will be 1; if it contains 129 to 256 bytes, the value is 2, and so on.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.

Output: A = 0 → The operation was successful;

A ≠ 0 → Error code.

SETRND (24H)

Function: Set field of random record.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.

Current block in FCB – Number of desired block.

Current FCB record – Number of desired record.

Output: The desired current register position, calculated from the register and block contained in the FCB, is placed in the random register field. The first three random record bytes contain valid values.

WRBLK (26H)

Function: Block random writing. The random record number is automatically incremented after writing, and its size can range from 1 to 65 535 bytes.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.
 HL – Number of records to be written.
 DTA – Data to be written.
 FCB record size – Record size to be written.
 FCB random record – First record number to be written.

Output: A = 0 → The operation was successful;
 A ≠ 0 → Error code.

RDBLK (27H)

Function: Block random access.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.
 HL – Number of records to read.
 DTA – Starting address for the read data.
 FCB record size – Record size to be read.
 FCB random record – First record number to be read.

Output: A = 0 → The reading was successful;
 A ≠ 0 → Error code.
 HL – Number of records actually read if end of file is reached before all records are read.

WRZER (28H)

Function: Random writing with 00H bytes. This function is the same as 22H (WRRND), except that it fills the remaining records of the file with 00H bytes if the specified record is not the last one in the file.

Input: DE – Start address of an open FCB.
 Random record in FCB – Record to be written.
 128 bytes from DTA – Data to be written.

Output: A = 0 → The writing was successful;
 A ≠ 0 → Error code.

4.3.5 – Functions added by MSXDOS2**DPARM** (31H)

Function: Read parameters from disk.

Input: DE – Start address of a 32-byte buffer.
 L – Drive number (0=current, 1=A:, etc).

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 DE – Start address of the parameter buffer.

- +0 Physical drive number (1=A; etc.).
- +1~2 Sector size in bytes (usually 512).
- +3 Number of sectors per cluster.
- +4~5 Number of reserved sectors.
- +6 Number of FATs (usually 2).
- +7~8 Number of directory entries.
- +9~10 Total number of logical sectors.
- +11 Disk ID.
- +12 Number of sectors per FAT.
- +13~14 First sector of the directory.
- +15~16 First sector of data area.
- +17~18 Maximum number of clusters.
- +19 Dirty disk flag.
- +20~23 Volume ID (-1 = No volume ID).
- +24~31 Reserved (usually 0).

FFIRST (40H)

Function: Search for first entry in directory.

Input: DE – Initial address of the FIB or an ASCII string "drive/path/file", which may contain the wildcard characters "?" and "*".

HL – Starting address of filename (only when DE points to FIB).

B – Attributes to search (same as directory).

IX – Starting address of a new FIB.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

IX – Starting address of the new filled FIB.

FNEXT (41H)

Function: Searches for next directory entry. This function should only be used after the 40H function. It accepts the wildcard characters "?" and "*" set to 40H and searches for all files that have equal parts of their name specified by wildcard characters, one after another.

Input: IX – FIB start address.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

IX – Starting address of the new filled FIB.

FNEW (42H)

Function: Search for new entry.

Input: DE – Starting address of the FIB or an ASCII string "drive/path/file". If there are wildcard characters in the filename, they will be replaced with appropriate characters. If the "directory" bit is set on the input (register B), a subdirectory will be created. The other bits will be copied.

HL – Starting address of a filename (only if DE points to FIB).

B – b0~b6 → Attributes;
b7 → Create new flag.

IX – Start address of new FIB containing default filename.

Output: A – Error code (if 0, there was no error)

IX – Starting address of the FIB filled with the new entry.

OPEN (43H)

Function: Open handle file. If the "inheritable" bit of A is set, the handle file must be opened by another process (see function 60H).

Input: DE – FIB start address or ASCII string "drive/path/file".

A – Open mode:
b0=1 – Not written;
b1=1 – Not reading;
b2=1 – Inheritable;
b3~b7 – Must be "0".

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

B – New handle file.

CREATE (44H)

Function: Create handle file. The file created by this function will automatically open (function 43H)

Input: DE – Drive/path/file or ASCII string.

A – Open mode:
b0=1 – Not written;
b1=1 – Not reading;
b2=1 – Inheritable;
b3~b7 – Must be "0".

B – b0~b6 = Attributes;
b7 = Create new flag.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
B – New handle file.

CLOSE (45H)

Function: Close file handle.

Input: B – File handle to close.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

ENSURE (46H)

Function: Protect file handle (the current file pointer cannot be modified).

Input: B – Handle file to be protected.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

DUP (47H)

Function: Duplicate handle file.

Input: B – Handle file.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

B – New handle file.

READ (48H)

Function: Read from handle file. The four control sequences (Ctrl+P, Ctrl+N, Ctrl+S and Ctrl+C) are checked.

Input: B – Handle file.

DE – Start address of the buffer.

HL – Number of bytes to read.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

HL – Number of bytes actually read.

WRITE (49H)

Function: Write by a handle file. If the end of file is found, it will be extended up to the required value.

Input: B – Handle file.

DE – Start address of the buffer.

HL – Number of bytes to write.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

HL – Number of bytes actually written.

SEEK (4AH)

Function: Move handle file pointer.

Input: B – Handle file.

A – Method code:

0 – Relative to the beginning of the file;

1 – Relative to the current position;

2 – Relative to the end of the file.

DE:HL – Offset signalling.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

DE:HL – New file pointer.

IOCTL (4BH)

Function: Control for I/O devices.

Input: B – Handle file.

A – Subfunction code:

00H – Read status from handle file;

01H – Set ASCII/binary mode;

02H – Tests if device. is ready for entry;

03H – Tests if device. is ready for exit;

04H – Calculates screen size.

DE – Other parameters.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

DE – Other return values.

Note: If A equals 0 on input, then the DE register must be loaded with the following parameters:

→ For devices:

b0=1 – Input device;

b1=1 – Output device;

b2~b4 – Reserved;

b5=1 – ASCII mode;

=0 – Binary mode;

b6=1 – End of file;

b7=1 – Device (always 1);

b8~b15 – Reserved.

→ For files:

b0~b5 – Drive number (0=A; etc.);

b6=1 – End of file;

b7=0 – Disk file (always 0);

b8~b15 – Reserved.

On return, DE will have the same values. If A=1, only bit 5 of DE must be specified; other bits will be ignored. If A is equal to 2 or 3, register E will return with the value 00H if the device is not ready and with FFH if the device is ready. If A equals 4, DE returns the logical screen size value for the handle file (D=number of rows and E=number of columns). For devices other than the screen, DE will return with the value 0000H.

HTEST (4CH)

Function: Test handle file.

Input: B – Handle file.

DE – Pointer to FIB or to ASCII string "drive/path/file".

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

B – 00H = not the same file;

FFH = Is the same file.

DELETE (4DH)

Function: Delete file or subdirectory. A subdirectory can only be deleted if it does not contain any files. If a device name is specified it will not return an error, but of course the device will not be "erased".

Input: DE – Pointer to FIB or to ASCII string "drive/path/file".

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

RENAME (4EH)

Function: Rename file or subdirectory.

Input: DE – Pointer to FIB or to ASCII string "drive/path/file".

HL – Pointer to the new ASCII name.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

MOVE (4FH)

Function: Move file or subdirectory. A file cannot be moved if the respective file handle is open. The FIB of the moved file will not be updated.

Input: DE – Pointer to FIB or to ASCII string "drive/path/file".

HL – Pointer to new ASCII string path.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

ATTR (50H)

Function: Set or read attributes of a file. The attributes of a file cannot be modified if the corresponding handle file is open.

Input: DE – Pointer to FIB or to ASCII string "drive/path/file".

A = 0 – Read attributes;

1 – Write attributes.

L – New attribute byte (if A = 1).

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

L – Current attribute byte.

FTIME (51H)

Function: Read or set date and time in a file.

Input: DE – Pointer to FIB or to ASCII string "drive/path/file".

A = 0 – Read date and time;

1 – set date and time.

IX – New time (if A=1).

HL – New date (if A=1).

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

DE – Time of current file.

HL – Current file date.

HDELETE (52H)

Function: Delete handle file. If there is another handle file open for the same file, it cannot be deleted.

Input: B – Handle file.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

HRENAM (53H)

Function: Rename handle file. The file cannot be renamed if there is another file handle open for the same file. This function is identical to function 4EH, except that the HL register cannot point to a FIB.

Input: B – Handle file.

HL – New ASCII filename.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

HMOVE (54H)

Function: Move handle file. The file cannot be moved if there is another file handle open for the same file. This function is identical to function 4FH, except that the HL register cannot point to a FIB.

Input: B – Handle file.
 HL – New path in ASCII.
 Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

HATTR (55H)

Function: Read or set handle file attributes. Attribute byte cannot be modified if there is another handle file opened for the same file.

Input: B – Handle file.
 A = 0 – read attributes;
 1 – set attributes.
 L – New attribute byte (if A=1).
 Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 L – Current attribute byte.

HFTIME (56H)

Function: Read or change time and date from handle file. If there is another handle file open for the same file, the date and time cannot be changed. This function is identical to function 51H, except that there is no pointer; only the handle file.

Input: B – Handle file.
 A = 0 – Read date and time;
 1 – Set date and time.
 IX – New time (if A=1).
 HL – New date (if A=1).
 Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 DE – Current file time.
 HL – Current file date.

GETDTA (57H)

Function: Read start address of the DTA (Disk Transfer Area).

Input: None.
 Output: DE – DTA start address.

GETVfy (58H)

Function: Read write verification flag.
 Input: None.
 Output: B = 0 – Write check disabled;
 1 – Write check enabled.

GETCD (59H)

Function: Read current directory or subdirectory.

Input: B – Drive number (0=current; 1=A:, etc.).

DE – Start address of a 64-byte buffer.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

DE – Points to the filled buffer. The drive name and "\" character are not included. If there is no current directory, the buffer will be filled with 00H bytes.

CHDIR (5AH)

Function: Change current subdirectory.

Input: DE – ASCII string "drive/path/name".

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

PARSIS (5BH)

Function: Parses pathname (path name).

Input: B – Volume name flag (bit 4).

bit4 = 0 → string "drive/path/file"

1 → string "drive/volume"

DE – ASCII string for analysis.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

DE – Pointer to the ending character.

HL – Pointer to the beginning of the last item.

B – Analysis flags.

b0=1 if any character points to another drive name;

b1=1 if any path directory is specified;

b2=1 if drive name is specified;

b3=1 if master file is specified in the last item;

b4=1 if filename extension is specified in the last item;

b5=1 if the last item is ambiguous;

b6=1 if the last item is "." or "..";

b7=1 if the last item is "...".

C – Logical drive (1=A:, etc.).

Note: The value returned in HL will point to the first character of the last item in the string. For example, for the string "A:\XYZ\P.Q /F", DE will point to the white space before "/F" and HL will point to "P".

PFILE (5CH)

Function: Parse filename.

Input: DE – ASCII string to be parsed, no drive specification.
 Wildcard characters (? and *) can be used.

HL – Pointer to an 11-byte buffer.

Output: A – Always 00H.

DE – Pointer to the final character.

HL – Pointer to the filled buffer.

B – Analysis flags. The values are identical to the 5BH function, except that bits 0, 1 and 2 will always be 0.

CHKCHR (5DH)

Function: Check character. 16-bit characters are also checked.

Input: D – Character flags.

b0=1 to suppress the character. In this case, the character returned in E will always be the same.

b1=1 if it is the first byte of a 16-bit character;

b2=1 if it is the second byte of a 16-bit character;

b3=1 if it is volume name or preferably filename;

b4=1 if it is invalid file/volume character;

b5~b7 are reserved (always 0).

E – Character to be checked.

Output: A – Always 00H.

D – Updated character flags.

E – Checked character.

WPATH (5EH)

Function: Read complete string path, without drive specification and “\” character. For greater reliability, call function 40H or 41H first and then call WPATH twice, as other functions may change the data.

Input: DE – Pointer to a 64-byte buffer.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

DE – Buffer filled with the complete path string.

HL – Pointer to the beginning of the last item.

FLUSH (5FH)

Function: Unload disk buffers.

Input: B – Drive specification (0=current; 1=A:, etc. If FFH, unload all drives).
 D = 00H – Unload only;
 FFH – Unload and invalidate.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

FORK (60H)

Function: Branch files into tree.

Input: None.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 B – Branch process ID.

JOIN (61H)

Function: Join files in tree. This function returns to the original handle file the handle file copied by the previous function. The copied file is automatically closed and the original handle file is reactivated.

Input: B – Branch process ID (or 0).

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 B – Branch primary error code.
 C – Branch secondary error code.

TERM (62H)

Function: End with error code.

Input: B – Error code for termination.

Output: None.

DEFAB (63H)

Function: Set abort routine. Only available if called by 0005H.

Input: DE – Starting address of the abort routine; the default address is 0000H.

Output: A – Always 00H.

DEFER (64H)

Function: Set user routine for disk error.

Input: DE – Start address of disk error routine. The default value is 0000H.

Output: A – Always 00H.

Note: The specification of parameters and results of the created routine are as follows:

Input: A – Error code;
 B – Physical drive number;
 C – b0=1 if writing error;
 b1=1 if you ignore the error (not recommended);
 b2=1 if automatic abort is suggested;
 b3=1 if the sector number is valid.
 DE – Disk sector number (if b3 of C is 1).

Output: A = 0 – Call system error routine;
 1 – Abort;
 2 = Try again;
 3 = Ignore.

ERROR (65H)

Function: Catch error code in advance to prevent the kind of error that might occur on the next function call.

Input: None.

Output: A – Always 00H.
 B – Function error code.

EXPLN (66H)

Function: Return error code message.

Input: B – Error code.
 DE – Pointer to a 64-byte buffer.

Output: A – Always 00H.
 B – Error code or 00H.
 DE – Buffer filled with error message in ASCII format.

FORMAT (67H)

Function: Format a disk.

Setup: B – Drive number (0=current; 1=A:, etc.).
 A = 00H – Return choice message;
 01H~09H – Formats with this choice;
 0AH~0DH – Illegal;
 FEH – Update parameters for MSXDOS2;
 FFH – Full update for MDXDOS2.
 HL – Pointer to the buffer (if A = 1~9).
 DE – Buffer size (if A = 1~9).

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 B – Chosen message slot (only if A=0 on input).
 HL – Address of the chosen message (only if A=0).

RAMD (68H)

Function: Create or delete ramdisk on drive “H”.

Input: B – 00H = Clear the ramdisk;
 01H~FEH = Create new ramdisk with xxH 16K logical segments.

FFH = Returns ramdisk size in 16K segments.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 B – Ramdisk size.

BUFFER (69H)

Function: Allocate buffers (each is 16K).

Input: B = 0 – Returns number of allocated buffers;
 1 to 20 – allocates the specified number of buffers.
 21 or more (more than 15H) – Invalid

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 B – Total number of allocated buffers

ASSIGN (6AH)

Function: Assign logical drive to a physical drive.

Input: B – Logical drive number (1=A; 2=B; etc.):
 0 – Cancel all assignments (for D = 0);
 1 to 7 – Assign/cancel respective logical drive;

D – Physical drive number (1=A; 2=B; etc.).

0 – Cancel assignment (for B = 1 to 7):
 1 to 7 – Assign respective physical drive;
 FFH – Only return logical drive on D.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 D – Physical drive number.

GENV (6BH)

Function: Read external item.

Input: HL – Pointer to ASCII string name.

DE – Buffer pointer to value string.

B – Buffer size. If the buffer is small, the return value will be truncated and terminated in 00H. A 255-byte buffer will always sufficient.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
DE – Pointer to the filled buffer.

SENV (6CH)

Function: Set external item.

Input: HL – Pointer to ASCII name.
DE – Pointer to the value string to be set. Must be up to 255 characters long and end in 00H. If the string is null, the outer item will be removed.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

FENV (6DH)

Function: Search for external item.

Input: DE – External item number.
HL – Buffer pointer to ASCII name.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
HL – Pointer to the filled buffer, the end of which is marked with a 00H byte.

DSKCHK (6EH)

Function: Enable or disable disk checking. When the check is active, the system will reload boot, FAT, FIB, FCB, etc. From the disk every time it is changed.

Input: A = 00H – Read check value from disk;
01H – Set disk check value.
B = 00H – Active (if A=01H);
01H – Disables (if A=01H).

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
B – Current disk check value.

DOSVER (6FH)

Function: Read MSXDOS version number. Values returned in registers BC and DE will be in BCD. So if the version is 2.34, the returned value will be 0234H. For compatibility with MSXDOS1 check first if there was any error (A≠0).

Input: None.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
BC – DOS Kernel version.
DE – MSXDOS2.SYS version.

REDIR (70H)

Function: Read or set redirection state. The effect of this function is temporary, in the case of A=01H and B=00H at the input.

Input: A = 00H – Read redirection status;
 01H – Set redirection status.
 B – New state:
 b0 – Standard input;
 b1 – Standard output.

4.3.6 – Functions added by NEXTOR**FOUT** (71H)

Function: Enables or disables quick STROUT mode. When enabled, only the first 511 characters will be printed.

Input: A = 00H – Get fast STROUT mode;
 01H – Set fast STROUT mode.
 B = 00H – Disable (only if A = 01H);
 FFH – enable (only if A = 01H).
 Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 B – Current fast STROUT mode.

ZSTROUT (72H)

Function: Print a zero-terminated string. This function is affected by the quick STROUT mode.

Input: DE – String address.
 Output: A = 0 (never returns an error).

RDDRIV (73H)

Function: Read the absolute sectors of the unit. This function is able to read sectors regardless of the file system viewed on the drive (FAT12, FAT16 or an unknown file system), and even when there is no file system. The read sectors will be placed from the current disk's DTA.

Input: A – Unit number (0 = A; 1=B; etc.).
 B – Number of sectors to read.
 HL:DE – Sector number.
 Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

WRDRV (74h)

Function: Write absolute sectors to disk. This function is able to record sectors regardless of the file system viewed on the drive (FAT12, FAT16 or an unknown file system), and even when there is no file system. The sectors will be written from the current disk's DTA.

Input: A – Unit number (0 = A; 1=B; etc.).

B – Number of sectors to read.

HL:DE – Sector number.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

RALLOC (75H)

Function: Get or set reduced allocation information mode vector. The vector assigns a bit to each drive; bit 0 of L is for A ; bit 1 of L is for B ; etc. This bit is 1 if the reduced allocation mode is currently enabled (when getting the vector) or to be enabled (when setting the vector) for the drive, 0 when the mode is disabled or to be disabled.

Input: A = 00H – Get current vector;

01H – Define vector.

HL – New vector (only if A = 01H).

Output: A – 0 (never returns an error).

HL – Current vector.

DSPACE (76H)

Function: Get disk space information. The extra value in BC will be nonzero only when the unit's minimum allocation unit is not an integer in Kbytes.

Input: E – Unit number (0 = Standard, 1 = A ; etc)

A = 00H – Get free space;

01H – Get full space.

Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).

HL:DE – Space in Kbytes.

BC – Extra space in bytes.

LOCK (77H)

Function: Lock / unlock a unit or get the lock status of a unit. When a drive is locked, Nextor will assume that the media on that drive will never change and therefore will never ask the associated driver for media change status; thus resulting in

an overall increase in media access speed. This is useful when using removable devices as the primary storage device.

- Input: E – Physical unit (0 = A ;, 1 = B ;, etc)
 A = 00H – Get lock status;
 01H – Set lock status.
 B = 00H – Unlock unit (only if A = 01H);
 FFH – Unit lock (only if A = 01H).
- Output: A – Error code (if 0, no error).
 B – Current blocking state, same as input.

GDRVR (78H)

Function: Get information about a device driver.

- Input: A – Driver index (0 to specify slot and segment) D driver slot number (only if A = 0).
 E – Driver segment number, FFH for drivers in ROM (only if A = 0).
 HL – Pointer to 64-byte data buffer.
- Output: A – Error code (if it is 0, there was no error).
 HL – Points to buffer filled with driver data.
 +0: Driver slot number.
 +1: Driver segment number, FFh if the driver is built into a Nextor or MSX-DOS kernel ROM (always FFH in the current version).
 +2: Number of drive letters assigned to this driver at boot time.
 +3: First drive letter assigned to this driver at boot time (A: = 0, etc). Not used if no drive is assigned at boot time.
 +4: Driver Flags:
 bit 7: 1 → Nextor driver;
 0 → MSX-DOS driver (built into MSX-DOS kernel ROM).
 bits 6-3: Not used, always “0000”.
 bit 2: 1 → Driver implements DRV_CONFIG routine.
 bit 1: Not used, always zero.
 bit 0: 1 → Device-based driver;
 0 → Drive-based driver.
 +5: Driver version number (MSB).

- +6: Driver version number (LSB).
- +7: Driver revision number.
- +8: Driver name, left-justified, complete with spaces (32 bytes).
- +40 ~ +63: Reserved (currently always zero).

GDLI (79H)

Function: Get information about a drive letter

Input: A – Physical unit (0 = A ;, 1 = B ;, etc)

HL – Pointer to 64-byte data buffer

Output: A – Error code (if 0, no error).

HL – Pointer to filled buffer

- +0: Unit Status
 - 0 – Not assigned
 - 1 – Assigned to a storage device connected to a Nextor or MSX-DOS driver
 - 2 – Not used
 - 3 – A file is mounted on the drive
 - 4 – Assigned RAMdisk (other fields will be zero)
 - +1: Driver slot number
 - +2: Driver segment number (FFH if the driver is built into a Nextor or MSX-DOS kernel ROM)
 - +3: Relative drive number within driver (for drive-based drivers only FFH if driver is device-based)
 - +4: Device index (only for device-based drivers; 0 for MSX-DOS drivers)
 - +5: Logical unit index (only for device-based drivers; 0 for MSX-DOS drivers)
 - +6 ~ +9: Device's first sector number (only for device-based drivers; 0 for MSX-DOS drivers)
 - +10 ~ +63: Reserved (currently always zero)
- If a file is mounted on the drive, the information returned in the data buffer will be inserted as follows:
- +1: Drive where mounted file is located: (0 = A:, 1 = B:, etc)
 - +2: Flags:
 - bit0 = 0 – Read and write, 1 – Read only
 - +3: Always 0
 - +4: filename in print format (up to 12 characters, plus a terminating zero)

GPART (7AH)

Function: Get information about a device partition. This function only works on device-based drivers.

Input: A – Driver slot number.
 B – Driver segment number, FFH for drivers in ROM.
 D – Device index.
 E – Logical unit index.
 H – Primary partition number (1 to 4).
 H:7 = 0 – Get partition information;
 1 – Get the sector number of the device containing the partition table entry.
 L – Extended partition number (0 for an entry in the primary partition table).

Output: A – Error code (if 0, no error).
 → If partition information is requested:
 B – Partition type code:
 0 – None (specified partition does not exist).
 1 – FAT12.
 4 – FAT16, less than 32 MB (obsolete).
 5 – Extended (handles more than 4 partitions).
 6 – FAT16 (CHS).
 14 – FAT16 (LBA).
 C – Partition status byte.
 HL:DE – Partition absolute sector starting number
 IX:IY – Partition size in sectors.
 → If the sector number of the partition table entry is requested:
 HL:DE – Sector number of the device containing the partition table entry.

CDRVR (7BH)

Function: Call a routine in a device driver. This function works in MSX-DOS 1 mode.

Input: A – Driver slot number.
 B – Driver Segment No., FFH for drivers in ROM.
 DE – Routine address.
 HL – Pointer to an 8-byte buffer with input values. The order of registers is as follows: F, A, C, B, E, D, L, H.

Output: A – Error code (if 0, no error).
 BC, DE, HL – Routine results.
 IX – AF value returned by the routine.

MAPDRV (7CH)

Function: Map a drive letter to a device driver

Input: A – Physical unit (0 = A :, 1 = B :, etc)

B – Action to be taken:

- 0 – Remove drive mapping.
- 1 – Map the drive to its default state.
- 2 – Map the drive using specific mapping data.
- 3 – Mount a file on the drive.

HL – If B=2:

Address of an 8-byte buffer with mapping data with the following structure:

- +0 – Driver slot number
- +1 – Driver segment number (FFH if the driver is embedded in a Nextor kernel ROM)
- +2 – Device number
- +3 – Logical unit number
- +4 ~ +7 – Home sector

If B=3:

Pointer to filename or FIB address.

D – File mount type (if B = 3).

- 0 – Automatic (read only if file has this attribute set, read and write otherwise).
- 1 – Read only.

Output: A – Error code (if 0, no error).

Z80MODE (7DH)

Function: Enable or disable the Z80's access to a driver. This function works only on MSX Turbo R computers.

Input: A – Driver slot number.

B = 00H – Get current Z80 access mode;
 01H – Set Z80 access mode.

D = 00H – Disable Z80 access mode (only if B = 01H);
 FFH – Enable Z80 access mode (only if B = 01H).

Output: A – Error code (if 0, no error).

D – Current Z80 access mode for specified driver (same as input).

GETCLUS (7EH)

Function: Get information for a cluster on a FAT drive.

Input: A – Unit number (0 = Standard, 1 = A: etc.).

DE – Cluster number.

HL – Pointer to a 16-byte buffer.

Output: A – Error code (if 0, no error).

HL – Pointer to the filled buffer:

+0 – FAT sector number containing the entry for the cluster (2 bytes).

+2 – Offset in the FAT sector where the entry for the cluster is located (0-511).

+4 – First number of the data sector to which the cluster refers (4 bytes).

+8 – FAT input value for cluster (2 bytes).

+10 – Size of a cluster in sectors for the unit (1 byte).

+11 – Flags (1 byte):

bit 0 = 1 if the drive is FAT12.

bit 1 = 1 if the drive is FAT16.

bit 2 = 1 if the FAT entry to the cluster is an odd entry (FAT12 only).

bit 3 = 1 if the cluster is the last of a file.

bit 4 = 1 if the cluster is free.

bits 5-7: Unused, always zero.

+12 ~ +15: Unused, always zero.

The FAT entry value for cluster has the following meanings:

0 → Free cluster.

0FF8H-0FFFH for FAT12 and FFF8H-FFFFH for FAT16 →

→ Cluster is the last of a file.

Other value → Number of the next cluster where data for a file continues.

4.4 – MSXDOS ERROR CODES

50 FIELD overflow

51 Internal error

52 Bad file number

53 File not found

54 File open

- 55 End of file
- 56 Bad filename
- 57 Direct statement in file
- 58 Sequential I/O only
- 59 File not OPEN
- 60 Disk error
- 61 Bad file mode
- 62 Bad drive name
- 63 Bad sector
- 64 File still open
- 65 File already exists
- 66 Disk full
- 67 Too many files
- 68 Write protected disk
- 69 Disk I/O error
- 70 Disk offline
- 71 RENAME across disk

4.5 – MSXDOS2 ERROR CODES

4.5.1 – Disk Errors

- FFH Incompatible disk
- FEH Write error
- FDH Disk error
- FCH Not ready
- FBH Verify error
- FAH Data error
- F9H Sector not found
- F8H Write protected disk
- F7H Unformatted disk
- F6H Not a DOS disk
- F5H Wrong disk
- F4H Wrong disk for file
- F3H Seek error
- F2H Bad file allocation table
- F1H No message
- F0H Cannot format this drive

4.5.2 – MSXDOS Functions Errors

DFH	Internal error
DEH	Not enough memory
DDH	-
DCH	Invalid MSX-DOS call
DBH	Invalid drive
DAH	Invalid filename
D9H	Invalid pathname
D8H	Pathname too long
D7H	File not found
D6H	Directory not found
D5H	Root directory full
D4H	Disk full
D3H	Duplicate filename
D2H	Invalid directory move
D1H	Read only file
D0H	Directory not empty
CFH	Invalid attributes
CEH	Invalid . or .. operation
CDH	System file exists
CCH	Directory exists
CBH	File exists
CAH	File already in use
C9H	Cannot transfer above 64K
C8H	File allocation error
C7H	End of file
C6H	File access violation
C5H	Invalid process id
C4H	No spare file handles
C3H	Invalid file handle
C2H	File handle not open
C1H	Invalid device operation
C0H	Invalid environment string
BFH	Environment string too long
BEH	Invalid date
BDH	Invalid time
BCH	RAM disk already exists
BBH	RAM disk does not exist

- BAH File handle has been deleted
- B9H Internal error
- B8H Invalid sub-function number

4.5.3 – Errors Added by Nextor

- B6H Invalid device driver
- B5H Invalid device or LUN
- B4H Invalid partition number
- B3H Partition is already in use
- B2H File is mounted
- B1H Bad file size
- B0H Invalid cluster number

4.5.4 – End Programs Errors

- 9FH Ctrl-STOP pressed
- 9EH Ctrl-C pressed
- 9DH Disk operation aborted
- 9CH Error on standard output
- 9BH Error on standard input

4.5.5 – Command Errors

- 8FH Wrong version off COMMAND
- 8EH Unrecognized command
- 8DH Command too long
- 8CH Internal error
- 8BH Invalid parameter
- 8AH Too many parameters
- 89H Missing parameter
- 88H Invalid option
- 87H Invalid number
- 86H File for HELP not found
- 85H Wrong version of MSX-DOS
- 84H Cannot concatenate destination file
- 83H Cannot create destination file
- 82H File cannot be copied onto itself
- 81H Cannot overwrite previous destination file

5 – SYMBOLS

5.1 – KERNEL ROUTINES

5.1.1 – Kernel Restarts

RST 08H (MSGSLP) – Message_Sleep_And_Receive

Description: Checks for a new message from another process. If there is no message, the process will be switched into sleep mode, until a message is available. For more information about receiving message, see RST 18H (MSGGET).

Input: IXl – Receiver process ID (your own one).
 IXh – Sender process ID (-1 to check any process).
 IY – Pointer to message buffer (14 bytes).

Output: IXl – 0 → no message available, 1 → msg received.
 IXh – Sender process ID (if IXl=1).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

RST 10H (MSGSEND) – Message_Send

Description: Sends a message to another process. IXl must contain your own process ID and IXh the ID of the receiver. If the message queue is full or the receiver does not exist, it will not be sent. The message must always be placed between C000H and FFFFH (transfer RAM area) and can have a maximum size of 14 bytes.

Input: IXl – Sender process ID (your own one).
 IXh – Receiver process ID.
 IY – Pointer to the message (1-14 bytes).

Output: IXl – 0 → message queue is full.
 1 → message has been sent successfully.
 2 → receiver process does not exist.

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

RST 18H (MSGGET) – Message_Receive

Description: Checks for a new message from another process. The message buffer must have a size of 14 bytes and always be placed between C000H and FFFFH (transfer RAM area).

Input: IXI – Receiver process ID (your own one).
 IXh – Sender process ID (-1 to check any process).
 IY – Pointer to message buffer (14 bytes).

Output: IXI – 0 → no message available, 1 → msg received.
 IXh – Sender process ID (if IXI=1).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

0H (BNKSCL) – Banking_SlowCall

Description: Calls a routine, which is placed in the first RAM bank. All registers will be transferred unmodified to and from the routine. The address of the routine has to be specified

Input: (SP+0) – Destination address.
 AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY – Registers for the dest routine.

Output: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY – Registers from the dest routine.

Registers: –

Example: rst 20H : dw 8130H
 → Calls the routine at 8130H in the first RAM bank.

RST 28H (BNKFCL) – Banking_FastCall

Description: Calls a routine, which is placed in the first RAM bank. DE, IX and IY will be transferred unmodified to and from the routine. It is faster than RST 20H (BNKSCL). Don't use this function, if the routine does make bank switching or requires more registers than DE, IX, IY.

Input: HL – Destination address.
 DE, IX, IY – Registers for the destination routine.

Output: DE, IX, IY – Registers from the destination routine.

Registers: AF, BC, HL.

Example: ld hl, 08 109H : rst 028H
 → Calls the routine at 8109H in the first RAM bank.

RST 30H (MTSOFT) – Multitasking_SoftInterrupt

Description: Releases the CPU time for the operating system. If the process currently has nothing to do (it is waiting for something, you should call this function, so that other processes can get CPU time, too. A process, which called this function, is marked as "idle".

Input: –

Output: –

Registers: –

RST 38H (MTHARD) – Multitasking_HardInterrupt

Description: You shouldn't call this function by yourself. It is called by the hardware interrupt, which comes 50 or 300 times per second, depending on the computer system.

Input: –
 Output: –
 Registers: –

5.1.2 – Kernel Commands (Multitasking Management)

Kernel commands are triggered via a message, which has to be sent with RST 10H (MSGSEND) to the kernel process. The kernel process always has the ID 1.

ID: 001 (MSC_KRL_MTADDP) – Multitasking_Add_Process_Command

Description: Adds a new process with a given priority and starts it immediately. Application processes usually will be started with priority 4.

Library: SyKernel_MTADDP

Message: 00 1B 001
 01 1W Stack address (see notes below).
 03 1B Priority (1=highest, 7=lowest).
 04 1B RAM bank (0~15).

Example (stack):

```

    ds 128 ;Stack buffer
stack_ptr:
    dw 0 ;initial value for IY
    dw 0 ;initial value for IX
    dw 0 ;initial value for HL
    dw 0 ;initial value for DE
    dw 0 ;initial value for BC
    dw 0 ;initial value for AF
    dw process_start ;process start adr
    process_id: db 0 ;kernel writes the ID here
  
```

Response: See MSR_KRL_MTADDP

ID: 002 (MSC_KRL_MTDLEP) – Multitasking_Delete_Process_Command

Description: Stops an existing process and deletes it.

Library: SyKernel_MTDLEP.

Message: 00 1B 002.
 01 1B Process ID.
 Response: See MSR_KRL_MTDELP.

ID: 003 (MSC_KRL_MTADDDT) – Multitasking_Add_Timer_Command

Description: Adds a new timer and starts it immediately. Timers will be called 50 or 60 times per second, depending on the screen vsync frequency. Please see MSC_KRL_MTADDDP for information about the stack.

Library: SyKernel_MTADDDT.
 Message: 00 1B 003.
 01 1W Stack address.
 04 1B RAM bank (0~15).
 Response: See MSR_KRL_MTADDDT.

ID: 004 (MSC_KRL_MTDELDT) – Multitasking_Delete_Timer_Command

Description: Stops an existing timer and deletes it.

Library: SyKernel_MTDELDT.
 Message: 00 1B 004.
 01 1B Timer ID.
 Response: See MSR_KRL_MTDELDT.

ID: 005 (MSC_KRL_MTSLPP) – Multitasking_Sleep_Process_Command

Description: Puts an existing process into the sleep mode. It is stopped and does not run anymore, until it receives a message, or until it will be wacked up again (see MSC_KRL_MTWAKP).

Library: SyKernel_MTSLPP.
 Message: 00 1B 005.
 01 1B Process ID.
 Response: See MSR_KRL_MTSLPP.

ID: 006 (MSC_KRL_MTWAKP) – Multitasking_WakeUp_Process_Command

Description: Wakes up a process, which was sleeping before. A process will be wacked up, too, when another process is sending a message to it.

Library: SyKernel_MTWAKP.
 Message: 00 1B 006.
 01 1B Process ID.
 Response: See MSR_KRL_MTWAKP

ID: 007 (MSC_KRL_TMADDT) – Timer_Add_Counter_Command

Description: Adds a counter for a process. You need to specify a byte anywhere in the memory. This byte then will be increased every [P5]/50 seconds. This is much easier and faster than setting up an own timer.

Library: SyKernel_TMADDT.

Message: 00 1B 007.
 01 1W Counter byte address.
 03 1B Counter byte RAM bank (0~15).
 04 1B Process ID.
 05 1B Speed (counter will be increased every x/50 secs).

Response: See MSR_KRL_TMADDT.

ID: 008 (MSC_KRL_TMDELTA) – Timer_Delete_Counter_Command

Description: Stops the specified counter. Please note, that this will be done automatically, if the process should be deleted.

Library: SyKernel_TMDELTA.

Message: 00 1B 008.
 01 1W Counter byte address.
 03 1B Counter byte RAM bank (0~15).

Response: See MSR_KRL_TMDELTA.

ID: 009 (MSC_KRL_TMDELTA) –

– Timer_Delete_AllProcessCounters_Command

Description: Stops all counters of one process. Please note, that this will be done automatically, if the process should be deleted.

Library: SyKernel_TMDELTA.

Message: 00 1B 009.
 01 1B Process ID.

Response: See MSR_KRL_TMDELTA.

ID: 010 (MSC_KRL_MTPRIO) –

– Multitasking_Process_Priority_Command

Description: Changes the priority of a process. A process is able to change its own priority.

Library: SyKernel_MTPRIO.

Message: 00 1B 010.
 01 1B Process ID.
 01 1B New Priority (1=highest, 7=lowest).

Response: See MSR_KRL_MTPRIO.

5.1.3 – Kernel Responses (Multitasking Mangement)

Kernel responses are coming as a message, which has to be received with RST 18H (MSGSEND) or RST 08H (MSGSLP) from the Kernel process. which always has the ID 1.

ID: 129 (MSR_KRL_MTADDP) – Multitasking_Add_Process_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after trying to add a new process (see MSC_KRL_MTADDP). You shouldn't add another process until you receive this message.

Message: 00 1B 129.
 01 1B Error status (0=successful, 1=failed).
 02 1B Process ID (if P1=0).

ID: 130 (MSR_KRL_MTDELP) – Multitasking_Delete_Process_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after deleting an existing process (see MSC_KRL_MTDELP).

Message: 00 1B 130.

ID: 131 (MSR_KRL_MTADDT) – Multitasking_Add_Timer_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after trying to add a new timer (see MSC_KRL_MTADDT). You shouldn't add another timer until you receive this message.

Message: 00 1B 131.
 01 1B Error status (0=successful, 1=failed).
 02 1B Timer ID (if P1=0).

ID: 132 (MSR_KRL_MTDELT) – Multitasking_Delete_Timer_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after deleting an existing timer (see MSC_KRL_MTDELT).

Message: 00 1B 132.

ID: 133 (MSR_KRL_MTSLPP) – Multitasking_Sleep_Process_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after putting a process into sleep mode (see MSC_KRL_MTSLPP).

Message: 00 1B 133.

ID: 134 (MSR_KRL_MTWAKP) –

– Multitasking_WakeUp_Process_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after wacking up a process (see MSC_KRL_MTWAKP).

Message: 00 1B 134.

ID: 135 (MSR_KRL_TMADDT) – Timer_Add_Counter_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after trying to add a new counter (see MSC_KRL_TMADDT).

Message: 00 1B 135.

01 1B Error status (0=successful, 1=failed).

ID: 136 (MSR_KRL_TMDELDT) – Timer_Delete_Counter_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after deleting a counter (see MSC_KRL_TMDELDT).

Message: 00 1B 136.

ID: 137 (MSR_KRL_TMDELPL) –

– Timer_Delete_AllProcessCounters_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after deleting all counters of one process (see MSC_KRL_TMDELPL).

Message: 00 1B 137.

ID: 138 (MSR_KRL_MTPRIO) – Multitasking_Process_Priority_Response

Description: The kernel sends this message after changing the priority of a process (see MSC_KRL_MTPRIO).

Message: 00 1B 138.

5.1.4 – Kernel Functions (Memory Management)

All kernel memory functions have to be called with RST 20H (BNKSCL) or RST 28H (BNKFCL).

MEMSUM (8100H) – Memory_Summary

Description: Gives back the size of the total existing memory (=D*65 536+65 536) and the amount of bytes (=E*65 536+IX), which are still available.

How to call: ld hl,8100H : rst 028H

Input: –

Output: E, IX – Free memory in bytes.
 D – Number of existing 64K extended RAM banks.
 Registers: A, BC, IY.

MEMINF (8121H) – Memory_Information

Description: Searches for the largest free area inside a 64K bank. If you don't specify the RAM bank (A=0) the system is searching for the largest area inside the whole memory.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8121H

Input: A – RAM bank (1–15, 0 means search in any bank)
 E – Memory type:
 0 – Total (code area).
 1 – Within a 16K block (data area).
 2 – Within the last 16K block (transfer area).

Output: BC – Length of the largest free area.
 A, HL – Total free memory in bytes.

Registers: F, DE

MEMGET (8118H) – Memory_Get

Description: Reserves the requested amount of memory in any or a special RAM bank. If the memory type is 1, it will be reserved inside a 16k block, if it is 2, inside the last 16K block of the RAM bank.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8118H.

Input: A – RAM bank (1–15, 0 means search in any bank).
 E – Memory type:
 0 – Total (code area).
 1 – Within a 16K block (data area).
 2 – Within the last 16K block (transfer area).

Output: BC – Length in bytes.
 A – RAM bank (1–15).
 HL – Address.
 CY – Error state (CY=1 → Not enough memory free).

Registers: BC, DE.

MEMFRE (811BH) – Memory_Free

Description: Frees the specified memory. Please note, that because of performance and resources reasons the system will free it in any way, so be sure, that you really free only the memory you reserved by yourself.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 811BH.
 Input: A – RAM bank (1–15).
 HL – Address.
 BC – Length in bytes.
 Output: –
 Registers: AF, BC, E, HL.

MEMSIZ (811EH) – Memory_Resize

Description: Changes the length of a reserved memory area. You will always have success, if the new length is smaller than the old one.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 811EH.
 Input: A – RAM bank (1–15).
 HL – Address.
 BC – Old length in bytes.
 DE – New length in bytes.
 Output: CY – Error state (CY=1 → not enough free memory).
 Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

5.1.5 – Kernel Functions (Banking Management)

Most kernel banking functions have to be called with RST 20H (BNKSL) or RST 28H (BNKFCL). The interbank functions have to be called directly.

BNKRWD (8124H) – Banking_ReadWord

Description: Reads a word from an address in any RAM bank.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8124H.
 Input: A – RAM bank (0~15).
 HL – Address.
 Output: BC – Content of A, HL.
 HL – Address+2.
 Registers: –

BNKWWD (8127H) – Banking_WriteWord

Description: Writes a word to an address in any RAM bank.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8127H.
 Input: A – RAM bank (0~15).
 HL – Address.
 BC – Word.

Output: HL – Address+2.
 Registers: BC

BNKRBT (812AH) – Banking_ReadByte

Description: Reads a byte from an address in any RAM bank.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 812AH.

Input: A – RAM bank (0~15).
 HL – Address.

Output: B – Content of A, HL.
 HL – Address+1.

Registers: –

BNKWBT (812DH) – Banking_WriteByte

Description: Writes a byte to an address in any RAM bank.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 812DH.

Input: A – RAM bank (0~15).
 HL – Address.

B – Byte.

Output: HL – Address+1.

Registers: BC.

BNKCOP (8130H) – Banking_Copy

Description: Copies a memory area from an address in any RAM bank to any other place in memory. The low nibble of the A register (bit 0–3) specifies the source bank, the high nibble (bit 4–7) the destination bank.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8130H

Input: A – bit0–3 → Source RAM bank (0~15)
 bit4–7 → Destination RAM bank (0~15)

HL – Source address

DE – Destination address

BC – Length

Output: –

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL

BNKGET (8133H) – Banking_GetBank

Description: Gives back the number of the RAM bank, where the process is running.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8133H.

Input: –

Output: A – RAM bank (1–15).

Registers: F.

BNK16C (8142H) – Banking_Call_Application16KRoutine

Description: Allows you to execute an application routine in the first RAM bank. The routine must be placed inside a 16K block (data RAM area), that will be switched to 4000H–7FFFH, and the routine will be called. After this the old memory configuration will be restored. The application has to relocate the routine by itself first, by setting bit15=0 and bit14=1 for every address pointer. The routine needs an own temporary stack during its execution, that's must be placed in the same 16K block.

How to call: ld hl,8142H : rst 28H.

Input: IX – Pointer to data structure (between C000H–FFFFH).

00 1B Routine RAM bank (0~15).

01 1W Routine address.

03 1W Address of the temporary stack.

DE, IY – Will be handed over unmodified to the routine.

Output: DE, IX, IY – Will be received unmodified by the routine.

Registers: AF, BC, HL.

BNKCLL (FF03H) – Banking_Interbank_Call

Description: Switches to a routine into another 64K RAM bank. This allows to have code areas placed in multiple 64K RAM banks and to jump easily between them. The code must be relocated and its stack and transfer area must be placed between C000H and FFFFH as usual.

How to call: call FF03H.

Input: IX – Routine address.

B – Routine RAM bank (0~15).

IY – Address of the routines stack.

DE, HL – Will be handed over unmodified to the routine.

Registers: AF, BC, IY.

BNKRET (FF00H) – Banking_Interbank_Return

Description: Returns from a routine inside another 64K RAM bank to the caller in the primary bank. See BNKCLL.

How to call: jp FF00H.

Input: C, DE, HL, IX – Will be handed over unmodified to the caller.

Registers: AF, B, IY.

5.1.6 – Kernel Functions (Miscellaneous)

All miscellaneous kernel functions have to be called with RST 20H (BNKSCL) or RST 28H (BNKFCL). For more information see KERNEL FUNCTIONS (MEMORY MANAGEMENT).

MTGCNT (8109H) – Multitasking_GetCounter

Description: Gives back the system counter ($=IY*65536+IX$) and the counter of the idle process. The system counter is increased 50 or 60 times per second. The idle process increases its counter every 64 microseconds, when it owns the CPU time.

How to call: ld hl,8109H : rst 28H

Input: –

Output: IY, IX – System counter

DE – Idle counter

Registers: –

5.2 – DESKTOP MANAGER COMMANDS**ID: 032 (MSC_DSK_WINOPN) – Window_Open_Command**

Description: Opens a new window. Its data record must be placed in the transfer RAM area (between C000H and FFFFH).

Library: SyDesktop_WINOPN.

Message: 00 1B 32.

01 1B Window data record RAM bank (0–8).

02 1W Window data record address (C000H–FFFFH).

Response: See MSR_DSK_WOPNER and MSR_DSK_WOPNOK.

ID: 033 (MSC_DSK_WINMEN) – Window_Redraw_Menu_Command

Description: Redraws the menu bar of a window. If you changed your menus you should call this command to update the screen display. Works only if window has focus.

Library: SyDesktop_WINMEN.

Message: 00 1B 033.
01 1B Window ID.

ID: 034 (MSC_DSK_WININH) – Window_Redraw_Content_Command

Description: Redraws one, all or a specified number of controls inside the window content. Works only if window has focus.

Library: SyDesktop_WININH.

Message: 00 1B 034.
01 1B Window ID.
02 1B -1 → Control ID or negative number of controls.
000~239 → The control with the specified ID will be redrawed.
240~254 → Redraws -P2 controls, starting from control P3. As an example, if P2 is -3 (253) and P3 is 5, the controls 5, 6 and 7 will be edrawed.
255 → Redraws all controls inside the window content.
→ If P2 is between 240 and 254:
03 1B ID of the first control, which should be redrawed.

ID: 035 (MSC_DSK_WINTOL) – Window_Redraw_Toolbar_Command

Description: Redraws one, all or a specified number of controls inside the window toolbar. Use this command to update the screen display, if you made changes in the toolbar. Works only if window has focus.

Library: SyDesktop_WINTOL

Message: 00 1B 035
01 1B Window ID
02 1B -1 → Control ID or negative number of controls.
000~239 → The control with the specified ID will be redrawed.

240~254 → Redraws –P2 controls, starting from control P3. As an example, if P2 is –3 (253) and P3 is 5, the controls 5, 6 and 7 will be redrawn.

255 → Redraws all controls inside the window content.

→ If P2 is between 240 and 254:

03 1B ID of the first control, which should be redrawn.

ID: 036 (MSC_DSK_WINTIT) – Window_Redraw_Title_Command

Description: Redraws the title bar of a window. Use this command to update the screen display, if you changed the text of the window title. Works only if window has focus.

Library: SyDesktop_WINTIT.

Message: 00 1B 036.

01 1B Window ID.

ID: 037 (MSC_DSK_WINSTA) – Window_Redraw_Statusbar_Command

Description: Redraws the status bar of a window. Use this command to update the screen display, if you changed the text of the status bar. Works only if window has focus.

Library: SyDesktop_WINSTA.

Message: 00 1B 037.

01 1B Window ID.

ID: 038 (MSC_DSK_WINMVX) – Window_Set_ContentX_Command

Description: If the size of the window content is larger than the visible part, you can scroll its X offset with this command. The command works also, if the window is not resizable by the user. Works only if window has focus.

Library: SyDesktop_WINMVX.

Message: 00 1B 038.

01 1B Window ID.

02 1W New X offset of the visible window content.

ID: 039 (MSC_DSK_WINMVY) – Window_Set_ContentY_Command

Description: If the size of the window content is larger than the visible part, you can scroll its Y offset with this command.

The command works also, if the window is not resizable by the user. Works only if window has focus.

Library: SyDesktop_WINMVY.

Message: 00 1B 039.

01 1B Window ID.

02 1W New Y offset of the visible window content.

ID: 040 (MSC_DSK_WINTOP) – Window_Focus_Command

Description: Takes the window to the front position on the screen.

Works in all conditions.

Library: SyDesktop_WINTOP.

Message: 00 1B 040.

01 1B Window ID.

ID: 041 (MSC_DSK_WINMAX) – Window_Size_Maximize_Command

Description: Maximizes a window. A maximized window has a special

status, where it can't be moved to another screen position

Works only if the window is minimized or restored.

Library: SyDesktop_WINMAX.

Message: 00 1B 041.

01 1B Window ID.

ID: 042 (MSC_DSK_WINMIN) – Window_Size_Minimize_Command

Description: Minimizes a window. It will disappear from the screen

and can only be accessed by the user via the task bar.

Works only if the window is minimized or restored.

Library: SyDesktop_WINMIN.

Message: 00 1B 042.

01 1B Window ID.

ID: 043 (MSC_DSK_WINMID) – Window_Size_Restore_Command

Description: Restores the window or the size of the window, if it was minimized or maximized before. Works only if the window is maximized or minimized.

Library: SyDesktop_WINMID.

Message: 00 1B 043.

01 1B Window ID.

ID: 044 (MSC_DSK_WINMOV) – Window_Set_Position_Command

Description: Moves the window to another position on the screen.
Works only, if the window is not maximized.

Library: SyDesktop_WINMOV.

Message: 00 1B 044.
01 1B Window ID.
02 1W New X window position.
04 1W New Y window position.

ID: 045 (MSC_DSK_WINSIZ) – Window_Set_Size_Command

Description: Resizes a window. This command will always work, even if the window is not resizeable by the user. Please note, that the size always refers to the visible content of the window, not to the whole window including the control elements. So with title bar, scroll bars etc. a window can have a bigger size on the screen. Works always.

Library: SyDesktop_WINSIZ.

Message: 00 1B 045.
01 1B Window ID.
02 1W New window width.
04 1W New window height.

ID: 046 (MSC_DSK_WINCLS) – Window_Close_Command

Description: Closes the window. The desktop manager will remove it from the screen. Works in all conditions.

Library: SyDesktop_WINCLS.

Message: 00 1B 046.
01 1B Window ID.

ID: 047 (MSC_DSK_WINDIN) –

– Window_Redraw_ContentExtended_Command

Description: Redraws one, all or a specified number of controls inside the window content. This command is identical with MSC_DSK_WININH with the exception, that it always works but with less speed. See MSC_DSK_WININH.

Library: SyDesktop_WINDIN

Message: 00 1B 047
01 1B Window ID

- 02 1B Control ID, -1 (all) or negative number of controls.
 000~239 → The control with the specified ID will be redrawn.
 240~254 → Redraws -P2 controls, starting from control P3. As an example, if P2 is -3 (253) and P3 is 5, the controls 5, 6 and 7 will be redrawn.
 255 → Redraws all controls inside the window content.
 → If P2 is between 240 and 254:
 03 1B ID of the first control, which should be redrawn.

ID: 048 (MSC_DSK_DSUSRV) – Desktop_Service_Command

Description: Please read the desktop manager service description below for more information.

Library: See DESKTOP MANAGER SERVICES.

Message: 00 1B 048.

01 1B Service ID.

02-05 See desktop manager service description below.

Response: See MSR_DSK_DSUSRV.

ID: 049 (MSC_DSK_WINSLD) – Window_Redraw_Slider_Command

Description: Redraws the two slider of the window, with which the user can scroll the content. Sliders will only be displayed, if the window is resizeable. Works if window has focus.

Library: SyDesktop_WINSLD.

Message: 00 1B 049.

01 1B Window ID.

ID: 050 (MSC_DSK_WINPIN) –

– Window_Redraw_ContentArea_Command

Description: This command works like MSC_DSK_WINDIN, but it updates only a specified area inside the window content. Changes outside the area won't be updated. For more information see MSC_DSK_WINDIN and MSC_DSK_WININH. This command works in all conditions.

Library: SyDesktop_WINPIN

Message: 00 1B 050

- 01 1B Window ID
- 02 1B Control ID, -1 (all) or negative number of controls
000~239 → The control with the specified ID
will be redrawn.
240~254 → Redraws -P2 controls, starting from
control P3. As an example, if P2 is -3
(253) and P3 is 5, the controls 5, 6 and 7
will be redrawn.
255 → Redraws all controls inside the window
content.
- 04 1W Area X begin inside the window content.
- 06 1W Area Y begin.
- 08 1W Area X length.
- 10 1W Area Y length.
- If P2 is between 240 and 254:
- 03 1B ID of the first control, which should be redrawn.

ID: 051 (MSC_DSK_WINSIN) –

– Window_Redraw_SubControl_Command

Description: This command works like MSC_DSK_WINDIN, but it updates only one sub control inside a control collection. This command currently doesn't support the redrawing of multiple sub controls. For additional information see also MSC_DSK_WINDIN. This command works always.

Library: SyDesktop_WINSIN.

Message: 00 1B 051.
01 1B Window ID.
02 1B Control collection ID.
03 1B ID of the sub control inside the control collection.

5.2.1 – Desktop Manager Responses

ID: 160 (MSR_DSK_WOPNER) – Window_OpenError_Response

Description: The window couldn't be opened, because the maximum number of windows (32) has already been reached.

Message: 00 1B 160.

ID: 161 (MSR_DSK_WOPNOK) – Window_OpenOK_Response

Description: The window has been opened. The desktop manager sends back its ID. For all following commands regarding the new window you will need this ID.

Message: 00 1B 161.
04 1B Window ID.

ID: 162 (MSR_DSK_WCLICK) – Window_UserAction_Response

Description: The desktop manager is sending this message to the application, if the user has done an interaction with the window or the controls inside the window.

Message: 00 1B 162
01 1B Window ID
02 1B Action type

- 05 – Close button has been clicked or ALT+F4 has been pressed (DSK_ACT_CLOSE).
- 06 – Menu entry has been clicked (DSK_ACT_MENU). P8 will contain the menu entry value.
- 14 – A control of the window content has been clicked and/or modified with the keyboard or mouse (DSK_ACT_CONTENT). P8 will contain the control value, P4/6 the mouse position, if the user used the mouse.
- 15 – A control of the window toolbar has been clicked and/or modified with the keyboard or mouse (DSK_ACT_TOOLBAR). P8 will contain the control value, P4/6 the mouse position, if the user used the mouse.
- 16 – User has pressed a key without modifying any control (DSK_ACT_KEY). P4 will contain the ASCII code.

→ If P2 is 14 or 15:

03 1B Action sub specification

- 00 – Left mousebutton clicked (DSK_SUB_MLCLICK).
- 01 – Right mousebutton clicked (DSK_SUB_MRCLICK).

- 02 – Left mousebutton double clicked (DSK_SUB_MDCLICK).
- 03 – Middle mousebutton clicked (DSK_SUB_MMCLICK).
- 07 – Key has been pressed (DSK_SUB_KEY)
- If P2 is 14 or 15 and P3 is between 0 and 3:
- 04 1W Mouse X position (inside the window content/toolbar).
- 06 1W Mouse Y position.
- If P2 is 14 or 15 and P3 is 7, or if P2 is 16:
- 04 1B ASCII code of the pressed key. For information about extended ASCII codes, see the chapter “device manager”, EXTENDED ASCII CODES.
- If P2 is 6, 14 or 15:
- 08 1W Menu entry value or control value.

ID: 163 (MSR_DSK_DSksRV) – Desktop_Service_Response

Description: Please read the desktop manager service description below for more information.

Message: 00 1B 163.
 01 1B Service ID.
 02 -05 See desktop manager service description below.

ID: 164 (MSR_DSK_WFOCUS) – Window_Focus_Response

Description: The desktop manager is sending this message to the application, if the focus status of a window changed.

Message: 00 1B 164.
 01 1B Window ID.
 02 1B Status: 0 → Window lost focus position.
 1 → Window received focus position.

ID: 165 (MSR_DSK_CFOCUS) – Control_Focus_Response

Description: The desktop manager is sending this message to the application, if another control inside a window got the focus. Please note, that the control ID is not the value of the control but its number inside the control group (starting with 1).

Message: 00 1B 165.
 01 1B Window ID.

- 02 1B ID of the new focus control (starting with 1).
- 03 1B Reason for focus change:
 - 0 → User clicked the control via mouse or used the mouse wheel.
 - 1 → User pressed the tab key.

ID: 166 (MSR_DSK_WRESIZ) – Window_Resize_Response

Description: The desktop manager is sending this message to the application, if the user resized the window. This may happen when it has been maximized, restored or resized by keyboard or mouse. Please note, that this message will also be sent, if the user maximizes or restores a window, which was minimized before.

Message: 00 1B 166.
01 1B Window ID.

ID: 167 (MSR_DSK_WSCROL) – Window_Scroll_Response

Description: The desktop manager is sending this message to the application, if the user scrolled the content of the window.

Message: 00 1B 167
01 1B Window ID.

5.2.2 – Desktop Manager Services

Most parts of the device manager can't be accessed by an application directly. All video screen related things will be handled by the desktop manager. Because of this there are the desktop services, which allow an application to change some video screen parameters. Also some more services are offered.

ID: 001 (DSK_SRV_MODGET) – DesktopService_ScreenModeGet

Description: Returns the current screen resolution and number of possible colours.

Library: SyDesktop_MODGET.

Message: 00 1B 048.
01 1B 001.

Response: 00 1B 163.
01 1B 001.

- 02 1B Screen mode; the available modes depend on the computer platform.
- PCW 0 – 720 X 255, 2 colours (PCW standard mode).
- CPC 1 – 320 X 200, 4 colours (CPC standard mode).
2 – 640 X 200, 2 colours.
- EP 1 – 320 X 200, 4 colours (EP standard mode).
2 – 640 X 200, 2 colours.
- MSX 5 – 256 X 212, 16 colours.
6 – 512 X 212, 4 colours.
7 – 512 X 212, 16 colours (MSX standard mode).
- G9K 8 – 384 X 240, 16 colours.
9 – 512 X 212, 16 colours (G9K standard mode).
10 – 768 X 240, 16 colours.
11 – 1024x 212, 16 colours.
- If G9K:
- 03 1B Virtual desktop width.
- 0 – No virtual desktop.
1 – 512.
2 – 1000.

ID: 002 (DSK_SRV_MODSET) – DesktopService_ScreenModeSet

Description: Sets the screen resolution and number of possible colors.

Library: SyDesktop_MODSET

Message: 00 1B 048

01 1B 002

02 1B Bit0~6 Screen mode (the available modes depend on the computer platform):

PCW 0 – 720 X 255, 2 colours (PCW standard mode).

CPC 1 – 320 X 200, 4 colours (CPC standard mode).

2 – 640 X 200, 2 colours.

EP 1 – 320 X 200, 4 colours (EP standard mode).

2 – 640 X 200, 2 colours.

MSX 5 – 256 X 212, 16 colours.

6 – 512 X 212, 4 colours.

7 – 512 X 212, 16 colours (MSX standard mode).

G9K 8 – 384 X 240, 16 colours.

9 – 512 X 212, 16 colours (G9K standard mode).

10 – 768 X 240, 16 colours.

11 – 1024x 212, 16 colours.

→ If G9K:

- 03 1B Virtual desktop width.
 - 0 – No virtual desktop.
 - 1 – 512.
 - 2 – 1000.

Response: The desktop manager does not send a response message.

ID: 003 (DSK_SRV_COLGET) – DesktopService_ColourGet

Description: Returns the definition of a colours. Please note, that you always have a range of 4096, even if the computer is not a CPC PLUS, as the system recalculates the colour for the other machines.

Library: SyDesktop_COLGET.

Message: 00 1B 048.
 01 1B 003.
 02 1B Colour number (0~15).

Response: 00 1B 163.
 01 1B 003.
 02 1B Colour number (0~15).
 03 1B bit0~3 → Blue component (0~15).
 bit4~7 → Green component (0~15).
 04 1B bit0~3 → Red component (0~15).

ID: 004 (DSK_SRV_COLSET) – DesktopService_ColourSet

Description: Defines one colour. Please note, that you always have a range of 4096, even if the computer is not a CPC PLUS, as the system recalculates the colour for other machines.

Library: SyDesktop_COLSET.

Message: 00 1B 048.
 01 1B 004.
 02 1B Colour number (0~15)
 03 1B bit0~3 → Blue component (0~15).
 bit4~7 → Green component (0~15).
 04 1B bit0~3 → Red component (0~15).

Response: The desktop manager does not send a response message.

ID: 008 (DSK_SRV_DSKBGR) – DesktopService_RedrawBackground

Description: Reinitialize and redraws the desktop background.

Library: SyDesktop_DSKBGR.

Message: 00 1B 048.
01 1B 008.

Response: The desktop manager does not send a response message.

ID: 009 (DSK_SRV_DSKPLT) – DesktopService_RedrawComplete

Description: Reinitialize the desktop background and redraws the complete screen. The background, the task bar and all windows will be updated.

Library: SyDesktop_DSKPLT

Message: 00 1B 048
01 1B 009

Response: The desktop manager does not send a response message.

5.2.3 – Desktop Manager Functions

The desktop manager functions have to be called with RST 20H (BNKSCL).

BUFPUT (814EH) – Clipboard_Put

Description: Copies data into the clipboard. If the clipboard already contained data, it will be deleted first.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 814EH

Input: IX – Source data address.
E – Source data RAM bank (0~15).
IY – Length of source data.
D – Type of source data.
1 – Text.
2 – Graphic (extended).
3 – Item list (format not yet defined).
4 – Desktop icon shortcut.

Output: CY – Error state (0 → Ok, 1 → Memory full)

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

BUFGET (8151H) – Clipboard_Get

Description: Copies data from the clipboard to the destination memory area. This will only be done, if the clipboard contains data of the requested type and if the data inside the clipboard is not larger than the destination area.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8151H

Input: IX – Destination address.
 E – Destination RAM bank (0~15).
 IY – Maximum length of destination area.
 D – Type of required data.

Output: CY – Error state.
 0 → Ok (IY – Length of copied data).
 1 → Error: A – 0 → Clipboard is empty,
 1 → Wrongdata type,
 2 → Data is too large.

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

BUFSTA (8154H) – Clipboard_Status

Description: Reads the status of the clipboard (data type and length).

The address and bank of the data is returned as well, though an application shouldn't access it directly, as it may be changed by another process in the meantime.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8154H

Input: –

Output: D – Data type (0 – clipboard is empty).
 IY – Data length.
 IX – Data address.
 E – Data RAM bank (0~15).

Registers: –

5.2.4 – Desktop Manager Data Records

If "recalculation" for a control group is activated every coordinate and size value of a control will be recalculated, if the user changes the size of the window. The calculation is:

position or size – Static_part + window_size * multiplier / divider

5.2.4.1 – Window Data Record

00 1B Status (0=closed, 1=normal, 2=maximized, 3=minimized, +128=open window centered, will be always reset after opening).

- 01 1B bit0: Display 8x8 pixel application icon (in the upper left edge).
 bit1: Window is resizable.
 bit2: Display close button.
 bit3: Display tool bar (below the menu bar).
 bit4: Display title bar.
 bit5: Display menu bar (below the title bar).
 bit6: Display status bar (at the lower side of the window).
 bit7: Used internally (set to 0).
- 02 1B bit0: Adjust X size of the window content to the X size of the window.
 bit1: Adjust Y size of the window content to the Y size of the window.
 bit2: Window will not be displayed in the task bar.
 bit3: Window is not moveable.
 bit4: Window is a modal window: other windows, who point on it (see byte 51), can't get the focus position.
 bit5: Reserved (set to 0).
 bit6: Used internally (set to 0).
 bit7: Used internally (set to 0).
- 03 1B Process ID of the windows owner
- 04 2W X/Y position, if window is not maximized
- 08 2W X/Y size, if window is not maximized.
- 12 2W X/Y offset of the displayed window content.
- 16 2W Full X/Y length of the total window content.
- 20 2W Minimal possible X/Y size of the window.
- 24 2W Maximal possible X/Y size of the window.
- 28 1W Address of the application icon (graphic object).
- 30 1W Address of the title line text (terminated by 0).
- 32 1W Address of the status line text (terminated by 0).
- 34 1W Address of the MENU DATA RECORD.
- 36 1W Address of the CONTROL GROUP DATA RECORD of the window content.
- 38 1W Address of the CONTROL GROUP DATA RECORD of the tool bar content.
- 40 1W Height of the tool bar.
- 42 9B Used during runtime, so it has to be reserved.
- 51 1B "0" or number of modal window + 1.
- 52 140B Used during runtime, so it has to be reserved.

5.2.4.2 – Control Group Data Record

- 00 1B Number of controls (has to be >0; notice that you have to fill the background of the form by yourself, too!)
- 01 1B Process ID of the control group owner
- 02 1W Address of the CONTROL DATA RECORDS
- 04 1W Address of the position/size CALCULATION RULE DATA RECORD (0 means, no re-calculation)
- 06 2B Not used, set to 0.
- 08 1B Object to click, when user hits return (1~255, 0=not defined; works only for window content, not for the toolbar)
- 09 1B Object to click, when user hits escape (1~255, 0=not defined; works only for window content, not for the toolbar)
- 10 4B Reserved, set to 0.
- 14 1B Focus object (1~255, 0=no focus on any object; only for window content)
- 15 1B Not used, set to 0.

5.2.4.3 – Control Data Records

[Number of controls] * [

- 00 1W Control ID/value; this will be sent to the application, if the user clicks or modifies the control. As an example you could store the address of a sub routine here, which you call, if the user clicks the control.
- 02 1B CONTROL TYPE; for the type IDs see below. The IDs are between 0 and 63. IDs > 63 will be ignored, so you can set bit 6 and/or 7 to 1, if you want to hide an object, and reset it to 0 if you want to show it again.
- 03 1B Bank number, where the extended control data record is located (0~15); “-1” means, that the control is placed in the same bank like the window data record.
- 04 1W Either a parameter to specify the control properties or, if one word is not enough, a pointer to the extended control data record; this depends on the control, so see the control description for information, what to write here.
- 06 2W X/Y position of the control (related to the upper left edge of the content or tool bar); if the window is using a CALCULATION RULE DATA RECORD, you can write 0 here.

- 10 2W X/Y size of the control (related to the upper left edge of the content or tool bar); if the window is using a CALCULATION RULE DATA RECORD, you can write 0 here
- 14 2B Not used, set to 0.
-]

5.2.4.4 – Calculation Rule Data Record

- 00 1W X position (static part).
- 02 1B Window X size multiplier.
- 03 1B Window X size divider.
- 04 1W Y position (static part).
- 06 1B Window Y size multiplier.
- 07 1B Window Y size divider.
- 08 1W X size (static part).
- 10 1B Window X size multiplier.
- 12 1B Window X size divider.
- 13 1W Y size (static part).
- 14 1B Window Y size multiplier.
- 15 1B Window Y size divider.

5.3 – CONTROL TYPES

5.3.1 – Paint

ID: 00 (PLF) – paint_area

Description: Fills an area with a specified colour.

Parameter: bit0–3: Pen.

bit7: Colour mode:

0 → 4 colour indexed, 1 → 16 colour.

Data record: –

Size: Not limited.

ID: 01 (PLT) – paint_text

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Text address (terminated by 0).

03 1B bit0–1: Alignment (0=left, 1=right, 2=center).

bit5: If 1, don't prepare background (MSX only).

bit7: Colour mode:

0 → 4 colour indexed, 1 → 16 colour.

→ If 4 colour mode:
 02 1B bit0–1: Paper, bit2–3: Pen,
 bit7: If 1, fill background.

→ If 16 colour mode:
 02 1B bit0–3: Paper, bit4–7: Pen.
 03 1B bit6: If 1, fill background.

Size: Width is not limited, height must be equal like the height of the current font; if the text is larger than the control width, it will only be cut, if the "fill background" option is activated.

ID: 02 (PLR) – paint_frame

Description: Plots a text with the standard system font with 4 or 16 colours for background and foreground. If "fill background" is activated first the whole area of the control will be filled with the paper-colour, and the text will be clipped to the defined area. Otherwise it would exceed the area, if it's too long. If the background has already been filled with the paper colour before, bit 5 of byte 3 can be used to increase the performance on the MSX platform.

Parameter: bit7: Colour mode:
 0 → 4 colour indexed, 1 → 16 colour.
 bit6: If 1, fill area inside frame.
 → If 4 colour mode:
 bit4–5: Pen of area inside frame (only used, if bit6=1).
 bit0–1: Pen of upper and left line.
 bit2–3: Pen of lower and right line.
 → If 16 Colour mode:
 bit0–3: Pen of area inside frame (only used, if bit6=1).
 bit8–11: Pen of upper and left line.
 bit12–15: Pen of lower and right line.

Data record: –

Size: Equal or greater than 3x3.

ID: 03 (PLX) – paint_frame_with_title

Description: Plots a frame with a text title. Notice, that the lines have a distance of 3 pixels to the border of the control. The area inside the frame will not be filled.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Text address (terminated by 0)

02 1B bit7: Colour mode:

0 → 4 colour indexed, 1 → 16 colour.

→ If 4 colour mode:

02 1B bit0–1: Indexed paper of text;

bit2–3: Indexed pen of text and line.

→ If 16 colour mode:

02 1B bit0–3: Pen of line.

03 1B bit0–3: Paper of text;

bit4–7: Pen of text.

Size: Equal or greater than 16x16.

ID: 04 (PLP) – paint_progress

Description: Plots a progress bar. The second byte of the parameter specifies the progress in 1/255 steps.

Parameter: bit0–1: Indexed colour of upper and left line.

bit2–3: Indexed colour of lower and right line.

Bit4–5: Indexed colour of filled area inside frame.

bit6–7: Indexed colour of empty area inside frame.

bit8–15: Progress (0=0%, 255=100%).

Data record: –

Size: Equal or greater than 3x3.

ID: 05 (PLA) – paint_text_with_alternative_font

Description: Plots a text with a self specified alternative font. The font must be placed in the same 16K area and RAM bank like the text. For the description how a font is stored in the memory see below (FONTS). If "fill background" is activated first the whole area of the ontrol will be filled with the paper-colour.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Text address (terminated by 0).

02 1B bit0–1: Paper, bit2–3: Pen (if 4 colour mode).

bit0–3: Paper, bit4–7: Pen (if 16 colour mode).

03 1B bit0–1: Alignment (0=left, 1=right, 2=center).

bit7: Colour mode:

0 → 4 colour indexed, 1 → 16 colour.

04 1W Font address.

Size: Width is not limited, height must be equal like the height of the current font; if the text is larger than the control width, it will only be cut, if the "fill background" option is activated.

ID: 06 (PLC) – paint_text_with_control_codes

Description: Plots a text, which can include control codes (0–31). The following control codes are currently accepted:

00 – End of text

01 – Set text colour

Parameters: 1byte (bit0–3=paper, bit4–7Pen)

02 – Set font

Parameters: 1word (font address; must be placed in the same 16K area and RAM bank like the text; if the address is –1, the standard font will be used)

03 – Switch underline mode on

04 – Switch underline mode off

05 – Insert additional space between the current and the next char

Parameters: 1byte (amount of pixels)

06 to 07 – *not yet supported* (will be ignored)

08 to 11 – Skip next bytes ((code–8)*2+1 bytes)

12 to 31 – Insert additional space between the current and the next char (code–8 pixels)

Parameter: Pointer to data record

Data record: 00 1W Text address (terminated by 0)

02 1W Maximum number of bytes (control codes included)

04 1W Font address (–1=Standard)

06 1B bit0–3: paper, bit4–7: Pen

07 1B [bit0] =if 1, underlined

Size: Not limited

5.3.2 – Graphics

ID: 08 (ICN) – Graphic_simple

Description: Plots a graphic. For the description how a graphic object is stored in the memory see below (GRAPHICS, "Standard graphics"). The control must have the same size like the graphic.

Parameter: Graphic address.
 Data record: –
 Size: Same as the graphic object.

ID: 09 (ICT) – Graphic_with_text

Description: Plots a graphic with one or two textlines below. It is used for displaying icons. When there is a 0 instead of a text address, the line will stay empty. The graphic itself must have a size of 24x24.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Graphic address (standard graphic) or address of the graphic header (extended graphic).

02 1W "0" or address of text for line 1 (terminated by 0).

04 1W "0" or address of text for line 2 (terminated by 0).

06 1B bit4: Graphic mode (0 – Standard, 1 – extended).

bit5: Text colour mode:

0 → 4 colour indexed, 1 → 16 colour.

bit6: Flag, if extended options.

bit7: Flag, if icon can be moved by the user.

→ If 4 colour text mode:

06 1B bit0–1: Paper, bit2–3: Pen.

→ If 16 colour text mode:

07 1B bit0–3: Paper, bit4–7: Pen.

→ If extended options:

08 1B bit0: Flag, if this icon can be marked.

bit1: Flag, if this icon is marked.

Size: 48x40.

ID: 10 (ICX) – Graphic_extended

Description: Plots a graphic with an extended header. For the description how a graphic object is stored in the memory see below (GRAPHICS, "Graphics with extended header"). The control must have the same size like the graphic.

Parameter: Address of the graphic header.

Data record: –

Size: Same as the graphic object.

5.3.3 – Buttons

ID: 16 (BTN) – button_simple

Description: Plots a button with a centered text inside. Indexed colour 2 is used for the background, indexed colour 1 for text colour and right/lower lines, indexed colour 3 for left/upper lines.

Parameter: Text address (terminated by 0).

Data record: –

Size: Width is not limited, height must always be 12.

ID: 17 (BTC) – button_check

Description: Plots a check box followed by a textline. The status byte contains 1, if the box is checked, otherwise it contains 0.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Address of status byte (this byte can be 0 or 1)

02 1W text address (terminated by 0)

04 1B bit0–1: Indexed text paper;
bit2–3: Indexed text pen.

Size: Width is not limited, height must always be 8.

ID: 8 (BTR) – button_radio

Description: Plots a radio button followed by a textline. If the global status byte has the same value as the own status, this radio button is checked. The 4byte coordinate buffer has to contain –1,–1,–1,–1 at the beginning. It stores the coordinates of the current checked radio button. Radio buttons, which are connected to each other, have to point to the same global status byte and the same coordinate buffer.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Address of global status byte.

02 1W Text address (terminated by 0).

04 1B bit0–1: Indexed text paper,
bit2–3: Indexed text pen.

05 1B Value of the own status.

06 1W Pointer to a global 4-byte coordinate buffer.

Size: Width is not limited, height must always be 8.

ID: 19 (BTP) – button_hidden

Description: This just defines an area on which the user can click.
Nothing will be displayed.

Parameter: –

Data record: –

Size: Not limited.

ID: 20 (BTT) – button_tabs

Description: Plots a tab line. If –1 is set as the width of one tab title the system will calculate the needed width by itself and overwrites the –1 with the correct value. As soon as the text of a tab is changed the application has to set the value to –1 again.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1B Number of tabs

01 1B bit0–1: Indexed paper, bit2–3: Indexed pen,
bit4–5: Indexed colour of left/upper lines,
bit6–7: Indexed colour of right/lower lines.

02 1B Selected tab.

03 1W Text address of tab 1 title (terminated by 0).

05 1B –1 or width of tab 1 title.

06 1W Text address of tab 2 title (terminated by 0).

08 1B –1 or width of tab 2 title.

⋮

?? 1W Text address of tab n title.

?? 1B –1 or width of tab n title.

Size: Width is not limited, height must always be 11.

5.3.4 – Miscellaneous**ID: 24 (SLD)** – Slider_simple

Description: Plots a slider. It can be used to control a value or to move inside a window or list.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1B bit0: Alignment (0=vertical, 1=horizontal).

bit1: 0=value control, 1=window section control.

bit7: Reserved for internal use, set to 0.

- 01 1B Not used, set to 0.
- 02 1W Current value/position
- 04 1W Maximum value/position (range is 0 – maximum)
- 06 1B Value increase, if the user clicks the down/left button
- 07 1B Value decrease, if the user clicks the up/right button

Size: Depending on the alignment, one component must have a minimum of 24 pixels; the other one must be always 8.

ID: 25 (SUP) – control_collection

Description: Plots a collection of sub controls. A control collection behaves like a sub content inside the content of a window.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Pointer to sub control group data record.

02 1W Full width of the control collection area.

04 1W Full height of the control collection area.

06 1W Current X offset.

08 1W Current Y offset.

10 1B bit0: Flag, if X slider should be displayed,
bit1: Flag, if Y slider should be displayed.

Size: If sliders are activated, the size must be more than 32x32; there are no other limitations.

5.3.5 – Textinput

ID: 32 (TXL) – textinput_line

Description: Plots a textinput line. The user can use several key functions for editing the text (see below) as well as a context menu, which opens on right mouseclick. If the user modified the text, bit 7 of byte 12 of the data record will be set to 1.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Address of text (has to be large enough, see below;text has to be placed anywhere inside a 16K aligned data area).

02 1W First displayed character.

04 1W Cursor position.

- 06 1W Number of selected characters (0 → no selection, <0 → cursor is placed at the end of the selection, >0 → cursor is placed at the beginning of the selection).
- 08 1W Length of the current text.
- 10 1W Possible maximum text length (doesn't include the 0 terminator at the end of the text).
- 12 1B bit0: Flag, if Password (all chars will be displayed as '*').
 bit1: Text is read only.
 bit2: Use alternative colours.
 bit7: Will be set to 1, if text has been modified.
- If usage of alternative colours:
- 13 1B bit0–3: Text paper.
 bit4–7: Text pen.
- 14 1B bit0–3: Pen of upper and left line.
 bit4–7: Pen of lower and right line.

Size: Width is not limited, height must always be 12.

Key functions: SHFT+LEFT/RIGHT (De)select parts of the text.
 CTRL+LEFT/RIGHT Jump word wise left/right.
 CTRL+UP/DOWN Jump to line begin/end.
 CTRL+A Select the complete text.
 CTRL+C Copy selected text.
 CTRL+X Cut selected text (copy and delete).
 CTRL+V Paste copied text.

ID: 33 (TXB) – textinput_box

Description: Plots a textinput box. If the user modified the text, bit 7 of byte 12 of the data record will be set to 1.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Address of text (has to be large enough and has to be placed anywhere inside a 16K aligned data area). See below:

- 02 1W Not used.
- 04 1W Cursor position (inside the complete text)
- 06 1W Number of selected characters (0 → no selection, <0 → cursor is placed at the end of the selection, >0 → cursor is placed at the beginning of the selection)

- 08 1W Length of the current text
- 10 1W Possible maximum text length (doesn't include the 0 terminator at the end of the text)
- 12 1B bit1: Text is read only
bit2: Use alternative colours
bit3: Use alternative font
bit7: Will be set to 1, if text has been modified
- 13 1B bit0-3: Text paper, bit4-7: Text pen (only when using alternative colours)
- 14 1B Not used.
- 15 1W Font address (only when using alternative font)
- 17 1B Reserved, set to 0.
- 18 1W Current number of lines
- 20 1W Maximum pixel width of one line for word wrapping (-1 → unlimited).
- 22 1W Maximum number of lines;
- 24 1W Used internally: X size of visible area. (-8=force reformatting)
- 26 1W Used internally: Y size of visible area.
- 28 1W Address of this data record
- 30 1W Used internally: Total X size.
- 32 1W Used internally: Total Y size.
- 34 1W Used internally: X offset of visible area.
- 36 1W Used internally: Y offset of visible area.
- 38 1B bit0: Word wrapping (0=at window border, 1=at maximum pixel position, see byte20)
bit1: 1 (has to be set always)
- 39 1B Tab stop width (1-255; 0=no tab stop)
- 40 4B Message buffer for additional control commands
- 44 4B Reserved, set to 0.
- 48 [maximum number of lines]W
Line length table; this table contains a word for each line with the length in chars; that may also include potential carriage return/line feed (CR+LF) codes at the end of a line; bit15 is set, if a line contains the CR+LF codes.

Key functions: SHFT+LEFT/RIGHT (De)select parts of the text.
CTRL+LEFT/RIGHT Jump word wise left/right.

CTRL+UP/DOWN Jump to line begin/end.
 CTRL+A Select the complete text.
 CTRL+C Copy selected text.
 CTRL+X Cut selected text (copy and delete).
 CTRL+V Paste copied text.

Commands: The textinput box control provides additional functions, which can be accessed by sending special keyboard codes to the control. This is done by using the KEYPUT function (see Device Manager documentation) while the control has focus position. If a command requires additional parameters, they have to be stored at byte 40 in the data record before sending the code. Here you will also find the results, if the command returns. The following commands are available:

Code 29: Get cursor position; this command returns the current cursor position

Output: (buffer+0)=column (starting at 0)
 (buffer+2)=line (starting at 0)

Code 30: Text has been modified; this command forces the control to reformat and update the text.

Code 31: Set cursor position and text selection; the visible area of the textinput box will be scrolled to the new position, if necessary.

Input: (buffer+0)=new cursor position
 (buffer+2)=new number of selected chars

5.3.6 – Lists

ID: 40 (LST) – List_title

Description: Plots the title line of a list.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: 00 1W Number of lines

02 1W First displayed line of the list

04 1W Pointer to data record for the list content

06 2B Not used, set to 0.

08 1B Number of columns (1~64).

09 1B bit0–5: Index of sorted column.

bit6: Sort list on start.

bit7: Sort order (0=ascending, 1=descending).

10 1W Pointer to data record for the columns.
 12 1W Last clicked line.
 14 1B bit0: Flag, if list slider will be displayed.
 bit1: Flag, if multiselections are possible.
 15 1B Not used, set to 0.
 Column record: [Number of columns] * [
 00 1B bit0–1: Allignment (0=left, 1=right, 2=center)
 bit2–3: Type (0=text, 1=graphic, 2=16-bit number,
 3=32-bit number)
 01 1B Not used, set to 0.
 02 1W Width of this column in pixel.
 04 1W Text address of the title (terminated by 0).
 06 2B Not used, set to 0.
]
 List record: [Number of lines] * [
 1W bit0–12: Value of this line
 bit13: Colour of the first row (1=alternative)
 bit14: Set to 0, it is internally used for “selection
 update”.
 bit15: Flag, if this line is marked.
 [Number of columns] *
 1W Text/data address or value for this cell.
]
 Size: Width is not limited, height must always be 10.

ID: 41 (LSI) – List_content

Description: Plots the list itself without the title.

Parameter: Pointer to data record

Data record: See ID 40.

Size: Width must be equal or larger than 11, height must be equal or larger than 16

ID: 42 (LSP) – List_dropdown

Description: Plots a dropdown list. Only one line of the list will be displayed. If the user clicks on this control, the complete list will drop down and the user can choose one of the entries.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: See ID 40.

12 1W Last clicked line (this always represents the selected line).

14 1B bit0: Flag, if list slider will be displayed (should be set to 1, if list has more than 10 entries).
bit1: Flag, if multiselections are possible (always set to 0)

Size: Width must be equal or larger than 11, height must always be 10.

ID: 43 (LSC) – List_complete

Description: Plots the list title and the list itself together. This is the combination of ID 40 and ID 41.

Parameter: Pointer to data record.

Data record: See ID 40.

Size: Width must be equal or larger than 11, height must be equal or larger than 26

5.3.7 – Pulldown Menus

You can define up to 8 sub menu levels. The WINDOW DATA RECORD points to the highest menu level. These are the entries you see in the menu bar of a window. These entries usually point to their sub menus, which contain entries, too, which are clickable or which point to an additional sub menu again.

00 1W Number of entries

[Number of entries] * [

00 1W bit0: Flag, if the menu entry is active. Deactivated entries can't be clicked by the user and will appear in a different colour.

bit1: Flag, if there is a check mark behind the entry.

bit2: Flag, if the entry opens a sub menu.

bit3: Flag, if there is no entry but a separator line.

02 1W Text address (terminated by 0). If bit3 of the previous word is set, you have to use 0 here.

04 1W Value, if the entry is clickable, or address of the sub menu data record, if bit2 of the first word is set.

06 1W Reserved, set to 0.

]

5.4 – FONTS AND GRAPHICS

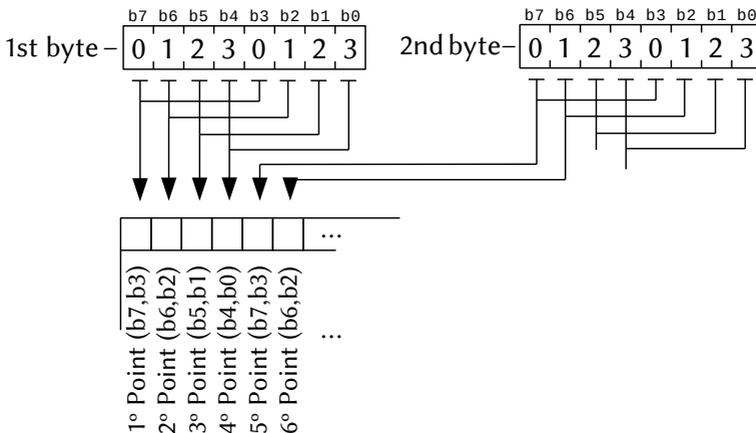
5.4.1 – Standard graphics

A SymbOS standard graphic has 4 colours and can have a maximum size of 255x255 pixel. Each graphic object starts with a 3 byte header:

- 00 1B bit0–6: Width of the graphic in bytes.
bit7: Encoding type (0=CPC, 1=MSX).
- 01 1B Width of the graphic in pixel.
- 02 1B Height of the graphic in pixel.

Directly behind the header the amount of $[\text{Width_in_bytes}] * [\text{Height_in_pixel}]$ bytes is following containing the graphic data. Every graphic is stored line by line like a sprite. The pixels have to be encoded in CPC format (Mode 1). Graphics on a MSX system will automatically be converted to the MSX format, when they are displayed the first time. bit 7 of header byte 0 contains the current encoding format. Please note, that it is not allowed to store an original graphic in MSX format, as a CPC system is not able to handle such graphics!

The following is a description of the CPC encoding format. Each byte contains 4 pixels:



Only applications, which have to modify a graphic after it has been displayed the first time, should take care about the encoding type and the MSX format.

5.4.2 – Graphics with extended header

As the width of a graphic is limited to 255 pixel, it wouldn't be possible to store a complete screen (like 320 X 200 in CPC Mode 1) in one piece. Such a screen needs to be splittet in two pieces (eg. 2 X 160 X 200), which makes it very difficult to write graphic modification routines.

Extended graphics do not have this limitation and also allow more than 4 colours. They can only be used for control ID 10, "graphic_extended". A graphic can be stored in one piece with a width of up to 1020 pixel. The control "graphic_extended" then is able to display a part of such a big linear stored graphic.

The extended header is build like this:

- 00 1B Width of the complete graphic in bytes (this has to be an even value!).
- 01 1B Width of the graphic area, which should be displayed, in pixel.
- 02 1B Height of the graphic area, which should be displayed, in pixel.
- 03 1W Address of the graphic data, including the area offset.
- 05 1W Address of the encoding information byte (see below). Please note: This single byte has ALWAYS to be placed directly in front of the complete graphic data!
- 07 1W Size of the complete graphic.
- ?? 1B Encoding information:
 - bit0–1: Colour encoding (0 → CPC, 1 → MSX).
 - bit2–3: Colour depth (0 → 4 colours, 1 → 16 colours).
 - Only the following two initial values are allowed:
 - 0 → 4 colours, CPC format; an MSX system will convert the graphic to MSX format, when it is displayed the fist time.
 - 5 → 16 colours, MSX format; a CPC and PCW system will render down the complete graphic to 4 colours (CPC format), when it is displayed the fist time.
- ??+1 X Graphic data.

The graphic header doesn't need to be stored directly in front of the graphic, it just needs to be located in the same 16K data area like the graphic itself. You can use this type of graphic:

- If your graphic is larger than 255 pixel
- If you only want to display a part of the graphic
- If you don't want to store the header directly in front of the graphic
- If you want to use 16 colour graphics

In any other case you should use standard graphics, as they are a little bit faster. The graphic itself ("graphic_data") is stored in one piece in memory (without header). Then we have two headers ("graphic_header_for_area_1" and "graphic_header_for_area_2") which are pointing to two different areas of the big graphic.

5.4.3 – Fonts

A font defines the appearance of the characters used for printing texts in SymbOS. A font starts with a simple 2 byte header:

- 00 1B Height of each character in pixel. This value can be between 1 and 15. The usual value is 8.
- 00 1B First character in the font. This value can be between 0 and 255. To save memory the usual value is 32 ("space", the first printable ASCII char), as the first 32 chars normally won't be printed. Please note, that the SymbOS system font always starts with 32 and consists of 98 chars (32–129).

After the header the char definitions follow (1568 bytes):

- 00 1B Width of the first char in pixel.
- 01 1B bit mask of the 1st pixel line of the first char.
- 02 1B bit mask of the 2nd pixel line of the first char.
- ⋮
- 15 1B bit mask of the 15th pixel line of the first char.
- 16 1B Width of the second char in pixel.
- 17 1B bit mask of the 1st pixel line of the second char.
- ⋮

5.5 – SYSTEM MANAGER

The system manager is responsible for starting and stopping applications and for general system jobs. It provides several dialogue services and it owns the file manager, which can only be accessed via the system manager process (for more information see the "FILE MANAGER" chapter). System manager commands are triggered via a message, which has to be sent with RST 10H (MSGSEND) to the system manager process. The system manager process always has the ID 3.

5.5.1 – Application Management

ID: 016 (MSC_SYS_PRGRUN – Program_Run_Command

Description: Loads and starts an application or opens a document with a known type by loading the associated application first. If bit 7 of P3 is not set, the system will open a message box, if an error occurs during the loading process.

Library: SySystem_PRGRUN.

Message: 00 1B 016.

01 1W File path and name address.

03 1B Bit0–3: File path and name RAM bank (0~15).

Bit7: Flag, if system error message should be suppressed.

Response: See MSR_SYS_PRGRUN

ID: 144 (MSR_SYS_PRGRUN) – Program_Run_Response

Description: The system manager sends this message after trying to load an application or after opening an associated document. If the operation was successful, you will find the application ID and the process ID in P8 and P9. If it failed because of loading problems P8 contains the file manager error code.

Message: 00 1B 144.

01 1B Success status.

0 – OK.

1 – File does not exist.

2 – File is not an executable and its type is not associated with an application.

3 – Error while loading (see P8 for error code).

4 – Memory full.

→ If success status is 0:
 08 1B Application ID.
 09 1B Process ID (the applications main process).
 → If success status is 3:
 08 1B File manager error code.

ID: 017 (MSC_SYS_PRGEND) – Program_End_Command

Description: Stops an application and releases all its used system resources. Please note, that this command can't release memory, stop processes and timers or close windows, which are not registered for the application.

Library: SySystem_PRGEND

Message: 00 1B 017
 01 1B Application ID.

Response: The system manager does not send a response message.

ID: 020 (MSC_SYS_PRGSTA) – Program_Run_Dialogue_Command

Description: Opens the "run" dialogue. The user then can select an application or a document.

Message: 00 1B 020.

Response: The system manager does not send a response message.

ID: 024 (MSC_SYS_PRGSET) – Program_Run_ControlPanel_Command

Description: Starts the control panel application or one of its two sub modules.

Message: 00 1B 024.
 01 1B Control panel sub module.
 0 → Main window.
 1 → Display settings.
 2 → Time and date settings.

Response: The system manager does not send a response message.

ID: 025 (MSC_SYS_PRGTSK) – Program_Run_TaskManager_Command

Description: Starts the task manager application.

Message: 00 1B 025.

Response: The system manager does not send a response message.

ID: 030 (MSC_SYS_PRGSRV) – Program_SharedService_Command

Description: Search, start and release shared services.

Message: 00 1B 030.
 04 1B Command type:
 0 → Search application or shared service.
 1 → Search, start and use shared service.
 2 → Release shared service.
 → If P4 is 0 or 1:
 01 1W Address of the 12-byte application ID string.
 → If P4 is 0 or 1:
 03 1B RAM bank (0~15) of the 12-byte application
 ID string.
 → If P4 is 2:
 03 1B Application ID of shared service.
 Response: See MSR_SYS_PRGSRV.

ID: 158 (MSR_SYS_PRGSRV) – Program_SharedService_Response

Description: Command type 0 ("search") will return 5 (not found) or 0 (OK). In the latter case you will find the application and process ID in P8 and P9. Command type 1 ("search, start and use") will return 0 (OK) if the shared services has been found or loaded successfully. In the other case it will return a loading error code of 1, 2, 3 or 4, which is identical with these of MSR_SYS_PRGRUN. Command type 2 ("release") will always return 0 (OK).

Message: 00 1B 158.
 01 1B Result status:
 0 → OK.
 5 → Application or shared service not found
 (can only occur on command type 0).
 1~4 → Error while starting shared service; same
 codes like in MSR_SYS_PRGRUN, please
 read there for a detailed description.
 → If command type was 0 or 1, and result status is 0:
 08 1B Application ID of shared service.
 09 1B Process ID (the applications main process).
 → If result status is 3:
 08 1B File manager error code.

5.5.2 – System Management

The system manager will not send response messages after processing the following commands.

ID: 018 (MSC_SYS_SYSWNX) –

– System_Dialogue_NextWindow_Command

Description: Opens the dialogue for changing the current window.
The next window is preselected. THIS COMMAND IS NOT IMPLEMENTED YET.

Message: 00 1B 018.

ID: 019 (MSC_SYS_SYSWPR) –

– System_Dialogue_PreviousWindow_Command

Description: Opens the dialogue for changing the current window.
The previous window is preselected. THIS COMMAND IS NOT IMPLEMENTED YET.

Message: 00 1B 019.

ID: 021 (MSC_SYS_SYSSEC) –

– System_Dialogue_SystemSecurity_Command

Description: Opens the "SymbOS security" dialogue.

Message: 00 1B 021.

ID: 022 (MSC_SYS_SYSQIT) – System_Dialogue_ShutDown_Command

Description: Opens the "shut down" dialogue.

Message: 00 1B 022.

ID: 023 (MSC_SYS_SYSOFF) – System_ShutDown_Command

Description: Resets the computer.

Message: 00 1B 023.

ID: 028 (MSC_SYS_SYSCFG) – System_Configuration_Command

Description: Loads or saves the configuration or reinitializes the desktop background or the screen saver.

Message: 00 1B 028.

01 1B Action type:

0 → Reload configuration.

1 → Save current configuration.

2 → Reload/reinitialize desktop backg. picture.

3 → Reload or reinitialize screen saver.

5.5.3 – Dialogue Services

ID: 029 (MSC_SYS_SYSWRN) – Dialogue_Infobox_Command

Description: Opens an info, warning or confirm box and displays three line f text and up to three click buttons.

Library: SySystem_SYSWRN

Message: 00 1B 029

01 1W Content data address

03 1B Content data RAM bank (0~15)

04 1B bit0–2: Number of buttons (1–3)

1 → “OK” button

2 → “Yes”, “No” buttons

3 → “Yes”, “No”, “Cancel” buttons

bit3–5: Titletext

0 → Default (bit7=[0]“Error!”/[1]“Info“)

1 → “Error!”

2 → “Info”

3 → “Warning”

4 → “Confirmation”

bit6: Flag, if window should be modal window.

bit7: Box type:

0 → Default (warning [!] symbol).

1 → Info (own symbol will be used).

Content 00 1W Address of text line 1.

data: 02 1W 4 * (text line 1 pen) + 2.

04 1W Address of text line 2.

06 1W 4 * (text line 2 pen) + 2.

08 1W Address of text line 3.

10 1W 4 * (text line 3 pen) + 2.

→ If bit7 of P4 is 1:

12 1W Address of symbol (24x24px 4col SymbOS graphic format).

Response: See MSR_SYS_SYSWRN.

ID: 157 (MSR_SYS_SYSWRN) – Dialogue_Infobox_Response

Description: The system manager sends back this message to the application, when a infobox should be opened, or if the user clicked one of the buttons.

Message: 00 1B 157.
 01 1B Message type:
 0 → The infobox is currently used by another application. It can only be opened once at the same time, if it's not a pure info msg (one button, not a modal window). The user should close the other infobox first before it can be opened again by the app.
 1 → The infobox has been opened successful as a modal window. This message won't be sent for non-modal window infoboxes.
 2 → The user clicked "OK".
 3 → The user clicked "Yes".
 4 → The user clicked "No".
 5 → The user clicked "Cancel" or close button.
 → If P1 is 1:
 02 1B Number of the infobox window + 1. The application should store this number as the modal window ID of its own window, so that the infobox will be handled as the modal window of the application window. As long as it is open the application window can't get the focus position. For more information about the window data structure and modal windows see the chapter "desktop manager".

ID: 031 (MSC_SYS_SELOPN) – Dialogue_FileSelector_Command

Description: Opens the file selection dialogue. You can filter the entries of the directory by attributes and filename extension. We recommend always to set Bit3 of the attribute filter byte. The File mask/path/name string (260 bytes) must always be placed in the transfer RAM area (C000H~FFFFH).

Library: SySystem_SELOPN.

Message: 00 1B 031.
 06 1B bit0–3: File mask, path and name RAM bank (0~15).
 bit6: Flag, if "open" (0) or "save" (1) dialogue.
 bit7: Flag, if file (0) or directory (1) selection.

- 07 1B Attribute filter:
 - bit0 = 1 → Don't show read only files.
 - bit1 = 1 → Don't show hidden files.
 - bit2 = 1 → Don't show system files.
 - bit3 = 1 → Don't show volume ID entries.
 - bit4 = 1 → Don't show directories.
 - bit5 = 1 → Don't show archive files.
- 08 1W File mask, path and name address (C000H–FFFFH).
- 00 3B File extension filter (e.g. “*”).
- 03 1B 0.
- 04 256B Path and filename.
- 10 1W Maximum number of directory entries.
- 12 1W Maximum size of directory data buffer.

Response: See MSR_SYS_SELOPN.

ID: 159 (MSR_SYS_SELOPN) – Dialogue_FileSelector_Response

Description: The system manager sends back this message to the application, when a file selection dialogue should be opened. If opening was successful the application will first receive a type “-1” message and then, after the user choosed his file or aborted, a type 0 or 1 message. If opening failed the application will directly receive a type 2, 3 or 4 message.

Message:

- 00 1B 159
- 01 1B Message type
 - 0 → The user choosed a file or directory and closed the dialogue with “OK”. The complete file path and name can be found in the filepath buffer of the application.
 - 1 → The user aborted the file selection. The content of the applications filepath buffer is unchanged.
 - 2 → The file selection dialogue is currently used by another application. It can only be opened once at the same time. The user should close the dialogue first before it can be opened again by the application.

- 3 → Memory full. There was not enough memory available for the directory buffer and/or the list data structure.
 - 4 → No window available. The desktop manager couldn't open a new window for the dialogue, as the maximum number of windows (32) has already been reached.
 - 1 → The dialogue has been opened successful and the user is doing his file selection right now.
- If P1 is -1:
- 02 1B Number of the dialogue window + 1. The application should store this number as the modal window ID of its own window, so that the file selection dialogue will be handled as the modal window of the application window. As long as it is open the application window can't get the focus position. For more information about the window data structure and modal windows see the chapter "desktop manager".

5.5.4 – System Manager Functions

The system manager functions have to be called with RST 28H (BNKFCL).

SYSINF (8103H) – System_Information

Description: This function is mainly used by the task manager and the control panel application. Request types 0-2 are not documented yet.

How to call: `ld hl,8103H : rst 28H`

Input: E – Request type (see below):

- 0 → Get general information.
- 1 → Get application information.
- 2 → Get task information.
- 3 → Load mass storage device configuration.
- 4 → Save mass storage device configuration.
- 5 → Load a part of the configuration.

- 6 → Save a part of the configuration.
 7 → Get config memory address.
 8 → Get font and version string memory address.
 D, IX, IY – Sub specification (see below).
- Output: DE, IX, IY – Result data (see below).
 Registers: AF, BC, HL.
- Request type: 3 (Load mass storage device configuration).
 Description: Loads the complete device configuration into the applications memory (8*16 bytes). For a description of the data structure please see "Configuration Data/Core Area Part/Mass Storage Devices".
- Input: E = 3.
 IX – Destination address (must be placed inside the transfer RAM area).
- Output: –
- Request type: 4 (Save mass storage device configuration).
 Description: Saves the complete device configuration from the applications memory (8*16 bytes).
- Input: E = 4.
 IX – Source address (must be placed inside the transfer RAM area).
- Output: –
- Request type: 5 (Load a part of the configuration core area).
 Description: Loads a part of the core area into the applications memory. For a description of the data structure please see "Configuration Data/Core Area Part".
- Input: E = 5.
 D – Number of bytes.
 IX – Destination address (transfer RAM area).
 IY – Source offset (starting from byte 163 [=system path] in the core part).
- Output: –
- Request type: 6 (Save a part of the configuration core area).
 Description: Saves a part of the core area from the applications memory.

- Input: E = 6.
 D – Number of bytes
 IX – Source address (transfer RAM area)
 IY – Destination offset (starting from byte 163
 [=system path] in the core part).
- Output: –
- Request type: 7 (Get config memory address).
 Description: Sends back the address of the core area part (including the 6byte–header, so you have to add 6 to have the starting address), which is always placed in RAM bank 0, and the data area part together with the data area parts RAM bank number.
- Input: E = 7.
 Output: DE – Core area address (including 6byte–header; RAM bank 0).
 IX – Data area address.
 IYI – Data area RAM bank (0~8).
- Request type: 8 (get font and version string memory address)
 Description: Sends back the address and total size of the font, which is always placed in RAM bank 0, and the address of the version string, which is placed in the same RAM bank like the data area part (see request type 7).
- Input: E = 8.
 Output: DE – Font address (RAM bank 0)
 IX – Font length (=2 byte header + 98* 16 byte char bitmaps)
 IY – Address of the version information (this is placed in the data area RAM bank).
 The version information has a length of 32 bytes:
 00 1B Version Major.
 01 1B Version Minor.
 02 30B Version String (terminated by 0).

5.6 – FILE MANAGER

The file manager is owned by the system manager process, which is the only one, who is allowed to call file manager functions. If an application wants to use the file manager, it needs to send a special message to the system manager process, which includes all registers. The system manager then will call the specified file manager function and sends a message with the result back to the caller application. The system manager process always has the ID 3. Please note, that in SymbOS all texts must be terminated with a 0 byte. This is true for the pathes and filenames used in the file manager, too.

5.6.1 – System Manager Messages

ID: 026 (MSC_SYS_SYSFIL) – System_Filemanager_Command

Description: An application has to send this message to the system manager (process ID 3) to call a file manager function.

Message: 00 1B 026.
 01 1B File manager function ID.
 02 1W Input for AF.
 04 1W Input for BC.
 06 1W Input for DE.
 08 1W Input for HL.
 10 1W Input for IX.
 12 1W Input for IY

ID: 154 (MSR_SYS_SYSFIL) – System_Filemanager_Response

Description: The system manager sends this message back to the application, after the file manager function has been called.

Message: 00 1B 154
 01 1B File manager function ID
 02 1W Output for AF
 04 1W Output for BC
 06 1W Output for DE
 08 1W Output for HL
 10 1W Output for IX
 12 1W Output for IY

5.6.2 – Error Codes

Nearly all file-manager functions return the success status in the carry flag. If the carry flag is not set, the operation was successful. If it is set, an error occurred. In this case, the A-register contains the error code number. The following is a list of all possible error codes.

- 000 – Device does not exist.
- 001 – OK.
- 002 – Device not initialised.
- 003 – Media is damaged.
- 004 – Partition does not exist.
- 005 – Unsupported media or partition.
- 006 – Error while sector read/write.
- 007 – Error while positioning.
- 008 – Abort while volume access.
- 009 – Unknown volume error.
- 010 – No free filehandler.
- 011 – Device does not exist.
- 012 – Path does not exist.
- 013 – File does not exist.
- 014 – Access is forbidden.
- 015 – Invalid path or filename.
- 016 – Filehandler does not exist.
- 017 – Device slot already occupied.
- 018 – Error in file organisation.
- 019 – Invalid destination name.
- 020 – File/path already exist.
- 021 – Wrong sub command code.
- 022 – Wrong attribute.
- 023 – Directory full.
- 024 – Media full.
- 025 – Media is write protected.
- 026 – Device is not ready.
- 027 – Directory is not empty.
- 028 – Invalid destination device.
- 029 – Not supported by file system.
- 030 – Unsupported device.

- 031 – File is read only.
- 032 – Device channel not available.
- 033 – Destination is not a directory.
- 034 – Destination is not a file.
- 255 – Undefined Error.

5.6.3 – Mass Storage Device Functions

ID: 000 (STOINI) – Storage_Init

Description: Removes all mass storage devices.

Input: –

Output: –

Registers: BC, DE, HL.

ID: 001 (STONEW) – Storage_New

Description: Adds a new mass storage device.

Input: A – Device (0~7).

C – Sub drive.

DE – Driver address.

L – Removeable media flag (1 → Removeable).

B – Drive letter ("A"–"Z").

IX – Device name (11 characters).

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 002 (STORLD) – Storage_Reload

Description: Reloads a mass storage device, if its “removeable media” status is activated. The format and the filesystem type will be loaded again.

Input: A – Device (0~7).

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 003 (STODEL) – Storage_Delete

Description: Removes an existing mass storage device.

Input: A – Device (0~7).

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

ID: 004 (STOINP) – Storage_ReadSector

Description: Reads a sector from a mass storage device (no memory banking).

Input: A – Device (0~7).
 IY, IX – First sector number.
 B – Number of sectors.
 DE – Destination address.

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 005 (STOOUT) – Storage_WriteSector

Description: Writes a sector to a mass storage device (no memory banking).

Input: A – Device (0~7).
 IY, IX – First sector number.
 B – Number of sectors.
 DE – Source address.

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 006 (STOACT) – Storage_Activate

Description: Loads the format and the file system type of a mass storage device.

Input: A – Device (0~7).

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 007 (STOINF) – Storage_Information

Description: Returns information about a mass storage device.

Input: A – Device (0~7).

Output: A – Type:
 00 → Device does not exist.
 01 → Device is ready.
 02 → Device is not initialized.
 03 → Device is corrupt.
 B – Medium:
 01 → Floppy disc single side (Amsdos, PCW).
 02 → Floppy disc double side (FAT 12).
 08 → RAM disc (*not supported yet*).
 16 → IDE HD or CF card (FAT 12, FAT 16, FAT 32).

- C – File system:
 01 → Amsdos Data.
 02 → Amsdos System.
 03 → PCW 180K.
 16 → FAT 12.
 17 → FAT 16.
 18 → FAT 32.
- D – Sectors per cluster:
 IY, IX – Total number of clusters.

Registers: E, HL.

ID: 08 (STOTRN) – Storage_DataTransfer

Description: Reads or writes a number of sectors (512 bytes) from/to the mass storage device. Sector 0 is the first sector of the partition of the device.

Input: A – Device (0~7).
 IY, IX – First sector number.
 B – Number of sectors.
 C – Direction (0=read, 1=write).
 HL – Source/destination address.
 E – Source/destination RAM bank (0~15).

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

5.6.4 – File Management Functions

ID: 016 (FILINI) – File_Init

Description: Initialises the whole file manager. You should never call this function by yourself, as it resets everything!

Input: –

Output: –

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

ID: 017 (FILNEW) – File_New

Description: Creates a new file and opens it for read/write access. If the file was already existing, it will be emptied first. The operation will be aborted, if the existing file is read only or an sub directory. For additional information see 018 (FILOPN).

Library: SyFile_FILNEW
 Input: IXh – File path and name RAM bank (0~15)
 HL – File path and name address.
 A – Attributes:
 bit0 = 1 → Read only.
 bit1 = 1 → Hidden.
 bit2 = 1 → System.
 bit5 = 1 → Archive.
 Output: A – Filehandler ID.
 CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).
 Registers: F, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 018 (FILOPN) – File_Open

Description: Opens an existing file for read/write access. You can open up to 7 different files at the same time. The media will be reloaded first, if the device is set to “removeable media” and there is no other open file on the same device.

Library: SyFile_FILOPN
 Input: IXh – File path and name RAM bank (0~15).
 HL – File path and name address.
 Output: A – Filehandler ID.
 CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).
 Registers: F, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 019 (FILCLO) – File_Close

Description: Closes an opened file. If there is unwritten data in the sector cache, it will be written to disc at once. This command closes a file in any case, even if an error ocured. If an error ocured during file reading/writing you must close the file, too, to make the filehandler free again!

Library: SyFile_FILCLO.
 Input: A – Filehandler ID.
 Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).
 Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 020 (FILINP) – File_Input

Description: Reads a specified amount of bytes out of an opened file. After read byte. If you try to read more bytes than available, the zero flag will be reset. In any case BC contains the amount of read bytes (which could also be 0).

Library: SyFile_FILINP.
 Input: A – Filehandler ID.
 HL – Destination address.
 E – Destination RAM bank (0~15).
 BC – Number of bytes.
 Output: BC – Number of read bytes.
 Z = 1 → All requested bytes have been read.
 0 → The end of the file has been reached, and less
 bytes than requested have been read (check BC).
 CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).
 Registers: AF, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 021 (FILOUT) – File_Output

Description: Writes a specified amount of bytes into an opened file.
 After this operation the file pointer will be moved behind
 the last written byte.
 Library: SyFile_FILOUT.
 Input: A – Filehandler ID.
 HL – Source address.
 E – Source RAM bank (0~15).
 BC – Number of bytes.
 Output: BC – Number of written bytes.
 A = 0 → All bytes have been written.
 1 → The device is full, and less bytes have been
 written (check BC).
 CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).
 Registers: AF, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 022 (FILPOI) – File_Pointer

Description: Moves the file pointer to another position. The difference
 is specified with IY and IX, IY is the high word, IX the
 low word (difference – $65536 * IY + IX$).
 Ex.: IY=0, IX=1, C=1 → Increases the position by 1.
 IY=65535, IX=-10, C=2 → Sets the pointer before the
 last 10 bytes of the file.
 Library: SyFile_FILPOI
 Input: A – Filehandler ID.
 IY, IX – Difference.

C – Reference point:
 0 → File begin (difference is unsigned).
 1 → Current pointer position (difference is signed).
 2 → File end (difference is signed).

Output: IY, IX – New absolute pointer position.
 CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).
 Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

ID: 023 (FILF2T) – File_Decode_Timestamp

Description: Decodes the file timestamp, which is used for the file system. You can use this function after reading the timestamp of a file with 035 (DIRPRR) or 038 (DIRINP).

Library: SyFile_FILF2T.

Input: BC – Time code:
 bit 0– 4 – Second/2.
 bit 5–10 – minute.
 bit 11–15 – hour.
 DE – Date code:
 bit 0– 4 – Day (starting from 1).
 bit 5– 8 – month (starting from 1).
 bit 9–15 – year–1980.

Output: A – Second.
 B – Minute.
 C – Hour.
 D – Day (starting from 1).
 E – Month (starting from 1).
 HL – Year.

Registers: F.

ID: 024 (FILT2F) – File_Encode_Timestamp

Description: Encodes the file timestamp, which is used for the file system. You can use this function before changing the timestamp of a file with 034 (DIRPRS).

Library: SyFile_FILT2F

Input: A – Second.
 B – Minute.
 C – Hour.
 D – Day (starting from 1).
 E – Month (starting from 1).
 HL – Year.

Output: BC – Time code (see FILF2T)
 DE – Date code (see FILF2T)
 Registers: AF, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 025 (FILLIN) – File_LineInput

Description: Reads one text line out of an opened file. A text line is terminated by a single 13, a single 10, a combination of 13+10, a combination of 10+13 or by a single 26 (“end of file” code).

Library: SyFile_FILLIN

Input: A – Filehandler ID.

HL – Destination buffer address (size must be 255 bytes).

E – Destination buffer RAM bank (0~15).

Output: C – Number of read bytes (0~254; without terminator).

B – Flag, if line/file end reached (0=no, 1=yes).

Z = 0 → 1 or more bytes have been loaded.

1 → EOF reached, nothing has been loaded.

CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, DE, HL, IX, IY.

5.6.5 – Directory Management Functions

ID: 032 (DIRDEV) – Directory_Device

Description: Selects the current drive.

Library: SyFile_DIRDEV.

Input: A – Driveletter ("A"-"Z").

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 033 (DIRPTH) – Directory_Path

Description: Selects the current path for the current or a different drive.

Library: SyFile_DIRPTH.

Input: IXh – File path RAM bank (0~15).

HL – File path address.

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 034 (DIRPRS) – Directory_Property_Set

Description: Changes a property of a file or a directory. You can set the attribute, the "created" time and the "modified" time. For more information about the time and date code see 023 (FILF2T).

Library: SyFile_DIRPRS

Input: IXh – File path and name RAM bank (0~15).

HL – File path and name address.

A – Property type.

0 – Attribute.

→ C – Attribute:

bit0 = 1 → Read only.

bit1 = 1 → Hidden.

bit2 = 1 → System.

bit5 = 1 → Archive.

1 – Timestamp modified.

→ BC – Time code, DE – Date code.

2 – Timestamp created.

→ BC – Time code, DE – Date code.

BC,DE – See above.

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 035 (DIRPRR) – Directory_Property_Get

Description: Reads a property of a file or a directory. For more information about the time and date code see 023 (FILF2T).

Library: SyFile_DIRPRR.

Input: IXh – File path and name RAM bank (0~15).

HL – File path and name address.

A – Property type:

0 – Attribute.

1 – Timestamp modified.

2 – Timestamp created.

Output: C – Attributes (if requested):

bit0 = 1 → Read only.

bit1 = 1 → Hidden.

bit2 = 1 → System.

bit3 = 1 → Volume ID.

bit4 = 1 → Directory.

bit5 = 1 → Archive.

BC, DE – Time and date code (if requested).
 CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 036 (DIRREN) – Directory_Rename

Description: Renames a file or a directory. The new filename must not include a path.

Library: SyFile_DIRREN.

Input: IXh – RAM bank (0~15) of old and new filename.

HL – Address of file path and old filename.

DE – Address of new filename.

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 037 (DIRNEW) – Directory_New

Description: Creates a new directory.

Library: SyFile_DIRNEW

Input: IXh – Directory path and name RAM bank (0~15)

HL – Directory path and name address

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 038 (DIRINP) – Directory_Input

Description: Reads the content of a directory. You can specify a name filter by adding a file mask to the path (* and ? are allowed) and an attribute filter. We recommend always to set Bit3 (volume ID) of the attribute filter byte. Filenames don't contain spaces. For a more powerful function see 013 (DEVDIR).

Library: SyFile_DIRINP.

Input: IXh – Directory path RAM bank (0~15).

HL – Directory path address (may include a search mask).

IXI – Attribute filter:

bit0 = 1 → Don't show read only files.

bit1 = 1 → Don't show hidden files.

bit2 = 1 → Don't show system files.

bit3 = 1 → Don't show volume ID entries.

bit4 = 1 → Don't show directories.

bit5 = 1 → Don't show archive files.

A – Destination buffer RAM bank (0~15)
 DE – Destination buffer address
 BC – Destination buffer length
 IY – Number of entries, which should be skipped
 Output: HL – Number of read entries
 BC – Remaining unused space in the destination buffer
 CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).
 Registers: AF, DE, IX, IY.
 Data structure: 00 4B File length (32bit double word).
 04 1W Date code, see 023 (FILF2T).
 06 1W Time code, see 023 (FILF2T).
 08 1B Attributes, see 035 (DIRPRR).
 09 ?B File or sub directory name.
 ?? 1B 0 terminator.

ID: 039 (DIRDEL) – Directory_DeleteFile

Description: Deletes one or more files. You can delete multiple files by using a file mask (* and ? are allowed). Files, which are read only, can't be deleted. This function also can't be used for deleting directories. Use 040 (DIRRMD), if you want to delete directories.

Library: SyFile_DIRDEL.

Input: IXh – File path and name/mask RAM bank (0~15).
 HL – File path and name/mask address.

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 040 (DIRRMD) – Directory_DeleteDirectory

Description: Deletes a sub directory. The sub directory has to be empty and not read only, otherwise the operation will be aborted.

Library: SyFile_DIRRMD.

Input: IXh – Directory path and name RAM bank (0~15).
 HL – Directory path and name address.

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 041 (DIRMOV) – Directory_Move

Description: Moves a file or sub directory into another directory of the same drive. You can either move files or sub directories with this function, in both cases the source path+name must not end with a "/".

Library: SyFile_DIRMOV.

Input: IXh – File/directory old and new path RAM bank (0~15).

HL – File/directory source path and name address.

DE – File/directory destination path address.

Output: CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.

ID: 042 (DIRINF) – Directory_DriveInformation

Description: Returns information about one drive.

Library: SyFile_DIRINF

Input: A – Driveletter ("A"-"Z").

C – Information type.

0 – General drive information.

1 – free and total amount of memory.

Output: → Information type 0:

A – Type:

00 – Device does not exist.

01 – Device is ready.

02 – Device is not initialized.

03 – Device is corrupt.

B – Medium:

01 – Floppy disc single side (Amsdos, PCW).

02 – Floppy disc double side (FAT 12).

08 – RAM disc.

16 – IDE hard disc or CF card (FAT 16, FAT 32).

C – File system:

01 – Amsdos Data.

02 – Amsdos System.

03 – PCW 180K.

16 – FAT 12.

17 – FAT 16.

18 – FAT 32.

D – Sectors per cluster

IY, IX – Total number of clusters.

→ Information type 1:
 HL, DE – Number of free 512Byte sectors.
 IY, IX – Total number of clusters.
 C – Sectors per cluster
 → Information type 0 and 1:
 CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: F.

ID: 013 (DEVDIR) – Directory_Input_Extended

Description: It reads the content of a directory and converts it into ready to use list control data. First you have to reserve two memory areas in the same RAM bank. One area needs to be reserved inside the data RAM area. It will contain the texts (filenames, dates etc.) and numbers (file sizes) for the list control. You can choose any size, but we recommend at least 4000 Bytes. BC must contain its size, when you call the function. DE contains the address, and the low nibble of A the RAM bank number. The second area needs to be reserved inside the transfer RAM area of the same bank. It contains the data structure of the list control. Its size is calculated like this:

$$\text{Size} = \text{Maximum_number_of_entries} * (4 + \text{Additional_columns} * 2)$$

So when you have two additional columns (like size and attributes) and want to load up to 100 entries, you need to reserve 800 bytes. As there are no more Z80-registers available, the address of this memory area and the maximum number of entries must be written to the beginning of the other memory area. For additional information about reading directories see 038 (DIRINP).

Library: SyFile_DEVDIR.

Input:

- A – bit0–3 → Destination buffer RAM bank (0~15).
- bit4–7 → Directory path RAM bank (0~15).
- HL – Directory path address (may include a search mask).
- DE – Destination buffer address. This must first contain 2 words with additional information at the beginning:
 - 00 1W Address of list control table
 - 02 1W Maximum number of entries
 The function will overwrite this information and fill the buffer with the directory data.

BC – Maximum size of destination buffer.
 IXI – Attribute filter:
 bit0 = 1 → Don't show read only files.
 bit1 = 1 → Don't show hidden files.
 bit2 = 1 → Don't show system files.
 bit3 = 1 → Don't show volume ID entries.
 bit4 = 1 → Don't show directories.
 bit5 = 1 → Don't show archive files.
 IY – Number of entries, which should be skipped.
 IXh – Additional columns:
 bit0 = 1 → File size.
 bit1 = 1 → Date and time (last modified).
 bit2 = 1 → Attributes.

Output: HL – Number of read entries.
 CY – Error state (0 – Ok, 1 – Error; A → error code).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, IX, IY.

5.6.6 – Device Manager Functions

The device manager functions have to be called with RST 20H (BNK SCL).

TIMGET (810CH) – Device_TimeGet

Description: Returns the current time.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 810CH

Input: –

Output: A – Second (0 ~ 59).
 B – Minute (0 ~ 59).
 C – Hour (0 ~ 23).
 D – Day (1 ~ 31).
 E – Month (1 ~ 12).
 HL – Year (1900 ~ 2100).
 IXI – Timezone (-12 ~ +13).

Registers: F, IY.

TIMSET (810FH) – Device_TimeSet

Description: Sets the current time.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 810FH

Input: A – Second (0 ~ 59).
 B – Minute (0 ~ 59).
 C – Hour (0 ~ 23).
 D – Day (1 ~ 31).
 E – Month (1 ~ 12).
 HL – Year (1900 ~ 2100).
 IXI – Timezone (-12 ~ +13).

Output: –

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IY.

SCRSET (8136H) – Device_ScreenModeCPCSet

Description: Sets the current CPC screen mode. This function is CPC specific only.

How to call: ld hl,8136H : rst 28H

Input: E – CPC screen mode (0, 1, 2).

Output: –

Registers: –

SCRGET (8139H) – Device_ScreenMode

Description: Returns the current screen mode, colour depth and resolution.

How to call: ld hl,8139H : rst 28H

Input: –

Output: E – Screen mode:
 CPC/EP: 1, 2 MSX: 5, 6, 7
 PCW: 0 G9K: 8, 9, 10, 11
 D – Number of colours (2–16).
 IX – X resolution.
 IY – Y resolution.

Registers: –

MOSGET (813CH) – Device_MousePosition

Description: Returns the current position of the mouse pointer.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 813CH

Input: –

Output: DE – X position.
 HL – Y position.

Registers: –

MOSKEY (813FH) – Device_MouseKeyStatus

Description: Returns the current status of the mouse keys.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 813FH

Input: –

Output: A – Key Status
 bit 0 = 1 → Left mouse button is pressed.
 bit 1 = 1 → Right mouse button is pressed.
 bit 2 = 1 → Middle mouse button is pressed.

Registers: F.

KEYTST (8145H) – Device_KeyTest

Description: Returns the current status of a key. For the scan codes see KEYBOARD SCAN CODES.

How to call: ld hl,8145H : rst 28H

Input: E – Keyboard scan code.

Output: E – Key status.
 0 → Key is currently not pressed;
 1 → Key is currently pressed.

Registers: AF, BC, D ,HL ,IX ,IY.

KEYSTA (8148H) – Device_KeyStatus

Description: Returns the status of the shift/control/alt/capslock keys.

How to call: ld hl,8148H : rst 28H

Input: –

Output: E – bit0 = 1 → Shift pressed.
 bit1 = 1 → Control pressed.
 bit2 = 1 → Alt pressed.
 D – Caps lock status (1 → Locked).

Registers: AF, BC, HL, IX, IY.

KEYPUT (814BH) – Device_KeyPut

Description: Puts a char back into the keyboard buffer.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 814BH

Input: A – Char (ASCII code).

Output: CY – Status (1 → Keyboard buffer full).

Registers: AF, BC, HL.

IOMINP (8157H) – Device_IO_MultiIn [CPC only]

Description: Reads multiple bytes from a hardware port in a very fast way and writes them to a destination address in memory.

This function is only available in SymbOS CPC due to its limited banking abilities.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8157H

Input: DE – Destination address.

IY – bit12–15 → Destination bank (0~15).
bit0–11 → Length.

IX – Port address.

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

IOMOUT (815AH) – Device_IO_MultiOut [CPC only]

Description: Writes multiple bytes to a hardware port in a very fast way from a source address in memory. See also IOMINP. This function is only available in SymbOS CPC due to its limited banking abilities.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 8157H

Input: DE – Source address.

IY – bit12–15 → Source bank (0~15).
bit0–11 → Length.

IX – Port address.

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

5.7 – SYMSHELL TEXT TERMINAL

SymShell commands are triggered via a message, which has to be sent with RST 10H (MSGSEND) to the SymShell process. SymShell will pass its process ID and the text screen resolution to the application via the command line.

5.7.1 - Text terminal commands

ATTRIB

Format: ATTRIB <file name>

Function: Displays current file attributes.

Format: ATTRIB <filename>%-R, %+R, %-H, %+H, %-S, %+S

Function: Add (%+) or remove (%-) file attributes.

H → Hidden file.

S → System file.

R → Read-only.

CD

Format: CD

Function: Displays directory.

Format: CD [[d:][directory]]

Function: Change the current subdirectory.

Format: CD [\ | ..]

Function: Returns only one subdirectory (..) or returns to the root directory (\).

CLS

Format: CLS

Function: Clears the screen.

COPY

Format: COPY <source file> <destination file>

Function: Copies files. Accepts the wildcard character '*' (for example, "file.*", "*.ext", or "**.*").

DATE

Format: DATE [date]

Function: Displays or changes the system date. The date can also be changed by double-clicking the time on the taskbar.

DEL

Format: DEL <filename>

Function: Deletes one or more files. Accepts the wildcard character '*' (e.g. "*.ext" or "fil*.ex*")

DIR

Format: DIR [%S] [%H] [%F] [%/P] [<file name>]

Function: Displays the names of files on the disk. Accepts the wildcard character '*' (for example, "*.ext" or "fil*.ex*")

[/S] Lists system files.

[/H] List hidden files.

[/F] Calculates free disk space.

[/P] Pause the listing when completing a screen.

HELP

Format: HELP [<command>]

Function: Displays the help file for the specified <command> or lists them all if there is no argument.

MKDIR

Format: MKDIR [d:] <path>

Function: Creates a subdirectory.

MOVE

Format: MOVE <filename> <destination-path>

Function: Move files to another part of disk. Accepts the wildcard character '*' (example: "file.* destination.*")

RMDIR

Format: RMDIR <directory name>

Function: Removes an empty subdirectory.

REN

Format: REN <old name> <new name>

Function: Renames file <old name> to <new name>. Accepts the wildcard character '*' (example: "ren *.txt *.bak").

TIME

Format: TIME [<time>]

Function: Displays or changes the system time. The time can also be changed by double-clicking the time on the taskbar.

5.7.1.1 - Default Applications

DIMON.COM – Command line disk monitor to view disks content in hexadecimal.

NETSTAT.COM – Displays active network connections with their status.

TELNET.COM – Telnet client. Type TELNET <domain name> or <IP>. By default, TCP port 23 is used. If SYMTEL is started without a domain name or IP, the console is loaded, where the settings can be changed. To connect to a host, simply enter the IP or

DNS name and press <RETURN>. To disconnect press CTRL-C or log off the remote system. Also press CTRL-C to exit SYMTEL To switch between full screen and windowed mode, press GRAPH+RETURN. In full screen mode the performance is better than in a window.

UNZIP.COM – Extract .ZIP or .GZ files. Type UNZIP H to display help.

WGET.COM – Command line application for downloading files under HTTP protocol using network daemon.

5.7.2 – SymShell Commands and responses

ID: 064 (MSC_SHL_CHRINP) – SymShell_CharInput_Command

Description: Requests a char from an input source. The input source can be the standard channel or the console keyboard. If the keyboard is used, SymShell waits for the user and won't send a response as long as no key is pressed.

Library: SyShell_CHRINP.

Message: 00 1B 064.
01 1B Channel (0 → Standard, 1 → Keyboard).

Response: See MSR_SHL_CHRINP.

ID: 192 (MSR_SHL_CHRINP) – SymShell_CharInput_Response

Description: If a char could be received from the keyboard, a file or another source, it will be sent to the application via this response message. If the user pressed Control+C or if the end of the file (EOF) has been reached, the EOF flag will be set.

Message: 00 1B 192.
01 1B EOF flag (If ≠ 0 → EOF reached, no char available!).
02 1B Char.
03 1B Error state.

254 – Unknown process (SymShell doesn't know the process, which sent the command, so it won't provide any service).

253 – Destination device full.

252 – Internal ring buffer full.

251 – Too many processes (SymShell can't handle the amount of processes running at the same time in its text terminal environment).

Any other: See “Error Codes” in chapter “File Manager”.

ID: 065 (MSC_SHL_STRINP) – SymShell_StringInput_Command

Description: Requests a string from an input source. The input source can be the standard channel or the console keyboard. The maximum length of a string is 255 chars, so the buffer must have a size of 256 bytes (255 + terminator). A string is always terminated by 0.

Library: SyShell_STRINP.

Message: 00 1B 065.
 01 1B Channel (0 → Standard, 1 → Keyboard).
 02 1B Destination buffer RAM bank (0~15).
 03 1W Destination buffer address.

Response: See MSR_SHL_STRINP.

ID: 193 (MSR_SHL_STRINP) – SymShell_StringInput_Response

Description: If a text line could be received from the keyboard, a file or another source (terminated by 13/10), it will be sent the application via this response message. If the user pressed Control+C or if the end of the file (EOF) has been reached, the EOF flag will be set.

Message: 00 1B 193.
 01 1B EOF flag (If ≠ 0 → EOF reached, no string available!).
 03 1B Error state (see above “SymShell_CharInput_Response”).

ID: 066 (MSC_SHL_CHROUT) – SymShell_CharOutput_Command

Description: Sends a char to the output destination. The output destination can be the standard channel or the console text screen.

Library: SyShell_CHROUT.

Message: 00 1B 066.
 01 1B Channel (0 → Standard, 1 → Screen).
 02 1B Char.

Response: See MSR_SHL_CHROUT.

ID: 194 (MSR_SHL_CHROUT) – SymShell_CharOutput_Response

Description: Informs the application, if the char has been sent correctly. An application shouldn't send more than one char at the same time, before such a response has been received.

Message: 00 1B 194.
 03 1B Error state (see above "SymShell_CharInput_Response")

ID: 067 (MSC_SHL_STROUT) – SymShell_StringOutput_Command

Description: Sends a string to the output destination. The output destination can be the standard channel or the console text screen. A string has always to be terminated by 0. The length, which has to be specified, must not include the 0-terminator.

Library: SyShell_STROUT.

Message: 00 1B 067.
 01 1B Channel (0 → Standard, 1 → Screen).
 02 1B String RAM bank (0~15).
 03 1W String address.
 05 1B String length (without 0-terminator).

Response: See MSR_SHL_STROUT.

ID: 195 (MSR_SHL_STROUT) – SymShell_StringOutput_Response

Description: Informs the application, if the string has been sent correctly. An application shouldn't send more than one string at the same time, before such a response has been received.

Message: 00 1B 195
 03 1B Error state (see above "SymShell_CharInput_Response")

ID: 068 (MSC_SHL_EXIT) – SymShell_Exit_Command

Description: The application informs SymShell about an exit event. If an application quits itself, SymShell has to be informed about that, so that it can remove the application from its internal management table. In this case the exit type has to be 0 ("quit").

Library: SyShell_EXIT

Message: 00 1B 068.
 01 1B Exit type:
 0 → Application quits itself
 1 → Application releases focus and goes into
 blur mode

Response: SymShell does not send a response message.

ID: 069 (MSC_SHL_PTHADD) – SymShell_PathAdd_Command

Description: ...

Library: SyShell_PTHADD.

Message: 00 1B 069.
 01 1W Address of base path (0 → default).
 03 1W Address of additional path component.
 05 1W Address of new full path.
 07 1B Pathes RAM bank (0~15).

Response: See MSR_SHL_PTHADD.

ID: 197 (MSR_SHL_PTHADD) – SymShell_PathAdd_Response

Description: ...

Message: 00 1B 197.
 01 1W Position behind last char in new path.
 03 1W Position behind last / in new path.
 05 1B bit0=1 → New path ends with /.
 bit1=1 → New path contains wildcards.

5.7.3 – Symshell Text Terminal Control

00 Stop textoutput and ignore remaining part of the line.
 01 –
 02 Switch cursor off. This will make the cursor invisible.
 03 Switch cursor on.
 04 Save current cursor position.
 05 Restore last saved cursor position.
 06 Activate textoutput (see also 21).
 07 –
 08 Move cursor one char to the left.
 09 Move cursor one char to the right.
 10 Move cursor one char downwards.
 11 Move cursor one char upwards.
 12 Clear screen and place cursor at position 1/1.

- 13 Move cursor to the beginning of the current line.
- 14 Move cursor by multiple chars (P1 – Direction and steps)
 1~80 → cursor will move 1~80 chars to the right.
 81~160 → cursor will move 1~ 80 chars to the left (parameter–80).
 161~185 → cursor will move 1~25 chars downwards (parameter–160).
 186~210 → cursor will move 1~25 chars upwards (parameter–185).
 The cursor will not cross any borders.
- 15 –
- 16 Clear char at cursor position (using space [32]).
- 17 Clear line from cursor left.
- 18 Clear line from cursor right.
- 19 Clear screen from cursor up.
- 20 Clear screen from cursor down.
- 21 Deactivate textoutput. No more chars will be printed until a code 06 appears.
- 22 Set a tab at the current column.
- 23 Clear a tab at the current column.
- 24 Clear all tabs.
- 25 Jump to next tab.
- 26 Fill screen area with a specified char. **This control code is not implemented yet.**
 P1 – Char.
 P2 – X start. P4 – X end.
 P3 – Y start. P5 – Y end.
- 27 –
- 28 Set terminal window size. The minimum size is 10x4, the maximum is 80x25 (MSX: 80x24). After the window has been resized, the screen will be cleared and the cursor placed in the upper left corner (1/1).
 P1 – Width.
 P2 – Height.
- 29 Scroll window up or down one line. This will not influence the current cursor position.
 P1 – Direction (1 → up, 2 → down).
- 30 Move cursor to the upper left corner (1/1).
- 31 Move cursor to a specified screen location.
 P1 – X pos (1~80).
 P2 – Y pos (1~25).

5.7.4 – Extended ASCII Codes

136 – cursor up	154 – Alt + C	172 – Alt + U
137 – cursor down	155 – Alt + D	173 – Alt + V
138 – cursor left	156 – Alt + E	174 – Alt + W
139 – cursor right	157 – Alt + F	175 – Alt + X
140 – F0	158 – Alt + G	176 – Alt + Y
141 – F1	159 – Alt + H	177 – Alt + Z
142 – F2	160 – Alt + I	178 – Alt + 0
143 – F3	161 – Alt + J	179 – Alt + 1
144 – F4	162 – Alt + K	180 – Alt + 2
145 – F5	163 – Alt + L	181 – Alt + 3
146 – F6	164 – Alt + M	182 – Alt + 4
147 – F7	165 – Alt + N	183 – Alt + 5
148 – F8	166 – Alt + O	184 – Alt + 6
149 – F9	167 – Alt + P	185 – Alt + 7
150 – F.	168 – Alt + Q	186 – Alt + 8
151 – Alt + @	169 – Alt + R	187 – Alt + 9
152 – Alt + A	170 – Alt + S	
153 – Alt + B	171 – Alt + T	

5.7.5 – Keyboard Scan Codes

The scan code are used in the "Device_KeyTest" function. Please note, that they are equal on all supported platforms.

00 – Cursor Up	20 – F4	40 – 8	60 – S
01 – Cursor Right	21 – Shift	41 – 7	61 – D
02 – Cursor Down	22 – \	42 – U	62 – C
03 – F9	23 – Control	43 – Y	63 – X
04 – F6	24 – ^	44 – H	64 – 1
05 – F3	25 – –	45 – J	65 – 2
06 – Enter	26 – @	46 – N	66 – Esc
07 – F.	27 – P	47 – Space	67 – Q
08 – Cursor Left	28 – ;	48 – 6	68 – Tab
09 – Alt	29 – :	49 – 5	69 – A
10 – F7	30 – /	50 – R	70 – Capslock
11 – F8	31 – .	51 – T	71 – Z
12 – F5	32 – 0	52 – G	72 – Joystick Up
13 – F1	33 – 9	53 – F	73 – Joystick Down

14 – F2	34 – O	54 – B	74 – Joystick Left
15 – F0	35 – I	55 – V	75 – Joystick Right
16 – Clr	36 – L	56 – 4	76 – Fire 2
17 – [	37 – K	57 – 3	77 – Fire 1
18 – Return	38 – M	58 – E	78 – [not used]
19 –]	39 – ,	59 – W	79 – Del

5.8 – SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

The SYMBOS.INI file is divided into 5 parts:

- Header, which contains the identifier and the length of three following parts
- Core area part, which contains data loaded in the first RAM bank
- Data area part, which contains additional data usually loaded in a different RAM bank
- Transfer area part (currently empty)
- Font

5.8.1 – Header

0000	2B	Identifier, which also contains the version of the config file [byte0]=“S”, [byte1]=1 (current version).
0002	1W	Length of the header (=8 bytes) plus the core area part of the SymbOS system configuration (will be always loaded to RAM–bank 0).
0004	1W	Length of the data area part (the RAM–bank depends on the computer platform)
0006	1W	Length of the transfer area part (not used, always 0)

5.8.2 – Core Area Part

5.8.2.1 – Mass storage devices

0000	128B	Device configuration; this consists of 8 data records at 16 bytes for each device
	00	1B Drive letter (upper case) or 0, if device slot is empty.
	01	1B bit0–3: Type (0=Floppy, 1=IDE/SCSI) → Driver slot. bit4–6: Reserved (set to 0). bit7: Flag, if removeable media (1=yes).

- 02 1B Sub drive:
 → If the device is a floppy disc:
 bit0–1: Drive.
 bit2: Head.
 bit3: Flag, if double step.
 bit4–7: Reserved (set to 0).
 → If the device is an IDE/SCSI/SD device:
 bit0–3: partition (0=not partitioned).
 bit4–7: IDE → channel (master=0, slave=1).
 SCSI → sub device (0~15).
- 03 1B Reserved (set to 0).
- 04 12B Device name (terminated by 0).

5.8.2.2 – Display and miscellaneous (1)

- 0128 17W Colour palette (the border is defined by the 17th word)
 For each entry:
 bit0–3: Blue component.
 bit4–7: Green component.
 bit8–11: Red component.
- 0162 1B Screen mode:
- | | | | |
|---|--------------------|----|-------------------|
| 0 | PCW (768x255x2) | 7 | MSX (512x212x16) |
| 1 | CPC,EP (320x200x4) | 8 | G9K (384x240x16) |
| 2 | CPC,EP (640x200x2) | 9 | G9K (512x212x16) |
| 5 | MSX (256x212x16) | 10 | G9K (768x240x16) |
| 6 | MSX (512x212x4) | 11 | G9K (1024x212x16) |
- 0163 32B System path.
- 0195 1B Time zone (-12 to +12).
- 0196 1B Background type (0~15=plain colour, -1=background graphic).
- 0197 32B Background graphic path and filename, terminated by 0 (only, if “background type” = -1).

5.8.2.3 – Keyboard (1) and mouse

- 0229 1B Keyboard delay (in 1/50s; between first and second char).
- 0230 1B Keyboard repeat speed (delay between every following chars).
- 0231 1B Joystick mouse delay (until mouse reaches full speed).

- 0232 1B Joystick mouse speed (in pixel)
- 0233 1B Mouse speed (CPC–SYMBiFACE [PS/2] and MSX) factor
(final_movement – original_movement * mouse_speed / 16).
- 0234 1B Mouse double click delay (maximum time in 1/50s, when a
double click is recognized)
- 0235 1B Flag, if swap left/right mouse keys.
- 0236 1B Mouse wheel speed (currently only CPC–SYMBiFACE
[PS/2] and MSX)

5.8.2.4 – Miscellaneous (2) and Desktop Links

- 0237 1B SYMBOS.INI drive ("A", ...)
- 0238 1B Miscellaneous flags.
bit0: Autosave config.
- 0239 1B Flag (1), if SymbOS extension module should be
loaded.
- 0240 1B Flag for extended hardware (+1=Mouse, +2=Real time clock,
+4=IDE/SCSI interface, +16=M4Board).
- 0241 1B Virtual desktop (0=no virtual desktop,
bit0–3 → X–resolution, 1=512, 2=1000,
bit4–7 → Y–resolution, not yet defined).
- 0242 1B Number of desktop icons.
- 0243 1B Number of start menu/programs entries.
- 0244 1B Number of taskbar short–cut entries (currently not
supported)
- 0245 1B Machine type:

0=CPC 464	7=MSX1
1=CPC 664	8=MSX2
2=CPC 6128	9=MSX2+
3=CPC 464+	10=MSX turboR
4=CPC 6128+	12=PCW8xxx
6=Enterprise	13=PCW9xxx
- 0246 16W Desktop icon positions; for each of the 8 icons there are two
words, the first contains the X–, the second the Y–position.
- 0278 32B Path and filename of the autoexec command line file.
- 0310 1B Flag, if autoexec command line file should be executed.

5.8.3 – Data Area Part

5.8.3.1 – Desktop Links (2)

- 0000 400B Start menu program entry names (20 entries at 20 bytes, each terminated by 0).
- 0400 640B Start menu program entry pathes and filenames (20 entries at 32 bytes, each terminated by 0).
- 1040 256B Desktop icon pathes and filenames (8 entries at 32 bytes, each terminated by 0).
- 1296 192B Desktop icon names (8 entries, each consists of 2 lines at 12 bytes, each line is terminated by 0).
- 1488 1176B Desktop icon graphics (8 entries, each consists of the 3 bytes graphic header and the 144 byte (6*24) bitmap).
- 2664 768B File extension association (16 entries at 48 bytes)
- 00 3B Extension 1 (uppercase; if byte0=1, then the whole entry is not defined).
 - 03 3B Extension 2 (if byte0=1, then this one entry is not defined).
 - 06 3B Extension 3 (s.a.).
 - 09 3B Extension 4 (s.a.).
 - 12 3B Extension 5 (s.a.).
 - 15 33B Application path and filename, which will be started, if a file with one of the above listed extensions has been opened.

5.8.3.2 – Screen Saver

- 3432 1B Flag, if screen saver is present.
- 3433 1B Duration of user inactivity, after which the screen saver will be started.
- 3434 33B Screen saver application path and filename (terminated by 0).
- 3467 64B Screen saver specific configuration data (can be stored and read here).

5.8.3.3 – Keyboard (2)

- 3531 80B Keyboard definition (normal).
- 3611 80B Keyboard definition (shift).
- 3691 80B Keyboard definition (control).
- 3771 80B Keyboard definition (alt).

5.8.3.4 – Security

3851 16B Security username.
 3867 16B Security password.
 3883 1B Security flags [not used yet, set to 0].

5.9 – SCREENSAVER APPLICATIONS

This is a list of commands, which will be sent to the screen saver application. Usually they will be sent by the desktop manager or by the control panel. The creensaver must be able to handle these commands and one additional response message for a proper interaction.

ID: 001 (MSC_SAV_INIT) – ScreenSaver_Init_Command

Description: The caller process, which has started the screensaver (usually the desktop manager or the control panel) has sent an nitialisation command. The screensaver now should store the sender process ID to be able to send a configuration response message later (see MSR_SAV_CONFIG). Then it has to copy the configuration data into its own memory area. This data can have a size of up to 64 bytes and is stored in the SYMBOS.INI file together with the other system settings. If the screensaver requires more than 64 bytes for its configuration it has to manage its own config file.

Library: ScrSav_MAIN.

Message: 00 1B 001.
 01 1B Config data (64 byte) RAM bank (0~7).
 02 1W Config data (64 byte) address.

Response: No response from the screensaver expected.

ID: 002 (MSC_SAV_START) – ScreenSaver_Start_Command

Description: The caller process asks the screensaver to start its animation. The animation should be shown as long as no key has been pressed and the mouse hasn't been moved.

Library: ScrSav_MAIN

Message: 00 1B 002.

Response: No response from the screensaver expected.

ID: 003 (MSC_SAV_CONFIG) – ScreenSaver_Config_Command

Description: The caller process asks the screensaver to open a

configuration dialogue. In such a window the user has the possibility to modify the screensaver settings. If there is nothing to configure at all, the screensaver can ignore this command or just open an info window.

Library: ScrSav_MAIN.
 Message: 00 1B 003.
 Response: See MSR_SAV_CONFIG.

ID: 004 (MSR_SAV_CONFIG) – ScreenSaver_Config_Response

Description: The user has finished modifying the settings and clicked on the “OK” button of the configuration dialogue.

Library: ScrSav_CFGSAV
 Message: 00 1B 001.
 01 1B Config data (64 byte) RAM bank (0~7).
 02 1W Config data (64 byte) address.

5.10 – SYMBOS MEMORY MAP

5.10.1 – General Memory Usage

The following diagram shows, in which way the different memory banks and blocks are used in SymbOS.

	Bank 0	Bank 1	Bank n
FFFFH	System data System manager	Free	Free
C000H BFFFH	Buffers SubRoutines DeviceManager ScreenManager	Free	Free
8000H 7FFFH	DesktopManager	Free	Free
4000H 3FFFH	DesktopManager SystemManager FileManager-LL Kernel / jumps	FileManager-HL Kernel jumps	Free Kernel jumps
0000H			

5.10.2 – Application Memory Usage

The memory inside an application RAM bank (1–n) is used in the following way:

1. 0000–03FF Kernel jumps, Kernel multitasking and banking routines.
2. 0400–FFFF Application code and internal application data.
3. 0400–3FFF Application data used by the screen manager.
4000–7FFF (One object has to be inside one 16K block).
8000–BFFF
C000–FFFF
4. C000–FFFF Application "transfer" data, used by the desktop manager, message buffer, stack.

5.10.3 – Memory Configurations

The following diagram shows, how the memory is configured during the activity of one of the modules of SymbOS.

	DesktopManager (C1)	ScreenManager (C4-7)	FileManager-HL (C4)
FFFFH	Bank n Block 3	Bank 0 Block 3	Bank 0 Block 3
C000H	Transfer RAM		
BFFFH	Bank 0 Block 2	Bank 0 Block 2	Bank 0 Block 2
8000H		ScreenManager	
7FFFH	Bank 0 Block 1	Bank n Block m	Bank 1 Block 0
4000H	DesktopManager	Data RAM	FileManager-HL
3FFFH	Bank 0 Block 0	Bank 0 Block 0	Bank 0 Block 0
0000H			

	FileManager-LL (**)	Application (C2)
FFFFH	Bank 0	Bank n
C000H	Block 3	Block 3 Trnf, Code, Data
BFFFH	Slot x,y	Bank n
8000H	Disk-ROM	Block 2 Code, Data
7FFFH	Bank n	Bank n
4000H	Block m DataRAM	Block 1 Code, Data
3FFFH	Bank 0	Bank n
0000H	Block 0 FileManager-LL	Block 0 Code, Data

5.11 – SCREEN MANAGER

The screen manager contains all routines for the direct access of the video hardware. There is currently only one function, that can be used by applications as well.

TXTLLEN (815DH) – Screen_TextLength

Description: Returns the width and height of a textline in pixels, if it would be printed to the screen. You can define the text length (number of chars) in IY. If the text is terminated by 0 or 13 you should use -1 for the maximal text length. Please note, that this function always uses the system font for calculating the width and height.

How to call: rst 20H : dw 815DH.

Input: HL – Text address.

A – Text RAM bank (1~15).

IY – Maximal number of chars (text length).

Output: DE – Text width in pixels.

A – Text height in pixels.

Registers: F, BC, HL, IX.

5.12 – NETWORK DAEMON

The SymbOS network daemon provides all services for full network access. It's running as a shared service process [...]

5.12.1 – Configuration

Config_Get CFGGET 001 130 A – type, E,HL – data buffer
→ (buffer has been filled)
Config_Set CFGSET 002 131 A – type, E,HL – config data
→ (config has been set)

5.12.2 – Transportation Layer Services

TCP_Open TCPOPEN 016 144 A – mode, HL – local port
 (IX,IY – remote IP, DE – remote port)
 CY=0 → ok, A – handle
TCP_Close TCPCLOSE 017 145 A – handle
 CY=0 → ok, A – handle
TCP_Status TCPSTA 018 146 A – handle
 CY=0 → ok, A – handle, L – status
 (BC – received bytes,
 IX,IY – remote IP, DE – remote port)
TCP_Receive TCPRCV 019 147 A – handle, BC – length,
 E,HL – memory
 CY=0 → ok, A – handle,
 BC – number of remaining bytes,
 Z=1 → all bytes have been received
TCP_Send TCPSND 020 148 A – handle, BC – length,
 E,HL – memory
 CY=0 → ok, A – handle,
 BC – number of sent bytes,
 HL – number of remaining bytes,
 Z=1 → all bytes have been sent
TCP_Skip TCPSKP 021 149 A – handle, BC – length
 CY=0 → ok, A – handle
TCP_Flush TCPFLS 022 150 A – handle
 CY=0 → ok, A – handle
TCP_Disconnect TCPDIS 023 151 A – handle

TCP_Event	TCPEVT	159		CY=0 → ok, A – handle A – handle, L – status (BC – received bytes, IX,IY – remote IP, DE – remote port)
UDP_Open	UDPOPN	032	160	HL – local port, E – memory bank CY=0 → ok, A – handle
UDP_Close	UDPCLO	033	161	A=handle CY=0 → ok, A – handle
UDP_Status	UDPSTA	034	162	A=handle CY=0 → ok, A – handle, L – status (BC – received bytes, IX,IY – remote IP, DE – remote port)
UDP_Receive	UDPRCV	035	163	A – handle, HL – memory CY=0 → ok, A – handle
UDP_Send	UDPSND	036	164	A – handle, BC – length, HL – memory, IX,IY – remote IP, DE=remote port CY=0 → ok, A=handle
UDP_Skip	UDPSKP	037	165	A – handle CY=0 → ok, A – handle
UDP_Event	UDPEVT	175		A – handle, L – status (BC – received bytes, IX,IY – remote IP, DE – remote port)

5.12.3 – Application Layer Services

DNS_Resolve	DNSRSV	112	240	E,HL – address CY=0 → Ok, IX,IY – IP
DNS_Verify	DNSVFY	113	241	E,HL – address A – type of address (0 → no valid address, 1 → IP address, 2 → domain address)

5.13 – SYMBOS CONSTANTS

5.13.1 – Process-IDs

PRC_ID_KERNEL	equ 1	Kernel process.
PRC_ID_DESKTOP	equ 2	Desktop manager process.
PRC_ID_SYSTEM	equ 3	System manager process.

5.13.2 – Messages

MSC_GEN_QUIT	equ 0	Application is being asked, to quit itself.
MSC_GEN_FOCUS	equ 255	Application is being asked, to focus its window.

5.13.3 – Kernel Commands

MSC_KRL_MTADDP	equ 1	Add process (P1/2=stack, P3=priority (7 high – 1 low), P4=RAM bank (0~8))
MSC_KRL_MTDELP	equ 2	delete process (P1=ID)
MSC_KRL_MTADDT	equ 3	add timer (P1/2=stack, P4=RAM bank (0~8))
MSC_KRL_MTDELT	equ 4	delete timer (P1=ID)
MSC_KRL_MTSLPP	equ 5	set process to sleep mode
MSC_KRL_MTWAKP	equ 6	wake up process
MSC_KRL_TMADDT	equ 7	add counter service (P1/2=address, P3=RAM bank, P4=process, P5=frequency)
MSC_KRL_TMDELT	equ 8	delete counter service (P1/2=address, P3=RAM bank)
MSC_KRL_TMDELP	equ 9	delete all counter services of one process (P1=process ID)

5.13.4 – Kernel Responses

MSR_KRL_MTADDP	equ 129	process has been added (P1=0/1→ok/failed, P2=ID)
MSR_KRL_MTDELP	equ 130	process has been deleted
MSR_KRL_MTADDT	equ 131	timer process has been deleted (P1=0/1→ok/failed, P2=ID)
MSR_KRL_TMDELT	equ 132	timer has been removed
MSR_KRL_MTSLPP	equ 133	process is sleeping now
MSR_KRL_MTWAKP	equ 134	process has been waked up
MSR_KRL_TMADDT	equ 135	counter service has been added (P1=0/1→ok/failed)
MSR_KRL_TMDELT	equ 136	counter service has been deleted
MSR_KRL_TMDELP	equ 137	all counter services of a process have been deleted

5.13.5 – System Commands

MSC_SYS_PRGRUN	equ 16	load application or document (P1/2=address filename, P3=RAM bank filename)
MSC_SYS_PRGEND	equ 17	quit application (P1=ID)
MSC_SYS_SYSWNX	equ 18	open dialogue to change current window (next) (-)
MSC_SYS_SYSWPR	equ 19	open dialogue to change current window (previously) (-)
MSC_SYS_PRGSTA	equ 20	open dialogue to load application or document (-)
MSC_SYS_SYSSEC	equ 21	open system security dialogue (-)
MSC_SYS_SYSQIT	equ 22	open shut shown dialogue (-)
MSC_SYS_SYSOFF	equ 23	shut down (-)
MSC_SYS_PRGSET	equ 24	start control panel (P1=submodul → 0=main window, 1=display settings, 2=date/time)
MSC_SYS_PRGTSK	equ 25	start taskmanager (-)
MSC_SYS_SYSFIL	equ 26	call filemanager function (P1=number, P2-13=AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY.)
MSC_SYS_SYSHLP	equ 27	start help (-)
MSC_SYS_SYSCFG	equ 28	call config function (P1=number, 0=load, 1=save, 2=reload background)
MSC_SYS_SYSWRN	equ 29	open message/confirm window (P1/2=adresse, P3=RAM bank, P4=number of buttons)
MSC_SYS_PRGSRV	equ 30	shared service function (P4=type [0=search, 1=start, 2=release], P1/2=address 12char ID, P3=RAM bank 12char ID or P3=program ID, if type=2)
MSC_SYS_SELOPN	equ 31	open fileselect dialogue (P6=filename RAM bank, P8/9=filename address, P7=forbidden attributes, P10=max entries, P12=max buffer size)

5.13.6 – System Responses

MSR_SYS_PRGRUN	equ 144	application has been started (P1=result → 0=ok, 1=file doesnt exist, 2=file is not executable, 3=error while loading [P8=filemanager error code], 4=mem. full, P8=app ID, P9=process ID)
MSR_SYS_SYSFIL	equ 154	filemanager function returned (P1=num, P2–13=AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY)
MSR_SYS_SYSWRN	equ 157	message/confirm window response (P1 → 0=already in use, 1=opened [P2=number], 2=ok, 3=yes, 4=no, 5=cancel/close)
MSR_SYS_PRGSRV	equ 158	shared service function response (P1=state [5=not found, other codes see MSR_SYS_PRGRUN], P8=app ID, P9=process ID)
MSR_SYS_SELOPN	equ 159	message from fileselect dialogue (P1 → 0=Ok, 1=cancel, 2=already in use, 3=no memory free, 4=no window free, -1=open ok, modal window has been opened [P2=number])

5.13.7 – Desktop Commands

MSC_DSK_WINOPN	equ 32	open window (P1=RAM bank, P2/3=address data record)
MSC_DSK_WINMEN	equ 33	redraw menu bar (P1=window ID) [only if focus]
MSC_DSK_WININH	equ 34	redraw window content (P1=window ID, P2=-1/-Num/Object, P3=Object) [only if focus]
MSC_DSK_WINTOL	equ 35	redraw window toolbar (P1=window ID) [only if focus]
MSC_DSK_WINTIT	equ 36	redraw window title (P1=window ID) [only if focus]
MSC_DSK_WINSTA	equ 37	redraw window status lien (P1=window ID) [only if focus]

MSC_DSK_WINMVX	equ 38	set content X offset (P1=window ID, P2/3=XPos) [only if focus]
MSC_DSK_WINMVY	equ 39	set content Y offset (P1=window ID, P2/3=XPos) [only if focus]
MSC_DSK_WINTOP	equ 40	takes window to the front (P1=window ID) [always]
MSC_DSK_WINMAX	equ 41	maximize window (P1=window ID) [always]
MSC_DSK_WINMIN	equ 42	minimize window (P1=window ID) [always]
MSC_DSK_WINMID	equ 43	restore window size (P1=window ID) [always]
MSC_DSK_WINMOV	equ 44	moves window to a new position (P1=window ID, P2/3=XPos, P4/5=YPos) [always]
MSC_DSK_WINSIZ	equ 45	resize the window (P1=window ID, P2/3=XPos, P4/5=YPos) [always]
MSC_DSK_WINCLS	equ 46	closes and removes window (P1=window ID) [always]
MSC_DSK_WINDIN	equ 47	redraw window content, even if it has not focus (P1=window ID, P2=-1/-Num/Object, P3=Object) [always]
MSC_DSK_DSRSRV	equ 48	desktop service request (P1=type, P2-P5=parameters)
MSC_DSK_WINSLD	equ 49	redraw window scrollbars (P1=window ID) [only if focus]
MSC_DSK_WINPIN	equ 50	redraw window content part (P1=window ID, P2=-1/-Num/Object, P3=Object, P4/5=Xbeg, P6/7=Ybeg, P8/9=Xlen, P10/11=Ylen) [always]
MSC_DSK_WINSIN	equ 51	redraw content of a super control (P1=window ID, P2=super control ID, P3=SubObject) [always]

5.13.8 – Desktop Responses

MSR_DSK_WOPNER	equ 160	open window failed; the maximum of 32 windows has been reached
MSR_DSK_WOPNOK	equ 161	open window successfull (P4=number)

MSR_DSK_WCLICK	equ 162	window has been clicked (P1=window number, P2=action, P3=subspecification, P4/5,P6/7,P8/9=parameters)
MSR_DSK_DSRSRV	equ 163	desktop service answer (P1=type P2-P5=parameters)
MSR_DSK_WFOCUS	equ 164	window got/lost focus (P1=window number, P2=type [0=blur, 1=focus])
MSR_DSK_CFOCUS	equ 165	control focus changed (P1=window number, P2=control number, P3=reason [0=mouse click/wheel, 1=tab key])
MSR_DSK_WRESIZ	equ 166	window has been resized (P1=window number)
MSR_DSK_WSCROL	equ 167	window content has been scrolled (P1=window number)
MSR_DSK_EXTDSK	equ 168	command for extended desktop (used internally; P1=command, P2-x=parameters)
FNC_DXT_DSKBGR	equ 001	background has been updated
FNC_DXT_FILRUN	equ 002	file has been opened via prgrun (P2/3=address, P4=bank)
FNC_DXT_FILBRW	equ 003	file has been selected via file browser (P2/3=address, P4=bank)
FNC_DXT_MENCLK	equ 004	startmenu has been clicked (P2/3=value)
FNC_DXT_DSKCLK	equ 005	desktop window has been clicked (P2=action, P3=subspecification, P4/5,P6/7,P8/9=parameters)

5.13.9 – Shell Commands

MSC_SHL_CHRINP	equ 64	char is requested (P1=channel [0 → Standard, 1 → Keyboard])
MSC_SHL_STRINP	equ 65	line is requested (P1=channel [0 → Standard, 1 → Keyboard], P2=RAM bank, P3/4=address)
MSC_SHL_CHROUT	equ 66	char should be writtten (P1=channel [0 → Standard, 1 → Screen], P2=char)
MSC_SHL_STROUT	equ 67	line should be writtten (P1=channel [0 → Standard, 1 → Screen], P2=RAM

MSC_SHL_EXIT equ 68 bank, P3/4=address, P5=length)
application released focus or quit itself
(P1 → 0=quit, 1=blur)

5.13.10 – Shell Responses

MSR_SHL_CHRINP equ 192 char has been received (P1=EOF-flag
[0=no EOF], P2=char, P3=error status)
MSR_SHL_STRINP equ 193 line has been received (P1=EOF-flag
[0=no EOF], P3=error status)
MSR_SHL_CHROUT equ 194 char has been written (P3=error status)
MSR_SHL_STROUT equ 195 line has been written (P3=error status)

5.13.11 – Screensaver Messages

MSC_SAV_INIT equ 1 initialises the screen saver
(P1=bank of config data, P2/3=address
of config data [64bytes])
MSC_SAV_START equ 2 start screen saver
MSC_SAV_CONFIG equ 3 open screen savers own config window
(at the end the screen saver has to send
the result back to the sender)
MSR_SAV_CONFIG equ 4 returns user adjusted screen saver
config data (P1=bank of config data,
P2/3=address of config data [64bytes])

5.13.12 – Desktop Actions

DSK_ACT_CLOSE equ 5 close button has been clicked or
ALT+F4 has been pressed
DSK_ACT_MENU equ 6 menu entry has been clicked
(P8/9=menu entry value)
DSK_ACT_CONTENT equ 14 a control of the content has been
clicked (P3=sub spec [see dsk_sub...],
P4=key or P4/5=Xpos within the
window, P6/7=Ypos, P8/9=control value)
DSK_ACT_TOOLBAR equ 15 A control of the toolbar has been clicked
(see DSK_ACT_CONTENT)

DSK_ACT_KEY	equ 16	Key has been pressed without touching/ modifying a control (P4=ASCII Code)
DSK_SUB_MLCLICK	equ 0	left mouse button has been clicked
DSK_SUB_MRCLICK	equ 1	right mouse button has been clicked
DSK_SUB_MDCLICK	equ 2	double click with the left mouse button
DSK_SUB_MMCLICK	equ 3	middle mouse button has been clicked
DSK_SUB_KEY	equ 7	keyboard has been clicked and did modify/click a control (P4=ASCII Code)
DSK_SUB_MWHEEL	equ 8	mouse wheel has been moved (P4=Offset)

5.13.13 – Desktop Services

DSK_SRV_MODGET	equ 1	get screen mode (output P2=mode, P3=virtual desktop)
DSK_SRV_MODSET	equ 2	set screen mode (input P2=mode, P3=virtual desktop)
DSK_SRV_COLGET	equ 3	get colour (input: P2=number, output: P2=number, P3/4=RGB value)
DSK_SRV_COLSET	equ 4	set colour (input: P2=number, P3/4=RGB value)
DSK_SRV_DSKSTP	equ 5	Freeze desktop (input P2=type [0=Pen0, 1=Raster, 2=background, 255=no screen modification, switch off mouse])
DSK_SRV_DSKCNT	equ 6	continue desktop
DSK_SRV_DSKPNT	equ 7	clear desktop (Eingabe P2=Typ [0=Pen0, 1=Raster, 2=background])
DSK_SRV_DSKBGR	equ 8	initialize and redraw desktop background
DSK_SRV_DSKPLT	equ 9	redraw the complete desktop

5.13.14 – Jumps

jmp_memsum	equ 8100H	MEMSUM
jmp_sysinf	equ 8103H	SYSINF
jmp_clcnum	equ 8106H	CLCNUM
jmp_mtgcnt	equ 8109H	MTGCNT
jmp_timget	equ 810CH	TIMGET
jmp_timset	equ 810FH	TIMSET

jmp_memget	equ 8118H	MEMGET
jmp_memfre	equ 811BH	MEMFRE
jmp_memsiz	equ 811EH	MEMSIZ
jmp_meminf	equ 8121H	MEMINF
jmp_bnkrdw	equ 8124H	BNKRWD
jmp_bnkwwd	equ 8127H	BNKWWD
jmp_bnkrbt	equ 812AH	BNKRBT
jmp_bnkwbt	equ 812DH	BNKWBT
jmp_bnkcop	equ 8130H	BNKCOP
jmp_bnkget	equ 8133H	BNKGET
empty	equ 8136H	*empty*
jmp_scrget	equ 8139H	SCRGET
jmp_mosget	equ 813CH	MOSGET
jmp_moskey	equ 813FH	MOSKEY
jmp_bnk16c	equ 8142H	BNK16C
jmp_keytst	equ 8145H	KEYTST
jmp_keysta	equ 8148H	KEYSTA
jmp_keyput	equ 814BH	KEYPUT
jmp_bufput	equ 814EH	BUFPUT
jmp_bufget	equ 8151H	BUFGET
jmp_bufsta	equ 8154H	BUFSTA
jmp_iominp	equ 8157H	IOMINP (cpc only)
jmp_iomout	equ 815AH	IOMOUT (cpc only)
jmp_bnkcll	equ FF03H	BNKCLL
jmp_bnkret	equ FF00H	BNKRET

5.13.15 – Filemanager Functions (call via MSC_SYS_SYSFIL)

FNC_FIL_STOINI	equ 000
FNC_FIL_STONEW	equ 001
FNC_FIL_STORLD	equ 002
FNC_FIL_STODEL	equ 003
FNC_FIL_STOINP	equ 004
FNC_FIL_STOOUT	equ 005
FNC_FIL_STOACT	equ 006
FNC_FIL_STOINF	equ 007
FNC_FIL_STOTRN	equ 008

FNC_FIL_DEVDIR	equ 013
FNC_FIL_DEVINI	equ 014
FNC_FIL_DEVSET	equ 015
FNC_FIL_FILINI	equ 016
FNC_FIL_FILNEW	equ 017
FNC_FIL_FILOPN	equ 018
FNC_FIL_FILCLO	equ 019
FNC_FIL_FILINP	equ 020
FNC_FIL_FILOUT	equ 021
FNC_FIL_FILPOI	equ 022
FNC_FIL_FILF2T	equ 023
FNC_FIL_FILT2F	equ 024
FNC_FIL_FILLIN	equ 025
FNC_FIL_DIRDEV	equ 032
FNC_FIL_DIRPTH	equ 033
FNC_FIL_DIRPRS	equ 034
FNC_FIL_DIRPRR	equ 035
FNC_FIL_DIRREN	equ 036
FNC_FIL_DIRNEW	equ 037
FNC_FIL_DIRINP	equ 038
FNC_FIL_DIRDEL	equ 039
FNC_FIL_DIRRMD	equ 040
FNC_FIL_DIRMOV	equ 041
FNC_FIL_DIRINF	equ 042

6 – UZIX

6.1 – COMMANDS

6.1.1 – Conventions

COMMAND NAME (type of command)

Format: Valid formats for the command

Function: Way of operating the command

Details: Describes some details about the format

Uzix commands are all loaded from disk. This guide describes all commands and utilities that are installed by default on UZIX 2.0.

6.1.1.1 – Format Notations

<filename>

Filename in the form: dir1/dir2/file

<filenames>

Several filename in the form: dir1/dir2/file

<dirname>

Directory name in the form: /dir1/dir2/

[] Delimits optional parameter.

| It means that only one of the items can be used.

A <device> can be:

fd0~fd7	Disk drives.
null	Null device.
lpr	Printer.
tty/tty0~tty2	Monitor.
console	Keyboard.
mem/kmem	Memory.
sga0~sga(n)	Hard disk partitions.
sge(n)	Hard disk partition where the UZIX is.

6.1.2 – Commands Description

ADDUSER (Administration Utility)

Format: adduser

Function: Add a user to the system.

ALIAS (Shell Utility)

Format: alias [<name> [<command> [<command> ...]]]

Function: Presents or sets an alias command.

BANNER (Uzix Utility)

Format: banner <message>

Function: Print a message in big chars.

BASENAME (Shell Utility)

Format: basename <name> [suffix]

Function: Removes component orientation from a directory.

BOGOMIPS (System Utility)

Format: bogomips

Function: Prints processing speed on BogoMips.

CAL (Uzix Utility)

Format: cal [month] year

Function: Shows a calendar.

CAT (Files Utility)

Format: cat <filenames>

Function: Concatenate files and print to standard output.

CD (Files Utility)

Format: cd [<dirname>]

Function: Change directories.

CDIFF (Text Utility)

Format: cdiff [-c n] <file1> <file2>

Function: Prints the difference between two files with context.

Details: [-c] Produces output containing n lines of context.

CGREP (Text Utility)

Format: `cgrep [-a n] [-b n] [-f] [-l n] [-n] [-w n] <pattern> [
 [<arqs>...]`

Function: Search a string and print the lines where it was found.

Details: [-a] Number of lines to print after the found line.
 [-b] Number of lines to print before the found line.
 [-f] Suppress filename on output.
 [-l] Truncates lines at length n before comparison.
 [-n] Suppress linenumbers on output.
 [-w] Set the window size (same as -a e -b)

CHGRP (Files Utility)

Format: `chgrp <gid> <filename>`

Function: Changes the group owning user for each file.

CHMOD (Files Utility)

Format: `chmod <modo_ascii> | <modo_octal> <filenames>`

Function: Change file access permissions.

Details: The symbolic format (ASCII) for the mode is as follows:

[*u*goa] [+ | -] [*rw*x], where:

<i>u</i> → user	<i>a</i> → all	<i>x</i> → record
<i>g</i> → group	<i>r</i> → read	<i>+</i> → add permission
<i>o</i> → others	<i>w</i> → write	<i>-</i> → remove permission

The numeric format (octal) is the following:

1° octal digit:	1 – save image text of attributes
	2 – group ID
	4 – user ID
2° octal digit:	1 – execution
	2 – write
	4 – read

CHOWN (Files Utility)

Format: `chown <uid> <filename>`

Function: Changes the regular user and the group owning user to the specified file.

CHROOT (Files Utility)

Format: `chroot <dirname>`

Function: Change the root directory.

CKSUM (Files Utility)

Format: cksum [<filename> [filename ...]]

Function: Shows the checksum and file size.

CLEAR (Shell Utility)

Format: clear

Function: Clears the screen.

CMP (Files Utility)

Format: cmp <filename1> <filename2>

Function: Compare files.

CRC (Files Utility)

Format: crc [<filename> [filename ...]]

Function: Shows the checksum of the data files.

CP (Files Utility)

Format: cp [-pifsmrRvx] <filename1> <filename2>

cp [-pifsrRvx] <filename1> [<filename2>...] <dir>

Function: Copy files.

Details: [-p] Preserves all attributes of the original file.
 [-i] Checks the destination for file with the same name.
 [-f] Remove files in destination.
 [-s] Copies only some attributes.
 [-m] Copies multiple subdirectories into one.
 [-r] Copy directories recursively.
 [-R] Copies directories and treats special files as ordinary.
 [-v] Displays file names before copying.
 [-x] Skip directories that are on file systems other than where copying started.

CPDIR (Files Utility)

Format: cpdir [-ifvx] <dirname1> <dirname2>

Function: Copy directories.

Details: [-i] Checks the destination for file with the same name.
 [-f] Remove files in destination.
 [-v] Displays file names before copying.
 [-x] Skips subdirectories that are on file systems other than where copying started.

DATE (Uzix Utility)

Format: date

Function: Displays the current system date and time.

DD (Files Utility)

Format: dd [if=<filename>] [of=<filename>] [ibs=<bytes>]
 [obs=<bytes>] [bs=<bytes>] [cbs=<bytes>]
 [files=<number>] [skip=<blocks>]
 [seek=<blocks>] [count=<blocks>]
 [conv={ascii | ebcdic | ibm | lcase
 | ucase | swab | noerror | sync}]

Function: Copy file converting it.

Details: [if=<filename>] Read from file
 [of=<filename>] Write to file
 [ibs=<bytes>] Read <bytes> bytes at a time
 [obs=<bytes>] Write <bytes> bytes at a time
 [bs=<bytes>] Reads and writes <bytes> bytes at a
 time
 [cbs=<bytes>] Converts <bytes> bytes at a time
 [files=<num.>] Copies <num.> files
 [skip=<blocks>] Skip <blocks> blocks of “bs” size at the
 beginning of the entry
 [seek=<blocks>] Skip <blocks> blocks of “bs” size at start
 of output
 [count=<blocks>] Copies only <blocks> of size “bs” into
 the input
 conv=conversion[,conversion...] → converts the file
 according to the following arguments:

ascii	Convert from EBCDIC to ASCII.
ebcdic	Convert from ASCII to EBCDIC.
ibm	Convert from ASCII to alternative EBCDIC.
lcase	Converts all characters to lowercase.
ucase	Converts all characters to uppercase.
swab	Swaps a pair of input bytes.
noerror	Continue after detecting an error.
sync	Completes a “bs” block with 00H bytes.

DF (Files Utility)

Format: `df [-ikn]`

Function: Print the free disk space in units of 512 bytes.

Details: `[-i]` List information used by inodes.

`[-k]` Print in units of 1 Kbyte.

`[-n]` Not access `/etc/mtab` to obtain information.

DHRY (System Utility)

Format: `dhry`

Function: Displays processing speed in dhrystones.

DIFF (Text Utility)

Format: `diff [-c | -e | -C n] [-br] <filename1> <filename2>`

Function: Print the difference between two files.

Details: `[-C n]` Produces output containing `n` lines of context.

`[-b]` Ignores white space in the comparison.

`[-c]` Produces an output containing 3 lines of context.

`[-e]` Produces an “ed-script” to convert.

`[-r]` Applies `diff` recursively.

DIRNAME (Shell Utility)

Format: `dirname <filename>`

Function: Print the filename suffix.

DOSDEL (Uzix Utility)

Format: `dosdel <drivedos><filenamedos>`

Function: Erase a file in MSXDOS disks.

DOSDIR (Uzix Utility)

Format: `dosdir [-lr] <drivedos>`

Function: List files of the an MSXDOS disk.

Details: `[-l]` Long listing.

`[-r]` Prints subdirectories recursively and descending.

DOSREAD (Uzix Utility)

Format: `dosread [-a] <drivedos><filenamedos> [<filenameuzix>]`

Function: Read file from MSXDOS disk.

Details: `[-a]` ASCII file.

DOSWRITE (Uzix Utility)

Format: `doswrite [-a] <drivedos><filenamedos> [<filenameuzix>]`

Function: Write a file to MSXDOS disk.

Details: `[-a]` ASCII file.

DU (Uzix Utility)

Format: `du [-as] [-l n] <dirname> ...`

Function: Print space occupied by directories and subdirectories.

Details: `[-a]` Print space used by all files.

`[-s]` Summary only.

`[-l]` List `n` subdirectories levels.

ECHO (Shell Utility)

Format: `echo [-ne] [<string> [<string>...]]`

Function: Print a text line.

Details: `[-n]` Does not feed a line at the end of the text

`[-e]` Enables interpretation of the following characters:

`\a` Alert (bell).

`\b` Backspace.

`\c` Suppress line feed.

`\f` Form feed.

`\n` New line.

`\r` Carriage return.

`\t` Horizontal tab.

`\v` Vertical tab.

`\\` Ignores space in the text between `\\` (backslash).

`\nnn` Print char of ASCII code `nnn` (octal).

`\xnn` Print char of ASCII code `nn` (hex).

ED (Text Utility)

Format: `ed [-Ghs] [-p string] [arquivo]`

Function: Execute a standard text editor.

`-G` Forces retrocompatibility.

`-h` Shows the program help.

`-s` Suppress diagnostics.

`-p` Sets a command prompt.

EXIT (Administration Utility)

Format: `exit [<status>]`

Function: Exit the current session.

FALSE (Shell Utility)

Format: false

Function: Null; only returns with error status “1”.

FGREP (Text Utility)

Format: fgrep [-cfhlsv] [<string_file>] [<string>] <filename>...

Function: Searches for a string and prints the lines where it was found.

Details: [-c] Prints only the number of lines.
 [-f] Searches for string in file <filename>.
 [-h] Omit file headers from output.
 [-l] Lists file names only once.
 [-n] Prints line numbers for each line.
 [-s] Status only.
 [-v] Print only lines without the <string>.

FILE (Uzix Utility)

Format: file <filename> [<filename>...]

Function: Makes an assumption about what type the file is.

FLD (Text Utility)

Format: fld -u -z* -[b t s? i? fm1.n1,m2.n2] {<input_file>
 [<output_file>]}

Function: Reads and concatenates fields from a file.

Details: [-?] Show help. Same as [-h].
 -u Unzips tabs.
 [-p] Compress tabs.
 -z* Skip the first * spaces.
 [-b] Skip the starting spaces of the field.
 [-t] Removes excessive spaces from the field.
 [-s?] Field separator on output will be “?”.
 [-i?] Field separator on input will be “?”.
 [-fm1.n1,m2.n2] Field definition:
 m1.n1 = beginning of field and m2.n2 = end of field,
 where m = number of fields and n = number of chars.
 [-f#] Get the user input field.

FORTUNE (Uzix Utility)

Format: fortune

Function: Randomly prints a proverb.

GREP (Text Utility)

Format: `grep -cnfv [-p<padrão>] <filenames>`

Function: Searches for a string and prints the lines where found.

Details: `[-c]` Prints only the number of lines.

`[-f]` Print file names.

`[-n]` Prints line numbers for each line

`[-v]` Print only lines without the <string>

`[-p]` Sets the string (default). The following control characters can be used:

`x` Ordinary character.

`\` Quote any character.

`^` Start of line.

`$` End of line.

`.` Any character.

`:l` Lowercase.

`:u` Capital letters.

`:a` Alphabetical.

`:d` Digits (numeric).

`:n` Alphanumeric.

`:r` Russian characters.

`:s` Space.

`:t` Tab.

`:c` Control characters (except LF and TAB).

`:e` Starts sub-expression.

`*` Repeats zero or more.

`+` Repeats one or more.

`-` Optionally search for expression.

`[..]` Any of these (in the FROM-TO range).

`[^..]` Any except these.

`\nnn` Numeric value (C style).

HEAD (Text Utility)

Format: `head [-n] [<filenames> ...]`

Function: Prints the beginning of the text.

Details: `[-n]` Number of lines to print (the standard is 10).

HELP (Uzix Utility)

Format: `help`

Function: Prints some commands in their format.

INIT (Administration Utility)

Format: /bin/init

Function: Process startup control.

KILL (Uzix Utility)

Format: kill [-signal] pid [pid...]

Function: Ends system processes.

Details: [-signal] is a signal to be sent to a process that is running (eg HUP, INT, QUIT, KILL or 9).

LOGIN (Administration Utility)

Format: login <username>

Function: Start a session.

LN (Text Utility)

Format: ln [-ifsSmrRvx] <filename1> <filename2>

ln [-ifsSrRvx] <filename> [<filename>...] <dirname>

Function: Add links between files.

Details: [-i] Warn before removing existing destination files.

[-f] Removes existing destination files.

[-s] Add symbolic link.

[-S] Add symbolic link while trying normal link.

[-m] Interleaves trees.

[-r] Adds recursive link to directories.

[-R] Same as [-r].

[-v] Print file name before adding link.

[-x] Skips subdirectories that are on file systems other than where adding links started.

LOGOUT (Uzix Utility)

Format: logout

Function: Ends a session.

LS (Files Utility)

Format: ls [-1ACFLRacdfgiklqrstu] [<filename> [<filename>...]]

Function: List the directory contents.

Details: [-1] Use only one column in the output.

[-A] Lists all files except "." and "..".

- [-C] Sorts files in the listing (in columns).
- [-F] Does not identify the file type.
- [-L] Lists files by symbolic links.
- [-R] Lists the contents of directories recursively.
- [-a] Lists all files including "." and "..".
- [-c] Sorts files by change date.
- [-d] List directories like other files.
- [-f] Does not sort files and directories.
- [-g] Prints the name of the user who owns the group.
- [-i] Prints the inode number of files.
- [-k] Print file size in Kbytes.
- [-l] Print file attributes.
- [-q] Prints question marks in place of special characters.
- [-r] Sort files and directories in reverse order.
- [-s] Print file size in bytes.
- [-t] Sorts files by creation date.
- [-u] Sorts files by last access date.

MAN (System Utility)

Format: `man -wqv [seção] <commandname>`

Function: Presentes qhe on-line manual.

- Details:
- w Displays only manual with exact section/name.
 - q Silent mode, for faulty formatter commands.
 - v Formatted presentation mode (verbose).

MKDIR (Files Utility)

Format: `mkdir [-p] [-m <mode>] <dirname>`

Function: Create directories.

- Details:
- [-p] Create parent directories according to the mask.
 - [-m] Sets the mode (0666 minus umask bits).

MKNOD (Files Utility)

Format: `mknod [-m <mode>] <filename> {b | c | u} <major> <minor>`

Function: Create special files.

- Details:
- [-m] Define the mode.
 - b Bufferized file (block).
 - c/u Not bufferized file (character).

MORE (Uzix Utility)

Format: `more <filenames>`

Function: Paging utility.

Details: When the prompt is present, use the following keys:

- space Displays the next page.
- return Displays the next line.
- n Go to the next file if it exists.
- p Go to the previous file if it exists.
- q Quits the 'more' command.

MOUNT (Uzix Utility)

Format: `mount [-r] <device> <path>`

Function: Mounts the <device> in the specified <path>.

Details: [-r] Mounts in the read only mode.

MV (Files Utility)

Format: `mv [-isfmvx] <filename1> <filename2>`

`mv [-ifsvx] <filename> [<filename> ...] <dirname>`

Function: Rename or move files.

- Details:
- [-i] Warn before overwriting files with same name.
 - [-f] Removes existing target files.
 - [-s] Creates symbolic link and does not move the file.
 - [-m] Merge directories without searching target directory.
 - [-v] Print file name before moving.
 - [-x] Skips subdirectories that are on file systems other than where file movement started.

PASSWD (Administration Utility)

Format: `passwd [<login>]`

Function: Change user password.

PROMPT (Shell Utility)

Format: `prompt <string>`

Function: Change the Uzix prompt.

PS (Uzix Utility)

Format: `ps [-] [lusmahrn]`

Function: Prints a process status report.

Details: [-l] Long format.
 [-u] User format (username and start time).
 [-s] Signal format.
 [-m] Memory information.
 [-a] Displays processes from other users as well.
 [-h] No header.
 [-r] Only running processes.
 [-n] Numeric output for user.

PWD (Shell Utility)

Format: pwd

Function: Prints the path of the current working directory.

QUIT (Administration Utility)

Format: quit

Function: Ends current session.

REBOOT (Administration Utility)

Format: reboot

Function: Restart the computer.

RM (Files Utility)

Format: rm <filename>

Function: Remove files.

RMDIR (Files Utility)

Format: rmdir [-p] <dirname>

Function: Remove directories.

Details: [-p] Remove parent directory if empty after removal from the specified directory.

SASH (Application Utility)

Format: sash

Function: It's a kind of shell with built-in commands.

SET (Administration Utility)

Format: [<name> [<value>]]

Function: Displays or sets environment variables.

SLEEP (Administration Utility)

Format: sleep [<seconds>]

Function: Makes the system “sleep” for <seconds> seconds.

SU (Administration Utility)

Format: su [<username>]

Function: Temporarily connect as superuser or other user.

SOURCE (Uzix Utility)

Format: source <filename>

Function: Displays the source of the file.

SUM (Files Utility)

Format: sum [<filename> [<filename>...]]

Function: Analyze the checksum and block counter of the file.

SYNC (Programming Utility)

Format: sync

Function: Unloads file system buffers.

TAIL (Text Utility)

Format: tail [-c n | -n n] [-f] [<filename> [<filename>]]

Function: Prints the last lines of a file.

Details: [-c] Print n characters.
 [-f] In FIFO or special file, read after EOF.
 [-n] Print n lines.

TAR (Files Utility)

Format: tar [cxt] [voFfpD] <filenametape> [<filename> [<filename>...]]

Function: Concatenate/extract files for storage.

Details: [c] Create new tar file.
 [x] Extract files from the tar archive.
 [t] Lists the contents of the tar file.
 [v] Verbose mode.
 [o] Defines original user and owner on extraction.
 [F] Ignores errors.
 [f] Next argument is the name of the tar file.
 [p] Restore file modes, ignore mask.
 [D] Don't recursively add directories.

TEE (Shell Utility)

Format: tee <filename>

Function: Reads from standard input and writes to a file.

TIME (Uzix Utility)

Format: time <command> [<command arguments>]

Function: Executes the command and prints the real time, user time, and system time (hours–minutes–seconds).

TOP (Uzix Utility)

Format: top [-d <delay>] [-q] [-s] [-i]

Function: Lists the most active processes.

Details: [-d] Specifies the time for screen refresh.
 [-q] Specifies update without any delay.
 [-s] Safe Mode (disables interactive commands).
 [-i] Ignore idle processes.

TOUCH (Files Utility)

Format: touch [-c] [-d <time/date>] [-m] <filename>

Function: Change the time and date of files.

Details: [-c] Does not create files that do not exist.
 [-d] Change to <time/date> instead of using current time/date. Format: HH:MM:SS DD:MM:YY.
 [-m] Changes only the file modification time/date.

TR (Text Utility)

Format: tr from to [+<start>] [-<end>] [<inputfile> [<outputfile>]]

Function: Swaps characters in a file (transliterates).

Details: Escape Sequences:

:z	Empty range	:a	Same as a–zA–Z
:l	Same as a–z	:u	Same as A–Z
:m	Same as á–n	:b	Same as Ç–f
:r	Same as á–nÇ–f	:d	Same as 0–9
:n	Same as a–zA–Z0–9	:s	Same as \001–\040
:. .	All ASCII range minus \0		

TRACE (Uzix Utility)

Format: trace {on}

Function: Trace mode?

TRUE (Shell Utility)

Format: true

Function: Null; only returns with error status “0”.

UMOUNT (Uzix Utility)

Format: umount <device>

Function: Unmounts file system from the specified device.

UMASK (Uzix Utility)

Format: umask [<mask>]

Function: Remove masks.

UNALIAS (Shell Utility)

Format: unalias <name>

Function: Removes an alias command.

UNAME (Shell Utility)

Format: uname [-snrvma]

Function: Prints system information.

Details: [-m] Print machine type.
 [-n] Prints client machine name on the network.
 [-r] Print operating system distribution.
 [-s] Print operating system name.
 [-v] Print operating system version.
 [-a] Prints all of the above items.

UNIQ (Text Utility)

Format: uniq [-cduzN.M+L] [-<fields>] [+<letters>] [<filename>]

Function: Remove duplicate lines in sorted files.

Details: [-u] Only print unrepeated lines.
 [-d] Only print duplicate lines.
 [-c] Prints the number of times the line is repeated.
 [-z] Same as -c, but prints in octal numbers.
 [-N.M] Skip N words and M letters.
 [+L] Compares only L letters.

WC (Text Utility)

Format: wc [-bhpw] [<filename>]

Function: Prints the number of bytes, words and lines in a file.

Details: [-b] Open file in binary mode.
 [-h] Displays program help.
 [-p] Page count.
 [-w] Finds the maximum line width.

WHOAMI (Shell Utility)

Format: whoami

Function: Prints the username associated with the current userid.

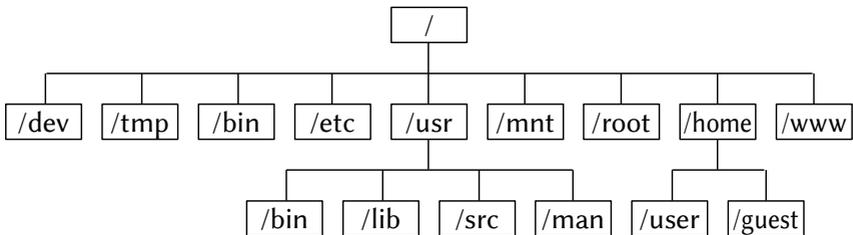
YES (Shell Utility)

Format: yes [<string>]

Function: Prints “y” or <string> repeatedly to standard output.

6.2 – HIERARCHICAL STRUCTURE

In Uzix there is a pre-defined structure of subdirectories. This structure can be modified by the user, but it is not advisable to do so because it is standard in the Unix world. This structure is as follows:



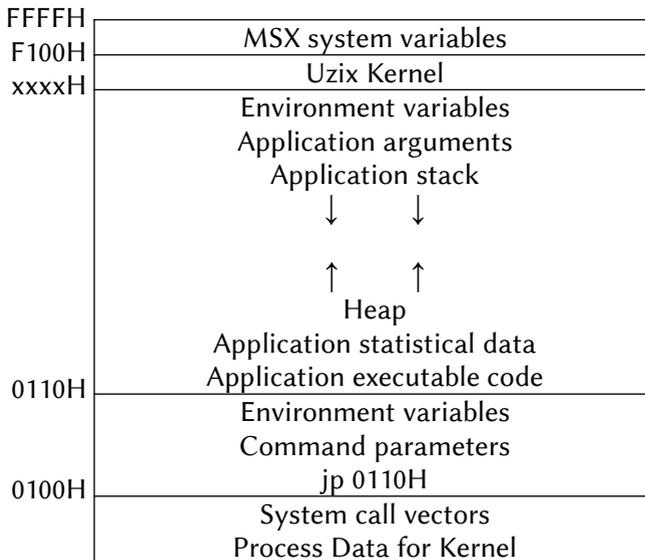
Each of these subdirectories has a specific, but not mandatory, use. A description of each is below.

/ Root directory
 /dev Contains the special filenames associated with hardware or software devices.
 /tmp Used by all system for creating temporary files.
 /bin Contains the most generic applications on the system.
 /etc Files used to administer the system.
 /usr General system files. This subdirectory contains more 4 subdirectories:

/bin	Generic Applications.
/lib	Libraries.
/src	Source codes.
/man	System manuals (text files).
/mnt	Used as a connection point for a system of file from another device. Also used for mounting.
/root	System administrator working directory.
/home	Used by regular users as their desktop.
/user	User "user".
/guest	User "guest".
/www	Internet files.

6.3 – MEMORY MAPPING

Memory mapping is the biggest difference between Uzix 1.0 and 2.0. It is illustrated below, where xxxxH is 8000H for Uzix 1.0 and C000H for 2.0.



Uzix 1.0 is entirely resident in the high memory area, starting at address 8000H. Every process always occupies 32 Kbytes of memory. The

Uzix 2.0 has a resident part on page 3 (from C000H) and makes the additional calls from there. Each process can be 16K, 32K or 48K.

6.4 – SYSTEM CALLS

Uzix is an operating system for MSX that implements AT&T Unix Version 7 functionality. It is a multi-user system and implements preemptive multitasking, while also offering network infrastructure (TCP/IP). However, the following precautions must be taken:

- NEVER use DI and EI instructions;
- NEVER access the hardware directly;
- NEVER access data below 0100H or above the application.

To make a system call it is necessary to stack the parameters in the reverse order of the declaration, then the call number and then making a CALL 08H. It is the application's responsibility to unstack the parameters after the CALL. The 16-bit return value is placed in the DE register. The only exception is the lseek call, whose return value is 32 bits and is placed in HL:DE (HL is the most significant word). The table below lists the direct calls, their parameters and call number.

6.4.1 – Direct System Calls

ACCESS (#00) – Determines the access level of a file.

Syntax: err = access (path, mode)

```
int    err
char   *path
int    mode
```

Input: path: String pointing to the file to be analyzed.
 mode: 0 – Tests that the file exists and is searchable.
 1 – Execute.
 2 – Write.
 4 – Read.

Output: err: 0 → Successful test (if mode = 0).
 -1 → Error (error code in errno).

Assembler: (access = 33.)
 sys access; name; mode

ALARM (#01) – Schedules a signal after a specified time.

Syntax: time = alarm (secs)

int time

int secs

Input: secs: Time in seconds (maximum 32 767).

Output: time: Previous time remaining in alarm.

Assembler: (alarm = 27.)

(seconds in r0)

sys alarm

(previous amount in r0)

Note: Causes the SIGALRM signal to be sent to the calling process after the number of seconds given by the argument. Unless captured or ignored, the signal ends the process. The return value is the amount of time remaining previously.

BRK (#02) – Change core allocation.

Syntax: err = brk (addr)

int err

char *addr

Input: addr: Address.

Output: err: 0 → Command executed successfully.

-1 → The program needs more memory than the system limit or overflows the maximum number of segmentation records.

Assembler: (brk = 17.)

sys break; addr

Note: Defines, for the system, the lowest location not used by the program (called the range) for addr. Usually only growing programs whose data areas increase need to break.

CHDIR (#03) – Change default directory.

Syntax: err = chdir (path)

int err

char *path

Input: path: String of the directory to be defined.

Output: err: 0 → Command executed successfully.

-1 → “path” is not a directory or is not searchable.

Assembler: (chdir = 12.)

sys chdir; dirname

CHMOD (#04) – Change mode of file.

Syntax: err = chmod (path, mode)

```
int    err
char  *path
int    mode
```

Input: path: String pointing to the file to be changed.
 mode: Resulting from an OR combining the following values:

```
04000 Set user ID on execution.
02000 Set group ID on execution.
01000 Save text image after execution.
00400 Read by owner.
00200 Write by owner.
00100 Execute (search on directory) by owner.
00070 Read, write, execute (search) by group.
00007 Read, write, execute (search) by others.
```

Output: err: 0 → Command executed successfully.
 -1 → File not found or user not allowed access.

Assembler: (chmod = 15.)
 sys chmod; name; mode

CHOWN (#05) – Change owner and group of a file.

Syntax: err = chown (path, owner, group)

```
int    err
char  *path
int    owner
int    group
```

Input: path: String pointing to the file.
 owner: New file user.
 group: New file group.

Output: err: 0 → Owner is changed.
 -1 → Illegal owner changes.

Assembler: (chown = 16.)
 sys chown; name; owner; group

CLOSE (#06) – Close a file.

Syntax: err = close(path)

```
int    err
char  *path
```

Input: path: String pointer to the file to be closed.

Output: err: 0 → File successfully closed.

-1 → Unknown file descriptor.

Assembler: (close = 6.)

(file descriptor in r0)

GETSET (#07) – Implements calls that read or change system variable values.

Syntax: var = getset(operation, ...)

int var

operation → Depends on the called function.

Input: getset(0) → getpid(void)

getset(1) → getppid(void)

getset(2) → getuid(void)

getset(3,uid) → setuid (uid)

int uid

getset(4) → geteuid(void)

getset(5) → getgid(void)

getset(6,gid) → setgid(int gid)

getset(7) → getegid(void)

getset(8) → getprio(void)

getset(9,pid,prio) → setprio(pid, prio)

int pid

char prio

getset(10) → umask(mask)

int mask

getset(11,onoff) → systrace(onoff)

int onoff

Output: It depends on the called function.

Assembler: It depends on the called function.

DUP (#08) – Duplicate an open file descriptor.

Syntax: newd = dup(oldd)

int newd

int oldd

Input: oldd: Old file descriptor.

Output: newd: New file descriptor.

-1 if the descriptor is invalid or if there are already too many files open.

Assembler: (dup = 41.)
 (file descriptor in r0)
 (new file descriptor in r1)
 sys dup
 (file descriptor in r0)

DUP2 (#09) – Duplicate an open file descriptor.

Syntax: err = dup2(oldfd, newfd)
 int newfd
 int oldfd

Nota: The dup2 entry is implemented by adding 0100 to oldfd.

EXECVE (#10) – Execute a file.

Syntax: err = execve(name, argv, envp)
 int err
 char *name
 char **argv
 char **envp

Input: name: Name of the file to be executed.
 argv: Array of pointers to arguments.
 envp: Pointer to an array of strings that constitute the process environment.

EXIT (#11) – Ends a process.

Syntax: param = exit(status)
 int param
 int status

Input: status: Lowest byte (LSB) is passed to “param”.

Output: param: Receives the lowest byte of “status”.

Assembler: (exit = 1.)
 (status in r0)
 sys exit

FORK (#12) – Generate a new process.

Syntax: newp = fork(void)
 int newp

Input: None.

Output: newp: ID of the created process. If it returns -1, it failed in creating the process.

Assembler: (fork = 2.)
 sys fork
 (new process return)
 (old process return, new process ID in r0)

FSTAT (#13) – Gets file information.

Syntax: stat = fstat(fd, *buf)
 int stat
 int fd
 void *buf

Library: #include <sys/types.h>
 #include <sys/stat.h>

Input: fd: File descriptor.
 *buf: Pointer to an empty buffer.

Output: stat: Information obtained. These are the same as the
 open, creat, dup or pipe commands.

GETFSYS (#14) – Get system information.

Syntax: stat = getfsys(dev, *buf)
 int stat
 int dev
 void *buf

Library: –

Input: dev: Device.
 *buf: Pointer to an empty buffer.

Output: stat: Obtained status.

IOCTL (#15) – Device control.

Syntax: err = ioctl(fd, req, ...)
 int err
 int fd
 int req

Library: #include <sgtty.h>

Input: fd: File descriptor.
 req: Request.

Output: err: 0 → Command successful.
 -1 → The file descriptor does not refer to the type
 of file to which it was directed.

Assembler: (ioctl = 54.)
 sys ioctl; fildes; request; argp

KILL (#16) – Sends the “sig” signal to the process specified in “r0”.

Syntax: err = kill(pid, sig)

int err

int pid

int sig

Input: pid: Process ID.

sig: Signal to be sent.

Output: err: 0 → The process was ended.

-1 → The process does not exist or does not have
the same current userid or is not a superuser.

Assembler: (kill = 37.)

(process number in r0)

sys kill; sig

Note: If the process number is 0, the signal is sent to all other
processes in the sender’s process group.

LINK (#17) – Link to a file.

Syntax: err = link(oldname, newname)

int err

char *oldname

char *newname

Input: oldname: Old filename.

newname: New filename.

Output: err: 0 → Link successfully created.

-1 → Link creation failed.

Assembler: (link = 9.)

sys link; oldname; newname

MKNOD (#18) – Make a directory or a special file.

Syntax: err = mknod(name, mode, dev)

int err

char *name

int mode

int dev

Input: name: String pointing to the new file/directory.

mode: New file/directory mode.

dev: Device.

Output: err: 0 → File/directory created successfully.

-1 → File/directory already exists or user is not
superuser.

Note: Only the superuser can use this command.

MOUNT (#19) – Mount the filesystem.

Syntax: err = mount(spec, dir, rwflag)
 int err
 char *spec
 char *dir
 int rwflag

Library: #include <sys/mount.h>

Input: spec: –
 dir: –
 rwflag: –

Output: err: 0 → Command executed successfully.
 -1 → Error executing command.

OPEN (#20) – Open a file for read or write.

Syntax: err = open(name, flags, mode)
 int err
 char *name
 int flags
 int mode

Input: name: Name of file to be open.
 flags: –
 mode: 0 → Read only.
 1 → Read/Write.

Output: err: 0 → File successfully open.
 -1 → Failed to open file.

Assembler: (open = 5.)
 sys open; name; mode
 (file descriptor in r0)

PAUSE (#21) – Pauses the system.

Syntax: err = pause(void)
 int err

Input: None.

Output: None.

Assembler: (pause = 29.)
 sys pause

Note: This command never returns normally. It is used to pause the system until it receives a “kill” or “alarm” signal.

PIPE (#22) – Create an interprocess channel.

Syntax: err = pipe(fd)
 int err
 int *fd

Input: fd: File descriptor.

Output: err: 0 → Channel successfully created.
 -1 → Channel creation failed.

Assembler: (pipe = 42.)
 sys pipe
 (read file descriptor in r0)
 (write file descriptor in r1)

READ (#23) – Read from file.

Syntax: err = read(fd, buf, bytes)
 int err
 int fd
 void *buf
 int bytes

Input: fd: File descriptor.

 buf: Empty buffer.

 bytes: Number of bytes to read.

Output: err: 0 → End of file reached.
 -1 → Read error.

Assembler: (read = 3.)
 (file descriptor in r0)
 sys read; buffer; nbytes
 (byte count in r0)

SBRK (#24) – Change core allocation.

Syntax: err = sbrk(int incr)

Nota: Ver BRK (#02).

LSEEK (#25) – Move read/write pointer.

Syntax: err = lseek(fd, offset, flag)
 int err
 int fd
 long offset
 int flag

Input: fd: File descriptor.
 offset: Offset.
 Flag: 0 → The pointer is set to offset bytes.
 1 → The pointer is set to its current location plus offset.
 2 → The pointer is set to the size of the file plus offset.

Output: err: 0 → Command executed successfully.
 -1 → Error executing command.

Assembler: (lseek = 19.)
 (file descriptor in r0)
 sys lseek; offset1; offset2; whence
 [Offset1 and offset2 are the high and low offset words; r0 and r1 contain the pointer on return].

SIGNAL (#26) – Catch or ignore signals.

Syntax: err = signal(sig_num, (*func)(int))
 int err
 char sig_num
 void (*func)(int)

Input: sig_num: Signal number.
 (*func)(int): –

Output: The value (int)-1 is returned if the given signal is out of range.

Note: List of signals with names as in the “include” file.

1	SIGHUP	Hangup
2	SIGINT	Interrupt
3*	SIGQUIT	Quit
4*	SIGILL	Illegal instruction (not reset when caught)
5*	SIGTRAP	Trace trap (not reset when caught)
6*	SIGIOT	IOT instruction
7*	SIGEMT	EMT instruction
8*	SIGFPE	Floating point exception
9	SIGKILL	Kill (cannot be caught or ignored)
10*	SIGBUS	Bus error
11*	SIGSEGV	Segmentation violation
12*	SIGSYS	Bad argument to system call

13	SIGPIPE	Write on a pipe or link with no one to read it
14	SIGALRM	Alarm clock
15	SIGTERM	Software termination signal
16		Unassigned

The starred signals in the list above cause a core image if not caught or ignored.

Assembler: (signal = 48.)
 sys signal; sig; label
 (old label in r0)

STAT (#27) – Get file status.

Syntax: err = stat(path, buf)
 int err
 char *path
 void *buf

Library: #include <sys/types.h>
 #include <sys/stat.h>

Input: path: Filename path.
 buf: Empty buffer.

Output: err: –

STIME (#28) – Set system time.

Syntax: err = stime(tvec)
 int err
 int *tvec

Input: tvec: Time in seconds from 01/01/1970.

Output: err: 0 → Date and time set successfully.
 -1 → Error in setting date and time .

Assembler: (stime = 25.)
 (time in r0–r1)
 sys stime

SYNC (#29) – Update super-block.

Syntax: err = sync(void)
 int err

Input: None.

Output: None.

Assembler: (sync = 36.)
 sys sync

TIME (#30) – Get time and date.

Syntax: void time(tloc)
 int *tloc

Library: #include <sys/types.h>
 #include <sys/timeb.h>

Input: None.

Output: tloc: Time in seconds from 01/01/1970.

TIMES (#31) – Get process times.

Syntax: t = times(struct tms *tvec)
 int t

Input: None.

Output: See note.

Assembler: (times = 43.)
 sys times; buffer

Note: Returns time information for the current process and for terminated child processes of the current process. All times are in 1/Hz seconds, where Hz = 60 or Hz = 50. After the call, the buffer will appear as follows:

```
struct tbuffer {
    long proc_user_time;
    long proc_system_time;
    long child_user_time;
    long child_system_time;
};
```

UMOUNT (#32) – Unmount filesystem.

Syntax: err = umount(spec)
 int err
 char *spec

Input: –

Output: –

Assembler: –

UNLINK (#33) – Remove directory entry.

Syntax: err = unlink(path)
 int err
 char *path

Input: path: String with directory to be removed.

Output: err: 0 → Directory entry removed successfully.
 -1 → Error removing directory.

Assembler: (unlink = 10.)
 sys unlink; name

UTIME (#34) – Set file times.

Syntax: err = utime(path, utimbuf *buf)
 int err
 char *path
 struct utimbuf *buf

Library: #include <sys/types.h>

Input: path: Filename path.
 Buf: –

Output: –

Assembler: (utime = 30.)
 sys utime; file; timep

WAITPID (#35) – Wait for process to change state.

Syntax: err = waitpid(pid, statloc, options)
 int err
 int pid
 int *statloc
 int options

Library: #include <sys/types.h>
 #include <sys/wait.h>

Input: pid: Process ID.
 statloc: Wait status.
 options: <-1 Meaning wait for any child process whose
 process group ID is equal to the absolute
 value of pid.
 -1 Meaning wait for any child process.
 0 Meaning wait for any child process whose
 process group ID is equal to that of the
 calling process.
 > 0 Meaning wait for the child whose process
 ID is equal to the value of pid.

WRITE (#36) – Write on a file.

Syntax: err = write(fd, buf, nbytes)
 int fd
 void *buf
 int nbytes

Input: fd: File descriptor.
 buf: Buffer with nbytes contiguous bytes which are
 written on the output file
 nbytes: Number of bytes to be written.

Output: err: 0 → Writing successful.
 -1 → Error during writing.

Assembler: (write = 4.)
 (file descriptor in r0)
 sys write; buffer; nbytes
 (byte count in r0)

REBOOT (#37) – Restart system.

Syntax: err = reboot(p1, p2)
 int err
 char p1
 char p2

Library: #include <sys/reboot.h>
 #include <unistd.h>

Input: p1: -
 p2: -

Output: err: 0 → Not applicable.
 -1 → Restart error.

SYMLINK (#38) – Create a new name for a file.

Syntax: err = symlink(oldname, newname)
 int err
 char *oldname
 char *newname

Library: #include <fcntl.h>
 #include <unistd.h>

Input: oldname: Old filename.
 newname: New filename.

Output: err: 0 → Command executed successfully.
 -1 → Error creating name.

CHROOT (#39) – Change root directory.

Syntax: err = chroot(path)
 int err
 char *path
 Library: #include <unistd.h>
 Input: path: New path to root directory.
 Output: err: 0 → Command executed successfully.
 -1 → Change error.

MOD_REG (#40)

Syntax: err = mod_reg (sig, (func)())
 int err
 int sig
 int (*func)()

MOD_DEREG (#41)

Syntax: err = mod_dereg (sig)
 int err
 int sig

MOD_CALL (#42)

Syntax: err = mod_call (sig, fnc, args, argsz)
 int err
 int sig
 int fnc
 char *args
 int argsz

MOD_SENDREPLY (#43)

Syntax: err = mod_sendreply (pid, fnc, r, rsz)
 int err
 int pid
 int fnc
 char *r
 int rsz

MOD_REPLY (#42)

Syntax: err = mod_reply (sig, fcn, r)
 int err
 int sig
 int fcn
 char *r

6.4.2 – Indirect System Call

CREAT – Create a new file.

Call: creat(path, mode)
 char *path
 int mode

Syntax: err = open(path, 0x301, mode)

Input: path: Filename path.
 0x301: O_CREAT | O_TRUNC | O_WRONLY
 mode: Mode.

Output: err: 0 → File created successfully.
 -1 → Error creating file.

Assembler: (creat = 8.)
 sys creat; name; mode
 (file descriptor in r0)

6.4.3 – Calls via GETSET

GETPID – Get process ID.

Call: getpid(void)
 Syntax: id = getset(0)
 Library: #include <unistd.h>
 Input: None.
 Output: id: Process ID.
 Assembler: (getpid = 20.)
 sys getpid
 (pid in r0)

GETPPID – Get parent process ID.

Call: getppid(void)
 Syntax: id = getset(1)
 Library: #include <unistd.h>
 Input: None.
 Output: id: Process ID.

GETUID – Returns the real user ID of the current process.

Call: getuid(void)
 Syntax: id = getset(2)
 Library: #include <unistd.h>

Input: None.
 Output: id: Process ID.
 Assembler: (getuid = 24.)
 sys getuid
 (real user ID in r0, effective user ID in r1)

SETUID – Set user and group ID.

Call: setuid(uid)
 Syntax: err = getset(3, uid)
 int err
 int uid
 Library: #include <unistd.h>
 Input: uid: User process ID.
 Output: err: 0 → ID successfully set.
 -1 → Error setting ID.
 Assembler: (setuid = 23.)
 (user ID in r0)
 sys setuid
 (setgid = 46.)
 (group ID in r0)
 sys setgid

GETEUID – Returns the effective user ID of the calling process.

Call: geteuid(void)
 Syntax: id = getset(4)
 Library: #include <unistd.h>
 Input: None.
 Output: id: Process ID.

GETGID – Get the real group ID.

Call: getgid(void)
 Syntax: id = getset(5)
 Library: #include <unistd.h>
 Input: None.
 Output: id: Group ID.
 Assembler: (getgid = 47.)
 sys getgid
 (real group ID in r0, effective group ID in r1)

SETGID – Set group identity.

Call: `setgid(gid)`

Syntax: `err = getset(6, gid)`
 int err
 int gid

Library: `#include <unistd.h>`

Input: `gid`: Group ID.

Output: `err`: 0 → ID set successfully.
 -1 → Error in setting the ID.

Assembler: `(setgid = 46.)`
 `(group ID in r0)`
 `sys setgid`

GETEGID – Return the effective group ID of the calling process.

Call: `getegid(void)`

Syntax: `id = getset(7)`

Library: `#include <unistd.h>`

Input: None.

Output: `id`: Group ID.

GETPRIO – Get the priority of a given process.

Call: `getprio(void)`

Syntax: `prd = getset(8)`

Library: `#include <sched.h>`

Input: None.

Output: `prd`: Priority.

SETPRIO – Set the priority of a process.

Call: `setprio(pid, prio)`

Syntax: `err = getset(9, pid, prio)`
 int err
 int pid
 char prio

Library: `#include <unistd.h>`

Input: `pid`: Process ID.

`prio`: Process priority.

Output: `err`: 0 → Priority set successfully.
 -1 → Error setting priority.

UMASK – Define a file creation mask.

Call: `umask(mask)`

Syntax: `oldm = getset(10, mask)`
`int oldm`
`int mask`

Input: `mask`: Mode. Only the lowest 9 bits are valid.

Output: `oldm`: Old mask value.

Assembler: `(umask = 60.)`
`sys umask; complmode`

SYSTRACE – Generate and apply protocols for system calls.

Call: `systrace(onoff)`

Syntax: `err = getset(11, onoff)`
`void err`
`int onoff`

Input: `onoff`: New protocol.

Output: –

6.4.4 – TCP/IP module

The TCP/IP module implements a subset of IPv4 and allows Uzix to communicate with other systems that support the protocol. The TCP/IP module signature is 04950H, and it provides the functions listed below.

Call	C prototype	FNC#
<code>ipconnect</code>	<code>int ipconnect(char mode, ip struct t *ipstruct)</code>	1
<code>ipgetc</code>	<code>int ipgetc(uchar socknum)</code>	2
<code>ipputc</code>	<code>int ipputc(uchar socknum, uchar byte)</code>	3
<code>ipwrite</code>	<code>int ipwrite(uchar socknum, uchar *bytes, int len)</code>	4
<code>ipread</code>	<code>int ipread(uchar socknum, uchar *bytes, int len)</code>	5
<code>ipclose</code>	<code>int ipclose(uchar socknum)</code>	6
<code>iplisten</code>	<code>int iplisten(int aport, uchar protocol)</code>	7
<code>ipaccept</code>	<code>int ipaccept(ip struct t *ipstruct, int aport, uchar block)</code>	8
<code>ping</code>	<code>int ping(uchar *IP, unsigned long *unused, uint len)</code>	9
<code>setsockopttimeout</code>	<code>int setsockopttimeout(uchar socknum, uint timeout)</code>	10
<code>ipunlisten</code>	<code>int ipunlisten(int aport)</code>	11

ipgetpingreply	icmpdata t *ipgetpingreply(void)	12
gettcpinfo	tcpinfo t *gettcpinfo(void)	13
getsockinfo	sockinfo t *getsockinfo(uchar socknum)	14

The data type used are:

```
// protocol numbers (protocol for iplisten)
ICMP_PROTOCOL = 1
TCP_PROTOCOL = 6
UDP_PROTOCOL = 17

// open modes
TCP_ACTIVE_OPEN = 255
TCP_PASSIVE_OPEN = 0

// protocols (ipconnect mode)
IPV4_TCP = 1
IPV4_UDP = 2
IPV4_ICMP = 3

// UDP modes
UDPMODE_ASC = 1
UDPMODE_CKSUM = 2

// error codes
ECONTIMEOUT = 080H
ECONREFUSED = 081H
ENOPERM = 082H
ENOPORT = 083H
ENOROUTE = 084H
ENOSOCK = 085H
ENOTIMP = 086H
EPROT = 087H
EPORTINUSE = 088H

// allowed states for sockstatus in sockinfo_t
TCP_CLOSED = 000H
TCP_LISTEN = 001H
TCP_SYN_SENT = 042H
TCP_SYN_RECEIVED = 043H
TCP_ESTABLISHED = 0C4H
TCP_FIN_WAIT1 = 045H
```

```

TCP_FIN_WAIT2      = 046H
TCP_CLOSE_WAIT    = 087H
TCP_CLOSING       = 008H
TCP_LAST_ACK      = 009H
TCP_TIMEWAIT      = 00AH
UDP_LISTEN        = 091H
UDP_ESTABLISHED   = 094H

```

```

ip_struct_t = { uchar remote_ip[4],
                uint remote_port,
                uint local_port }

```

```

icmpdata_t = { uchar type,
               uchar icmpcode,
               unsigned long unused,
               uchar data[28], /* pad para 64 bytes */
               uint len;
               uchar sourceIP[4],
               uchar ttl }

```

```

tcpinfo_t = { uchar IP[4],
              uchar dnslip[4],
              uchar dns2ip[4],
              char datalink[5],
              char domainname[DOMSIZE=128],
              int used_sockets,
              int avail_sockets,
              int used_buffers,
              int avail_buffers,
              int IP_chksum_errors }

```

```

sockinfo_t = { int localport,
               int remoteport,
               uchar remote_ip[4],
               char socketstatus, /* bit 7: permissao
                                   de escrita
                                   bit 6: estado de
                                   listen
                                   bits 3-0: estado
                                   */
               char sockettype, /* TCP=1, UDP=2 */
               char sockerr, /* codigo de erro */
               int pid }

```

6.4.5 – Error codes

Uzix system calls return a value greater than 0 on success and less than 0 on error. The error code is placed in the global variable (defined in the stub of the Uzix programs) **errno**. Listed below are possible error codes.

EPERM	1	Operation not permitted
ENOENT	2	No such file or directory
ESRCH	3	No such process
EINTR	4	Interrupted system call
EIO	5	I/O error
ENXIO	6	No such device or address
E2BIG	7	Arg list too long
ENOEXEC	8	Exec format error
EBADF	9	Bad file number
ECHILD	10	No child processes
EAGAIN	11	Try again
ENOMEM	12	Out of memory
EACCES	13	Permission denied
EFAULT	14	Bad address
ENOTBLK	15	Block device required
EBUSY	16	Device or resource busy
EEXIST	17	File exists
EXDEV	18	Cross-device link
ENODEV	19	No such device
ENOTDIR	20	Not a directory
EISDIR	21	Is a directory
EINVAL	22	Invalid argument
ENFILE	23	File table overflow
EMFILE	24	Too many open files
ENOTTY	25	Not a typewriter
ETXTBSY	26	Text file busy
EFBIG	27	File too large
ENOSPC	28	No space left on device
ESPIPE	29	Illegal seek
EROFS	30	Read-only file system
EMLINK	31	Too many links

EPIPE	32	Broken pipe
EDOM	33	Math argument out of domain of func
ERANGE	34	Math result not representable
EDEADLK	35	Resource deadlock would occur
ENAMETOOLONG	36	File name too long
ENOLCK	37	No record locks available
EINVFNC	38	Function not implemented
ENOTEMPTY	39	Directory not empty
ELOOP	40	Too many symbolic links encountered
ESHELL	41	It's a shell script
ENOSYS		EINVFNC

6.5 – VT-5 TERMINAL CODES

Ctrl G	07H	Beep.
Ctrl H	08H	Backspace.
Ctrl I	09H	TAB.
Ctrl J	0AH	Advances one line.
Ctrl K	0BH	Move cursor to origin.
Ctrl L	0CH	Clears screen and moves cursor to origin.
Ctrl M	0DH	Carriage return.
Ctrl \	1CH	Advances cursor one position.
Ctrl]	1DH	Moves cursor back one position.
Ctrl ^	1EH	Move cursor up.
Ctrl _	1FH	Move cursor down.
	7FH	Deletes character and moves cursor to the left.
Esc A	1BH,41H	Moves cursor up.
Esc B	1BH,42H	Moves cursor down.
Esc C	1BH,43H	Move cursor to the right.
Esc D	1BH,44H	Move cursor left.
Esc E	1BH,45H	Clears screen and places cursor at origin.
Esc H	1BH,48H	Places cursor at the origin.
Esc J	1BH,4AH	Erases to the end of the screen, does not move cursor.
Esc j	1BH,6AH	Clears screen and places cursor at origin.
Esc K	1BH,4BH	Erases to end of line, do not move cursor.
Esc L	1BH,4CH	Insert line above cursor, move rest of screen

		down, leave cursor at start of new line.
Esc I	1BH,6CH	Erases to end of line, do not move cursor.
Esc M	1BH,4DH	Erases cursor line, moves rest of screen to line and places cursor at beginning of next line.
Esc x 4	1BH,78H,34H	Selects block cursor.
Esc x 5	1BH,78H,35H	Turns cursor off.
Esc Y n m	1BH,59H,m,n	Move cursor to column m-32 and row y-32.
Esc y 4	1BH,79H,34H	Selects underlined cursor.
Esc y 5	1BH,79H,35H	Turns on cursor.

7 – WiOS

7.1 – FILESYSTEM DRIVER

Description: File-System driver
 Driver-Name: "File-System"
 GDA: _hfsdrv
 Header-File: FSFNC.H

All disk-functions have the same numbers and names as their corresponding DOS 2 functions. These functions were not complete at the time when this documentation was printed.

_SELDSK (Function '0x0e')

Description: Set current drive.
 Arguments: None.
 Return: None.

_CURDRV (Function '0x19')

Description: Get current drive.
 Arguments: None.
 Return: None.

_RDABS (Function '0x2f')

Description: Absolute sector read.
 Arguments: None.
 Return: None.

_WRABS (Function '0x30')

Description: Absolute sector write.
 Arguments: None.
 Return: None.

_FFIRST (Function '0x40')

Description: Find first entry.
 Arguments: char * pointer to filename / file info block.
 char * pointer to new file info block.
 char search attributes.
 Return: None.

_FNEXT (Function '0x41')

Description: Find next entry.

Arguments: char * Pointer to file info block

Return: None.

_OPEN (Function '0x43')

Description: Open file handle.

Char * Arguments pointer to filename

int mode

Return 0 → error

1~255 → file handle

_CREATE (Function '0x44')

Description: Create file and open handle.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_CLOSE (Function '0x45')

Description: Close file handle.

Arguments: int file handle

Return 0 → done

1~255 → error

_READ (Function '0x48')

Description: Read from file handle.

Arguments: int File handle.

char * Destination address (4000H...BFFFh).

uint Len (0~16 384).

T_SEG Destination segment (0~3071).

char Dummy (must be 0) mode (CRC, CRYPT).

Return 0 → done;

1~255 → error.

_WRITE (Function '0x49')

Description: Write to file handle.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_SEEK (Function '0x4a')

Description: Seek (position file pointer).

Arguments: int File handle.
 uint Offset (0~65535).
 char Mode: 0 → from start of file;
 1 → from end of file;
 2 → relative to current position.

Return 0 → done.
 1~255 → error.

_DELETE (Function '0x4d')

Description: Delete file or subdirectory.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_RENAME (Function '0x4e')

Description: Rename file or subdirectory.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_MOVE (Function '0x4f')

Description: Move file or subdirectory.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_ATTR (Function '0x50')

Description: Change file or subdirectory attributes.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_FTIME (Function '0x51')

Description: Get/set file date and time.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_VERIFY (Function '0x58')

Description: Get verify flag setting.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_GETCD (Function '0x59')

Description: Get current directory.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_CHDIR (Function '0x5a')

Description: Change current directory

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_PARSE (Function '0x5b')

Description: Parse pathname.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_FORMAT (Function '0x67')

Description: Format disk.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

_D2V (Function '0x80')

Description: Read directly from file handle to port-address (e.g. VRAM).

Arguments: int handle.
uint len.
char port.

Return 0 → done.
1~255 → error.

7.2 – EXTERNAL DRIVER

Description: External driver

Driver-Name: "External Driver"

GDA: _hextdrv

Header-File: EXTFC.H

NONAME (Function '1')

Description: Used internally.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

RESKEY (Function '2')

Description: Clear keyboard-buffer of calling task.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

GETKEY (Function '3')

Description: Get next keyboard-character in buffer of calling task.

Arguments: None.

Return: 0 → no key has been pressed since last GETKEY.
1~255 → character-code of the key.

7.3 – GRAPHIC I/O DRIVER

Description: Graphic I/O driver

Driver-Name: "Graphic-IO Driver"

GDA: _hgiodrv

Header-File: GIOFNC.H

NONAME (Function '1')

Description: Used internally.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

NONAME (Function '2')

Description: Used internally.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

NONAME (Function '3')

Description: Used internally.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

GET_VHANDLE (Function '4')

Description: Get handle of a file in Videoram-Directory (used for finding font- and icon-handles).

Arguments char ICON for icon.

FONT for font.

char* filename.

Return: 0~65 534 → handle of icon/font;

-1 → file not found.

ADDFONTLIB (Function '5')

Description: Load a font from disk.

Arguments: char * filename.
 Return 0~65 534 → handle of loaded font;
 -1 → file not found.
 Note: Don't overload memory. No checking is done yet.

NONAME (Function '6')

Description: Used internally.
 Arguments: None.
 Return: None.

7.4 – GRAPHIC DRIVER

Description: Graphic driver
 Driver-Name: "Graphic Driver"
 GDA: _hgrpdrv
 Header-File: GRPFNC.H

MOUSEBOX (Function '1')

Description: Set the box where the mouse can move absolute coordinates – corners must be in the order upper-left / lower-right.
 Arguments: int x coordinates of upper left corner.
 int y
 int x coordinates of lower right corner.
 int y
 Return: None.

PPOINTER (Function '2')

Description: Put the mouse-pointer at absolute coordinates on the screen absolute coordinates.
 Arguments: int x coordinates of mouse-pointer.
 int y
 Return: None.
 Note: If the coordinates are outside of the mousebox, it will 'jump' into them at the next interrupt).

MOUSEMOVE (Function '3')

Description: Move mouse according to the user-movement (not necessary)
 Arguments: None.

Return: None.

STOREBOX (Function '4')

Description: Store current VDA-coordinates.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

Note: There is only set of VDA-coordinated to be stored! Since this functions is also used by WiOS, the function RESTOBOX might not restore the coordinates you stores after a polling or calling the window-driver.

RESTOBOX (Function '5')

Description: Restore the last set of VDA-coordinates stored with STOREBOX.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

Note: See note at STOREBOX.

SETBOX (Function '6')

Description: Set valid display area (VDA).

Arguments: absolute coordinates:

int x Coordinates of first corner.

int y

int x Coordinates of opposite corner.

int y

Return: None.

Note: Corners may be set freely – they are adjusted to upper-left / lower-right.

COPY (Function '7')

Description: Copy graphic area corresponding to VDA.

Arguments: int sx Coord. of upper left corner from source-area.

int sy

int nx Width of area to be copied.

int ny

int dx Destination coordinates.

int dy

Return: 0 → area was fully copied (destination is in VDA).

1 → nothing was copied (dest. is totally out of VDA).

2 → area was cutted (dest. is partially out of VDA).

Note Copy-direction is corrected automatically if source and destination intersect.

PUTICON (Function '8')

Description: Puts icon on screen corresponding to VDA.

Arguments: int 0~32767 Handle of standard-int icon from VRAM.
 -1 Icon graphic-data comes from memory and '*_adrblk' must contain the following information:
 offset len
 +0 2 Address.
 +2 2 Segment of icon-graphic-data (32768 color mode).
 +4 2 Width.
 +6 2 Height of icon.

int x Coordinates of destination.

int y

Return: 0 → icon was fully put (destination is in VDA).
 1 → nothing was put (dest. is totally out of VDA).
 2 → icon was cutted (dest. is partially out of VDA).

EXPICON (Function '9')

Description: Expand icon (fill complete VDA with icon)

Arguments: int 0~32767 Handle of standard-icon from VRAM.
 -1 Icon graphic-data comes from memory (see PUTICON for data of '*_adrblk').

int x Coordinates.

int y

Return: None.

Note: x,y-coordinate set the destination of the 'master'-icon. The area around this icon is tiled with the same icon.

SETFONT (Function '10')

Description: Set current font.

Arguments: int Font-handle.

Return Height of font.

Note No error-checking for the font-handle is done. If a non-existing font-handle is sent, the height of the current font is returned and nothing is changed.

SETCOL (Function '11')

Description: Set the font-color

Arguments: int Foreground color.
int Background color.

Return: None.

Note: Color 0 is transparent

SETPOS (Function '12')

Description: Set current text-position

Arguments: int x Coordinates of text-position.
int y
int Distance in pixels between characters.

Return: None.

WRITXT (Function '13')

Description: Write text to the screen according to VDA.

Arguments: char* Address of string.
T_SEG Segment of string.
int 0 → all characters until byte '0' are written.
1~32767 → characters are written.

Char Flags not used yet. Must be 0.

Return: Total length of text in pixels (NOT the length of displayed text)

Note: Distance between characters is set with function 'SET-POS' font color 0 is transparent every underscore will underline the next character

GETXTLEN (Function '14')

Description: Get len of null-terminated string in pixels.

Arguments: Char* Address of string
T_SEG Segment of string

Return: None.

Note: Distance between characters is set with function 'SET-POS'. Every underscore will underline the next character.

GETCHARS (Function '15')

Description: Get number of characters fitting in given width.

Arguments: char* address of string.
T_SEG segment of string.

int width of area in pixels.
 char 0 → direction forward (increment text-pointer).
 1~255 → backward.

Return: Number of characters.

BOX (Function '16')

Description: Draw colored box on screen according to VDA.

Arguments: int x Coordinates of upper left corner.

int y

int nx Width of box.

int ny

int 0~32767 → color of box.

int logical operation (see V9990 technical manual).

Return: None.

GETBOX (Function '17')

Description: Get current VDA-coordinates.

Arguments: None.

Return: address of data-block.

offset len

+0 2 x-coordinate of upper left corner.

+2 2 y

+4 2 x-coordinate of lower right corner.

+6 2 y

Note: Use this function to store current VDA-coordinates permanently in your own memory-area (better than STOREBOX when polling or calling the window driver).

7.5 – MEMORY DRIVER

Description: Memory driver

Driver-Name: –

GDA: _hmemdrv

Header-File: MEMFNC.H

This driver is in the internal WiOS-part and has no name.

ALLSEG (Function '1')

Description: Allocate one new segment.

Arguments: T_TASK 0..252 task's handle

Return: -1 → no more free segments
 0~32767 → number of the segment

ENASEG (Function '2')

Description: Enable segment in page 1 / 2.
 Arguments T_SEG 0~32767 → number of the segment.
 char 1 → page 1: 4000H-7FFFH.
 2 → page 2: 8000H-bFFFFH.
 Return: 0 segment was enabled
 -1 → segment could not be enabled (out of range).
 -2 → segment was not allocated.

FRESEG (Function '3')

Description: Free allocated segment.
 Arguments T_SEG 0~32767 → number of the segment.
 Return: 0 → segment was freed.
 -1 → segment could not be freed (out of range).
 -2 → segment was not allocated by this task.
 Note After freeing a segment should be paid attention NOT
 to write in the area where the segment was if no other
 segment has been enabled at this page.

GETSEG (Function '4')

Description: Get status of segment.
 Arguments T_SEG 0..32767 → number of the segment.
 Return: 0~252 → task/driver's handle which allocated the
 segment
 253 → used by a non specified application (was
 allocated when WiOS started).
 254 → too slow memory for CPU (e.g. Sony mappers
 in turbo mode)
 255 → segment is free.

NONAME (Function '5')

Description: Used internally.
 Arguments: None.
 Return: None.

SEGCPY (Function ‘6’)

Description: Copy a given number of bytes from one segment to another.

Arguments: Relative addresses in segments: range is from 0~3FFFFH:

T_SEG 0~32767 → source segment.

T_SEG 0~32767 → destination segment.

uint 0~16383 → source address.

uint 0~16383 → destination address.

uint 0~16384 → number of bytes to be copied.

Return 0 → data was copied

-1 → out of range (src > 16383, dest > 16383 or length of the block exceeds the src or dest segment)

Note: No checking is done whether the segments are allocated or to which task they belong

SEGNCPY (Function ‘7’)

Description: Copy bytes from one segment to another until a given byte is found.

Arguments: Relative addresses in segments: range is from 0~3FFFFH.

T_SEG 0..32767 source segment

T_SEG 0..32767 destination segment

uint 0..16383 source address

uint 0..16383 destination address

uint 0..16384 number of bytes to be copied

char 0..255 termination byte

Return: -1 → see SEGCPY.

1~16384 → number of bytes copied

Note: No checking is done whether the byte exists. SEGNCPY will copy data until the termination byte is found – with all consequences. Make sure that it is in a valid range.

7.6 – STANDARD DRIVER

Description: Standard driver

Driver-Name: –

GDA: _hstddrv

Header-File: STDFNC.H

This driver is in the WiOS-kernel and has no name.

ADDINT (Function '1')

Description: Add an interrupt.

Arguments: T_TASK 0~252 (task/driver's handle).

T_SEG 0~32767 (segment).

uint 4000H~7FFFH (address of interrupt-routine).

Return: 0~MAXINT → interrupt handle ('MAXINT' is in DEF.H).
255 → no more interrupts.

Note: Interrupt-routine may not EI.

DELINT (Function '2')

Description: Remove an interrupt.

Arguments: T_INT interrupt handle.

Return 0 → Interrupt was removed.

255 → Interrupt could not be removed.

DRAG (Function '3')

Description: Starts a drag-operation.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

Note Under construction. Do not use.

7.7 – TASK DRIVER

Description: Task driver

Driver-Name: –

GDA: _htaskdrv

Header-File: TASKFNC.H

This driver is in the internal WiOS-part and has no name.

NONAME (Function '1')

Description: Used internally

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

LOADTASK (Function '2')

Description: Load a task from disk

Arguments char* Pointer to drive+path+filename string

Return: -1 → task could not be loaded

0~252 → handle of task

NONAME (Function '3')

Description: Used internally
 Arguments: None.
 Return: None.

KILLTASK (Function '4')

Description: Remove a task from memory and free all segments and interrupts.
 Arguments: T_TASK Task handle.
 Return: 0 → event was sent.
 -1 → task does not exist.
 Note: Not yet supported.

S_NAME (Function '5')

Description: Search by name if a task/driver is currently present (loaded)
 Arguments: char* Pointer to name-string of task to be searched.
 Return: 0 → not found.
 ≠0 → address of data block.
 offset len
 +0 2 Handle of found task/driver.
 +2 2 Version number.
 Note: String must be between 4000H and 7FFFH.

ADD_EVENT (Function '127')

Description: Send an event to a task.
 Arguments: uint Address of event-block
 Member Function
 task Handle of the destination task.
 event Event.
 array[] 12 info-bytes for the receiving task.
 char handle of the sending task (filled by WiOS).
 Return: None.
 Note Event-block must be outside of page 1 & 2 so the receiving task can access the block without segment switching. It is recommended to use '_eventblk' from GDA to store events.

7.8 – WINDOW DRIVER

Description: Window driver
 Driver-Name: “Window Driver”
 GDA: `_hwindrv`
 Header-File: `WINFNC.H`

The function argument-explanation require the definition of struct `WINSTR windat`; as a global variable in the C source-code to have access to the window-structure via names.

If there are problems with some window-specific words in the following list, refer to the illustration of chapter about Icons.

Since this is the most complex driver, there are some functions which are not yet implemented. Still there is enough functionality to write normal applications and most of the missing functions can be simulated with some ‘work-arounds’.

7.8.1 – Window Structure

Type	Name	Description
int	handle	Window-handle. Identifies each window – no windows have the same handle.
int	x	Absolute x position on screen.
int	y	Absolute y position on screen.
int	nx	Width of visible work-area.
int	ny	Height of visible work-area. The visible work-area is always guaranteed to be free for the task’s use. Window-icons do NOT use this area since WiOS puts them ‘around’ the window – except for the following cases, where the icons are copied into the user-area: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Back-, Close- or Toggle-Size-Icon, if there’s no title-bar. • Resize-Icon, if there is no scrollbar.
Int	vx	Virtual width of window.
int	vy	Virtual height of window. Is only needed for calculation of the scrollbars and may be 0 if you have none.

int	scrx	Horizontal scroll-offset.
int	scry	Vertical scroll-offset. always contains the absolute offset in pixels to the upper left corner of the window (like SET SCROLL in BASIC) and is not needed without scrollbars.
int	minx	Minimum width of window.
int	miny	Minimum height of window. Contains the minimum size of the window, which can be scaled by the user – does only prevent the user to create smaller windows using the mouse, NOT changes made manually from a task.
Int	maxx	Maximum width of window.
int	maxy	Maximum height of window. (See minimum-size).
Int	behind	Handle of the window in front (see below). Can be used to check the level of the window.
T_TASK	task	Task which created this window. Used internally to determine which task has to be informed if the user drags a window and to close all related windows if a task is closed.
char	winflag	Bitmapped window-area flags. bit 7: unused (must be 0). bit 6: not yet implemented (must be 0). bit 5: not yet implemented (must be 0). bit 4: not yet implemented (must be 0). bit 3: auto-repeat on arrow-icons. bit 2: window is pane-window (see 'parent' below). bit 1: window can be dragged (via title bar). bit 0: 0 → redraw from task needed; 1 → WiOS can redraw the whole window (not yet implemented).
char	iconflag	Bitmapped window-icon flags. Specifies the WiOS-controlled icons of a window. bit 7: unused (must be 0). bit 6: horizontal scrollbar. bit 5: adjust-size icon. bit 4: vertical scrollbar. bit 3: toggle-size icon.

		bit 2: title-bar.
		bit 1: close icon.
		bit 0: back icon.
char	workflag	Bitmapped window-work-area flags (see below).
		bit 7: unused (must be 0).
		bit 6: unused (must be 0)
		bit 5: double-click notifies task.
		bit 4: release over work-area notifies task (for drag & drop).
		bit 3: click notifies task (once).
		bit 2: click notifies task (always).
		bit 1: notify task continually while pointer is over work area.
		bit 0: ignore all clicks.
int	parent	Handle of parent window.
		-1: window is a parent window (i.e. can have pane windows).
		0~255: handle of the parent window, if window is a pane window Pane windows are 'connected' to their parent windows, i.e. if a parent window is opened on front or on back, all pane-windows will stay directly in front of the parent window. If a parent window is closed, all connected pane windows will also be closed. Note that pane windows are NOT moved in the x- and y-position, if the parent window is.
char	statflag	Bitmapped window-status flags.
		bit7~2: unused (must be 0).
		bit 1: window is minimized (not yet implemented: 0).
		bit 0: window is maximized (not yet implemented: 0).
int	realnx	'Real' width of window on screen.
int	realny	'Real' height of window on screen.
char	dummy[25]	These bytes are to fill the window data block up to 64 bytes and are reserved for future use, so always fill them with 0.

7.8.2 – Window Driver Functions

CREATE_WIN (Function '1')

Description: Add window to list and send open-event.

Arguments: uint Address of window-data-block.
 Needed members:
 x,y
 nx,ny
 vx,vy
 scrx,scry
 minx,miny
 maxx,maxy
 behind -2 → back.
 -1 → front.
 0~255 → specified window.
 If window is a pane window, 'front' always means on top of the pane window block, and 'back' means directly above the parent window (on back of pane window block).
 winflag
 iconflag
 workflag
 parent -1 → window is parent.
 0~255 → handle of parent window.
 statflag Must be 0.
 dummy[25] All 25 bytes must be 0.

Return: -1 → window could not be created.
 0~255 → handle of the new window.

Note The members handle, task, realnx and realny are filled by WiOS, no matter if they have valid data or not. This function always creates a new window after 'CREATE_WIN' the window is NOT drawn on the screen. It is only registered and an 'OPEN' event is sent to the task after the next polling.

OPEN_WIN (Function '2')

Description: Change data of existing window in list, calculate new position and send redraw-events to all affected tasks.

Arguments: uint Pointer to window-data (see above).

Return: -1 → window could not be opened.
 1~255 → number of windows opened (including pane windows).

Note: Window-data must be valid and complete so call GET_WIN_STATE before. If the behind value changes, all pane-windows (if window is a parent) are also changed so they are always directly above the parent window be sure use this function only on windows belonging to your task.

CLOSE_WIN (Function '3')

Description: Remove window and all connected pane-windows from list and send redraw-events lower window's tasks

Arguments: uint 0~255 → handle of window to be closed.

Return: -1 → window could not be deleted.

1~255 → number of windows closed (including pane windows).

Note: Be sure use this function only on windows belonging to your task.

GET_WIN_STATE (Function '4')

Description: Copy window-data from list to task's memory.

Arguments: uint Address where the data has to be copied.
member 'handle' must contain the window-handle.

Return 0~FFFEH → address of window-data (=the address sent).
-1 → window could not be found.

DRAWFRAME (Function '5')

Description: Draw window frame.

Arguments: int Destination x-coordinate.

int Destination y-coordinate.

uint Pointer to address of window structure member 'handle' must contain the window-handle.

char Must be '0'.

Return: None.

Note No validity checking for the window-handle is done is called automatically by 'GETWIB'.

GETWIB (Function '6')

Description: Get window-information-block for redraw.

Arguments: uint 0~255 → handle of window.

Return 0~FFFEh → address of WIB.

-1 → window could not be found.

7.8.3 – Redrawing Windows

COPYWIN (Function '7')

Description: Copy graphic area to display-screen using the redraw-stack.

Arguments: uint Address of WIB.

Return: None.

Note: VDA is changed. WIB must be outside page 1 and 2 ('GETWIB' always returns a correct address).

NONAME (Function '8')

Description: Used internally.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

DRW_MENU (Function '9')

Description: Draws a menu corresponding to the task's data.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

CHK_MENU (Function '10')

Description: Check coordinates and return the item number.

Arguments: None.

Return -1 → no item at these coordinates.

0~32767 → number of item.

NONAME (Function '11')

Description: Used internally.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

NONAME (Function '12')

Description: Used internally.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

NONAME (Function '13')

Description: Used internally.

Arguments: None.

Return: None.

The redraw-routine has to know a bit more than just the data in the window structure. This data can be ordered by the window driver and is called the window-information-block (WIB). It has the following structure:

T_SEG	stackseg	segment of the redraw-stack
uint	elements	number of rectangular areas in redraw-stack
struct WINSTR	*windat	pointer to window-data (outside page 1 or 2). Needed window-members are: x,y nx,ny realx,realy
uint	sx,sy	start coordinates of window-copy (always 0,212)
uint	offx,offy	offset for work-area
int	moffx,moffy	move-offset relative to last position
uint	toffx,toffy	title offset
uint	t_nx,t_ny	title width

The redraw stack has the following structure:

uint	x1,y1	Upper left coordinate (absolute)
uint	x2,y2	Lower right coordinate (absolute)

The task's redraw-routine has to look like this:

- Call 'GETWIB' and store return-address
- If elements is equal 0, nothing is to do
- Draw your own data at coordinates (sx+offx , sy+offy) that come with the 'GETWIB' function
- Call 'COPYWIN'

7.9 – EVENT DEFINITION

Event names are in 'EVENTFNC.H'.

E_NULL (Function '0')

Description: Null-Event.

Arguments: None.

E_REDRAW (Function '1')

Description: Window redraw request.

Arguments: array[0] → handle of window to be redrawn.

E_SCROLL (Function '2')

Description: Window scroll request.

Arguments: task sender (this task).

array[0] → handle of window to be scrolled.

array[1] → horizontal scroll offset (absolute).

array[2] → vertical scroll offset (absolute).

Note: An 'E_WOPEN' event is sent immediately after the scroll event to the task. The task only has to determine whether the new scroll offsets are accepted or not and, if yes, update the window data. Tasks which send a scroll request to windows of other tasks should take care to send the 'E_WOPEN' event immediately after it.

E_WOPEN (Function '3')

Description: Window open request.

Arguments: task Sender (this task).

array[0] Handle of window to be opened.

array[1] Behind value.

array[2] Upper left x-coordinates of window position.

array[3] Upper left y-coordinates of window position.

array[4] Width of work-area.

array[5] Height of work-area.

Note Width and height are the work-area dimensions, not the real window size.

E_WCLOSE (Function '4')

Description: Window close request.

Arguments: Task sender (this task).

array[0] Handle of window to be closed.

E_PNTOUT (Function '5')

Description: Pointer has left window.

Arguments: array[0] Handle of left window.

E_PNTIN (Function ‘6’)

Description: Pointer has entered window.

Arguments: array[0] Handle of entered window.

E_MCLICK (Function ‘7’)

Description: Mouseclick.

Arguments: array[0] Handle of window which has been clicked.

array[1] Coordinates of pointer where

array[2] click was (absolute).

array[3] Bitmapped click-type (bit is set if clicked).

Bit Function

0 → left button is pressed.

1 → left button is held.

2 → right button is pressed.

3 → right button is held.

array[4] The time (16-bit-counter) when the click was performed.

Note: Coordinates do not give the actual coordinates of the pointer but the coordinates of where the pointer was on click-time.

E_EDRAG (Function ‘8’)

Description: End of a drag operation.

Arguments: Task sender (this task).

array[0] Data-type.

array[1] Detailed information on data.

Note: For the data-type see chapter “Data Type Definition” section.

E_WKAREA* (Function ‘9’)

Description: Pointer is over work-area (only if bit 1 of work-area flag is set).

Arguments: array[0] Handle of window below pointer.

E_MENU* (Function ‘10’)

Description: Not yet supported.

Arguments: None.

E_SHUTDOWN (Function ‘11’)

Description: Requests the task to be closed.

Arguments: None.

Note: Does not need to be handled.

E_USERMSG (Function '16')

Description: User definable.

Arguments: task Sender (this task).
 array[0] User-message code.
 array[1~5] User definable.

Note. Must be handled even if the task shall not receive external data.

7.9.1 – Data sent with the 'E_EDRAG' event

Data type names in brackets are defined in 'DTDEF.H' and must be sent in array[0], the specifier in array[1].

Data type: 0 ('TEXT').

Specifier: 0 ('STRING').

Description: One or more text strings with no special function.

Data type: 0 ('TEXT').

Specifier: 1 ('FILENAME').

Description: One or more text strings with filenames to be handled / edited / opened.

Data type: 1 ('GRAPHIC').

Specifier: 0~255 bits per pixel.

Description: One rectangular bitmapped image (resolution is defined in the data itself).

7.9.2 – Data sent with the 'E_USERMSG' event

Whenever sending user messages, array[0] holds the user-message code. That is, in this case, code 'DATA', which is defined in 'DTDEF.H'.

Data: **STRING**

Arguments: array[1] Address of data block.

array[2] Segment of data block.

Data Block

Offset	Len	Valid Entries	Description
+0	2	0~65 535	Number of strings.

+2	2	1~3071	Number of segments used for data.
+4,6,...	2	0~3071	Segment numbers with strings.

After segment numbers:

2	0	Null-terminated strings.
	1~255	Number of fields.

- If strings are null-terminated, the strings come directly after the '0'.
- If strings are in fields of fixed length, there follows the length of the field.
- 2 bytes for each field length. After the length data comes the field-formatted string data.

Note: If the strings exceed 16K, it's up to the program to switch the segments.

Data: **FILENAME**

Arguments: array[1] Address of data block.
array[2] Segment of data block.

Data Block

Offset	Len	Valid Entries	Description
+0	2	0~65 535	Number of filenames.

After number of filenames:

Null-terminated strings.

Note: The filename data structure is exactly like the one of null-terminated strings – with the difference that the destination task does not have to insert this data somewhere but to open these filenames. In practice, that means to load these files – either in new windows for each file or for a slide show, one after each other, depending on the program. Also it's up to the destination task to parse the filename extensions or the files whether they are valid files for this task.

Data: **GRAPHIC**

Arguments: array[1] Address of data block.
array[2] Segment of data block.

Data Block

Offset	Len	Valid Entries	Description
+0	2	Unused.	
+2	2	1~3071	Number of segments used for image.

+4,6,... 2 0~3071 Segment numbers with image-data.

After segment numbers:

2 0~65 535 Width of image.

2 0~65 535 Height of image.

15-bit-mapped image data (see VDP-spec).

Note: If an image exceeds 16K, it's up to the program to switch the segments

7.10 – GDA REFERENCE

This section describes the list of needed GDA variables.

The GDA area starts at C030h. it's end is open since it can be expanded in future. Do not change reserved variables. They are not protected, but changing them may result in system instability or a crash. All GDA variables are pointers to the address of the variable or field. Type definitions are in 'DEF.H'.

Type	Name	Offset	Len	Description
T_SEG	*_tot_seg	+0	2	Total number of segments in computer.
T_SEG	*_free_seg	+2	2	Current number of free segments.
T_SEG	*_tmp_seg	+4	2	Segment of temporary segment.
<unused>		+6	2	
<internal use>		+8	2	
T_TASK	*_p1_task	+10	2	Current handle of task in page 1.
T_SEG	*_p1_seg	+12	2	Current segment in page 1.
char	*_p1rseg	+14	2	Mapper segment number of current segment in page 1.
char	*_p1_slt	+16	2	Slot of current segment in page 1
<unused>		+18	2	
T_SEG	*_p2_seg	+20	2	Current segment in page 2.
char	*_p2rseg	+22	2	Mapper segment number of current segment in page 2.
char	*_p2_slt	+24	2	Slot of current segment in page 2.
<internal use>		+26	2	
uint	(*_caldrv)(.)	+28	2	WiOS-function call entry address.
T_TASK	*_hmemdrv	+30	2	Handle of memory driver.
T_TASK	*_hstddrv	+32	2	Handle of standard driver.

T_TASK	*_htaskdrv	+34	2	Handle of task driver.
T_TASK	*_hfsdrv	+36	2	Handle of file system driver.
T_TASK	*_hgiodrv	+38	2	Handle of graphic I/O driver.
T_TASK	*_hgrpdv	+40	2	Handle of graphic driver.
T_TASK	*_hwndrv	+42	2	Handle of window driver.
T_TASK	*_hextdrv	+44	2	Handle of external driver.
uint	*_wiosver	+46	2	Current version of internal WiOS part.
VOID	(*_wiosend)()	+48	2	WiOS shutdown call (only in Alpha-version).
uint	(*_poll)()	+50	2	Poll entry address.
<internal use>		+52 to	+106	
VOID	(*_dump)()	+108	2	Entry call to make a memory dump on V9958 (argument is address).
struct				Address of event-block holding the data after polling
EBSTR	*_eventblk	+110	2	
struct				Address of window information
WIBSTR	*_wibblk	+112	2	Block struct
WINSTR	*_winblk	+114	2	Address of window data block
uint	*_act_font	+116	2	Handle of current font
uint	*_std_font	+118	2	Handle of standard (☒system☒) font
<internal use>		+120	2	
char	*_busyflag	+122	2	Status of direct-write VDP status
uint	*_adrbk	+124	2	Address of global, segment-switch independent address block
char	*_mb	+126	2	Current state of mouse buttons (bitmapped). bit description 0 → left trigger state (1=pressed). 1 → right trigger state (1=pressed).
char	*_cltype	+128	2	Type of last mouse click (bitmapped). bit description 0 → left single click (1=clicked). 1 → left double click (1=clicked). 2 → right single click (1=clicked). 3 → right double click (1=clicked).
uint	*_cltime	+130	2	Time of mouse click (array of 2). offset description +0 time of last left-click. +2 time of last right-click.

int	*_coord	+132	2	Current mouse coordinates (array of 2).
uint	(*_cal_seg)()	+134	2	Entry call for tasks to call multiple-part functions.
<internal use>		+136	2	
uint	(*_dcal_seg)()	+138	2	Entry call for drivers to call multiple-part functions
<internal use>		+140	2	
<internal use>		+142	2	

... to be expanded in future

7.11 – MENU BLOCK STRUCTURE

The menu block is one big field of data where one or more menu types can be defined. The following symbols are used in the structure definition:

prefix

b	Byte (1 byte).
w	Word (2 bytes).
t	Text (variable byte length).
#	Definition of valid values for 'D' (see suffix).

suffix

N	Any number.
D	Number from a pre-defined list.
S	And character string.
0	Must be this value.

Valid border styles:

0	No drawn border.
1	Filled box with background color.

Definition

bN number of item blocks

type

bD

#0 Option

Once for each option block:

wN	Font-handle.
wN	X-offset.

#2 List

Once for each list block

wN Font-handle.
 wN X-offset.
 wN Y-offset.
 w0 Width of option-block (filled by WiOS).
 w0 Height of option block (filled by WiOS).
 bD Border style.
 bN Distance of border in pixels.

For each entry:

bD Entry Flags (bitmapped)
 (0) (1)
 entry status bit 0 end of list valid entry
 valid bit 1 disabled enabled (selectable)
 sub list bit 2 no sub list sub list (arrow on the right)
 bit 3~7 unused (must be reset)
 tS Null-Terminated String
 continued at Entry Flags (until bit 0 is reset)

#3 Scrollbar

bD Entry Flags (bitmapped)
 (0) (1)
 Entry status bit 0 not valid valid
 wN X-offset.
 wN Y-offset.
 wN Visible size of field in pixels.
 wN Virtual size of field in pixels.
 wN Real size of field in pixels.
 wN Scroll offset of scrollbar in pixels.
 bD Direction.
 #0 Top to bottom.
 #1 Left to right.

#4 Box

bD Entry Flags (bitmapped)
 (0) (1)
 Entry status bit 0 not valid valid
 wN X-offset.
 wN Y-offset.
 wN Width.

wN Height.
bD Border style.
bN Distance of border in pixels.

8 – SYSTEM VARIABLES

8.1 – SYSTEM AREA FOR MSXDOS1

F1C1H, 1 – Countdown timer for the drives. By setting this counter to 0, the drives' motors are stopped.

F1C2H, 1 – Sub-counter of the countdown timer for the drive.

F1C3H, 1 – Countdown counter sub-counter for the drive.

F1C4H, 1 – Number of the currently active drive.

F1C5H, 1 – Track number where the drive head A: is.

F1C6H, 1 – Track number where the head of drive B: is.

F1C7H, 1 – Logic drive active.

F1C8H, 1 – Number of physical drives present.

F1C9H, 24 – Routine for printing on the screen a string ending with "\$". DE – Starting address of the string.

F1CAH~F1E1H – ?

F1E2H, 6 – Routine to abort the program in case of error.

F1E8H, 12 – Calls the address pointed by (HL) in RAM and returns with the DOS Kernel (BDOS) page active.

F1F4H, 3 – Jump to the filename check routine.
HL – Address of the first character of the filename.

F1F7H, 4 – Device name "PRN".

F1FBH, 4 – Device name "LST".

F1FFH, 4 – Device name "NUL".

F203H, 4 – Device name "AUX".

F207H, 4 – Device name "CON".

F20BH, 11 – Reserved for new device or filenames.

F216H, 1 – Current device number:

–5 → PRN; –4 → LST; –3 → NUL; –2 → AUX; –1 → CON.

F217H~F220H – ?

F221H, 2 – FCB date of the current file.

F223H, 2 – FCB time of the current file.

F22BH, 12 – Table containing the number of days in the months.

F22BH [31] January	F231H [31] July
F22CH [28] February	F232H [31] August
F22DH [31] March	F233H [30] September
F22EH [30] April	F234H [31] October
F22FH [31] May	F235H [30] November
F230H [30] June	F236H [31] December

F237H, 4 – Used internally by function 10 of BDOS.

F23BH, 1 – Flag to indicate whether the characters should go to the printer. (0 = no; other value, yes)

F23CH, 2 – Current DTA address.

F23EH, 1 – ?

F23FH, 4 – Current sector number of the disk.

F243H, 2 – Pointer to the DPB address of the current drive.

F245H, 1 – Current relative sector of the directory starting from the first (0).

F246H, 1 – Drive that contains the current sector of the directory
(0 = A ; 1 = B ; etc.)

F247H, 1 – Default drive (0 = A ; 1 = B ; etc)

F248H, 1 – Day

F249H, 1 – Month

F24AH, 1 – Year-1980 (add 1980 to obtain the correct year)

F24BH, 1 – ?

F24CH, 2 – Hour and minutes

F24EH, 1 – Day of the week (0 = Sunday, 1 = Monday, etc.)

8.1.1 – Hooks called by disk routines

F24FH, 3 – Routine that displays the message “Insert disk for drive”.

A – Drive number (41H = A ; 42H = B ; etc)

F252H, 3 – Get the FAT content.

F255H, 3 – Filename repair routine.

F258H, 3 – Directory search routine.

F25BH, 3 – Increment the directory entry (last entry in A).

F25EH, 3 – Routine that calculates the next sector of the directory.

F261H, 3 – Filename repair routine.

F264H, 3 – ‘OPEN’ function routine.

F267H, 3 – Returns the last FAT.

F26AH, 3 – ‘GETDPB’ routine of the disk interface (SFIRST).

F26DH, 3 – Routine function ‘CLOSE’ (writes FAT).

F270H, 3 – Routine function ‘RDABS – 2FH’ (HL = DMA, DE = Sector, B = number of sectors). H.DISKREAD.

F273H, 3 – Error handling routine when accessing the disk.

F276H, 3 – ‘WRABS’ function routine (writes sector).

F279H, 3 – Routine function ‘WRABS’ (HL = DMA, DE = Sector, B = number of sectors).

F27CH, 3 – Multiplication routine (HL = DE * BC).

F27FH, 3 – Division routine (BC = BC/DE; HL = Rest).

F282H, 3 – Returns the absolute cluster.

F285H, 3 – Returns the next absolute cluster.

F288H, 3 – Disk sector reading.

F28BH, 3 – Sector writing on the disk.

F28EH, 3 – Starts the operation of reading blocks (records) of the disk.

F291H, 3 – Finalizes the option of reading blocks (records) of the disk.

F294H, 3 – End of the operation of reading blocks (records) of the disk.

F297H, 3 – Error in the operation with blocks (records).

F29AH, 3 – Starts the operation of writing blocks (records) in the disk.

F29DH, 3 – Finalizes the option of writing blocks (records) in the disk.

F2A0H, 3 – Calculates sequential sectors.

F2A3H, 3 – Gets the number of sectors in a cluster.

F2A6H, 3 – Allocate a sequence of FATs.

F2A9H, 3 – Releases a sequence of FATs.

F2ACH, 3 – ‘BUFIN’ function (adds data to the buffer)

F2AFH, 3 – ‘CONOUT’ function (BDOS 02H).

F2B2H, 3 – Get the time and date of the file.

F2B5H, 3 – February identification routine (28/29 days).

8.1.2 – Other DOS data

F2B8H, 1 – Number of the current directory entry.

F2B9H, 11 – Filename / extension of the current file.

F2C4H, 1 – Byte of file attributes of the last directory entry read.

If bit 7 is set, files with a NOT attribute of 0 can be opened.

This can be done by setting bit 7 of the FCB-drive byte, by calling the BDOS OPEN routine. (FCB+0).

F2C5H~F2CEH – ?

F2CFH, 2 – Time of the current file.

- F2D1H, 2** – Date of the current file.
- F2D3H, 2** – Initial cluster of the current file.
- F2D5H, 4** – Size of the current file.
- F2D9H~F2DBH** – ?
- F2DCH, 1** – Files with attributes other than F2DCH are also accepted.
(F2C4H bit-7 overrides that!)
- F2DDH~F2E0H** – ?
- F2E1H, 1** – Current drive for writing and reading absolute sectors.
- F2E2H~F2FDH** – ?
- F2FEH, 2** – Sub-counter from the countdown timer to the drive.
- F301H, 1** – ?
- F302H, 2** – Pointer to the MSXDOS abort handler routine.
- F304H, 2** – Stores the value of the SP (Stack Pointer) register.
- F306H, 1** – Default drive for MSXDOS (0 = A :, 1 = B :, etc).
- F307H, 2** – Stores the value of the DE register (FCB address).
- F309H, 2** – Used by the DPB for searching (First / Next).
- F30BH, 2** – Current sector of the directory.
- F30DH, 1** – Check flag (0 = Off; other value, on).
- F30EH, 1** – Date format (0- yymmdd; 1- mmdday; 2- ddmyy).
- F30FH, 4** – Area used by Kanji mode.
- F313H, 1** – Contains the version of the ROM of the MSXDOS.
00H = version 1.x; 20H = version 2.0; 21H = 21H = version 2.1; etc.
Obs: The Nextor returns 99H.
- F314H~F322H** – ?
- F323H, 2** – Address of the disk error handler.

F325H, 2 – Address of the handler of the CTRL+C keys.

8.1.3 – Hooks for the ‘COM:’ port

F327H, 5 – Routine ‘AUXINP’ (A = byte read from the AUX device).

F32CH, 5 – ‘AUXOUT’ routine (A = byte to be sent to the AUX device).

F331H, 5 – Routine for manipulating BDOS functions.

8.1.4 – Keyboard

F336H, 1 – Key pressed flag. Contains FFH if any key is pressed and 03H for CTRL+STOP.

F337H, 5 – Contains the ASCII code of the key pressed and 03H for CTRL+STOP pressed together.

8.1.5 – MSXDOS Variables

F338H, 1 – Flag to indicate the presence of an internal clock (0 = no; another value, yes).

F339H, 7 – Routine used by the internal clock.

F340H, 1 – REBOOT

If it is 0, DOS will reset all variables again.

F341H, 1 – RAMAD0

Slot of page 0 of RAM (format equal to RDSLTL – 000CH /BIOS).

F342H, 1 – RAMAD1

Slot of page 1 of RAM (format equal to RDSLTL – 000CH /BIOS).

F343H, 1 – RAMAD2

Slot of page 2 of the RAM (format equal to RDSLTL – 000CH /BIOS).

F344H, 1 – RAMAD3

Slot on page 3 of the RAM (format equal to RDSLTL – 000CH /BIOS).

F345H, 1 – Number of free buffers (025H).

F346H, 1 – Flag to indicate whether the system was booted from MSXDOS on a floppy disk. (0 = no; other value, yes)

F347H, 1 – NMBDRV

Total number of logical drives in the system.

F348H, 1 – MASTER

DOS Kernel slot ID (format equal to RDSLT – 000CH /BIOS).

F349H, 2 – HIMSAV

Pointer to a copy of the FAT of the last connected logical drive (1.5 Kbytes) followed by a copy of the FAT of the next to last connected logical drive (1.5 Kbytes) and so on, up to drive A :. It also indicates the highest memory area available for DOS.

F34BH, 2 – Final address of the MSXDOS Kernel (start for COMMAND.COM). The MSXDOS Kernel start address is stored at 0006H/0007H.

F34DH, 2 – SECBUF

Pointer to a copy of the FAT of the default drive (1.5K).

F34FH, 2 – BUFFER

Pointer to a 512-byte buffer used as Disk BASIC's DTA.

F351H, 2 – DIRBUF

Pointer to a 512-byte buffer used for transferring sectors of the disk (used by DSKI\$ and DSKO\$ of BASIC).

8.1.6 – DPB addresses**F353H, 2 – DPBBASE**

Pointer to the DPB of the current file.

F355H, 16 – DPBLIST

F355H, 2 – DPB address of drive A :.

F357H, 2 – DPB address of drive B :.

F359H, 2 – DPB address of drive C :.

F35BH, 2 – DPB address of drive D :.

F35DH, 2 – DPB address of drive E :.

F35FH, 2 – DPB address of drive F :.

F361H, 2 – DPB address of drive G :.

F363H, 2 – DPB address of drive H :.

8.1.7 – Routines used by MSXDOS

F365H, 3 – Jump from the primary slot reading routine.
(A – Primary slot state)

F368H, 3 – **SETROM**

Jump to the routine that switch DISK-ROM (BDOS) to page 1 (not available from Disk BASIC)

F36BH, 3 – **SETRAM**

Jump to the routine that switch RAM to page 1 (not available from Disk BASIC).

8.1.8 – Inter-slot movement routines

F36EH, 3 – **SLTMOV**

Jump to LDIR from RAM on page 1 (not available from Disk BASIC).

F371H, 3 – **AUXINP**

Jump to the auxiliary device entry routine.
Output: A – Value read (1AH when CTRL+Z).

F374H, 3 – **AUXOUT**

Jump to the auxiliary device exit routine.
Input: A – Amount to send.

F377H, 3 – **BLDCHK**

Jump to the 'BLOAD' command routine. The address pointed to by F378H/F379H is the highest RAM address available for Disk BASIC. Contains JP 0000H under MSXDOS.

F37AH, 3 – **BSVCHK**

Jump to the 'BSAVE' command routine (Contains JP 0000H under MSXDOS). Input: c – Number of the routine to be called.

F37DH, 3 – **ROMBDOS**

Jump to BDOS command handler.

*** See also addresses F85FH to F87EH and FB20H to FB34H.

8.2 – SYSTEM AREA FOR MSXDOS2

8.2.1 – Physical information about disks

F1C1H, 1 – Countdown timer for the drives. By setting this counter to 0, the drive motors are stopped.

F1C2H, 1 – 1st sub-counter of the countdown timer for the drive.

F1C3H, 1 – 2nd sub-counter of the countdown timer for the drive.

F1C4H, 1 – Number of the currently active drive.

F1C5H, 1 – Track number where the drive head A: is.

F1C6H, 1 – Track number where the head of drive B: is.

F1C7H, 1 – Logic drive active.

F1C8H, 1 – Number of physical drives connected.

8.2.2 – Hooks called by disk routines (1)

F1C9H, 24 – Routine for printing on the screen a string ending with “\$”. DE – Starting address of the string.

F1E2H~F1E4H – ?

F1E5H, 3 – Jump to the interrupt handler (only when processing BDOS functions).

F1E8H, 3 – Jump to the BIOS routine ‘RDSL-000CH’ (only when processing BDOS functions).

F1EBH, 3 – Jump to the BIOS routine ‘WRSL-0014H’ (only when processing BDOS functions).

F1EEH, 3 – Jump to the BIOS routine ‘CALSL-001CH’ (only when processing BDOS functions).

F1F1H, 3 – Jump to the BIOS routine ‘ENASLT-0024H’ (only when processing BDOS functions).

F1F4H, 3 – Jump to the BIOS routine ‘CALLF-0030H’ (only when processing BDOS functions).

- F1F7H, 3** – Jump to the routine for switching to “DOS Mode” (pages 0 and 2 for system segments).
- F1FAH, 3** – Jump to the switching routine to “User Mode”.
- F1FDH, 3** – Jump to the routine that selects the DOS Kernel segments on page 1.
- F200H, 3** – Jump to the routine that allocates a segment of 16 Kbytes of RAM.
- F203H, 3** – Jump to the routine that releases a segment of 16 Kbytes of RAM.
- F206H, 3** – Jump to the BIOS routine ‘RDSLT-000CH’.
- F209H, 3** – Jump to the BIOS routine ‘WRSLT-0014H’.
- F20CH, 3** – Jump to the BIOS routine ‘CALSLT-001CH’.
- F20FH, 3** – Jump to the BIOS routine ‘CALLF-0030H’.
- F212H, 3** – Jump to the routine that places a 16 Kbyte segment on the page indicated by HL.
- F215H, 3** – Jump to the routine that reads the page of the current 16 Kbytes segment. HL – Page read.
- F218H, 3** – Jump to the routine that enables the 16 Kbyte segment of the mapped memory on page 0.
- F21BH, 3** – Jump to the routine that reads the current 16 Kbytes segment of the mapped memory on page 0.
- F21EH, 3** – Jump to the routine that enables the 16 Kbyte segment of the mapped memory on page 1.
- F221H, 3** – Jump to the routine that reads the current 16 Kbytes segment of the mapped memory on page 1.
- F224H, 3** – Jump to the routine that enables the 16 Kbyte segment of the mapped memory on page 2.
- F227H, 3** – Jump to the routine that reads the current 16 Kbytes segment of the mapped memory on page 2.

F22AH, 3 – Page 3 does not support segment change.

F22DH, 3 – Jump to the routine that reads the current 16 Kbytes segment of the mapped memory on page 3.

F230H~F23BH – ?

8.2.3 – Logical information about disks

F23CH, 1 – Current logical drive (0 = A:, 1 = B:, etc.).

F23DH, 2 – Current DTA address.

F23FH, 4 – Current sector number for access.

F243H, 2 – DPB address of the current drive.

F245H, 1 – Relative number of the current sector of the directory area.

F246H, 1 – Drive number of the current directory (0 = A :, 1 = B :, etc.).

F247H, 1 – Default drive number (0 = A :, 1 = B :, etc.).

F248H, 3 – +0 = Day / +1 = Month / +2 = Year-1980 (Add 1980 to obtain the correct year)

F24CH, 1 – ?

F24CH, 2 – Hour

F24EH, 1 – Day of the week

8.2.4 – Hooks called by disk routines

F24FH, 3 – H.PROM

Jump to the routine that displays the message “Insert disk for drive”.
A – Drive pain number (41H = A :, 42H = B :, etc)

F252H, 3 – Hook called before the execution of a BDOS function.
Page 0 – Block map (F2D0H). Page 2 – Block map (F2CFH).

F255H, 3 – Hook of the filename repair routine.

F258H, 3 – Hook of the disk BASIC subdirectory manipulation routine.
Used by several other routines.

F25BH, 3 – Hook of the routine that increments the directory entry.
The new entry is stored in AF

F25EH, 3 – Hook of the routine that loads the next sector of the directory.

F261H, 3 – Hook of function 02H of BDOS.

F264H, 3 – OPEN Routine

F267H, 3 – Returns the last FAT

F26AH, 3 – Looking for the first FCB (SFIRST)

F26DH, 3 – Writes the FAT.

F270H, 3 – Hook of the sector direct reading routine (function 2FH of BDOS). HL – DMA, DE – Initial sector, B – Number of sectors.

F273H, 3 – Disk error.

F276H, 3 – Write hook in the subdirectory sector (folder)

F279H, 3 – Hook of the direct sector writing routine (BDOS function 30H). HL – DMA, DE – Initial sector, B – Number of sectors.

F27CH, 3 – Hook of the multiplication routine (HL = DE * BC).

F27FH, 3 – Hook of the division routine (BC = BC/DE; HL = Rest).

F282H~F282H – ?

8.2.5 – MSXDOS2 variables

F2B3H, 2 – User defined TPA address. The initial 32 bytes of the TPA are used for special functions:

Off set	Description
00H~02H	Reserved
03H	Used by VDP speed (bit 3 of F2B6H)
04H~1FH	Reserved
20H	BDOS expansion and interruption routines

F2B5H, 1 – ?

F2B6H, 1 – Byte of flags:

b0~b2 – Reserved

b3 – Fast VDP (0 = yes; 1 = no)

b4 – User TPA address (0 = yes; 1 = no)

b5 – Reset (0 = no; 1 = yes)

b6 – BusReset (0 = yes; 1 = no)

b7 – Reboot (0 = no; 1 = yes)

F2B7H, 1 – Version number (usually 10H = v1.0).

F2B8H, 1 – Number of the current directory entry.

F2B9H~F2BFH – ?

F2C0H, 5 – Second hook of the interrupt routine (used by Disk-ROM).

F2C5H, 2 – Mapping table address.

F2C7H, 1 – Current logical page of the mapper on physical page 0.

F2C8H, 1 – Current logical page of the mapper on physical page 1.

F2C9H, 1 – Current logical page of the mapper on physical page 2.

F2CAH, 1 – Current logical page of the mapper on physical page 3
(cannot be changed).

F2CBH, 1 – Copy of F2C7H during the execution of BDOS routines.

F2CCH, 1 – Copy of F2C8H during the execution of BDOS routines.

F2CDH, 1 – Copy of F2C9H during the execution of BDOS routines.

F2CEH, 1 – Copy of F2CAH during the execution of BDOS routines.

F2CFH, 1 – Number of the last available 16K block of the memory mapper. During the execution of the BDOS routines, the blocks are exchanged on page 2 (buffer segment).

F2D0H, 1 – Number of the last available 16K block of the memory mapper. During the execution of the BDOS routines, the blocks are exchanged on page 0 (code segment).

F2D1H~F2D4H – ?

F2D5H, 5 – Second EXTBIO hook (hook routine FCALL [FFCAH]).

F2DAH, 4 – Address of the second BDOS ROM for handling functions.

F2DEH, 4 – BDOS ROM address for handling functions.

F2E2H~F2E5H – ?

F2E6H, 2 – Buffer used for temporary storage of register IX.

F2E8H, 2 – Buffer used for temporary storage of the SP register.

F2EAH, 1 – Status of the primary slots after the execution of a BDOS function.

F2EBH, 1 – Same as F2EAH, but for secondary slots

F2ECH, 1 – Flag for checking the disk status. (00H = Off, FFH = On).

F2EDH~F2FAH – ?

F2FBH, 2 – Pointer to a temporary buffer when interpreting an error code.

F2FDH, 1 – Drive from which MSXDOS2.SYS should be loaded.
(01H = A :, 02H = B :, etc).

F2FEH, 2 – Address of the top of the DOS buffer stack.

F300H, 1 – Check flag (00H = Off, FFH = On).

F301H~F30CH – ?

F30DH, 1 – Check disk flag (00H = Off, FFH = On).

F30EH~F312H – ?

F313H, 1 – Contains the version of the ROM of the MSXDOS.
00H = version 1.x; 20H = version 2.0; 21H = 21H = version 2.1; etc.
Obs: The Nextor returns 99H.

F314H~F322H – ?

F323H, 2 – DISKVE
Disk error handler address.

F325H, 2 – BREAKV

Address of the CTRL+C key handler.

F327H~F33CH – ?**F33DH, 3 – Jump to the BASIC ‘LEN’ command (random file access).****F341H, 1 – RAMD0**

Slot of page 0 of RAM (format equal to ‘RDSLTL’ – 000CH / Main).

F342H, 1 – RAMD1

Slot of page 1 of RAM (format equal to ‘RDSLTL’ – 000CH / Main).

F343H, 1 – RAAD2

Slot of page 2 of RAM (format equal to ‘RDSLTL’ – 000CH / Main).

F344H, 1 – RAAD3

Slot of page 3 of RAM (format equal to ‘RDSLTL’ – 000CH / Main).

F345H, 1 – ?**F346H, 1 – MSXDOS**

Flag to indicate whether the system was booted from MSXDOS on a floppy disk. (0 = no; other value, yes)

F347H, 1 – ?**F348H, 1 – MASTER**

Primary DOS Kernel slot ID (master). In the case of DOS2 it is the primary interface that contains the DOS2 ROM. The format is the same as RDSLTL – 000CH / BIOS).

8.2.6 – Pointers and buffers (FAT, DTA, FCB, DPB)**F349H, 2 – HIMSAV**

Pointer to a copy of the FAT of the last connected logical drive (1.5 Kbytes) followed by a copy of the FAT of the penultimate connected logical drive (1.5 Kbytes) and so on, up to drive A :. It also indicates the highest area of memory available to the user.

F34BH~F34CH – ?**F34DH, 2 – SECBUF**

Pointer to a copy of the FAT of the default drive (1.5 Kbytes).

F34FH, 2 – BUFFER

Pointer to a 512-byte area used as the DTA of the Disk-BASIC.

F351H, 2 – DIRBUF

Pointer to a 512-byte buffer used for transferring sectors of the disk.

F353H, 2 – FCBBASE

Point to the FCB of the current file.

F355H, 16 – DPBLIST

List of pointers to the DPBs of all eight possible drives, reserving two bytes for each one.

F355H, 2 – Drive A: F35DH, 2 – Drive E:

F357H, 2 – Drive B F35FH, 2 – Drive F:

F359H, 2 – Drive C: F361H, 2 – Drive G:

F35BH, 2 – Drive D: F363H, 2 – Drive H:

F364H~F377H – ?**8.2.7 – System jumps****F378H – BLDCHK+1**

Routine address of the 'BLOAD' command handler.

F37AH, 3 – Secondary jump to the system segment on p. 0.**F37DH – BDOS**

Jump to the BDOS function handler.

*** See also addresses F85FH to F87EH and FB20H to FB34H.

8.3 – INTER-SLOT SUBROUTINES**RDPRIM (F380H)**

Function: Reads a byte from any address in any slot.

Input: A – Primary slot to be read

 D – Current return slot

Output: E – Byte read

Code: F380H RDPRIM: OUT (0A8H), A

 F382H LD E, (HL)

 F383H JR WRPRM1

WRPRIM (F385H)

Function: Writes a byte to any address in any slot.

Input: A – Primary slot to be read

D – Current return slot

E – Byte to be written

Output: None

Code: F385H WRPRIM: OUT (0A8H), A
 F387H LD (HL), E
 F388H WRPRM1: LD A, D
 F389H OUT (0A8H), A

CLPRIM (F38CH)

Function: Calls an address in any slot.

Input: A – Primary slot containing the routine

IX – Address to be called

PUSH AF – Current return slot (in A)

Output: Depends on the routine called

Code: F38CH CLPRIM: OUT (0A8H), A
 F38EH EX AF, AF'
 F38FH CALL CLPRM1
 F392H EX AF, AF'
 F393H POP AF
 F394H OUT (0A8H), A
 F396H EX AF, AF'
 F397H RET
 F398H CLPRM1: JP (IX)

8.4 – USR FUNCTION AND TEXT MODES**USRTAB** (F39AH, 20)

Initial value: FCERR

Content: There are ten system variables of two bytes each that point to the execution address of an assembly routine to be called by the USR function. The first position points to USR0, the second to USR1, and so on. The initial value points to the error generator routine.

LINL40 (F3AEH, 1)

Initial value: 39

Content: Screen width in Screen 0 text mode.

LINL32 (F3AFH, 1)

Initial value: 29

Content: Screen width in Screen 1 text mode.

LINLEN (F3B0H, 1)

Initial value: 39

Content: Current width of the text screen.

CRTCNT (F3B1H, 1)

Initial value: 24

Content: Number of lines in text modes.

CLMSLT (F3B2H, 1)

Initial value: 14

Content: Horizontal location in the case of items divided by commas in the PRINT command.

8.5 – AREA USED BY THE SCREEN

8.5.1 – Screen 0

TXTNAM (F3B3H, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Address in the VRAM of the pattern name table.

TXTCOL (F3B5H, 2) – Variable not used

TXTCGP (F3B7H, 2)

Initial value: 0800H

Content: Address in the VRAM of the character pattern table.

Note: In this variable lies the only bug found on MSX2 computers. When Screen 0 is given the command WIDTH up to 40, the value will be correct. However, if the WIDTH command is 41 to 80, the correct value will be 1000H, but this variable will continue with 0800H value. In this case, when working with an assembly program from BASIC, an ADD HL,HL instruction must be used to correct the value. In the MSX2+ and MSX turbo R models, the correct value for this variable is 0000H, so that the instruction shown does not affect compatibility, despite the fact that this bug does not exist in these models.

TXTATR (F3B9H, 2) – Variable not used

TXTPAT (F3BBH, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Variable not used

8.5.2 – Screen 1

T32NAM (F3BDH, 2)

Initial value: 1800H

Content: Address of the pattern name table.

T32COL (F3BFH, 2)

Initial value: 2000H

Content: Address in the VRAM of the color table.

T32CGP (F3C1H, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Address in VRAM of the pattern table.

T32ATR (F3C3H, 2)

Initial value: 1B00H

Content: Address in VRAM of the table of attributes of the sprites.

T32PAT (F3C5H, 2)

Initial value: 3800H

Content: Address in VRAM of the sprite pattern table.

8.5.3 – Screen 2

GRPNAM (F3C7H, 2)

Initial value: 1800H

Content: Address in the VRAM of the pattern name table.

GRPCOL (F3C9H, 2)

Initial value: 2000H

Content: Address in the VRAM of the color table.

GRPCGP (F3CBH, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Address in the VRAM of the pattern table.

GRPATR (F3CDH, 2)

Initial value: 1B00H

Content: Address in VRAM of the table of attributes of the sprites.

GRPPAT (F3CFH, 2)

Initial value: 3800H

Content: Address in VRAM of the sprite pattern table.

8.5.4 – Screen 3**MLTNAM** (F3D1H, 2)

Initial value: 0800H

Content: Address of the pattern name table.

MLTCOL (F3D3H, 2) – Variable not used.**MLTCGP** (F3D5H, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Address in VRAM of the standards table.

MLTATR (F3D7H, 2)

Initial value: 1B00H

Content: Address in VRAM of the table of attributes of the sprites.

MLTPAT (F3D9H, 2)

Initial value: 3800H

Content: Address in VRAM of the sprite standards table.

8.5.5 – Other Screen Values**CLIKSW** (F3DBH, 1)

Initial value: 1

Content: Turn key click on / off (0 = Off; other value, on). It can be changed by the SCREEN command.

CSRY (F3DCH, 1)

Initial value: 1

Content: Y (vertical) coordinate of the cursor in text modes.

CSRX (F3DDH, 1)

Initial value: 1

Content: X (horizontal) coordinate of the cursor in text modes.

CNSDFG (F3DEH, 1)

Initial value: 0

Content: Turns on / off the display of the function keys (0 = On, other value, off). It can be changed by the KEY ON/OFF command.

8.6 – VDP REGISTERS AREA

RG0SAV (F3DFH, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#0.

RG1SAV (F3E0H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#1.

RG2SAV (F3E1H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#2.

RG3SAV (F3E2H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#3.

RG4SAV (F3E3H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#4.

RG5SAV (F3E4H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#5.

RG6SAV (F3E5H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#6.

RG7SAV (F3E6H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#7.

STATFL (F3E7H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP status register. On MSX2 or upper, stores the contents of the S#0 register.

8.6.1 – Area used for the V9938

RG8SAV (FFE7H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#8.

RG9SAV (FFE8H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#9.

R10SAV (FFE9H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#10.

R11SAV (FFEAH, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#11.

R12SAV (FFEBH, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#12.

R13SAV (FFECH, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#13.

R14SAV (FFEDH, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#14.

R15SAV (FFEEH, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#15.

R16SAV (FFEFH, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#16.

R17SAV (FFF0H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#17.

R18SAV (FFF1H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#18.

R19SAV (FFF2H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#19.

R20SAV (FFF3H, 1)

Content: Copy of the VDP register R#20.

R21SAV (FFF4H, 1)
Content: Copy of the VDP register R#21.

R22SAV (FFF5H, 1)
Content: Copy of the VDP register R#22.

R23SAV (FFF6H, 1)
Content: Copy of the VDP register R#23.

8.6.2 – Area used for the V9958

R25SAV (FFFAH, 1)
Content: Copy of the VDP register R#25 (V9958).

R26SAV (FFFBH, 1)
Content: Copy of the VDP register R#26 (V9958).

R27SAV (FFFCH, 1)
Content: Copy of the VDP register R#27 (V9958).

8.7 – MISCELLANEOUS

TRGFLG (F3E8H, 1)
Initial value: 11 110 001B
Content: Status of the joystick buttons. (0 = pressed, 1 = not pressed).
This variable is constantly updated by the interrupt handler.

FORCLR (F3E9H, 1)
Initial value: 15
Content: Front and character color. It can be changed by the COLOR command.

BAKCLR (F3EAH, 1)
Initial value: 4
Content: Background color. It can be changed by the COLOR command.

BDRCLR (F3EBH, 1)
Initial value: 7
Content: Color of the border. It can be changed by the COLOR command.

MAXUPD (F3ECH, 3)

Initial value: JP 0000H (C3H, 00H, 00H)

Content: Used internally by the CIRCLE command.

MINUPD (F3EFH, 3)

Initial value: JP 0000H (C3H, 00H, 00H)

Content: Used internally by the CIRCLE command.

ATRBYT (F3F2H, 1)

Initial value: 15

Content: Color code used for graphics.

8.8 – AREA USED BY PLAY COMMAND**QUEUES** (F3F3H, 2)

Initial value: QUETAB (F959H)

Content: Pointer to the PLAY command execution queue.

FRCNEW (F3F5H, 1)

Initial value: 255

Content: Used internally by the BASIC interpreter.

MCLTAB (F956H, 2)

Content: Address of the command table to be used by the PLAY and DRAW macro commands.

MCLFLG (F958H, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate which command is being processed (0 = DRAW; not zero, PLAY).

QUETAB (F959H, 24)

Content: This table contains the data for the three musical queues and RS232C queue, with six bytes reserved for each one.

+0: position to place

+1: position to get

+2: return indication

+3: size of the buffer in the queue

+4: address of the buffer in the queue (high)

+5: address of the buffer in the queue (low)

F959H = voz A
 F95FH = voz B
 F965H = voz C
 F96AH = RS232C

QUEBAK (F971H, 4)

Content: Used for replacement characters table of queues

F971H +0 – Voice A
 +1 – Voice B
 +2 – Voice C
 +3 – RS232C (MSX1 only)

PRSCNT (FB35H, 1)

Content: Used internally by the PLAY command to count the number of operands completed. Bit 7 will be turned on after each of the three operands is analyzed.

SAVSP (FB36H, 2)

Content: Saves the value of the SP register before executing the PLAY command.

VOICEN (FB38H, 1)

Content: Number of the voice currently being processed (0, 1 or 2).

SAVVOL (FB39H, 2)

Content: Saves the volume when generating a pause.

MCLPTR (FB3CH, 2)

Content: Address of the operand being analyzed.

QUEUEEN (FB3EH, 1)

Content: Used by the interrupt handler to contain the number of the musical queue that is currently being processed.

MUSICF (FB3FH, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate which musical queues will be used.

PLYCNT (FB40H, 1)

Content: Number of strings stored in the PLAY command queue.

MCLLEN (FB3BH, 1)

Content: Length of the string being analyzed.

8.8.1 – Play statement queues

VOICAQ (F975H, 128)

Initial value: DEFS 128 (00H 00H)

Content: Queue for voice A.

VOICBQ (F9F5H, 128)

Initial value: DEFS 128 (00H 00H)

Content: Queue for voice B.

VOICCQ (FA75H, 128)

Initial value: DEFS 128 (00H 00H)

Content: Queue for voice C.

8.8.2 – Offset for PLAY buffer parameter control

METREX	(+00, 2)	Duration counter
VCXLEN	(+02, 1)	String length
VCXPTR	(+03, 2)	String address
VCXSTP	(+05, 2)	Data address on the stack
QLENGX	(+07, 1)	Size of the musical packet in bytes
NTICSX	(+08, 2)	Music package
TONPRX	(+10, 2)	Tone period
AMPRX	(+12, 1)	Volume and envelope
ENVPRX	(+13, 2)	Envelope period
OCTAVX	(+15, 1)	Octave
NOTELX	(+16, 1)	Tone length
TEMPOX	(+17, 1)	Time
VOLUMX	(+18, 1)	Volume
ENVLPX	(+19, 14)	Envelope waveform
MCLSTX	(+33, 3)	Reserved for the battery
MCLSEX	(+36, 1)	Initialization of the stack
VCBSIZ	(+37, 1)	Size of the parameter buffer

8.8.3 – Data area for the parameter buffer

VCBA (FB41H, 37)

Content: Parameters for voice A.
 +00, 2 – Duration counter
 +02, 1 – String length
 +03, 2 – String address
 +05, 2 – Data address on the stack
 +07, 1 – Music package size
 +08, 7 – Music package
 +15, 1 – Eighth
 +16, 1 – Length
 +17, 1 – Weather
 +18, 1 – Volume
 +19, 2 – Wrap period
 +21, 16 – Stack data space

VCBB (FB66H, 37)

Content: Parameters for voice B.
 (Structure identical to voice A).

VCBC (FB8BH, 37)

Content: Parameters for the C voice.
 (Structure identical to voice A).

8.9 – KEYBOARD AREA

SCNCNT (F3F6H, 1)

Initial value: 1
 Content: Interval for scanning the keys.

REPCNT (F3F7H, 1)

Initial value: 50
 Content: Delay time for the start of the auto-repeat of the keys.

PUTPNT (F3F8H, 2)

Initial value: KEYBUF (FBF0H)
 Content: Points to the write address of the keyboard buffer.

GETPNT (F3FAH, 2)

Initial value: KEYBUF (FBF0H)

Content: Points to the reading address of the keyboard buffer.

8.10 – AREA USED BY CASSETTE**CS1200** (F3FCH, 5)

Initial value: +0 → 53H – first half for bit 0

+1 → 5CH – second half for bit 0

+2 → 26H – first half for bit 1

+3 → 2DH – second half for bit 1

+4 → 0FH – cycle count for short header

[cycles = (0F400H) * 2/256]

Content: Parameters for the 1200 baud cassette.

CS2400 (F401H, 5)

Initial value: +0 → 25H – first half for bit 0

+1 → 2DH – second half for bit 0

+2 → 0EH – first half for bit 1

+3 → 16H – second half for bit 1

+4 → 1FH – count of cycles for short header

[cycles = (0F405H) * 4/256]

Content: Parameters for the cassette for 2400 baud.

LOW (F406H, 2)

Initial value: +0 → 53H – first half for bit 0

+1 → 5CH – second half for bit 0

Content: Width for bit 0 of the current baud rate.

HIGH (F408H, 2)

Initial value +0 → 26H – first half for bit 1

+1 → 2DH – second half for bit 1

Content: Width for bit 1 of the current baud rate.

HEADER (F40AH, 1)

Initial value: 0FH

Content: Count of cycles for current short header.

8.11 – AREA USED BY CIRCLE COMMAND

ASPCT1 (F40BH, 2)

Content: 256 / aspect ratio. Can be changed by SCREEN command for use of the CIRCLE command.

ASPCT2 (F40DH, 2)

Content: 256 * aspect ratio. Can be changed by SCREEN command for use of the CIRCLE command.

ASPECT (F931H, 2)

Initial value: 0

Content: Aspect ratio.

CENCNT (F933H, 2)

Initial value: 0

Content: Count of points of the final angle.

CLINEF (F935H, 1)

Initial value: 0

Content: Flag used to indicate the drawing of a line from the center of the circle. Bit 0 will be turned on if a line is required from the start angle and bit 7 will be turned on if the line is required from the end angle.

CNPNTS (F936H, 2)

Initial value: 0

Content: Number of points within a 45 degree segment of the circumference.

CPLOTF (F938H, 1)

Content: Used internally by the CIRCLE command.

CPCNT (F939H, 2)

Content: Y coordinate within the current 45 degree segment of the circumference.

CPCNT8 (F93BH, 2)

Initial value: 0

Content: Total point count of the current position.

CPCSUM (F93DH, 2)

Initial value: 0

Content: Counter of points for computation.

CSTCNT (F93FH, 2)

Initial value: 0

Content: Count of points of the initial angle of the circumference.

CSCLXY (F941H, 1)

Initial value: 0

Content: Scales between X and Y. Used by the CIRCLE command.

CSAVEA (F942H, 2)

Content: Area reserved for ADVGRP.

CSAVEM (F944H, 1)

Content: Area reserved for ADVGRP.

CXOFF (F945H, 2)

Content: X coordinate from the center of the circle.

CYOFF (F947H, 2)

Content: Y coordinate from the center of the circle.

8.12 – AREA INTERNALLY USED BY BASIC**ENDPRG** (F40FH, 5)

Initial value: ":", 00H; 00H; 00H; 00H.

Content: False end of program line for RESUME and NEXT commands.

ERRFLG (F414H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Area to save the error number.

LPTPOS (F415H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Stores the current position of the printer head.

PRTFLG (F416H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Flag to select output for screen or printer (0 = Screen; other value, printer).

NTMSXP (F417H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Flag to select the type of printer. (0 = Standard MSX printer; other value, non-MSX printer). It can be changed by the SCREEN command.

RAWPRT (F418H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Flag to determine whether the graphic control characters will be modified when sent to the printer (0 = modify; another value, does not modify).

VLZADR (F419H, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Character address for the VAL function.

VLZDAT (F41BH, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Character that should be replaced by 0 with VAL function.

CURLIN (F41CH, 2)

Initial value: FFFFH

Content: Current line number of the BASIC interpreter. The FFFFH value indicates direct mode.

8.12.1 – BASIC text buffers**KBFMIN** (F41EH, 1)

Initial value: ":"

Content: This byte is a fictitious prefix for the tokenized text contained in KBUF.

KBUF (F41FH, 318)

Initial value: 00H, 00H,... 00H

Content: This buffer stores the collected tokenized BASIC line by the interpreter.

BUFMIN (F55DH, 1)

Initial value: ":"

Content: Fictitious prefix for the text contained in BUF. It is used to synchronize the INPUT instruction handler when it starts analyzing the collected text.

BUF (F55EH, 258)

Initial value: 00H, 00H,... 00H

Content: This buffer stores, in ASCII format, the characters collected from the keyboard by the standard INLIN routine.

ENDBUF (F660H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Byte to prevent BUF overflow (F55EH).

8.12.2 – General data

TTYPOS (F661H, 1)

Content: Used by the PRINT command to store the virtual cursor position.

DIMFLG (F662H, 1)

Content: Used internally by the DIM command.

VALTYP (F663H, 1)

Content: Stores the type of variable contained in DAC (F3F6H):
2 = Integer; 3 = String; 4 = Simple precision; 8 = Double prec.

DORES (F664H, 1)

Content: Used internally by the DATA command to keep the text in ASCII format.

DONUM (F665H, 1)

Content: Flag used internally by BASIC.

CONTXT (F666H, 2)

Content: Stores the address of the text used by the CHRGTTR routine.

CONSAV (F668H, 1)

Content: Stores the token of a numeric constant; used by the GHRGTTR routine.

CONTYP (F669H, 1)

Content: Stores the type of a numeric constant found in the BASIC program text. It is used by the prairie CHRGR routine.

CONLO (F66AH, 8)

Content: Stores a numeric constant used by standard routine CHRGR.

MEMSIZ (F672H, 2)

Content: Highest memory address that can be used by BASIC.

STKTOP (F674H, 2)

Content: Address of the top of the Z80 stack. Used internally by BASIC.

TXTTAB (F676H, 2)

Initial value: 8000H

Content: Starting address of the BASIC text area.

TEMPPT (F678H, 2)

Initial value: TEMPST (F67AH)

Content: Address of the next free position in TEMPST.

TEMPST (F67AH, 30)

Initial value: DEFS 30 (00H, 00H)

Content: Buffer used to store string descriptors.

DSCTMP (F698H, 3)

Initial value: 00H, 00H, 00H

Content: Saves the string descriptor during processing.

FRETOP (F69BH, 2)

Initial value: F168H

Content: Address of the next free position in the string area.

TEMP3 (F69DH, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Used internally by the interpreter for temporary storage of multiple routines.

ENDFOR (F6A1H, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Address for the FOR command.

DATLIN (F6A3H, 2)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Line number of the DATA command to use the READ command.

SUBFLG (F6A5H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Flag used to control the processing of indexes when searching for matrix type variables.

FLGINP (F6A6H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Flag used by the INPUT and READ commands (0 = INPUT; another value, READ).

TEMP (F6A7H, 2)

Content: Used internally by the interpreter.

8.12.3 – BASIC lines control at runtime**PTRFLG** (F6A9H, 1)

Content: Used internally by the interpreter to convert line numbers to pointers (0 = Operand not converted; another value, operand converted).

AUTFLG (F6AAH, 1)

Content: Flag for the AUTO command (0 = AUTO command inactive; another value, AUTO command active).

AUTLIN (F6ABH, 2)

Content: Number of the last BASIC line entered.

AUTINC (F6ADH, 2)

Initial value: 10

Content: Increment value for the AUTO function.

SAVTXT (F6AFH, 2)
Content: Stores the current BASIC text address during the execution.

SAVSTK (F6B1H, 2)
Content: Stores the current address of the Z80 stack. Used by the error handler and the RESUME statement.

ERRLIN (F6B3H, 2)
Content: BASIC line number where an error occurred.

DOT (F6B5H, 2)
Content: Last line number during processing. Used internally by the interpreter and the error handler.

ERRTXT (F6B7H, 2)
Content: Address of the BASIC text where an error occurred. Used by the RESUME command.

ONELIN (F6B9H, 2)
Content: Address of the program line that must be executed when an error occurs. Set by the ON ERROR GOTO command.

ONEFLG (F6BBH, 1)
Content: Flag to indicate the execution of an error routine (0 = not executing; another value, routine in execution).

TEMP2 (F6BCH, 2)
Content: Used internally by the interpreter.

OLDLIN (F6BEH, 2)
Content: Stores the last line executed by the program. It is updated by the END and STOP commands to be used by the CONT command.

8.12.4 – BASIC text storage addresses

OLDTXT (F6C0H, 2)
Content: Stores the address of the last instruction in the BASIC text.

VARTAB (F6C2H, 2)
Content: Address of the first byte of the storage area of the BASIC variables.

ARYTAB (F6C4H, 2)

Content: Address of the first byte of the storage area of the BASIC arrays.

STREND (F6C6H, 2)

Content: Address of the first byte after the storage area for arrays, variables or BASIC text.

DATPTR (F6C8H, 2)

Content: Address of the current DATA command to use the READ command.

DEFTBL (F6CAH, 26)

Content: Storage area of the variable type by names in alphabetical order. They can be changed by the command group "DEF xxx".

8.12.5 – Area for user functions

PRMSTK (F6E4H, 2)

Content: Previous definition of the block in the Z80 stack.

PRMLEN (F6E6H, 2)

Content: Length of the current "FN" parameter block in PARM1.

PARM1 (F6E8H, 100)

Content: Buffer for storing the variables of the "FN" function being evaluated.

PRMPRV (F74CH, 2)

Initial value: PRMSTK (F6E4H)

Content: Address of the previous "FN" parameter block.

PRMLN2 (F74EH, 2)

Content: Length of the "FN" parameter block being assembled in PARM2.

PARM2 (F750H, 100)

Content: Buffer used for the variables of the current "FN" function.

PRMFLG (F7B4H, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate when PARM1 is being searched.

ARYTA2 (F7B5H, 2)

Content: Last address to search for a variable.

NOFUNS (F7B7H, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate to the "FN" function the existence of local variables (0 = there are no variables; another value, there are variables).

TEMP9 (F7B8H, 2)

Content: Used internally by the interpreter.

FUNACT (F7BAH, 2)

Content: Number of "FN" functions currently active.

SWPTMP (F7BCH, 8)

Content: Buffer used to contain the first operand of a SWAP command.

TRCFLG (F7C4H, 1)

Content: Flag for the TRACE command (0 = TRACE OFF, another value, TRACE ON).

8.12.6 – Interpreter data area

FNKSTR (F87FH, 160)

Content: Reserved area to store the content of the function keys (10 positions with 16 characters each).

CGPNT (F91FH, 3)

Content: Address of the character font. The first byte is the slot ID and the other two is the address.

NAMBAS (F922H, 2)

Content: Address of the name table in the current text mode.

CGPBAS (F924H, 2)

Content: Address of the pattern generator table in the current text mode.

PATBAS (F926H, 2)

Content: Current address of the sprite generator table.

ATRBAS (F928H, 2)

Content: Current address of the sprites attribute table.

CLOC (F92AH, 2)

Content: Used internally by graphic routines.

CMASK (F92CH, 1)

Content: Used internally by graphic routines.

MINDEL (F92DH, 2)

Content: Used internally by the LINE command.

MAXDEL (F92FH, 2)

Content: Used internally by the LINE command.

8.13 – MATH-PACK AREA

FBUFFR (F7C5H, 43)

Content: Used internally by MATH-PACK.

DECTMP (F7F0H, 2)

Content: Used to transform an integer into a floating point number.

DECTM2 (F7F2H, 2)

Content: Used internally by the division routine.

DECCNT (F7F4H, 1)

Content: Used internally by the division routine.

DAC (F7F6H, 16)

Content: Primary accumulator that contains a number during a mathematical operation.

HOLD8 (F806H, 48)

Initial value: 00H, 00H... 00H

Content: Storage area for decimal multiplication.

HOLD2 (F836H, 8)

Initial value: 00H, 00H... 00H

Content: Used internally by MATH-PACK.

HOLD (F83EH, 8)

Initial value: 00H, 00H... 00H

Content: Used internally by MATH-PACK.

ARG (F847H, 16)

Content: Secondary accumulator that contains the number to be calculated with DAC (F7F6H).

RNDX (F857H, 8)

Content: Stores the last double-precision random number. Used by the RND function.

8.14 – DISK SYSTEM DATA AREA

MAXFIL (F85FH, 1)

Content: Number of existing I/O buffers. It can be changed by the MAXFILES statement.

FILTAB (F860H, 2)

Content: Initial address of the data area of the files.

NULBUF (F862H, 2)

Content: Points to the buffer used by commands SAVE and LOAD.

PTRFIL (F864H, 2)

Content: Address of the data of the currently active file.

RUNFLG (F866H, 0)

Content: Non-zero, if any programs have been loaded and executed. Used by the ", R" operand of the LOAD command.

FILNAM (F866H, 11)

Content: Area for storing a filename.

FILNM2 (F871H, 11)

Content: Area for storing a filename to be compared with FILNAM.

NLONLY (F87CH, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate whether a program is being loaded or not (0 = program is not being loaded; another value, program is being loaded).

SAVEND (F87DH, 2)

Content: Used by the BSAVE command to contain the final address of the assembly program to be saved.

HOKVLD (FB20H, 1)

Initial value: 01H

Content: Bit 0 of this byte indicates the presence of an extended BIOS. (0 = No Extended BIOS, 1 = There is at least one BIOS that can be called at address 0FFCAh (EXTBIO)).

DRVINV (FB21H, 9)

Initial value: variable

Content: Slot ID and num of drives connected to the disk interfaces.

DRVINV +0 = Number of drives connected to the primary disk interface.

+1 = Master disk interface slot ID.

+2 = Number of units connected to the master disk interface.

+3 = 2nd disk interface slot ID.

+4 = Number of units connected to the 2nd disk interface.

+5 = 3rd disk interface slot ID.

+6 = Number of units connected to the 3rd disk interface.

+7 = Slot ID of the 4th disk interface.

+8 = Number of units connected to the 4th disk interface.

DRVINT (FB29H, 12)

Initial value: variable

Content: Slot ID and address of each disk interface interrupt handler (3*4 bytes).

DRVINT+0 = slot ID of each interrupt handler on the main interface.

- +1, +2 = Address of the interrupt handler of the main interface.
- +3 = Slot ID of each interrupt handler on the 2nd interface.
- +4, +5 = 2nd interface interrupt handler address.
- +6 = Slot ID of each interrupt handler on the 3rd interface.
- +7, +8 = 3rd interface interrupt handler address.
- +9 = Slot ID of each interrupt handler on the 4rd interface.
- +10 = 4th interface interrupt handler address.

8.15 – AREA USED BY PAINT COMMAND

LOHMSK (F949H, 1)

Initial value: 0

Content: Leftmost position of the LH tour.

LOHDIR (F94AH, 1)

Initial value: 0

Content: Painting direction required by the LH tour.

LOHADR (F94BH, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Leftmost position of the LH tour.

LOHCNT (F94DH, 2)

Initial value: 0

Content: Size of the LH tour.

SKPCNT (F94FH, 2)

Initial value: 0

Content: Hop counter returned by SCANR (012CH).

MOVCNT (F951H, 2)

Initial value: 0

Content: Movement counter returned by SCANR (012CH).

PDIREC (F953H, 1)

Content: Painting direction: 40H, down; C0H, upward; 00H, finish.

LFPROG (F954H, 1)

Content: Flag used by the PAINT command to indicate whether there was progress to the left (0 = there was no progress; another value, there was progress).

RTPROG (F955H, 1)

Content: Flag used by the PAINT command to indicate whether there has been progress on the right (0 = there was no progress; another value, there was progress).

8.16 – ADDED AREA FOR MSX2**DPPAGE** (FAF5H, 1)

Initial value: 0

Content: Video page that is currently being displayed.

ACPAGE (FAF6H, 1)

Initial value: 0

Content: Active page for receiving commands.

AVCSAV (FAF7H, 1)

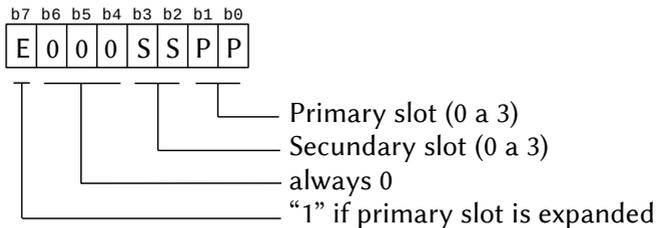
Initial value: 0

Content: Used by the AV control port.

EXBRSA (FAF8H, 1)

Initial value: 10 000 111B

Content: Sub-ROM slot, in the format below:

**CHRCNT** (FAF9H, 1)

Initial value: 0

Content: Character counter in the buffer. Used for Roman-Kana transition (0, 1 or 2).

ROME (FAFAH, 2)

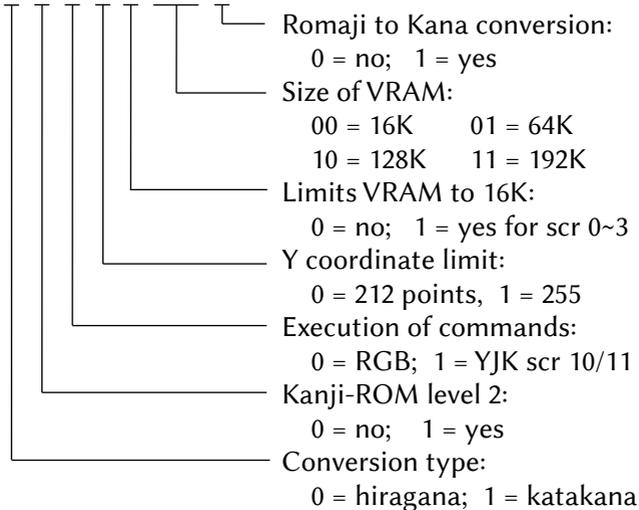
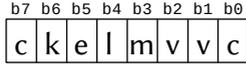
Initial value: 0

Content: Stores the character of the buffer for the Roman-Kana transition (Japanese version only).

MODE (FAFCH, 1)

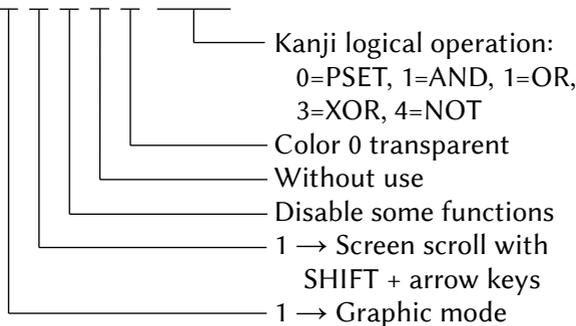
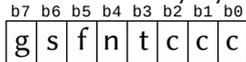
Initial value: 1000 1001B

Content: VRAM size and mode flag:

**NORUSE** (FAFDH, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Used internally by the Kanji-driver.



XSAVE (FAFEH, 2)

Initial value: 00 000 000B, 00 000 000B

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
L	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

YSAVE (FB00H, 2)

Initial value: 00 000 000B, 00 000 000B

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
L	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

L = 1 → lightpen interruption request

0 000 000 = meaningless

XXXXXXXXXX = X coordinate

YYYYYYYYYY = Y coordinate

LOGOPR (FB02H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Logical operation code for the VDP.

8.17 – AREA USED BY RS232C**RSTMP** (FB03H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Temporary storage for the RS232C.

Note: Same address as TOCNT.

TOCNT (FB03H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Counter used by the RS232C interface.

Note: Same address as RSTMP.

RSFCB (FB04H, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: FCB address of RS232C.

RSIQLN (FB06H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Used internally by the RS232C.

MEXBIH (FB07H, 5)

Initial value: C9H, C9H, C9H, C9H, C9H

Content: Used internally by the RS232C.

FB07H +0: RST 030H

+1: Slot ID byte

+2: Address (low)

+3: Address (high)

+4: RET

OLDSTT (FB0CH, 5)

Initial value: C9H, C9H, C9H, C9H, C9H

Content: Used internally by the RS232C.

FB0CH +0: RST 030H

+1: Slot ID byte

+2: Address (low)

+3: Address (high)

+4: RET

OLDINT (FB12H, 5)

Initial value: C9H, C9H, C9H, C9H, C9H

Content: Used internally by the RS232C.

FB12H +0: RST 030H

+1: Slot ID byte

+2: Address (low)

+3: Address (high)

+4: RET

DEVNUM (FB17H, 1)

Content: Offset byte.

DATCNT (FB18H, 3)

Content: FB18H+0: Slot ID

+1: Pointer

+2: Pointer

ERRORS (FB1BH, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: RS232C error code.

FLAGS (FB1CH, 1)

Initial value: 00000011B

Content: Flags used by the RS232C.

ESTBLS (FB1DH, 1)

Initial value: FFH

Content: Boolean bit for use with RS232C.

COMMSK (FB1EH, 1)

Initial value: C1H

Content: RS232C mask.

LSTCOM (FB1FH, 1)

Initial value: E8H

Content: Used internally by the RS232C.

8.18 – GENERAL DATA AREA**ENSTOP** (FBB0H, 1)

Content: Flag to enable a forced output for the interpreter when detecting the CTRL + SHIFT + GRAPH + CODE keys pressed together (0 = Disabled; another value, enabled).

BASROM (FBB1H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Location of BASIC text (0 = RAM; other value, ROM).

LINTTB (FBB2H, 24)

Content: There are 24 flags to indicate whether each line of text screen has advanced to the next line (0 = Advanced; another value, has not advanced).

FSTPOS (FBCAH, 2)

Content: First location of the character collected by the BIOS INLIN (00B1H) routine.

CODSAV (FBCCH, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Character replaced by the cursor in the text screens.

FNKSW1 (FBCDH, 1)

Initial value: 01H

Content: Flag to indicate which function keys are shown when enabled by KEY ON (1 = F1 to F5; 0 = F6 to F10).

FNKFLG (FBCEH, 10)

Content: Flags to enable, inhibit or stop the execution of a line defined by the ON KEY GOSUB command. They are modified by KEY (n) ON / OFF / STOP (0 = KEY (n) OFF / STOP; 1 = KEY (n) ON).

ONGSBF (FBD8H, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate whether any device required a program interruption (0 = normal; another value = Active interrupt).

CLIKFL (FBD9H, 1)

Content: Click flag of the keys. Used by the interrupt handler.

OLDKEY (FBDAH, 11)

Content: Previous state of the keyboard matrix.

NEWKEY (FBE5H, 11)

Content: New state of the keyboard matrix.

KEYBUF (FBF0H, 40)

Content: Circular buffer containing the decoded keyboard chars.

LINWRK (FC18H, 40)

Content: Buffer used by the BIOS to contain a full line of characters on the screen.

PATWRK (FC40H, 8)

Content: Buffer used by the BIOS to contain an 8x8 char pattern.

BOTTOM (FC48H, 2)

Content: Lowest address used by the interpreter, usually 8000H.

HIMEM (FC4AH, 2)

Content: Highest available RAM address for BASIC interpreter. It can be modified by the CLEAR command.

TRPTBL (FC4CH, 78)

Content: This table contains the current state of the interrupting devices. Each device allocates three bytes in the table. The first byte contains the state of the device (bit 0 = On; bit 1 = stopped; bit 2 = Active). The other two bytes contain the address of the program line to be executed in the interruption event.

FC4CH / FC69H	(3 x 10 bytes)	ON KEY GOSUB
FC6AH / FC6CH	(3 x 1 byte)	ON STOP GOSUB
FC6DH / FC6FH	(3 x 1 byte)	ON SPRITE GOSUB
FC70H / FC7EH	(3 x 5 bytes)	ON STRIG GOSUB
FC7FH / FC81H	(3 x 1 byte)	ON INTERVAL GOSUB
FC82H / FC99H	Reserved for expansion	

RTYCNT (FC9AH, 1)

Content: Used internally by BASIC.

INTFLG (FC9BH, 1)

Content: If CTRL+STOP are pressed, this variable is set to 03H and processing is interrupted; if STOP is pressed, the value is 04H.

PADY (FC9CH, 1)

Content: Y coordinate of the paddle.

PADX (FC9DH, 1)

Content: X coordinate of the paddle.

JIFFY (FC9EH, 2)

Content: This variable is continuously incremented by the interrupt handler. Its value can be read or assigned by the TIME function. It is also used internally by the PLAY command.

INTVAL (FCA0H, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Duration of the interval used by ON INTERVAL GOSUB.

INTCNT (FCA2H, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Counter for the ON INTERVAL GOSUB instruction.

LOWLIM (FCA4H, 1)

Initial value: 31H

Content: Minimum duration for the starting bit when reading the cassette.

WINWID (FCA5H, 1)

Initial value: 22H

Content: Duration of the discrimination of the high / low cycle during the reading of the cassette.

GRPHED (FCA6H, 1)

Content: Flag for sending a graphic character.
(0 = normal; 1 = graphic character).

ESCCNT (FCA7H, 1)

Content: Escape codes counting area.

INSFLG (FCA8H, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate the insertion mode (0 = normal; another value, insertion mode)

CSRSW (FCA9H, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate whether the cursor will be shown (0 = no; another value, yes). Can be modified by the LOCATE command.

CSTYLE (FCAAH, 1)

Content: Cursor shape (0 = block; other value, sub-aligned).

CAPST (FCABH, 1)

Content: Status of the CAPS LOCK key (0 = Off; another value, on).

KANAST (FCACH, 1)

Content: Status of the KANA key (0 = Off; another value, on).

KANAMD (FCADH, 1)

Content: Flag used only on Japanese machines.

FLBMEM (FCAEH, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate program loading in BASIC (0 = Is loading; another value, is not).

SCRMOD (FCAFH, 1)

Content: Number of the current screen mode.

OLDSCR (FCB0H, 1)

Content: Screen mode of the last text mode.

CASPRV (FCB1H, 1)

Initial value: 00H

Content: Used by the cassette on MSX1, MSX2 and MSX2+. In the MSX turbo R, it stores the A7H port value.

BDRATR (FCB2H, 1)

Content: Color code of the border. Used by PAINT.

GXPOS (FCB3H, 2)

Content: Graphic X coordinate.

GYPOS (FCB5H, 2)

Content: Graphic Y coordinate.

GRPACX (FCB7H, 2)

Content: Graphic accumulator for the X coordinate.

GRPACY (FCB9H, 2)

Content: Graphic accumulator for the Y coordinate.

DRWFLG (FCBBH, 1)

Content: Flag used by the DRAW command.

DRWSCL (FCBCH, 1)

Content: Scale factor for the DRAW command. A value of 0 indicates that the scale will not be used.

DRWANG (FCBDH, 1)

Content: Angle for the DRAW command.

RUNBNF (FCBEH, 1)

Content: Flag to indicate whether the BLOAD or BSAVE command is running (disk system only).

SAVENT (FCBFH, 2)

Initial value: 0000H

Content: Initial address for the BSAVE and BLOAD commands (disk system only)

8.19 – BIOS EXPANSION ROUTINES**EXTBIO** (FFCAH)

Purpose: To directly expand the system BIOS.

Input: A – Always 0.

D – device identifier (device number 0 is used to get installed extensions).

E – function to be called.

Note: Refer to the “EXTENDED BIOS ROUTINES” section for more details.

DISINT (FFCFH)

Purpose: Called by function 2 of the “broadcast”.

Input: None.

ENAINIT (FFD4H)

Purpose: Called by function 2 of the “broadcast”.

Input: None.

FFD9H~FFE6H → Contains the code for the DISINT and ENAINIT routines.**8.20 – DATA AREA FOR SLOTS AND PAGES****EXPTBL** (FCC1H, 4)

Initial value: Variable.

Content: Table of flags to indicate whether the primary slots are expanded:

FCC1H → primary slot 0 (Main-ROM slot).

FCC2H → primary slot 0 (Main-ROM slot).

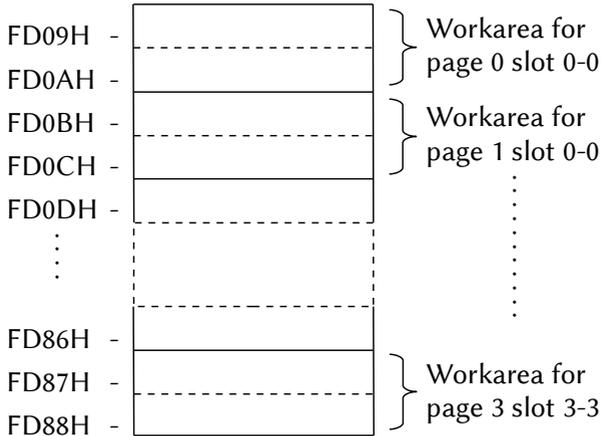
FCC3H → primary slot 0 (Main-ROM slot).

FCC4H → primary slot 0 (Main-ROM slot).

The structure of each flag is described below:

SLTWRK (FD09H, 128)

Content: This table allocates two bytes as a working area for each page of each slot.



PROCNM (FD89H, 16)

Content: Stores the name of an expanded instruction (CALL command) or device expansion (OPEN command). The end of the name is marked with a byte 0.

DEVICE (FD99H, 1)

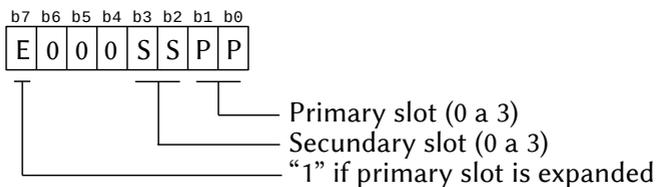
Content: Stores the device ID in a cartridge (0 to 3).

FD9AH~FFC9H → Hook area (listed further ahead)

8.20.1 – Main-ROM slot

MINROM (FFF7H, 1)

Content: Main-ROM slot, in the format below:



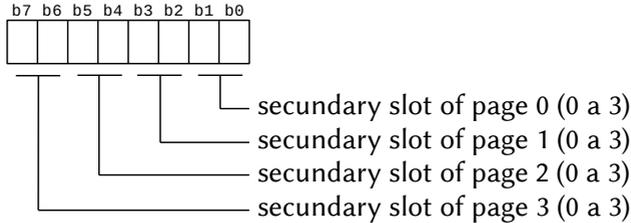
FFF8H~FFF9H → Not used

FFFDH~FFFEH → Not used

8.20.2 – Secondary slot register

SLTSL (FFFFH, 1)

Content: Secondary slot register, in the format below:



8.21 – HOOKS DESCRIPTION

HKEYI (FD9AH)

Called by: Beginning of the interrupt handler (KEYINT, 0038H).

Purpose: Add interrupt handling routines. It can also be used to test when the interruption is caused by a device other than VDP.

HTIMI (FD9FH)

Called by: The interrupt routine (KEYINT, 0038H) immediately after reading the VDP status register 0.

Purpose: Add interrupt handling routines. It can also be used to synchronize the graphical display, adding graphics during Vblank.

HCHPU (FDA4H)

Called by: Beginning of the CHPUT routine (00A2H).

Purpose: Connect other console devices besides the screen. Reg. A contains the character code when this hook is called.

HDSPC (FDA9H)

Called by: Beginning of the DSPSCR routine (with cursor).

Purpose: Connect other console devices besides the screen.

HERAC (FDAEH)

Called by: Beginning of ERASCR routine (deletes cursor).

Purpose: Connect other console devices besides the screen.

HDSPF (FDB3H)

Called by: Beginning of the DSPFNK routine (features function keys).

Purpose: Connect other console devices besides the screen.

HERAF (FDB8H)

Called by: Beginning of routine ERAFNK (clears function keys).

Purpose: Connect other console devices besides the screen.

HTOTE (FDBDH)

Called by: Beginning of TOTEXT routine (forces screen to text mode).

Purpose: Connect other console devices besides the screen.

HCHGE (FDC2H)

Called by: Beginning of the CHGET routine (takes a character).

Purpose: Connect other console devices besides the keyboard.

HINIP (FDC7H)

Called by: Beginning of the INIPAT routine (initialization of the character patterns).

Purpose: To use another character table.

HKEYC (FDCCH)

Called by: Beginning of the routine KEYCOD (keyboard character decoder).

Purpose: To change the keyboard configuration. When this hook is called, register A contains: (line number) × 8 + column number of the key pressed in the keyboard matrix.

HKEYA (FDD1H)

Called by: Beginning of MSXIO NMI (KEY EASY)

Purpose: To change the way a key is interpreted.

HNMI (FDD6H)

Called by: Beginning of the non-masking interrupt handler (NMI, 0066H).

Purpose: NMI is disabled on a standard MSX; therefore, this hook has no use.

HPINL (FDDBH)

Called by: Beginning of PINLIN routine (get a line)

Purpose: To use other input devices and / or methods, such as 80 columns of text or other input devices in addition to the keyboard.

HQINL (FDE0H)

Called by: Beginning QINLIN routine (get a line with "?").

Purpose: To use other input devices and / or methods, such as 80 columns of text or other input devices in addition to the keyboard.

HINLI (FDE5H)

Called by: Beginning of the INLIN routine.

Purpose: To use other input devices and / or methods, such as 80 columns of text or other input devices in addition to the keyboard.

HONGO (FDEAH)

Called by: Beginning of the handler of the ON GOTO and ON GOSUB commands.

Purpose: To divert access to these BASIC instructions.

HDSKO (FDEFH)

Called by: Beginning of BASIC command "DSKO\$".

Purpose: Used by Disk-ROM to write a sector to the disk.

HSETS (FDF4H)

Called by: Beginning of the BASIC "SET" command.

Purpose: On MSX1, the instruction SET has no other effect than calling this hook and returning an error. On MSX2 or newer, the instructions SET SCREEN, SET ADJUST, SET TIME, etc call this hook to be treated.

HNAME (FDF9H)

Called by: Beginning of BASIC command "NAME".

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HKILL (FDFEH)

Called by: Beginning of the BASIC "KILL" command.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HIPL (FE03H)

Called by: Beginning of BASIC command "IPL" (Initial Program Loading).

Purpose: Reserved. There is no known use for this instruction, but this hook can be used to add functions to the IPL instruction.

HCOPY (FE08H)

Called by: Beginning of the BASIC "COPY" command.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HCMD (FE0DH)

Called by: Beginning of BASIC command "CMD" (Expanded Commands).

Purpose: Reserved. There is no known use for this instruction, but this hook can be used to add functions to the CMD instruction.

HDSKF (FE12H)

Called by: Beginning of BASIC command "DSKF".

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HDSKI (FE17H)

Called by: Beginning of BASIC command "DSKI\$".

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HATTR (FE1CH)

Called by: Beginning of the BASIC "ATTR\$" command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HLSET (FE21H)

Called by: Beginning of the BASIC "LSET" command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HRSET (FE26H)

Called by: Beginning of the BASIC "RSET" command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HFIEL (FE2BH)

Called by: Beginning of the FIELD command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HMKI\$ (FE30H)

Called by: Beginning of the MKI\$ command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HMK\$ (FE35H)

Called by: Beginning of the MK\$ command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HMKD\$ (FE3AH)

Called by: Beginning of the MKD\$ command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HCVI (FE3FH)

Called by: Beginning of the CVI command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HCVS (FE44H)

Called by: Beginning of the CVS command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HCVD (FE49H)

Called by: Beginning of the CVD command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HGETP (FE4EH)

Called by: Find FCB (get file pointer).

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HSETP (FE53H)

Called by: Find FCB (set file pointer).

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HNOFO (FE58H)

Called by: OPEN command handler (OPEN without FOR).

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HNULO (FE5DH)

Called by: OPEN command handler (open unused file).

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HNTFL (FE62H)

Called by: Close I/O buffer 0.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HMERG (FE67H)

Called by: Beginning of the MERGE and LOAD commands handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HSAVE (FE6CH)

Called by: Beginning of the SAVE command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HBINS (FE71H)

Called by: Beginning of the SAVE command handler (in binary).

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HBINL (FE76H)

Called by: Beginning of the LOAD command handler (in binary).

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HFILE (FE7BH)

Called by: Beginning of the FILES command handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HDGET (FE80H)

Called by: Beginning of the GET and PUT commands handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HFILO (FE85H)

Called by: Sequential output handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HINDS (FE8AH)

Called by: Sequential input handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HRSFL (FE8FH)

Called by: Handler for pre-selection of the drive.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HSAVD (FE94H)

Called by: Reserve current disk (LOC and LOF commands).

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HLOC (FE99H)

Called by: Beginning of the LOC function handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HLOF (FE9EH)

Called by: Beginning of the LOF function handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HEOF (FEA3H)

Called by: Beginning of the EOF function handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HFPOS (FEA8H)

Called by: Beginning of the FPOS function handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HBAKU (FEADH)

Called by: Beginning of the LINEINPUT # instruction handler.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HPARD (FEB2H)

Called by: Beginning of the routine that analyzes the device name.

Purpose: To expand or add device names.

HNODE (FEB7H)

Called by: Beginning of the NODEVN routine, which is called when no name was found in the device name table.

Purpose: To assign the default device name to another device.

HPOSD (FEBCH)

Called by: Analyze device name (SPCDEV POSDSK).

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HDEVN (FEC1H)

Called by: Process device name.

Purpose: To expand logical device name.

HGEND (FEC6H)

Called by: Beginning of the routine that assigns the device name.

Purpose: To expand logical device name.

HRUNC (FECBH)

Called by: Beginning of the routine that initializes the interpreter variables for the RUN and NEW commands.

Purpose: Allows to assign new functions to the commands.

HCLEA (FED0H)

Called by: Initialize interpreter variables for CLEAR command.

Purpose: Allows to assign new functions to the command or prevent accidental deletion of variables.

HLOPD (FED5H)

Called by: Initialize interpreter variables (general).

Purpose: To use other default values for variables.

HSTKE (FEDAH)

Called by: Beginning of the STKERR (stack error) routine, used by the BASIC CLEAR command.

Purpose: This hook is called after checking the executable ROMs in each slot when starting MSX, just before the system starts the BASIC or DOS environment. Therefore, it allows you to automatically re-run the ROM after installing the disks.

HISFL (FEDFH)

Called by: Beginning of the ISFLIO routine, which tests whether the file should be written or read.

HOUTD (FEE4H)

Called by: Beginning of the OUTDO routine, which sends a character to the screen or to the printer.

HCRDO (FEE9H)

Called by: Beginning of the routine that sends CR + LF to the OUTDO routine.

Purpose: Allows you to use a printer with automatic line feed, for example.

HDSKC (FEEEH)

Called by: Disk attribute entry.

HDOGR (FEF3H)

Called by: Beginning of the internal DOGRPH routine, used by the BASIC graphical instructions (LINE, CIRCLE, etc.)

Purpose: To change or expand the graphical instructions.

HPRGE (FEF8H)

Called by: End of the execution of a BASIC program.

Purpose: Add a routine to be executed after the BASIC program ends.

HERRP (FEFDH)

Called by: Beginning of the routine of presenting error messages.

Purpose: Add or change error messages.

HERRF (FF02H)

Called by: End of the error message routine.

Purpose: Add routine to be executed after the error message is presented.

HREAD (FF07H)

Called by: "Ok" from the main loop (interpreter ready).

Purpose: Add a routine to be executed after the prompt is presented ("Ok").

HMAIN (FF0CH)

Called by: Beginning of the interpreter's BASIC text execution main loop.

Purpose: Add a routine to be executed whenever the BASIC interpreter is accessed.

HDIRD (FF11H)

Called by: Beginning of direct command execution (direct declaration).

Purpose: Add routine or prevent executions.

HFINI (FF16H)

Called by: Beginning of the FININT routine, which starts the interpretation of a BASIC commands.

Purpose: To change the processing of BASIC instructions.

HFINE (FF1BH)

Called by: End of the FININT routine, which initiates the interpretation of a BASIC statement.

HCRUN (FF20H)

Called by: Beginning of the CRUNCH routine (42B9H), which converts a BASIC text from ASCII form to tokenized form.

HCRUS (FF25H)

Called by: Beginning of the CRUSH routine (4353H), which looks for a reserved word in the alphabetical list of the ROM.

HISRE (FF2AH)

Called by: Beginning of the ISRESV routine (437CH), when a reserved word is found by the CRUSH routine.

HNTFN (FF2FH)

Called by: Beginning of the NTFN2 routine (43A4H), when a reserved word is followed by a line number.

HNOTR (FF34H)

Called by: Beginning of the NOTRSV routine (44EBH), when the sequence of characters examined by the CRUNCH routine is not a reserved word.

HSNGF (FF39H)

Called by: Beginning of the FOR command handler.

HNEWS (FF3EH)

Called by: Beginning of the interpreter's NEWSTT routine (4601H), which executes an tokenized BASIC text.

HGONE (FF43H)

Called by: Beginning of the GONE2 routine, used by the jump instructions (GOTO, THEN, etc.).

HCHRG (FF48H)

Called by: Beginning of the CHRGET routine (character entry via the keyboard).

Purpose: Use another keyboard.

HRETU (FF4DH)

Called by: Beginning of the RETURN command handler.

HPTRF (FF52H)

Called by: Beginning of the PRINT command handler.

HCOMP (FF57H)

Called by: Beginning of the internal COMPRT routine (4A94H), used by the PRINT handler.

HFINP (FF5CH)

Called by: Beginning of the routine that clears PRTFLG and PRTFIL to end the PRINT command.

Purpose: Add a routine to be executed after the PRINT command.

HTRMN (FF61H)

Called by: Beginning of the error handler of the READ and INPUT commands.

Purpose: Error processing.

HRME (FF66H)

Called by: Routine FRMEVL (4C64H) – Expression Evaluator.

Purpose: Allows you to add new mathematical functions.

Input: HL = pointer to BASIC text

Output: HL = pointer to the expression found

VALTYP (F663H) = value type of expression

DAC (F7F6H) = value found

HNTPL (FF6BH)

Called by: Routine FRMEVL (4CA6H) – Expression Evaluator.

Purpose: Allows you to add new mathematical functions.

HEVAL (FF70H)

Called by: Factor Evaluator (4DD9H)

Purpose: Allows you to add new mathematical functions.

HOKNO (FF75H)

Called by: Beginning of the BASIC interpreter's transcendental function routine (hook removed on MSX turbo R. It was replaced by HMDIN).

Purpose: Allows you to add new mathematical functions.

HMDIN (FF75H)

Called by: Beginning of the MIDI interface interruption handling routine (MSX turbo R with internal MIDI only).

Purpose: Add or change functionality of the MIDI interface.

HFING (FF7AH)

Called by: Factor evaluator.

HISMI (FF7FH)

Called by: Beginning of the MID\$ command handler.

HWIDT (FF84H)

Called by: Beginning of the WIDTH command handler.

HLIST (FF89H)

Called by: Beginning of the LIST command handler.

HBUFL (FF8EH)

Called by: De-symbolize for LIST command (532DH).

HFRQI (FF93H)

Called by: Convert to integer (543FH). Hook removed on MSX turbo R. Replaced by HMDTM.

HMDTM (FF93H)

Called by: Beginning of the MIDI interface timer manipulation routine (MSX turbo R with internal MIDI only).

Purpose: Add or change functionality of the MIDI interface.

HSCNE (FF98H)

Called by: Beginning of the BASIC interpreter routine SCNEX2 (5514H) (converting a line number to a memory address and vice versa)

HFRET (FF9DH)

Called by: Searches for a free place to store the next descriptor of an alphanumeric variable (string).

HPTRG (FFA2H)

Called by: Beginning of the PTRGET routine (5EA9H) of the BASIC interpreter, which obtains the pointer of a variable.

Purpose: Use another default value for the variables.

HPHYD (FFA7H)

Called by: Beginning of routine PHYDIO (physical disk input-output).

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HFORM (FFACH)

Called by: Beginning of the FORMAT (format disk) routine.

Purpose: To connect disk devices.

HERRO (FFB1H)

Called by: Beginning of the error handler.

Purpose: Error handling by application programs.

HLPTO (FFB6H)

Called by: Beginning of the LPTOUT routine (00A5H).

Purpose: Use other printer models.

HLPTS (FFBBH)

Called by: Beginning of the LPTSTT routine (00A5H).

Purpose: Use other printer models.

HSCRE (FFC0H)

Called by: Beginning of the SCREEN command handler.

Purpose: To expand the SCREEN command.

HPLAY (FFC5H)

Called by: Beginning of the PLAY command handler.

Purpose: To expand the PLAY command.

9 – BIOS ROUTINES

This appendix provides a description of the BIOS routines available to the user.

There are several types of BIOS routines, the ones in the Main-ROM, the ones in the Sub-ROM, the Math-Pack routines and the extension routines accessed by EXTBIO on the workarea, in addition to several others made available by cartridges of expansion and of the BASIC interpreter routines.

The notation for routines is as follows:

LABEL (Routine address / location)

Function: describes the function of the routine.

Input: describes the parameters for calling the routine.

Output: describes the parameters for returning the routine.

Registers: lists the registers modified by the routine.

9.1 – Main-ROM ROUTINES

9.1.1 – RST Routines

CHKRAM (0000H / Main)

Function: Tests RAM and initializes system variables. A call to this routine will cause a software reset.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All

SYNCHR (0008H / Main)

Function: Tests if the character pointed by (HL) is the one specified. If not, it generates "Syntax error"; otherwise it calls CHRGR (0010H).

Input: The character to be tested must be in (HL) and the character for comparison after the RST instruction (online parameter), as shown in the example below:

```
LD HL, CARACT
RST 008H
DEFB 'A'
|
CARACT: DEFB 'B'
```

Output: HL is incremented by 1 and A receives (HL). When the tested character is numeric, the CY flag is set; the end of declaration (00H or 3AH) sets the Z flag.

Registers: AF, HL.

RDSLTL (000CH / Main)

Function: Reads a memory byte in the slot specified in A. Interrupts are disabled during reading.

Input: A –

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
E	0	0	0	S	S	P	P

└──────────┘ Primary slot (0 a 3)
└──────────┘ Secondary slot (0 a 3)
└──────────┘ "1" if primary slot is expanded

HL – memory address to be read.

Output: A – contains the value of the read byte.

Registers: AF, BC, DE.

CHRGTR (0010H / Main)

Function: Get a character (token) from the BASIC text.

Input: HL – address of the character to be read.

Output: HL is incremented by 1 and A receives (HL). When the character is numeric, the CY flag is set; the end of the declaration (00H or 3AH) sets the Z flag.

Registers: AF, HL.

WRSLT (0014H / Main)

Function: Writes a memory byte in the slot specified in A. Interrupts are disabled during writing.

Input: A – slot indicator (same as RDSLTL – 000CH).

HL – address for writing the byte.

E – byte to be written.

Output: None

Registers: AF, BC, D.

OUTDO (0018H / Main)

Function: Sends a byte to the current device.

Input: A – Byte to be sent. If PRTFLG (F416H) is different of 0, the byte will sent to the printer; if PTRFIL (F864H) is

different of 0, the byte will sent to the file specified by PTRFIL.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

CALSLT (001CH)

Function: Calls a routine in any slot (called an inter-slot).

Input: IY – the slot ID must be specified in the highest 8 bits in the same format as RDSLTL (000CH).

IX – address of the routine to be called.

Output: It depends on the called routine.

Registers: It depends on the routine called.

DCOMPR (0020H)

Function: Compare HL with DE.

Input: HL, DE.

Output: Set the Z flag if HL = DE; set the flag CY if HL < DE.

Registers: AF.

ENASLT (0024H)

Function: Enables a page in any slot. Only pages 1 and 2 can be enabled by this routine; 0 and 3 do not. Interruptions are deactivated during enabling.

Input: A – Slot indicator (same as RDSLTL – 000CH).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

GETYPR (0028H / Main)

Function: Gets the type of operand contained in DAC.

Input: None

Output: Flags CY, S, Z and P / V, as shown in the table below:

Integer:	C=1	S=1*	Z=0	P/V=1
----------	-----	------	-----	-------

Simple precision:	C=1	S=0	Z=0	P/V=0*
-------------------	-----	-----	-----	--------

Double precision:	C=0*	S=0	Z=0	P/V=1
-------------------	------	-----	-----	-------

String:	C=1	S=0	Z=1*	P/V=1
---------	-----	-----	------	-------

Note: The types can be recognized by using only by the flags marked with “*”.

Registers: AF.

CALLF (0030H / Main)

Function: Calls a routine in any slot using inline parameters. Very useful for calling routines through system hooks. The call sequence is as follows:

```
RST 030H ; calls CALLF
DEFB n   ; n is slot ID (same as RDSLT)
DEFW nn  ; nn is the address to be called
RET      ; return to the system
```

Input: By the method described.

Output: It depends on the called routine.

Registers: Depends on the called routine (plus AF).

KEYINT (0038H / Main)

Function: Performs the routine of interrupting and scanning the keyboard.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

9.1.2 – Routines for I/O initialization**HOME** (0000H / Main)

Function: Initializes the input and output devices.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INIFNK (003EH / Main)

Function: Initializes the contents of the function keys.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

9.1.3 – Routines for accessing the VDP**DISSCR** (0041H / Main)

Function: Disables the screen presentation.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: AF, BC.

ENASCR (0044H / Main)

Function: Enables the screen presentation.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: AF, BC.

WRTVDP (0047H / Main)

Function: Writes a byte of data to a VDP register.

Input: C – register that will receive the data. It can vary from 0 to 7 for MSX1, from 0 to 23/32 to 46 for MSX2 and from 0 to 23/25 to 27/32 to 46 for MSX2+ or higher.

B – data byte

Output: None.

Registers: AF, BC.

RDVRM (004AH / Main)

Function: Read a VRAM byte. This routine reads only the lowest 14 address bits (16K for MSX1's TMS9918). To access the entire VRAM it is necessary to use the routine NRDVRM (0174H).

Input: HL – VRAM address to be read.

Output: A – byte read.

Registers: AF.

WRTVRM (004DH / Main)

Function: Writes a VRAM byte. This routine writes only the lowest 14 address bits (16K for MSX1's TMS9918). To access the entire VRAM, it is necessary to use the routine NWRVRM (0177H).

Input: HL – VRAM address to be written.

A – Byte to be written.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

SETRD (0050H / Main)

Function: Prepare the VRAM for sequential reading using the VDP address auto-increment function. It is a faster means of reading than using a loop with the RDVRM routine (004AH). This routine accesses only the lowest 14 address bits (16K for MSX1's TMS9918). To access the entire VRAM, it is necessary to use the NSETRD routine (016EH).

Input: HL – Address at VRAM to start reading

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

SETWRT (0053H / Main)

Function: Prepare the VRAM for sequential writing using the VDP address auto-increment function. The characteristics are the same as for SETRD (0050H). To access the entire VRAM it is necessary to use the routine NSTWRT (0171H).

Input: HL – VRAM address to start reading.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

FILVRM (0056H / Main)

Function: Fills an area of the VRAM with a single byte of data. This routine accesses only the lowest 14 address bits (16K for MSX1's TMS9918). To access the entire VRAM, it is necessary to use the BIGFIL routine (016BH).

Input: HL – VRAM address to start writing.

BC – Number of bytes to be written.

A – Byte to be written.

Output: None.

Registers: AF, BC.

LDIRMV (0059H / Main)

Function: Copies a block of data from VRAM to RAM. All 16 address bits are valid.

Input: HL – Source address at VRAM.

DE – Destination address in RAM.

BC – Block size (length).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

LDIRVM (005CH / Main)

Function: Copies a block of data from RAM to VRAM.

Input: HL – Source address in RAM.

DE – Destination address at VRAM.

BC – Block size (length).

Note: All 16 address bits are valid.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

CHGMOD (005FH / Main)

Function: Switches the screen modes. This routine does not initialize the color palette. For this, it is necessary to use the routine CHGMDP (01B5H / Sub-ROM).

Input: A – 0 to 3 for MSX1, 0 to 8 for MSX2 or 0 to 12 for MSX2+ or higher (Note: Mode 9 is only valid for Korean machines).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

CHGCLR (0062H / Main)

Function: Change the colors of the screen.

Input: FORCLR (F3E9H) – Front color

BAKCLR (F3EAH) – Background color

BDRCLR (F3EBH) – Border color

Output: None.

Registers: All.

NMI (0066H / Main)

Function: Executes the NMI (Non-Maskable Interrupt) routine. On a standard MSX machine, it just makes a call to the HNMI hook (FDD6H) and returns without any processing.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

CLRSR (0069H / Main)

Function: Initializes all sprites. The sprite pattern table is cleared (filled with zeros), the sprite numbers are initialized with the series 0 ~ 31 and the color of the sprites is equal to the background color. The vertical location of the sprites is set to 209 (for Screens 0 to 3) or 217 (for Screens 4 to 8 / 10 to 12).

Input: SCRMOD (FCAFH) – Screen mode.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INITXT (006CH / Main)

Function: Initializes the screen in text mode (Screen 0). The color palette is not initialized. To initialize it, it is necessary to call the routine INIPLT (0141H / Sub-ROM).

Input: TXTNAM (F3B3H) – Name table address
 TXTCGP (F3B7H) – Pattern table address
 LINL40 (F3AEH) – Number of characters per line

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INIT32 (006FH / Main)

Function: Initializes the screen in graphical mode 1 (Screen 1). The color palette is not initialized. To initialize it, it is necessary to call the routine INIPLT (0141H / Sub-ROM).

Input: T32NAM (F3BDH) – Address of the character name table.
 T32COL (F3BFH) – Address of the character color table.
 T32CGP (F3C1H) – Address of the character pattern table.
 T32ATR (F3C3H) – Address of the sprites attribute table.
 T32PAT (F3C5H) – Address of the sprites standards table.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INIGRP (0072H / Main)

Function: Initializes the screen in the high resolution graphic mode of MSX1 (Screen 2). The color palette is not initialized. To initialize it, it is necessary to call the routine INIPLT. (0141H / Sub-ROM).

Input: GRPNAM (F3C7H) – Address of the pattern name table.
 GRPCOL (F3C9H) – Address of the color table.
 GRPCGP (F3CBH) – Address of the pattern generator table.
 GRPATR (F3CDH) – Address of the sprites attribute table.
 GRPPAT (F3CFH) – Address of the sprite standards table.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INIMLT (0075H / Main)

Function: Initializes the screen in the MSX1 multicolor mode (Screen 3). The color palette is not initialized. To initialize it, it is necessary to call the routine INIPLT (0141H / Sub-ROM).

Input: MLTNAM (F3D1H) – Address of the pattern name table.
 MLTCOL (F3D3H) – Address of the color table.
 MLTCGP (F3D5H) – Adr of the pattern generator table.
 MLTATR (F3D7H) – Address of the sprites attribute table.
 MLTPAT (F3D9H) – Address of the sprites standards table.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SETTXT (0078H / Main)

Function: Puts only the VDP in text mode (Screen 0).

Input: Same as INITXT (006CH).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SETT32 (007BH / Main)

Function: Puts only the VDP in graphical mode 1 (Screen 1).

Input: Same as INIT32 (006FH).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SETGRP (007EH / Main)

Function: Puts only the VDP in graphical mode 2 (Screen 2).

Input: Same as INIGRP (0072H).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SETMLT (0081H / Main)

Function: Puts only the VDP in multicolour mode (Screen 3).

Input: Same as INIMLT (0075H).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

CALPAT (0084H / Main)

Function: Returns the address of the sprite pattern generator table.

Input: A – Sprite number.

Output: HL – Address at VRAM.

Registers: AF, DE, HL.

CALATR (0087H / Main)

Function: Returns the address of a sprite's attribute table.

Input: A – Sprite number.

Output: HL – Address at VRAM.

Registers: AF, DE, HL.

GSPSIZ (008AH / Main)

Function: Returns the current size of the sprites.

Input: None.

Output: A – Size of the sprite in bytes. The CY flag is set if the size is 16 x 16 and reset otherwise.

Registers: AF.

GRPPRT (008DH / Main)

Function: Displays a character on a graphic screen.

Input: A – Character ASCII code. When the screen is 5 to 8 or 10 to 12, it is necessary to specify the logical operation code in LOGOPR (FB02H).

Output: None.

Registers: None.

9.1.4 – Routines for access to PSG**GICINI** (0090H / Main)

Function: Initializes the PSG and sets the initial values for the PLAY command.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

WRTPSG (0093H / Main)

Function: Writes a byte of data to a PSG register.

Input: A – PSG registrar number.
E – Byte of data to be written.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

RDPSG (0096H / Main)

Function: Reads the contents of a PSG register.

Input: A – PSG registrar number.

Output: A – Byte read.

Registers: None.

STRTMS (0099H / Main)

Function: Tests whether the PLAY command is being executed. If not, start execution.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

9.1.5 – Routines for accessing keyboard, screen and printer**CHSNS** (009CH / Main)

Function: Checks the keyboard buffer.

Input: None.

Output: If the Z flag is set, the buffer is empty; otherwise, the Z flag will be reset.

Registers: AF.

CHGET (009FH / Main)

Function: Input of a character by the keyboard with waiting.

Input: None.

Output: A – Character ASCII code.

Registers: AF.

CHPUT (00A2H / Main)

Function: Displays a character on the text screen.

Input: A – ASCII code of the character to be displayed.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

LPTOUT (00A5H / Main)

Function: Send a character to the printer.

Input: A – ASCII code of the character to be sent.

Output: If it fails, CY returns set.

Registers: F.

LPTSTT (00A8H / Main)

Function: Tests the status of the printer.

Input: None.

Output: A = 255 (and Z flag = 0) → printer ready.

A = 0 (and Z flag = 1) → printer is not ready.

Registers: AF.

CNVCHR (00A8H / Main)

Function: Tests the graphic header and converts if necessary.

Input: A – ASCII code of the character.

Output: CY = 0 – There is no graphic header.

CY = 1 and Z = 1 – The converted code is placed in A.

CY = 1 and Z = 0 – The unconverted code returns to A.

Registers: AF.

PINLIN (00AEH / Main)

Function: Collect a line of text and store it in a buffer until the RETURN or STOP key is pressed.

Input: None.

Output: HL – initial address of the buffer minus 1.

CY – set if the STOP key was pressed.

Registers: All.

INLIN (00B1H / Main)

Function: Same as PINLIN(00AEH), except that AUTFLG(F6AAH) is set.

Input: None.

Output: HL – initial address of the buffer minus 1.

CY – set if the STOP key was pressed.

Registers: All.

QINLIN (00B4H / Main)

Function: Executes INLIN (00B1H) presenting “?” and a space.

Input: None.

Output: HL – initial address of the buffer minus 1.

CY – set if the STOP key was pressed.

Registers: All.

BREAKX (00B7H / Main)

Function: Tests whether CTRL+STOP are pressed together. During verification, interruptions are disabled.

Input: None.

Output: CY – Set if CTRL+STOP are pressed.

Registers: AF.

BEEP (00C0H / Main)

Function: Generates a beep.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

CLS (00C3H / Main)

Function: Clears the screen.

Input: The Z flag must be set.

Output: None.

Registers: AF, BC, DE.

POSIT (00C6H / Main)

Function: Moves the cursor to a specific coordinate.

Input: H – X coordinate (horizontal)

L – Y coordinate (vertical)

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

FNKSB (00C9H / Main)

Function: Tests whether the commands associated with the function keys are being displayed on the screen by checking the FNKFLG (FBCEH) flag and inverts the display status (if the flag is on, off and if it is off, on).

Input: FNKFLG (FBCEH).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

ERAFNK (00CCH / Main)

Function: Turn off the display of the function keys.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

DSPFNK (00CFH / Main)

Function: Turns on the display of the function keys.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

TOTEXT (00D2H / Main)

Function: Forces the screen to text mode (Screen 0 or 1).

Input: None.

Output: None.

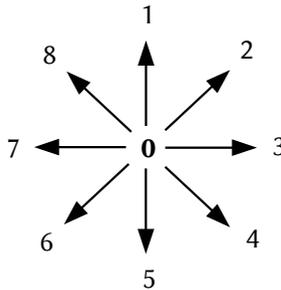
Registers: All.

9.1.6 – I/O access routines for games**GTSTCK** (00D5H / Main)

Function: Returns the state of the joystick or the cursor keys.

Input: A – 0 = Cursor keys.
 1 = joystick on port 1.
 2 = joystick on port 2.

Output: A – direction of the joystick or function keys as shown in the illustration below.



Registers: All.

GTTRIG (00D8H / Main)

Function: Returns the state of the mouse, joystick or keyboard bar buttons.

Input: A – 0 = Space bar.
 1 = joystick on port 1, button A.
 2 = joystick on port 2, button A.
 3 = joystick on port 1, button B.
 4 = joystick on port 2, button B.

Output: A – 0 = tested button is not pressed.
 255 = tested button is pressed.

Registers: AF, BC.

GTPAD (00DBH / Main)

Function Returns the state of a touch pad, trackball or mouse connected to one of the joystick connectors.

Input: A – 0 – Check touch pad on port 1 (255 if connected)
 1 – Returns the X coordinate (horizontal).
 2 – Returns the Y (vertical) coordinate.
 3 – Returns the key state (255 if pressed).
 4 – Check touch pad on port 2 (255 if connected).
 5 – Returns the X (horizontal) coordinate.
 6 – Returns the Y (vertical) coordinate.
 7 – Returns the key state (255 if pressed).
 8 – Check lightpen (255 if connected or touching pad).
 9 – Returns the X (horizontal) coordinate.
 10 – returns the Y (vertical) coordinate.
 11 – returns the key state (255 if pressed).
 12 – check mouse on port 1 (255 if connected).
 13 – returns X coordinate offset (horizontal).
 14 – returns Y coordinate offset (vertical).
 15 – always 0.
 16 – check mouse on port 2 (255 if connected).
 17 – returns X coordinate offset (horizontal).
 18 – returns Y coordinate offset (vertical).
 19 – always 0.
 20 – checks 2nd lightpen (255 if connected or touching the pad).
 21 – returns the X coordinate (horizontal).
 22 – returns the Y (vertical) coordinate.
 23 – returns the key state (255 if pressed).

Output: A – state or value, as described above.

Registers: All.

Note: For function codes 8 to 23, call NEWPAD (01ADH) in SubROM. For the MSX turbo R, the pen functions (8 to 11) have been eliminated.

GTPDL (00DEH / Main)

Function: Returns the values of paddles connected to the joystick connectors.

Input: A – paddle identification (1 to 12).

1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11 – Paddles connected to port 1.

2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12 – Paddles connected to port 2.

Output: A – value read (0 to 255).

Registers: All.

Note: This routine was eliminated in the MSX turbo R.

9.1.7 – I/O access routines for cassette register**TAPION** (00E1H / Main)

Function: Read the tape header after starting the cassette motor.

Input: None.

Output: If it fails, the CY flag returns set.

Registers: All.

Note: This routine was eliminated in the MSX turbo R.

TAPIN (00E4H / Main)

Function: Read data from the tape.

Input: None.

Output: A – byte read.

CY – set if the reading fails.

Registers: All.

Note: This routine was eliminated in the MSX turbo R.

TAPIOF (00E7H / Main)

Function: For reading the tape.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

Note: This routine was eliminated in the MSX turbo R.

TAPOON (00EAH / Main)

Function: Writes the header on the tape after starting the cas motor.

Input: A – 0 = Short header; another value = long header.

Output: If it fails, the CY flag returns set.

Registers: All.

Note: This routine was eliminated in the MSX turbo R.

TAPOUT (00EDH / Main)

Function: Writes data to the tape.

Input: A – Byte to be written.

Output: If it fails, the CY flag returns set.

Registers: All.

Note: This routine was eliminated in the MSX turbo R.

TAPOOF (00F0H / Main)

Function: For writing on the tape.

Input: None.

Output: If it fails, the CY flag returns set.

Registers: All.

Note: This routine was eliminated in the MSX turbo R.

STMOTR (00F3H / Main)

Function: Turns the cassette motor on or off.

Input: A – 0 = power on the motor

1 = power off the motor

255 = Inverts the state of the motor

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

Note: This routine was eliminated in the MSX turbo R.

9.1.8 – Routines for the PSG queue**LFTQ** (00F6H / Main)

Function: Returns the number of free bytes in a PSG musical queue.

Input: A – queue number (0, 1 or 2).

Output: HL – free space left in the queue.

Registers: AF, BC, HL.

PUTQ (00F9H / Main)

Function: Place a byte in one of the PSG's musical queues.

Input: A – queue number (0, 1 or 2).

E – data byte.

Output: Flag Z set if the queue is full.

Registers: AF, BC, HL.

GETVCP (0150H / Main)

Function: Returns the address of byte 2 in the PSG's voice buffer.

Input: A – Voice number (0, 1 or 2)

Output: HL – address in the voice buffer.

Registers: AF, HL.

GETVC2 (0153H / Main)

Function: Returns the address of any bytes in the PSG's voice buffer.

Input: VOICEN (FB38H) – Voice number (0, 1 or 2).

L – Byte number (0 to 36).

Output: HL – Address in the voice buffer.

Registers: AF, HL.

9.1.9 – Routines for MSX1 graphics screens**RIGHTC** (00FCH / Main)

Function: Shifts the current pixel one position to the right.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

LEFTC (00FFH / Main)

Function: Shifts the current pixel one position to the left.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

UPC (0102H / Main)

Function: Shifts the current pixel one position up.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

TUPC (0105H / Main)

Function: Tests the position of the current pixel and, if possible, moves it up one position.

Input: None.

Output: CY = 1 if the pixel could not be moved because it exceeds the upper limit of the screen.

Registers: AF.

DOWNC (0108H / Main)

Function: Shifts the current pixel down one position.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

TDOWNC (010BH / Main)

Function: Tests the position of the current pixel and, if possible, moves it down one position.

Input: None.

Output: CY = 1 if the pixel could not be moved because it exceeds the lower limit of the screen.

Registers: AF.

SCALXY (010EH / Main)

Function: Limits the pixel coords to the visible area of the screen.

Input: BC – X coordinate (horizontal).

DE – Y coordinate (vertical).

Output: BC – X coordinate limited to the border.

DE – Y coordinate limited to the border.

CY = 1 if the coordinates are limited.

Registers: AF.

MAPXYC (0111H / Main)

Function: Converts a pair of graphic coordinates to the physical address of the current pixel (places the "cursor" on the coord).

Input: BC – X coordinate (horizontal).

DE – Y coordinate (vertical).

Output: None.

Registers: AF, D, HL.

FETCHC (0114H / Main)

Function: Returns the physical address of the current pixel.

Input: None.

Output: A ← content of CMASK (F92CH).

HL ← content of CLOC (F92AH).

Registers: A, HL.

STOREC (0117H / Main)

Function: Establishes the physical address of the current pixel.

Input: A is copied to CMASK (F92CH).
HL is copied to CLOC (F92AH).

Output: None.

Registers: None.

SETATR (011AH / Main)

Function: Establishes the color for the SETC (0120H) and NSETCX (0123H) routines.

Input: A – Color code (0 to 15).

Output: CY – Set if the color code is invalid.

Registers: F.

READC (011DH / Main)

Function: Returns the color code of the current pixel.

Input: None.

Output: A – Color code of the current pixel (0 to 15).

Registers: AF, EI.

SETC (0120H / Main)

Function: Establishes the color of the current pixel.

Input: ATRBYT (F3F2H) – Color code (0 to 15), established by SETATR (011AH).

Output: None.

Registers: AF, EI.

NSETCX (0123H / Main)

Function: Sets the color of multiple horizontal pixels starting from the current pixel, to the right.

Input: ATRBYT (F3F2H) – Color code (0 to 15), established by SETATR (011AH).

HL – Number of pixels to color.

Output: None.

Registers: AF, EI.

GTASPC (0126H / Main)

Function: Returns the aspect ratios of the CIRCLE statement.

Input: None.

Output: DE – Contents of ASPCT1 (F40BH).

HL – Contents of ASPCT2 (F40DH).

Registers: DE, HL.

PNTINI (0129H / Main)

Function: Establishes the outline color for the PAINT instruction.

Input: A – outline color code (0 to 15).

Output: CY – 1 if the color code is invalid.

Registers: AF.

SCANR (012CH / Main)

Function: Used by the PAINT instruction handler to scan an area, from left to right, starting from the current pixel until a color code equal to BDRATR (FCB2H) is found or the edge of the screen is reached.

Input: B – 0 = Does not fill the area covered.

255 = Fills the area covered.

DE – number of hops (pixels of the same color ignored).

Output: HL – number of pixels covered.

DE – number of hops remaining.

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, EI.

SCANL (012FH / Main)

Function: Same as SCANR (012CH), except that the route will be from right to left and the area will always be filled.

Input: None.

Output: HL – number of pixels covered.

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, EI.

9.1.10 – Miscellaneous**CHGCAP** (0132H / Main)

Function: Changes the LED status of Caps Lock.

Input: A = 0 turns off the LED; another value, turn on the LED.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

CHGSND (0135H / Main)

Function: Changes the state of the sound-generating 1-bit port.

Input: A = 0 turns the bit off, another value turns the bit on.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

RSLREG (0138H / Main)

Function: Reads the contents of the primary slot register.

Input: None.

Output: A – Value read.

Registers: A.

WSLREG (013BH / Main)

Function: Writes to the primary slot register.

Input: A – Value to be written.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

RDVDP (013EH / Main)

Function: Read the VDP status register.

Input: None.

Output: A – Value read.

Registers: A.

SNSMAT (0141H / Main)

Function: Reads the value of a line from the keyboard matrix.

Input: A – Line to be read.

Output: A – Value read (the bit corresponding to a key pressed is 0).

Registers: AF, C.

ISFLIO (014AH / Main)

Function: Tests whether a device I/O operation is being performed.

Input: None.

Output: A = 0 if the device is active (I/O operation is being performed); another value the device is inactive.

Registers: AF.

OUTDLP (014DH / Main)

Function: Formatted output for the printer. It differs from LPTOUT in the following points:

- If the character sent is a TAB (09H) spaces will be sent until reaching a multiple of 8;
- For non-MSX printers, hiraganas are converted to katakanas and graphic characters are converted to 1-byte characters;
- If there is a failure, an I/O error will occur.

Input: A – Character to be sent.

Output: None.

Registers: F.

KILBUF (0156H / Main)

Function: Clears the keyboard buffer.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: HL.

CALBAS (0159H / Main)

Function: Performs an inter-slot call to any BASIC interpreter routine.

Input: IX – Address to be called.

Output: It depends on the routine called.

Registers: It depends on the routine called.

9.1.11 – Routines for accessing the disk system

PHYDIO (0144H / Main)

Function: Read or write one or more sectors on the specified drive.

Input: CY – 0 = Reading.

1 = writing.

A – drive number (0 = A:, 1 = B:, etc).

B – number of sectors to read or write.

C – Disk formatting ID:

F0H – 63 sectors per track (for HD's)

F8H – 80 tracks, 9 sectors per track, single face.

F9H – 80 tracks, 9 sectors per track, double sided.

FAH – 80 tracks, 8 sectors per track, single face.

FBH – 80 tracks, 8 sectors per track, double sided.

FCH – 40 tracks, 9 sectors per track, single face.

FDH – 40 tracks, 9 sectors per track, double sided.

DE – Number of the first sector to be read or written.

HL – RAM address from which the sectors to be read from the disk will be written or the sectors to be written to the disk will be removed.

Output: CY – set if there was a reading or writing error.

- A – error code if CY = 1:
- 0 – Write-protected.
 - 2 – Not ready.
 - 4 – Data error.
 - 6 – Seek error.
 - 8 – Sector not found.
 - 10 – Writing error.
 - 12 – Invalid parameters.
 - 14 – Insufficient memory.
 - 16 – Undefined error.

B – Number of sectors actually read or written.

Registers: All.

Note: In some HD interfaces, when bit 7 of register C is set, a 23-bit addressing scheme will be used and bits 0-6 of register C must contain bits 23-16 of the number of the sector.

FORMAT (0147H / Main)

Function: Format a floppy disk. When called, a series of questions will be presented that must be answered to start the formatting. There is no standard for these questions; they can be different for each drive interface.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

9.1.12 – Routines added for MSX2

SUBROM (015CH / Main)

Function: Performs an inter-slot call to SubROM.

Input: IX – Address to be called (at the same time put IX on the stack).

Output: It depends on the called routine.

Registers: IY, AF', BC', DE', HL', and the registers modified by the called routine.

EXTROM (015FH / Main)

Function: Performs an inter-slot call to SubROM.

Input: IX – Address to be called.

Output: It depends on the called routine.
 Registers: IY, AF', BC', DE', HL', and the registers modified by the called routine.

CHKSLZ (0162H / Main)

Function: Searches for slots for the SubROM.
 Input: None.
 Output: None.
 Registers: All.

CHKNEW (0165H / Main)

Function: Tests the screen mode.
 Input: None.
 Output: CY = 1 if screen is 5, 6, 7 or 8.
 Registers: AF.

EOL (0168H / Main)

Function: Erase until the end of the line.
 Input: H – X coordinate of the cursor.
 L – Y coordinate of the cursor.
 Output: None.
 Registers: All.

BIGFIL (016BH / Main)

Function: Fills an area of RAM with a single byte of data. The Screens 0 to 3 are not tested and filling can exceed the 16K limit of these screens. See FILVRM (0056H) on Main ROM.
 Input: L – VRAM address to start writing.
 BC – Number of bytes to be written.
 A – Byte to be written.
 Output: None.
 Registers: AF, BC.

NSETRD (016EH / Main)

Function: Prepares VRAM for sequential reading using the VDP address auto-increment function.
 Input: HL – VRAM address from which the data will be read. All bits are valid.
 Output: None.
 Registers: AF.

NSTWRT (0171H / Main)

Function: Prepares VRAM for sequential writing using the VDP address auto-increment function.

Input: HL – VRAM address from which the data will be written.
All bits are valid.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

NRDVRM (0174H / Main)

Function: Read the content of one byte of the VRAM.

Input: HL – VRAM address to be read.

Output: A – byte read.

Registers: AF.

NWRVRM (0177H / Main)

Function: Writes one byte of data to VRAM.

Input: HL – VRAM address to be written.

A – byte to be written.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

9.1.13 – Routines added for MSX2+**RDRES** (017AH / Main)

Function: Returns the reset status.

Input: None.

Output: A – b7 = 0 indicates total reset (by hardware)
b7 = 1 indicates partial reset (by software)

Registers: A.

Note: In the total reset (by hardware) the RAM content is cleared and the MSX logo appears at startup. In the partial reset (by software) the RAM content is not erased (only the desktop is initialized) and the MSX logo does not appear at startup.

WRRES (017DH / Main)

Function: Modifies the reset status.

Input: A – b7 = 0 for total reset (by hardware)
b7 = 1 for partial reset (by software)

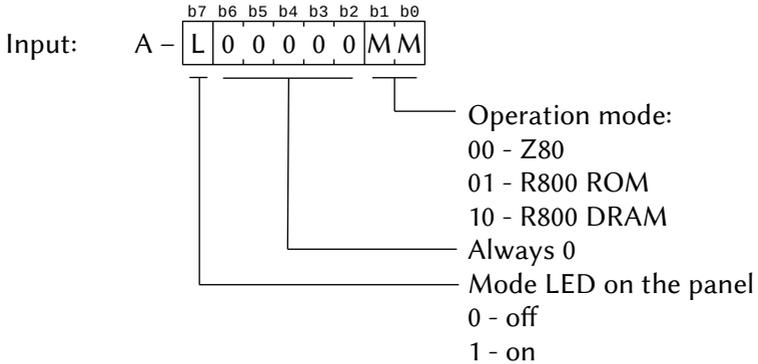
Output: None.

Registers: None.

9.1.14 – Routines added for the MSX turbo R

CHGCPU (0180H / Main)

Function: Change the microprocessor (operating mode).



Output: None.

Registers: AF.

GETCPU (0183H / Main)

Function: Returns in which mode the computer is operating.

Input: None.

Output: A – 0 = Z80; 1 = R800 ROM; 2 = R800 DRAM.

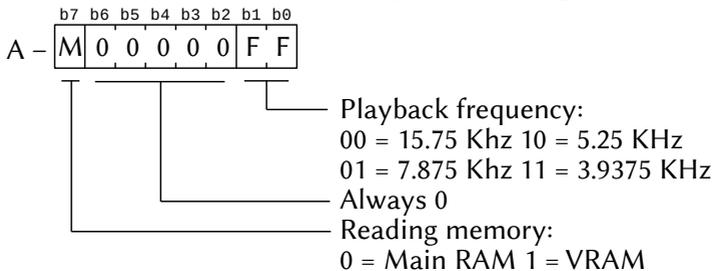
Registers: AF.

PCMPY (0186H / Main)

Function: Play sounds through the PCM.

Input: EHL – Address to start reading.

DBC – Size of the block to be reproduced (length).



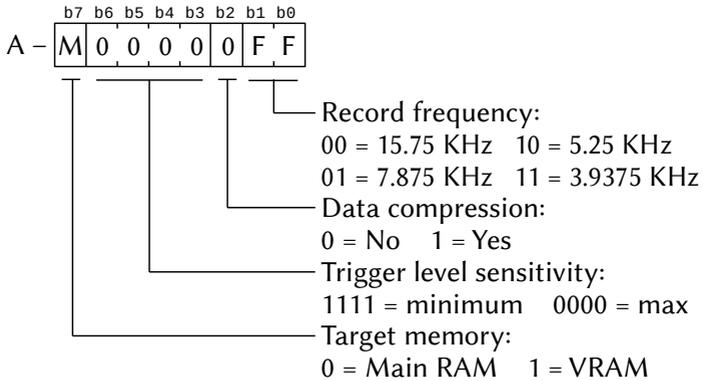
Note: The 15.75 KHz frequency can only be used in the R800 DRAM mode.

Output: CY – 0 → Playback OK.
 1 → Playback error.
 Cause of error:
 A – 0 → error in specifying the frequency.
 1 → interruption by CTRL+STOP.
 EHL – Address as far as it actually reproduced.
 Registers: All.

PCMREC (0189H / Main)

Function: Digitize sounds through the PCM.

Input: EHL – Address to start reading.
 DBC – Size of the block to be digitized (length).



Note: The 15.75 KHz frequency can only be used in R800 DRAM mode.

Output: CY – 0 → Record OK.
 1 → Record error.
 Cause of error:
 A – 0 → error in specifying the frequency.
 1 → interruption by CTRL+STOP.
 EHL – Address as far as it actually recorded.
 Registers: All.

9.1.15 – Inter-slot work area routines

RDPRIM (F380H / Work Area)

Function: Reads a byte from any address in any slot.

Input: A – Primary slot to be read.
 D – Current return slot.

Output: E – Byte read.

WRPRIM (F385H / Work Area)

Function: Writes a byte to any address in any slot.

Input: A – Primary slot to be read.

D – Current return slot.

E – Byte to be written.

Output: None

CLPRIM (F38CH / Work Area)

Function: Calls an address in any slot

Input: A – Primary slot containing the routine

IX – Address to be called

PUSH AF – Current return slot (in A)

Output: Depends of the called routine

9.2 – SubROM ROUTINES**9.2.1 – Routines for BASIC graphical functions****PAINT** (0069H / SubROM) – BASIC Command

Function: Paints an area on a graphic screen.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text
(parameters of the PAINT command).

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

PSET (006DH / SubROM) – BASIC Command

Function: Draws a point on a graphic screen.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text
(parameters of the PSET command).

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

ATRSCN (0071H / SubROM) – BASIC Command

Function: Returns color attributes.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

- GLINE** (0075H / SubROM) – BASIC Command
Function: Draws a line on a graphic screen.
Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.
Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
Registers: All.
- DOBOXF** (0079H / SubROM) – BASIC Command
Function: Draws a filled rectangle on a graphic screen.
Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.
Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
Registers: All.
- DOLINE** (007DH / SubROM) – BASIC Command
Function: Draws a line on a graphic screen.
Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text
(parameters of the LINE command).
Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
Registers: All.
- BOXLIN** (0081H / SubROM) – BASIC Command
Function: Draws a rectangle on a graphic screen.
Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.
Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
Registers: All.
- PUTSPR** (0151H / SubROM) – BASIC Command
Function: Displays a sprite on a graphical screen.
Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.
Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
Registers: All.
- COLOR** (0155H / SubROM) – BASIC command
Function: Change the colors of the screen, sprites or palette.
Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.
Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
Registers: All.

SCREEN (0159H / SubROM) – BASIC command

Function: Switches the screen modes.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

WIDTH (015DH / SubROM) – BASIC Command

Function: Changes the number of characters per line in text mode.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

VDP (0161H / SubROM) – BASIC Command

Function: Writes data to a VDP register.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

VDPF (0165H / SubROM) – BASIC Command

Function: Reads data from a VDP register.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

BASE (0169H / SubROM) – BASIC command

Function: Writes data to the VDP base register.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

BASEF (0169H / SubROM) – BASIC Command

Function: Reads data from the VDP base register.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

9.2.2 – Routines for graphical functions

DOGRPH (0085H / SubROM)

Function: Draws a line on a graphic screen.

Input: BC – Initial X coordinate.

HL – Initial Y coordinate.

GXPOS (FCB3H) – Final X coordinate.

GYPOS (FCB5H) – Y coordinate at the end.

ATRBYT (F3F2H) – Attributes.

LOGOPR (FB02H) – Logical operation code.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

GRPPRT (0089H / SubROM)

Function: Prints a character on a graphical MSX2 screen.

Input: A – Character ASCII code.

ATRBYT (F3F2H) – Attributes.

LOGOPR (FB02H) – Logical operation code.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SCALXY (008DH / SubROM)

Function: Limits the pixel coordinates to the screen visible area.

Input: BC – X coordinate (horizontal).

DE – Y coordinate (vertical).

Output: BC – X coordinate limited to the border.

DE – Y coordinate limited to the border.

CY = 1 if the coordinates was limited.

Registers: AF.

MAPXYC (0091H / SubROM)

Function: Converts a pair of graphic coordinates to the physical address of the current pixel (puts the "cursor" on the coord).

Input: BC – X coordinate (horizontal).

DE – Y coordinate (vertical).

Output: Screen 3: HL, CLOC (F92AH) – Address at VRAM.
A, CMASK (F92CH) – Mask.

Screen 5~12: HL, CLOC (F92AH) – X coordinate.

A, CMASK (F92CH) – Y coordinate.

Registers: F.

READC (0095H / SubROM)

Function: Read the attributes of a pixel.

Input: CLOC (F92AH) – X Coordinate.
CMASK (F92CH) – Y coordinate.

Output: A – Attribute.

Registers: AF.

SETATR (0099H / SubROM)

Function: Defines attribute in ATRBYT (F3F2H).

Input: A – Attribute.

Output: CY = 1 if there is an error in the attribute.

Registers: F.

SETC (009DH / SubROM)

Function: Defines pixel attribute.

Input: CLOC (F92AH) – X Coordinate.
CMASK (F92CH) – Y coordinate.
ATRBYT (F3F2H) – Attribute.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

TRIGHT (00A1H / SubROM)

Function: Moves one pixel to the right.

Input: CLOC (F92AH) – X Coordinate.
CMASK (F92CH) – Y coordinate.

Output: CLOC (F92AH) – New X coordinate.
CMASK (F92CH) – New Y coordinate.
CY = 1 if the edge of the screen is reached.

Registers: AF.

Note: Only for Screen 3.

RIGHTC (00A5H / SubROM)

Function: Moves one pixel to the right.

Input: CLOC (F92AH) – X Coordinate.
CMASK (F92CH) – Y coordinate.

Output: CLOC (F92AH) – New X coordinate.
CMASK (F92CH) – New Y coordinate.

Registers: AF.

Note: Only for Screen 3. This routine is the same as TRIGHT (00A1H) except for the absence of the return of the CY flag.

TLEFTC (00A9H / SubROM)

Function: Moves one pixel to the left.

Input: Same as TRIGHT (00A1H / SubROM).

Output: Same as TRIGHT (00A1H / SubROM).

Registers: AF.

Note: Only for Screen 3.

LEFTC (00ADH / SubROM)

Function: Moves one pixel to the left.

Input: Same as RIGHTC (00A5H / SubROM).

Output: Same as RIGHTC (00A5H / SubROM).

Registers: AF.

Note: Only for Screen 3. This routine is the same as TLEFTC (00A9H) except for the absence of the return of the CY flag.

TDOWNC (00B1H / SubROM)

Function: Moves down one pixel.

Input: Same as TRIGHT (00A1H / SubROM).

Output: Same as TRIGHT (00A1H / SubROM).

Registers: AF.

Note: Only for Screen 3.

DOWNC (00B5H / SubROM)

Function: Moves down one pixel.

Input: Same as RIGHTC (00A5H / SubROM).

Output: Same as RIGHTC (00A5H / SubROM).

Registers: AF.

Note: Only for Screen 3. This routine is the same as TDOWNC (00A9H) except for the absence of the return of the CY flag.

TUPC (00B9H / SubROM)

Function: Moves up one pixel.

Input: Same as TRIGHT (00A1H / SubROM).

Output: Same as TRIGHT (00A1H / SubROM).

Registers: AF.

Note: Only for Screen 3.

UPC (00BDH / SubROM)

Function: Moves up one pixel.

Input: Same as RIGHTC (00A5H / SubROM).

Output: Same as RIGHTC (00A5H / SubROM).

Registers: AF.

Note: Only for Screen 3. This routine is the same as TUPC (00B9H) except for the absence of the CY flag return.

SCANR (00C1H / SubROM)

Function: Scan pixels, from left to right, starting from the current pixel until a color code equal to BDRATR (FCB2H) is found or the edge of the screen is reached.

Input: B - 0 = Does not fill the area covered.

255 = Fills the area covered.

C - counter to the edge.

Output: DE - counter to the edge.

C - modified pixel flag.

Registers: All.

SCANL (00C5H / SubROM)

Function: Scan pixels, from right to left, starting from the current pixel until a color code equal to BDRATR (FCB2H) is found or the edge of the screen is reached.

Input: DE - counter to the edge.

Output: DE - counter to the edge.

C - modified pixel flag.

Registers: All.

NVBXLN (00C9H / SubROM)

Function: Draws a lined rectangle.

Input: BC - Initial X coordinate.

HL - Initial Y coordinate.

GXPOS (FCB3H) - Final X coordinate.

GYPOS (FCB5H) - Y coordinate at the end.

ATRBYT (F3F2H) - Attributes.

LOGOPR (FB02H) - Logic operation code.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

NVBXFL (00CDH / SubROM)

Function: Draws a filled rectangle.

Input: Same as NVBXLN (00C9H / SubROM).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

9.2.3 – Duplicate routines (same as MainROM)**CHGMOD** (00D1H / SubROM)

Function: Switches the screen modes.

Input: A – 0 to 3 for MSX1, 0 to 8 for MSX2 or 0 to 12 for MSX2+ or higher (Mode 9 is valid only for Korean computers).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INITXT (00D5H / SubROM)

Function: Initializes the screen in text mode (Screen 0).

Input: TXTNAM (F3B3H) – Name table address.

TXTCGP (F3B7H) – Pattern table address.

LINL40 (F3AEH) – Number of characters per line.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INIT32 (00D9H / SubROM)

Function: Initializes the screen in Screen 1 mode.

Input: T32NAM (F3BDH) – Characters name table address.

T32COL (F3BFH) – Characters color table address.

T32CGP (F3C1H) – Characters patterns table address.

T32ATR (F3C3H) – Sprites attributes table address.

T32PAT (F3C5H) – Sprites patterns table address.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INIGRP (00DDH / SubROM)

Function: Initializes the screen in Screen 2 mode.

Input: GRPNAM (F3C7H) – Patterns name table address.

GRPCOL (F3C9H) – Color table address.

GRPCGP (F3CBH) – Patterns generator table address.

GRPATR (F3CDH) – Sprites attributes table address.

GRPPAT (F3CFH) – Sprites patterns table address.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INIMLT (00E1H / SubROM)

Function: Initializes the screen in the multicolor mode (Screen 3).

Input: MLTNAM (F3D1H) – Patterns name table address.

MLTCOL (F3D3H) – Color table address.

MLTCGP (F3D5H) – Patterns generator table address.

MLTATR (F3D7H) – Sprites attributes table address.

MLTPAT (F3D9H) – Sprites patterns table address.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SETTXT (00E5H / SubROM)

Function: Puts only the VDP in text mode (Screen 0).

Input: Same as INITXT (00D5H / SubROM).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SETT32 (00E9H / SubROM)

Function: Puts only the VDP in graphical mode 1 (Screen 1).

Input: Same as INIT32 (00D9H / SubROM).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SETGRP (00EDH / SubROM)

Function: Puts only the VDP in graphical mode 2 (Screen 2).

Input: Same as INIGRP (00E1H / SubROM).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SETMLT (00F1H / SubROM)

Function: Puts only the VDP in multicolour mode (Screen 3).

Input: Same as INIMLT (0075H).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

CLRSPR (00F5H / SubROM)

Function: Initializes all sprites. The sprite pattern table is cleared (filled with zeros), the sprite numbers are initialized with the series 0 ~ 31 and the color of the sprites is equal to the background color. The vertical location of the sprites is set to 209 (Screens 0 to 3) or 217 (Screens 4 to 9 or 10 to 12).

Input: SCRMOD (FCAFH) – Screen mode.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

CALPAT (00F9H / SubROM)

Function: Returns the address of the sprite pattern generator table.

Input: A – Sprite number.

Output: HL – Address at VRAM.

Registers: AF, DE, HL.

CALATR (00FDH / SubROM)

Function: Returns the address of a sprite's attribute table.

Input: A – Sprite number.

Output: HL – Address at VRAM.

Registers: AF, DE, HL.

GSPSIZ (0101H / SubROM)

Function: Returns the current size of the sprites.

Input: None.

Output: A – Size of the sprite in bytes. The CY flag is set if the size is 16 x 16 and reset otherwise.

Registers: AF.

9.2.4 – Various routines for MSX2 or higher**GETPAT** (0105H / SubROM)

Function: Returns the pattern of a character.

Input: A – ASCII code of the character.

Output: PATWRK (FC40H) – Character standard.

Registers: All.

WRTVRM (0109H / SubROM)

Function: Writes one byte of data to VRAM.

Input: HL – Address of VRAM.

A – byte to be written.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

RDVRM (010DH / SubROM)

Function: Read the content of one byte of VRAM.

Input: HL – VRAM address to be read.

Output: A – byte read.

Registers: AF.

CHGCLR (0111H / SubROM)

Function: Change the colors of the screen.

Input: FORCLR (F3E9H) – Front color

BAKCLR (F3EAH) – Background color

BDRCLR (F3EBH) – Border color

Output: None.

Registers: All.

CLSSUB (0115H / SubROM)

Function: Clear the screen.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

CLRTXT (0119H / SubROM)

Function: Clear text screen.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

DSPFNK (011DH / SubROM)

Function: Displays the content of the function keys.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

DELLNO (0121H / SubROM)

Function: Deletes a line in text mode.

Input: L – Number of the line to be deleted.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

INSLNO (0125H / SubROM)

Function: Adds a line in text mode.

Input: L – Line number to be added.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

PUTVRM (0129H / SubROM)

Function: Place a character on a text screen.

Input: H – Y coordinate.

L – X coordinate.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

WRTVDP (012DH / SubROM)

Function: Writes a byte of data to a VDP register.

Input: C – number of the registrar that will receive the data.

B – data byte.

Output: None.

Registers: AF, BC.

VDPSTA (0131H / SubROM)

Function: Read the contents of a VDP register.

Input: A – Number of the register to be read (0 to 9).

Output: A – Value read.

Registers: F.

KYKLOK (0135H / SubROM)

Function: Control of the KANA key and the KANA LED on Japanese computers.

Input: ?

Output: ?

Registers: ?

PUTCHR (0139H / SubROM)

Function: Take a key code, convert it to KANA and put it in a buffer (on Japanese computers).

Input: CY = 0 – Make conversion.
CY = 1 – Does not convert.

Output: ?

Registers: All.

SETPAG (013DH / SubROM)

Function: Defines the video pages.

Input: DPPAGE (FAF5H) – Page shown on the screen.
ACPAGE (FAF6H) – Active page for receiving commands.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

NEWPAD (01ADH / SubROM)

Function: Returns the state of the mouse or the lightpen.

Input: A – function code:

0 to 7 – No effect.

8 – Check lightpen (255 if connected/touching screen).

9 – Returns the X (horizontal) coordinate.

10 – Returns the Y (vertical) coordinate.

11 – Returns the button state (255 if pressed).

12 – Check mouse on port 1 (255 if connected).

13 – Returns X coordinate offset (horizontal).

14 – Returns Y coordinate offset (vertical).

15 – Always 0.

16 – Check mouse on port 2 (255 if connected).

17 – Returns X coordinate offset (horizontal).

18 – Returns Y coordinate offset (vertical).

19 – Always 0.

20 – Check 2nd lightpen (255 if connected/touch screen).

21 – Returns the X coordinate (horizontal).

22 – Returns the Y (vertical) coordinate.

23 – Returns the button state (255 if pressed).

Output: A – state or value, as described above.

Registers: All.

CHGMDP (01B5H / SubROM)

Function: Switches the screen modes and initializes the color palette.

Input: A – 0 to 3 for MSX1, 0 to 8 for MSX2 or 0 to 12 for MSX2+ or higher (Mode 9 is valid only for Korean computers).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

KNJPRT (01BDH / SubROM)

Function: Writes a Kanji character on a graphic screen (Screens 5 to 8 or 10 to 12). This routine is present only in machines with Kanji ROM.

Input: BC – Kanji character JIS code.

A – Presentation mode:

0 – All lines on the screen.

1 – Even lines.

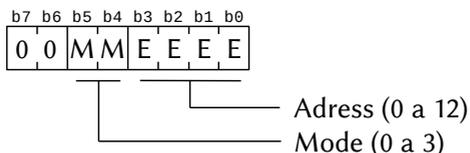
2 – Odd lines.

Registers: AF.

REDCLK (01F5H / SubROM)

Function: Reads a nibble of data from the clock memory (Clock-IC).

Input: C – SRAM address of the clock, as shown below:



Output: A – Nibble read (4 bits lower).

Registers: AF.

WRTCLK (01F9H / SubROM)

Function: Writes a data nibble to the clock's memory

Input: C – SRAM address of the clock (equal to REDCLK).

A – Nibble to be written (4 bits lower).

Output: None.

Registers: F.

9.2.5 – Color palette handling routines

INIPLT (0141H / SubROM)

Function: Initializes the color palette (the current palette will be saved in VRAM).

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: AF, BC, DE.

RSTPLT (0145H / SubROM)

Function: Retrieves the color palette saved in VRAM.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: AF, BC, DE.

GETPLT (0149H / SubROM)

Function: Returns the color levels of the palette.

Input: A – color number in the palette (0 to 15).

Output: B – 4 bits high for the red level.

B – 4 bits low for the blue level.

C – 4 bits low for green level.

Registers: AF, DE.

SETPLT (014DH / SubROM)

Function: Modifies the color levels of the palette.

Input: D – color number in the palette (0 to 15).

A – 4 bits high for the red level.

A – 4 bits low for the blue level.

E – 4 bits low for green level.

Output: None.

Registers: AF.

9.2.6 – Various routines used by BASIC

VPOKE (0171H / SubROM) – BASIC Command

Function: Writes one byte of data to VRAM.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

- VPEEK** (0175H / SubROM) – BASIC Command
 Function: Reads one byte of VRAM data.
 Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.
 Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
 Registers: All.
- SETS** (0179H / SubROM) – BASIC Command
 Function: Executes the parameters of the BEEP, ADJUST, TIME and DATE commands
 Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.
 Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
 Registers: All.
- BEEP** (017DH / SubROM) – BASIC Command
 Function: Generates a beep.
 Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.
 Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
 Registers: All.
- PROMPT** (0181H / SubROM) – BASIC Command
 Function: Displays the BASIC prompt ("Ok" by default).
 Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.
 Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.
 Registers: All.
- SDFSCR** (0185H / SubROM) – BASIC command
 Function: Retrieves the screen parameters of the Clock-IC. When CY = 1, the content of the function keys will be displayed.
 Input: CY = 0 after calling MSXDOS.
 Output: ?
 Registers: All.
- SETSCR** (0189H / SubROM) – BASIC Command
 Function: Retrieves the screen parameters of the Clock-IC and displays a welcome message.
 Input: ?
 Output: ?
 Registers: All.

SCOPY (018DH / SubROM) – BASIC Command

Function: Executes copies between VRAM, BASIC matrices and files on disk.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

GETPUT (01B1H / SubROM) – BASIC command

Function: Executes the parameters of the GET TIME, GET DATE and PUT KANJI commands.

Input: HL – Pointer to the beginning of the BASIC text.

Output: HL – Points to the end of the command parameters.

Registers: All.

9.2.7 – Block transfer routines (bit-blit)**BLTVV** (0191H / SubROM)

Function: Transfer data from one VRAM area to another.

Input: HL – Must contain the value F562H.

SX – (F562H, 2) – X coordinate of the source.

SY – (F564H, 2) – Y coordinate of the source.

DX – (F566H, 2) – X coordinate of destination.

DY – (F568H, 2) – Y coordinate of destination.

NX – (F56AH, 2) – Number of pixels in the X direction.

NY – (F56CH, 2) – Number of pixels in the Y direction.

CDUMMY – (F56EH, 1) – Dummy (no data required).

ARGT – (F56FH, 1) – Selects the direction and the expanded VRAM (equal to R # 45 of the VDP).

LOGOP – (F570H, 1) – Logical operation code (same as VDP codes).

Output: CY = 0.

Registers: All.

BLTVM (0195H / SubROM)

Function: Transfer data from Main RAM to VRAM.

Input: HL – Must contain the value F562H.

DPTR – (F562H, 2) – Source address in RAM.

DUMMY – (F564H, 2) – Dummy (no data required).

DX – (F566H, 2) – X coordinate of destination.
 DY – (F568H, 2) – Y coordinate of destination.
 NX – (F56AH, 2) – Number of pixels in the X direction
 (no data required; already filled in).
 NY – (F56CH, 2) – Number of pixels in the Y direction
 (no data required; already filled in).
 CDUMMY– (F56EH, 1) – Dummy (no data required).
 ARGV – (F56FH, 1) – Selects the direction and the
 expanded VRAM (equal to R # 45 of the VDP).
 LOGOP – (F570H, 1) – Logical operation code (same as
 VDP codes).

Output: CY = 0 – Transfer successful.
 CY = 1 – Transfer error.

Registers: All.

Note: The memory space to be allocated, in bytes, must obey the following formulas:

Screen 6: $(NX * NY) / 4 + 4$

Screens 5 and 7: $(NX * NY) / 2 + 4$

Screens 8, 10, 11 and 12: $(NX * NY) + 4$

BLTMV (0199H / SubROM)

Function: Transfer data from VRAM to Main RAM.

Input: HL – Must contain the value F562H.
 SX – (F562H, 2) – X coordinate of the source.
 SY – (F564H, 2) – Y coordinate of the source.
 DPTR – (F566H, 2) – Destination address in RAM.
 DUMMY – (F568H, 2) – Dummy (no data required).
 NX – (F56AH, 2) – Number of pixels in the X direction.
 NY – (F56CH, 2) – Number of pixels in the Y direction.
 CDUMMY– (F56EH, 1) – Dummy (no data required).
 ARGV – (F56FH, 1) – Selects the direction and the
 expanded VRAM (equal to R # 45 of the VDP).

Output: CY = 0.

Registers: All.

Note: The memory space to be allocated, in bytes, must obey the following formulas:

Screen 6: $(NX * NY) / 4 + 4$

Screens 5 and 7: $(NX * NY) / 2 + 4$

Screens 8, 10, 11 and 12: $(NX * NY) + 4$

BLTVD (019DH / SubROM)

Function: Transfer data from disk to VRAM.

Input: HL – Must contain the value F562H.

FNPTR – (F562H, 2) – Address of the filename.

DUMMY – (F564H, 2) – Dummy (no data required).

DX – (F566H, 2) – X coordinate of destination.

DY – (F568H, 2) – Y coordinate of destination.

NX – (F56AH, 2) – Number of pixels in the X direction
(no data required; already filled in).

NY – (F56CH, 2) – Number of pixels in the Y direction
(no data required; already filled in).

CDUMMY– (F56EH, 1) – Dummy (no data required).

ARGT – (F56FH, 1) – Selects the direction and the
expanded VRAM (same as R # 45 of the VDP).

LOGOP – (F570H, 1) – Logical operation code (same as
VDP codes).

Output: CY = 0 – Transfer successful.

CY = 1 – Error in the transfer or in the parameters.

Registers: All.

BLTDV (01A1H / SubROM)

Function: Transfer data from VRAM to disk.

Input: HL – Must contain the value F562H.

SX – (F562H, 2) – X coordinate of the source.

SY – (F564H, 2) – Y coordinate of the source.

FNPTR – (F566H, 2) – Address of the filename.

DUMMY – (F568H, 2) – Dummy (no data required).

NX – (F56AH, 2) – Number of pixels in the X direction.

NY – (F56CH, 2) – Number of pixels in the Y direction.

CDUMMY– (F56EH, 1) – Dummy (no data required).

Output: CY = 0.

Registers: All.

BLTMD (01A5H / SubROM)

Function: Transfer data from disk to Main RAM.

Input: HL – Must contain the value F562H.

FNPTR – (F562H, 2) – Address of the filename.

DUMMY – (F564H, 2) – Dummy (no data required).

SPTR – (F566H, 2) – Initial data address

EPTR – (F568H, 2) – Final data address

Output: CY = 0

Registers: All.

BLTDM (01A9H / SubROM)

Function: Transfer data from Main RAM to disk.

Input: HL – Must contain the value F562H.

SPTR – (F562H, 2) – Initial data address.

EPTR – (F564H, 2) – Final data address.

FNPTR – (F566H, 2) – Address of the filename.

Output: CY = 0

Registers: All.

9.3 – MATH-PACK ROUTINES

9.3.1 – Floating point mathematical functions

DECSUB	268CH	DAC – DAC – ARG	} (double precision)
DECADD	269AH	DAC – DAC + ARG	
DECMUL	27E6H	DAC – DAC * ARG	
DECDIV	289FH	DAC – DAC / ARG	
COS	2993H	DAC – COS (DAC)	
SIN	29ACH	DAC – SIN (DAC)	
TAN	29FBH	DAC – TAN (DAC)	
ATN	2A14H	DAC – ATN (DAC)	
LOG	2A72H	DAC – LOG (DAC)	
SQR	2AFFH	DAC – SQR (DAC)	
EXP	2B4AH	DAC – EXP (DAC)	} (single-precision)
SGNEXP	37C8H	DAC – DAC ^ ARG	
DBLEXP	37D7H	DAC – DAC ^ ARG		(double-precision)

9.3.2 – Operations with integer numbers

UMULT	314AH	DE – BC * DE	(Unsigned multiplication)
ISUB	3167H	HL – DE – HL	
IADD	3172H	HL – DE + HL	
IMULT	3193H	HL – DE * HL	
IDIV	31E6H	HL – DE / HL	
IMOD	323AH	HL – DE mod HL	
		DE – DE / HL	
INTEXP	383FH	DAC – DE ^ HL	

9.3.3 – Special functions

DECNRM	26FAH	Normalises DAC, removing excessive zeros from the mantissa. (Ex. 0.00123 → 0.123E-2).
DECROU	273CH	Rounds DAC
RND	2BDFH	Generates a random number from the number contained in DAC, returning it in DAC.
SIGN	2E71H	A – Sign of DAC.
ABSFN	2E82H	Extracts the absolute value (module) of DAC and stores the result in DAC.
NEG	2E8DH	Inverts the DAC signal.
SGN	2E97H	DAC – Sign of DAC: DAC +2, +3: 0000H = Zero 0001H = Positive FFFFH = Negative
FCOMP	2F21H	Left: CBED Right: DAC single precision
ICOMP	2F4DH	Left: DE Right: HL integer number
XDCOMP	2F5CH	Left: ARG Right: DAC double precision

Results will be in A register. Meanings of A register are:

A = 1	→	left < right
A = 0	→	left = Right
A = -1	→	left > right

9.3.4 – Movement

MAF	2C4DH	ARG ← DAC	} Double precision
MAM	2C50H	ARG ← (HL)	
MOV8DH	2C53H	(DE) ← (HL)	
MFA	2C59H	DAC ← ARG	
MFM	2C5CH	DAC ← (HL)	
MMF	2C67H	(HL) ← DAC	
MOV8HD	2C6AH	(HL) ← (DE)	
XTF	2C6FH	(SP) ↔ DAC	
PHA	2CC7H	ARG ← (SP)	
PHF	2CCCH	DAC ← (SP)	
PPA	2CDCH	(SP) ← ARG	
PPF	2CE1H	(SP) ← DAC	

PUSHF	2EB1H	DAC ← (SP)	} Single precision	
MOVFM	2EBEH	DAC ← (HL)		
MOVFR	2EC1H	DAC ← (CBED)		
MOVRF	2ECCH	(CBED) – DAC		
MOVRMI	2ED6H	(CBED) – (HL)		
MOVRM	2EDFH	(BCDE) – (HL)		
MOVMF	2EE8H	(HL) ← DAC		
MOVE	2EEBH	(HL) ← (DE)		
VMOVAM	2EEFH	ARG ← (HL)		} VALTYP
MOVVFM	2EF2H	(DE) ← (HL)		
VMOVE	2EF3H	(HL) ← (DE)		
VMOVFA	2F05H	DAC ← ARG		
VMOVFM	2F08H	DAC ← (HL)		
VMOVAF	2F0DH	ARG ← DAC		
VMOVMF	2F10H	(HL) ← DAC		

9.3.5 – Conversions

FRCINT	2F8AH	Converts DAC to a 2-byte integer (DAC+2,+3)
FRCSNG	2FB2H	Converts DAC to a single precision real number
FRCDBL	303AH	Converts DAC to a double precision real number
FIXER	30BEH	DAC – SGN(DAC) * INT(ABS(DAC))
FIN	3299H	Stores a string representing the floating-point number in DAC, converting it in real.
Input:		HL ← Starting address of the string
		A ← First character of the string
Output:		DAC ← Real number
		C ← FFH: without decimal point 00H: with decimal point
		B ← Number of digits after the decimal point
		D ← Number of digits
FOUT	3425H	Converts a real number contained in DAC to an unformatted string.
Input:		A – Always 0
		B – Number of digits before the decimal point
		C – Number of digits after the decimal point, including this one.
Output:		HL – Address of the first character of the string.

PUFOUT	(3426H)	<p>Converts a real number contained in DAC to a formatted string.</p> <p>Input: A – Format:</p> <p>bit 7 – 0: unformatted 1: formatted</p> <p>bit 6 – 0: no commas 1: commas every 3 digits.</p> <p>bit 5 – 0: meaningless 1: fill spaces with “*”</p> <p>bit 4 – 0: meaningless 1: add “\$” before number</p> <p>bit 3 – 0: meaningless 1: add “+” for positive numbers</p> <p>bit 2 – 0: meaningless 1: sign after the number</p> <p>bit 1 – 0: not used</p> <p>bit 0 – 0: fixed point 1: floating point</p> <p>B ← Number of digits before decimal point.</p> <p>C ← Number of digits after decimal point, including this one.</p> <p>Output: HL ← Starting address of the string.</p>
FOUTB	(371AH)	<p>Converts an integer contained in DAC to a string expression in binary format.</p> <p>Input: DAC+2, +3 – Integer number. VALTYP – 2.</p> <p>Output: HL – Initial address of the binary string.</p>
FOUTO	(371EH)	<p>Converts an integer contained in DAC to a string expression in octal format.</p> <p>Input: DAC+2, +3 – Integer number. VALTYP – 2.</p> <p>Output: HL – Initial address of the octal string.</p>
FOUTH	(3722H)	<p>Converts an integer contained in DAC to a string expression in hexadecimal format.</p> <p>Input: DAC+2, +3 – Integer number. VALTYP – 2.</p> <p>Output: HL – Initial address of the hexadecimal string.</p>
FIN	3299H	<p>Converts a string representing a real number to BCD format and stores it in DAC.</p> <p>Input: HL – Address of the first character of the string. A – First character of the string.</p>

Output: DAC – Real number in BCD.
 C ← FFH – Without decimal point;
 0 – With decimal point.
 B – Number of digits after the decimal point.
 D – Total number of digits.

9.4 – BASIC INTERPRETER ROUTINES

9.4.1 – Execution routines

READYR (409BH / Main)

Function: Returns to the command level (BASIC hot start).

Input: None

Output: None

CRUNCH (42B2H / Main)

Function: Converts BASIC text from ASCII form to tokenized form.

Input: HL ← ASCII text address to be converted, ending with a 00H byte.

Output: KBUF (F41FH) – Converted BASIC text.

NEWSTT (4601H / Main)

Function: Executes a BASIC text. The text must be in tokenized form.

Input: HL ← pointer to the beginning of the text to be executed.
 The text must be in the form illustrated below:

3AH 94H 00H ...

:	NEW		...
---	-----	--	-----

↑

(HL)

Output: None

CHRGR (4666H / Main) – From 0010H

Function: Extracts a character from the BASIC text, starting with (HL) + 1. Spaces are ignored.

Input: HL ← starting address of the text

Output: HL ← extracted character address

A ← ASCII code of the extracted character

Z = "1" if it is the end of the line (00H or 3AH ":")

CY = "1" if it is a character from 0 to 9

FRMEVL (4C64H / Main)

Function: Evaluates an expression and returns the result.

Input: HL ← start address of the expression in the BASIC text.

Output: HL ← final address of the expression +1.

VALTYP (F663H) ← 2 – Integer variable

4 – Single precision variable

8 – Double precision variable

3 – String variable

DAC (F7F6H) – Result of the evaluated expression.

GETBYT (521CH / Main)

Function: Evaluates an expression and returns a 1-byte result. When the result extrapolates the value of 1 byte, an “Illegal Function Call” error will be generated and the execution will return to the command level.

Input: HL ← starting address of the expression to be evaluated

Output: HL ← final address of the expression +1.

A,E – Evaluation result (A and E contain the same value).

FRMQNT (542FH / Main)

Function: Evaluates an expression and returns a result of 2 bytes (integer). When the result extrapolates the value of 2 bytes, an “Overflow” error will be generated and the execution will return to the command level.

Input: HL ← starting address of the expression to be evaluated

Output: HL ← final address of the expression +1.

DE ← evaluation result

SYNCHR (558CH / Main) – 0008H

Function: Tests if the character pointed by (HL) is the one specified. If not, it generates “Syntax error”; otherwise it calls CHRGR (4666H / Main).

Input: HL ← points to the character to be tested

The character for comparison must be placed after an instruction “RST 0008H” in the form of a line parameter, as shown in the example below:

```
LD HL, CHAR
RST 008H
DEFB 'A'
|
CHAR: DEFB 'B'
```

Output: HL is incremented by one and A receives (HL). When the tested character is numeric, the CY flag is set. The end of the declaration (00H or 3AH “:”) sets the Z flag.

GETYPR (5597H / Main) – 0028H

Function: Gets the type of operand contained in DAC.

Input: None

Output: Flags CY, S, Z and P / V, as shown in the table below:

Integer:	C=1	S=1 *	Z=0	P/V=1
Simple precision:	C=1	S=0	Z=0	P/V=0 *
Double precision:	C=0 *	S=0	Z=0	P/V=1
String:	C=1	S=0	Z=1 *	P/V=1

Note: The types can be recognized verifying only the flags marked with “ * ”.

PTRGET (5EA4H / Main)

Function: Gets the address for storing a variable or matrix. The address is also obtained when the variable has not been assigned. When the value of SUBFLG (F5A5H) is different from 0, the starting address of an array will be obtained; otherwise, the address of the array element will be obtained.

Input: HL ← starting address of the variable name in BASIC text
SUBFLG (F6A5H) – 0: single variable, other value: matrix

Output: HL ← address after the variable name
DE ← address of the content of the variable.

FRESTR (67D0H / Main)

Function: Registers the result of a string obtained by FRMEVL (4C64H) and obtains the respective descriptor. When evaluating a string, this routine is usually combined with FRMEVL as described below:

```
CALL FRMEVL
PUSH HL
CALL FRESTR
EX DE, HL
POP HL
LD A, (DE)
...
```

Input: VALTYP (F663H) – Variable type (must be 3).

DAC (F7F6H) – Pointer to the string descriptor.

Output: HL ← pointer to the string descriptor.

9.4.2 – Command and function routines

Command / Token Address Token Address

function function in the routine table

Command/ Function	Token	Function Token	Table Address	Routine Address
>	EEH	-	Afat	-
=	EFH	-	Afat	-
<	F0H	-	Afat	-
+	F1H	-	Afat	-
-	F2H	-	Afat	-
*	F3H	-	Afat	-
/	F4H	-	Afat	-
^	F5H	-	Afat	-
\$	FCH	-	Afat	-
ABS	06H	FF86H	39E8H	2E82H
AND	F6H	-	Afat	-
ASC	15H	FF95H	3A06H	680BH
ATN	0EH	FF8EH	39F8H	2A14H
ATTR\$	E9H	-	Afat	7C43H
AUTO	A9H	-	3973H	49B5H
BASE	C9H	-	39BEH	7B5AH
BEEP	C0H	-	39ACH	00C0H
BIN\$	1DH	FF9DH	3A16H	6FFFH
BLOAD	CFH	-	39CAH	6EC6H
BSAVE	D0H	-	39CCH	6E92H
CALL	CAH	-	39C0H	55A8H
CDBL	20H	FFA0H	3A1CH	303AH
CHR\$	16H	FF96H	3A08H	681BH
CINT	1EH	FF9EH	3A18H	2F8AH
CIRCLE	BCH	-	39A4H	5B11H
CLEAR	92H	-	3950H	64AFH
CLOAD	9BH	-	3962H	703FH
CLOSE	B4H	-	3994H	6C14H
CLS	9FH	-	396AH	00C3H
CMD	D7H	-	39DAH	7C34H
COLOR	BDH	-	39A6H	7980H
CONT	99H	-	395EH	6424H
COPY	D6H	-	39D8H	7C2FH

COS	0CH	FF8CH	39F4H	2993H
CSAVE	9AH	-	3960H	6FB7H
CSNG	1FH	FF9FH	3A1AH	2FB2H
CSRLIN	E8H	-	Afat	790AH
CVD	2AH	FFAAH	3A30H	7C70H
CVI	28H	FFA8H	3A2CH	7C66H
CVS	29H	FFA9H	3A2EH	7C6BH
DATA	84H	-	3934H	485BH
DEF	97H	-	395AH	501DH
DEFDBL	AEH	-	3988H	4721H
DEFINT	ACH	-	3984H	471BH
DEFSNG	ADH	-	3986H	471EH
DEFSTR	ABH	-	3982H	4718H
DELETE	A8H	-	397CH	53E2H
DIM	86H	-	3938H	5E9FH
DRAW	BEH	-	39A8H	5D6EH
DSKF	26H	FFA6H	3A28H	7C39H
DSKI\$	EAH	-	Afat	7C3EH
DSKO\$	D1H	-	39CEH	7C16H
ELSE	A1H	3AA1H	396EH	485DH
END	81H	-	396EH	63EAH
EOF	2BH	FFABH	3A32H	6D25H
EQV	F9H	-	Afat	-
ERASE	A5H	-	3976H	6477H
ERL	E1H	-	Afat	4E0BH
ERR	E2H	-	Afat	4DFDH
ERROR	A6H	-	3978H	49AAH
EXP	0BH	FF8BH	39F2H	2B4AH
FIELD	B1H	-	398EH	7C52H
FILES	B7H	-	39AAH	6C2FH
FIX	21H	FFA1H	3A1EH	30BEH
FN	DEH	-	Afat	5040H
FOR	82H	-	3920H	4524H
FPOS	27H	FFA7H	3A2AH	6D39H
FRE	0FH	FF8FH	39FAH	69F2H
GET	B2H	-	3990H	775BH
GOSUB	8DH	-	3948H	47B2H
GOTO	89H	-	393EH	47E8H
GO TO	89H	-	393EH	47E8H
HEX\$	1BH	FF9BH	3A12H	65FAH
IF	8BH	-	3942H	49E5H
IMP	FAH	-	3A20H	7940H

INKEY\$	ECH	-	Afat	7347H
INP	10H	FF90H	39FCH	4001H
INPUT	85H	-	3936H	4B6CH
INSTR	E5H	-	39F6H	29FBH
INT	05H	FF85H	39E6H	30CFH
IPL	D5H	-	39D6H	7C2AH
KEY	CCH	-	3964H	786CH
KILL	D4H	-	39D4H	7C25H
LEFT\$	01H	FF81H	39DEH	6861H
LEN	12H	FF92H	3A00H	67FFH
LET	88H	-	393CH	4880H
LFILES	BBH	-	39A2H	6C2AH
LINE	AFH	-	398AH	4B0EH
LIST	93H	-	3952H	522EH
LLIST	9EH	-	3968H	5229H
LOAD	B5H	-	3996H	6B5DH
LOC	2CH	FFACH	3A34H	6D03H
LOCATE	D8H	-	39DCH	7766H
LOF	2DH	FFADH	3A36H	6D14H
LOG	0AH	FF8AH	39F0H	2A72H
LPOS	1CH	FF9CH	3A14H	4FC7H
LPRINT	9DH	-	394CH	4A1DH
LSET	B8H	-	399CH	7C48H
MAX	CDH	-	39C6H	7E4BH
MERGE	B6H	-	3998H	6B5EH
MID\$	03H	FF83H	39E2H	689AH
MKD\$	30H	FFB0H	3A3CH	7C61H
MKI\$	2EH	FFAEH	3A38H	7C57H
MKS\$	2FH	FFAFH	3A3AH	7C5CH
MOD	FBH	-	Afat	-
MOTOR	CEH	-	39C8H	73B7H
NAME	D3H	-	39D2H	7C20H
NEW	94H	-	3954H	6286H
NEXT	83H	-	3932H	6527H
NOT	E0H	-	Afat	-
OCT\$	1AH	FF9AH	3A10H	7C70H
OFF	EBH	-	3A02H	3A02H
ON	95H	-	3956H	48E4H
OPEN	B0H	-	398CH	6AB7H
OR	F7H	-	Afat	-
OUT	9CH	-	3964H	4016H
PAD	25H	FFA5H	3A26H	7969H

PAINT	BFH	-	39AAH	59C5H
PDL	24H	FFA4H	3A24H	795AH
PEEK	17H	FF97H	3A0AH	541CH
PLAY	C1H	-	39AEH	73E5H
POINT	EDH	-	Afat	5803H
POKE	98H	-	395CH	5423H
POS	11H	FF91H	39FEH	4FCCH
PRESET	C3H	-	39B2H	57E5H
PRINT	91H	-	394EH	4A24H
PSET	C2H	-	39B0H	57EAH
PUT	B3H	-	3992H	7758H
READ	87H	-	393AH	4B9FH
REM	8FH	3A8FH	394AH	485DH
RENUM	AAH	-	3980H	5468H
RESTORE	8CH	-	3944H	63C9H
RESUME	A7H	-	397AH	495DH
RETURN	8EH	-	3948H	4821H
RIGHT\$	02H	FF82H	39E0H	6891H
RND	08H	FF88H	39ECH	2BDFH
RSET	B9H	-	399EH	7C4DH
RUN	8AH	-	3940H	479EH
SAVE	BAH	-	39A0H	6BA3H
SCREEN	C5H	-	39B6H	79CCH
SET	D2H	-	39D0H	7C1BH
SGN	04H	FF84H	39E4H	2E97H
SIN	09H	FF89H	39EEH	29ACH
SOUND	C4H	-	39B4H	73CAH
SPACE\$	19H	FF99H	3A0EH	6848H
SPC(	DFH	-	Afat	-
SPRITE	C7H	-	39BAH	7A48H
SQR	07H	FF87H	39EAH	2AFFH
STEP	DCH	-	Afat	-
STICK	22H	FFA2H	3A20H	7940H
STOP	90H	-	394CH	63E3H
STR\$	13H	FF93H	3A02H	6604H
STRIG	23H	FFA3H	3A22H	794CH
STRING\$	E3H	-	Afat	6829H
SWAP	A4H	-	3974H	643EH
TAB(	DBH	-	Afat	-
TAN	0DH	FF8DH	39F6H	29FBH
THEN	DAH	-	Afat	-
TIME	CBH	-	39C2H	7911H

TO	D9H	-	Afat	-
TROFF	A3H	-	3972H	6439H
TRON	A2H	-	3970H	6438H
USING	E4H	-	Afat	-
USR	DDH	-	Afat	4FD5H
VAL	14H	FF94H	3A04H	68BBH
VARPTR	E7H	-	39FAH	4E41H
VDP	C8H	-	39BCH	7B37H
VPEEK	18H	FF98H	3A0CH	7BF5H
VPOKE	C6H	-	39B8H	7BE2H
WAIT	96H	-	3958H	401CH
WIDTH	A0H	-	396CH	51C9H
XOR	F8H	-	Afat	-

9.5 – EXTENDED BIOS ROUTINES

9.5.1 – Extended BIOS Entry

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions. Only available if bit 0 of the HOKVLD system flag (FB20H) is set to 1.

Input: A ← Always 00H.

D ← Device ID:

00 – Internal commands (broadcast commands)

01~03 – Free

04 – DOS2 Mapped Memory Handling

05~07 – Free

08 – RS232C / MSX Modem

09 – Free

10 – MSX-Audio

11 – MSX MIDI

12~15 – Free

16 – MSX-JE

17 – Kanji Driver

18~33 – Free

34 – UNAPI

35~51 – Free

52 – MWMPLOY (MoonBlaster 4 Wave Replayer)

53~76 – Free

77 – Memman
 78 – Nowind
 79~204 – Free
 205 – MCDRV (Micro Cabin BGM Replayer)
 206~239 – Free
 240 – MGSDRV (SCC music player)
 241~254 – Free
 255 – System Exclusive

E ← Function number (0 to 255).

Output: Depends of the device and function called.
 CY = 1 if the specified device is not found.

Registers: All.

9.5.2 – Internal commands (broadcast commands)

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A – 00H.

D – 00H – Internal command.

E – 00H – Examines the devices present in the system, asks it to record its own number in the table, increments the pointer by 1 and moves to the next device.

B – ID of the slot where the table will be placed.

HL – Table address.

Output: B – Table slot ID.

HL – Table address.

CY = 1 if there are no devices.

Registers: All.

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = 00H.

D = 00H ← Internal command.

E = 01H – Gets the number of MSX BASIC interrupt events. It internally manages up to 26 events, which are:

0~9 ON KEY GOSUB

10 ON STOP GOSUB

11	ON SPITE GOSUB
12~16	ON STRIG GOSUB
17	ON INTERVAL GOSUB
18~23	For expansion devices
24~25	Reserved (prohibited use)

Output: A – Number of active events.

Registers: All.

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A – 00H.

D – 00H ← Internal command.

E – 02H ← Declare interrupt prohibition (disables interrupts for the default time of 1 mS).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A – 00H.

D – 00H ← Internal command.

E – 03H ← Declare interrupt permission (enables interrupts blocked by the 02H function).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

9.5.3 –Memory Mapper

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Access extended BIOS functions

Input: A – 00H.

D – 04H ← MSXDOS2 Memory Mapped Handling Device.

E – 01H ← Returns the address of the Memory Mapper variable table.

Output: A – Primary mapper slot ID.

DE – Reserved.

- HL – Starting address of the variable table, whose structure is as follows:
- +00H Primary Mapper Slot ID
 - +01H Total number of 16K segments
 - +02H Number of free 16K segments
 - +03H Number of 16k segments allocated by the system (minimum 6 for primary mapper)
 - +04H Number of 16K segments allocated to user
 - +05H~+07H Reserved (Always 00H)
 - +08H... Entries for other mappers in other slots. If there is none, it will contain 00H.

Registers: All.

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Access extended BIOS functions

Input: A – 00H.

D – 04H – Memory Mapper Handling Device.

E – 02H – Returns several parameters related to the Memory Mapper.

Output: A – Total number of segments (logical pages) for the primary mapper.

B – Primary mapper slot ID.

C – Number of free segments (logical pages) in the primary mapper.

DE – reserved.

HL – Start address of a mapper support subroutine call table. The format of this table is as follows:

+00H ALL_SEG Allocates a 16K segment

+03H FRE_SEG Releases a 16K segment

+06H RD_SEG Read a byte from the address (A:HL) to A

+09H WR_SEG Write the contents of E at the address (A:HL)

+0CH CAL-SEG Inter-segment call by address IYh:IX

+0FH CALLS Inter-segment call. Parameters in line after the CALL statement

+12H PUT_PH Place a segment on the physical page (HL)

+15H GET_PH Returns the current segment for the physical page (HL)

+18H PUT_P0	Place a segment on physical page 0
+1BH GET_P0	Returns the current page 0 segment.
+1EH PUT_P1	Place a segment on physical page 1
+21H GET_P1	Returns the current page 1 segment.
+24H PUT_P2	Place a segment on physical page 2
+27H GET_P2	Returns the current page 2 segment.
+2AH PUT_P3	Not supported as page 3 cannot be switched. If called, it just returns.
+2DH GET_P3	Returns the current page 3 segment.

Registers: All.

9.5.3.1 – Memory Mapper Manipulation Routines

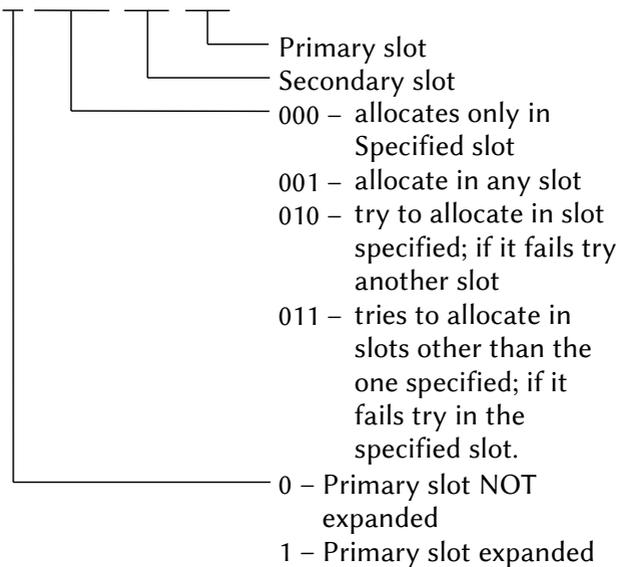
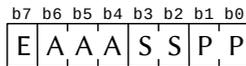
ALL_SEG (HL+00H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Allocate a 16K segment of the mapper.

Input: A – 00H – Allocates a user segment

01H – Allocates a system segment

B – 00H – Allocates only to primary mapper



Output: CY = 1 → There are no free segments
 0 → Segment allocated

A – Segment number

B – Segment slot ID

Note: A system segment will only be released using the FRE_SEG routine. In the case of a user segment, whenever the program that uses it is closed, the segments are released, which is not the case with the system segments.

FRE_SEG (HL+03H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Free a 16K segment from the mapper.

Input: A – segment number to be released

B – If it is 00H, it releases only on the primary mapper; if it is different from 00H it releases in any other mapper than the primary one (see ALL_SEG).

Output: CY = 0 – Segment released

1 – Error in releasing the segment

RD_SEG (HL+06H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Read a byte from the mapper.

Input: A – segment number from which the byte will be read.

HL – address to be read (0000H to 3FFFH).

Output: A – byte read.

All other registers are preserved.

WR_SEG (HL+09H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Write a byte to the mapper.

Input: A – segment number where the byte will be written.

HL – address to be written (0000H to 3FFFH).

E – value to write.

Output: A – corrupted while writing.

All other registers are preserved.

CAL_SEG (HL+0CH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Calls a routine in any area of the mapper.

Input: IYh – segment number to be called

IX – address to be called (0000H to FFFFH)

AF, BC, DE and HL can contain parameters for the routine.

Do not use AF', BC', DE' and HL' as they are corrupted during the call

Output: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX and IY can contain valid return values.
AF', BC', DE' and HL' return corrupted.

CALLS (HL+0FH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Calls a routine in any area of the mapper through inline parameters.

Input: AF, BC, DE and HL can contain parameters for the routine. Do not use AF', BC', DE' and HL' as they are corrupted during the call. The call string must be in the following format:

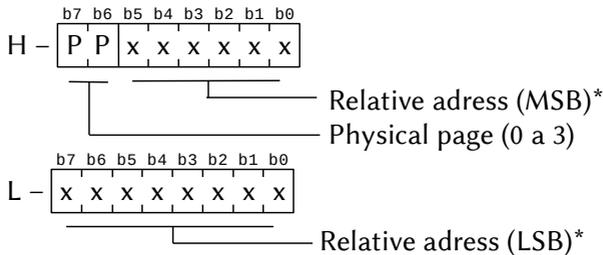
```
CALL CALLS
DEFB SEGMENT
DEFW ADDRESS
```

Output: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX and IY can contain valid return values.
AF', BC', DE' and HL' return corrupted.

PUT_PH (HL+12H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Enables a mapper segment on a physical page.

Input: A – Mapper segment

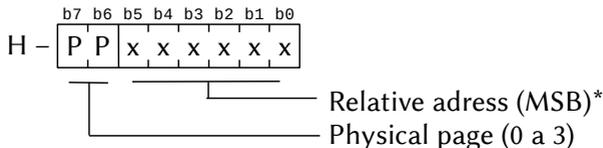


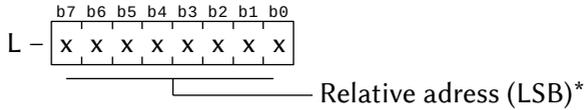
* Relative address is optional.

Output: None. All registers are preserved.

GET_PH (HL+15H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Returns the current active segment on a physical page.





* Relative address is optional.

Output: A – Segment number.
All other registers are preserved.

PUT_P0 (HL+18H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Enables a mapper segment on physical page 0.

Input: A – segment number to be enabled

Output: None. All registers are preserved.

GET_P0 (HL+1BH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Returns the active segment on physical page 0.

Input: None

Output: A – active segment number
All other registers are preserved.

PUT_P1 (HL+1EH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Enables a mapper segment on physical page 1.

Input: A – segment number to be enabled

Output: None. All registers are preserved.

GET_P1 (HL+21H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Returns the active segment on physical page 1.

Input: None

Output: A – active segment number
All other registers are preserved.

PUT_P2 (HL+24H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Enables a mapper segment on physical page 2.

Input: A – segment number to be enabled

Output: None. All registers are preserved.

GET_P2 (HL+27H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Returns the active segment on physical page 2.

Input: None

Output: A – active segment number
All other registers are preserved.

- PUT_P3** (HL+2AH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Not supported since physical page 3 cannot be swapped.
 A call to this function has no effect.
- GET_P3** (HL+2DH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Returns the active segment on physical page 0.
 Input: None.
 Output: A – Active segment number.
 All other registers are preserved.
- CALL_MAP** (HL+30H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Calls a routine in any area of the mapped RAM.
 Input: IYh – Slot number.
 IYl – Segment number.
 IX – Routine address, which must necessarily be on
 page 1 (4000H to 7FFFH).
 AF, BC, DE, HL – Parameters for the routine. (Do not use
 AF', BC', DE' and HL' as they are corrupted in the call).
 Output: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY – May contain valid return values.
 AF', BC', DE' and HL' return corrupted.
 Note: Exclusive routine for NEXTOR.
- RD_MAP** (HL+33H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Reads a byte from a RAM segment.
 Input: A – Slot number.
 B – Segment number.
 HL – Address to read (highest two bits will be ignored).
 Output: A – Data byte read.
 F, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY return preserved.
 Note: Exclusive routine for NEXTOR.
- CALL_MAPI** (HL+36H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Calls routine on a mapped RAM segment (inline parameters).
 Input: AF, BC, DE, HL – Parameters for the called routine. Do not
 use AF', BC', DE' and HL' as they are corrupted during the
 call. The call string must be in the following format:
 CALL CALL_MAPI
 DEFB SLOT
 DEFB ADDRESS
 DEFB SEGMENT NUMBER
 ; It is not necessary to use RET

Where

- SLOT – Is the slot to be called, from 0 to 3
- ADDRESS – Address to be called as an index of a table, which can vary from 0 to 63, where 0=4000H, 1=4003H, 2=4006H, etc.
- SEGMENT NUMBER – Can range from 0 to 255.

Output: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY – Parameters returned by the routine.

Note: Exclusive routine for NEXTOR.

WR_MAP (HL+39H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Writes a byte to a mapped RAM segment.

Input: A – Slot number.

B – Segment number.

E – Byte to write.

HL – Address to be written (highest two bits are ignored).

Output: A – Data read from the specified address.

F, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY return preserved.

Note: Exclusive routine for NEXTOR.

9.5.4 – RS232C Serial Port and MSX Modem

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Access extended BIOS functions

Input: A – 00H.

D – 08H – RS232C manipulation device.

E – 00H – Returns the address of the input address table of the RS232C routines.

B – Address table slot ID.

HL – Table address.

Output: CY = 1 → no RS232C interfaces.

0 → HL is incremented by 4 for each interface found and will point to the end of a table that reserves 4 bytes for each RS232C found. The original value of HL points to the beginning of the table, which has the following structure:

+00H Slot ID.

+01H Lowest address.

+02H Highest address.

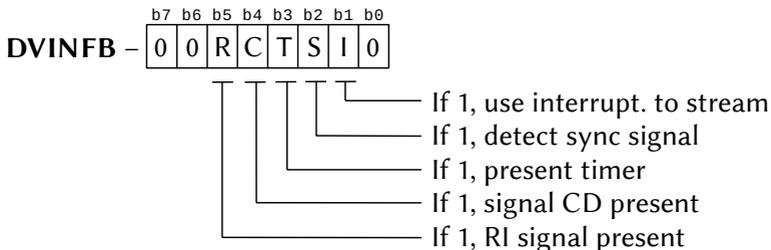
+03H Reserved for expansion.

The slot ID (+00H) and the address (+01H,+02H) will point to a table with the following structure:

+00H	DB DVINFB	(optional)
+01H	DB DVTYPE	(optional)
+02H	DB 0	
+03H	JP INIT	Initialize RS232
+06H	JP OPEN	Opens an RS232 port
+09H	JP STAT	Returns various states
+0CH	JP GETCHR	Read a character
+0FH	JP SNDCHR	Sends a character
+12H	JP CLOSE	Closes an RS232 port
+15H	JP EOF	Checks end of file
+18H	JP LOC	Returns the num. char.
+1BH	JP LOF	Return free space
+1EH	JP BACKUP	Save a character
+21H	JP SNDBRK	Send break characters
+24H	JP DTR	On/off DTR line
+27H	JP SETCHN	Select RS232 channel
+2AH	JP NCUSTA	(MSX Modem)
+2DH	JP SPKCNT	(MSX Modem)
+30H	JP LINSEL	(MSX Modem)
+33H	JP DIALST	(MSX Modem)
+36H	JP DIALCH	(MSX Modem)
+39H	JP DTMFST	(MSX Modem)
+3CH	JP RDDTMF	(MSX Modem)
+3FH	JP HOKCNT	(MSX Modem)
+42H	JP CONFIG	(MSX Modem)
+45H	JP SPCIAL	(MSX Modem)

Registers: All.

9.5.4.1 – Parameter Bytes



DVTYPE – 0 → Multiple channels.
 Another value → Single channel.

9.5.4.2 – RS232C serial port manipulation routines

INIT (HL+03H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Initialize RS232C port.

Input: B – ID of the slot from the parameter table.

HL – Address of the parameter table, with the following structure (from +00H to +07H values must be in ASCII code):

+00H – Character length ("5", "6", "7" or "8")

+01H – Parity ("E", "O", "I" or "N")

+02H – Stop bits ("1", "2" or "3")

+03H – XON/XOFF ("X" or "N")

+04H – CTR-RTS hand shake ("H" or "N")

+05H – Auto LF reception ("A" or "N")

+06H – Auto LF transmission ("A" or "N")

+07H – SI/SO Control ("Y" or "N")

+08H – Receive speed (low)

+09H – Receive speed (high) (50 to 19 200 baud)

+0AH – Speed transmission (low)

+0BH – Speed transmission (high) (50 to 19 200 baud)

+0CH – Time counter (0 to 255)

Output: CY = 0 → RS232C successfully started.

1 → Parameter error.

Registers: AF.

OPEN (HL+06H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Opens an RS232C serial port using FCB.

Input: HL – FCB initial address (greater than 8000H).

C – Buffer size (32 to 254).

E – Open mode:

0 – Entry

2 – Exit

4 – Input/Output and RAW mode

Output: CY = 0 → Door opened successfully.

1 → Error in the opening process.

Registers: AF.

STAT (HL+09H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO

Function: Returns status or error data.

Input: None.

Output: HL – Data returned.

Bit 15: 0 – No buffer error. 1 – Buffer overflow.

Bit 14: 0 – No timing error. 1 – Time out.

Bit 13: 0 – Correct framing. 1 – Framing error.

Bit 12: 0 – Correct execution.

1 – Execution error (overrun error).

Bit 11: 0 – No parity error.

1 – Character parity error.

Bit 10: 0 – CTRL+STOP are not pressed.

1 – CTRL+STOP pressed together.

Bit 09: Reserved.

Bit 08: Reserved.

Bit 07: 0 – Clear to Send state is false.

1 – Clear to Send state is true.

Bit 06: 0 – Timer/Counter-2 not confirmed.

1 – Timer/Counter-2 confirmed.

Bit 05: Reserved.

Bit 04: Reserved.

Bit 03: 0 – Data Set Ready state is false.

1 – Data Set Ready state is true.

Bit 02: 0 – Stop not detected.

1 – Stop detected.

Bit 01: 0 – Ring indicator state is false.

1 – Touch indicator state is true.

Bit 00: 0 – Carrier not detected.

1 – Carrier detected.

GETCHR (HL+0CH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO

Function: Returns a character from the receive buffer.

Input: None.

Output: A – Character received.

CY = 1 → EOF (end of file).

S = 1 → Error.

Registers: F.

- SNDCHR** (HL+0FH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS
 Function: Sends a character to the RS232C serial port.
 Input: A – Character to be sent.
 Output: CY = 1 → CTRL+STOP were pressed together.
 Z = 1 → Error.
 Registers: F.
- CLOSE** (HL+12H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS
 Function: Close the RS232C serial port.
 Input: None.
 Output: CY = 1 → Error.
 Registers: AF.
- EOF** (HL+15H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS
 Function: Checks for end of file.
 Input: None.
 Output: HL = -1 and CY = 1 → Next character is EOF (End of file).
 HL = 0 and CY = 0 → Not end of file.
 Registers: AF.
- LOC** (HL+18H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS
 Function: Returns the number of characters in the receive buffer.
 Input: None.
 Output: HL – Number of characters in buffer.
 Registers: AF.
- LOF** (HL+1BH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS
 Function: Returns the free space in the receive buffer.
 Input: None.
 Output: HL – Free space in bytes.
 Registers: AF.
- BACKUP** (HL+1EH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS
 Function: Saves a character in a special buffer. The previous character is lost.
 Input: C – Character to be saved.
 Output: None.
 Registers: F.

SNDBRK (HL+21H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Sends the specified number of “break” characters.

Input: DE – Number of “break” characters to be sent.

Output: CY = 1 → CTRL+STOP were pressed together.

Registers: AF, DE.

DTR (HL+24H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Turns the DTR line on/off.

Input: A = 0 → Disconnect the DTR line.

A ≠ 0 → Connects the DTR line.

Output: None.

Registers: F.

SETCHN (HL+27H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Select the channel number (only for multi-channel interfaces).

Input: A – Channel number.

Output: CY = 1 → The channel does not exist on the interface.

Registers: AF, BC.

9.5.4.3 – MSX Modem manipulation routines

INIT (HL+03H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Initializes MSX Modem.

Input: A – modem type.

0 – BELL 103 300 bps full duplex

1 – BELL 212 A 1200 bps full duplex

2 – CCITT V 21 300 bps full duplex

3 – CCITT V 22 1200 bps full duplex

4 – CCITT V22bis 2400 bps full duplex

5 – CCITT V 23 1200 bps half duplex

6 – CCITT V27ter 4800 bps half duplex

7 – CCITT V 29 9600 bps half duplex

8 – CCITT V32 9600 bps full duplex

9 to 254 – Reserved for future expansions.

255 – System default.

- C – Dialing mode:
 - 0 – DTMF (tone prompting)
 - 1 – Reserved for future expansions.
 - 2 – Pulses (20 pps)
 - 3 – Pulses (10 pps)
 - 4 – Automatic
 - 5 to 254 – Reserved for future expansions.
 - 255 – System default.
- B – ID of the slot from the parameter table.
- HL – Address of the parameter table, with the following structure (from +00H to +07H values must be in ASCII code):
 - +00H – Character length ("5", "6", "7" or "8")
 - +01H – Parity ("E", "O", "I" or "N")
 - +02H – Stop bits ("1", "2" or "3")
 - +03H – XON/XOFF ("X" or "N")
 - +04H – CTR-RTS hand shake ("H" or "N")
 - +05H – Auto LF reception ("A" or "N")
 - +06H – Auto LF transmission ("A" or "N")
 - +07H – SI/SO Control ("Y" or "N")
 - +08H~0BH – Not used
 - +0CH – Time counter (0 to 255)

Output: CY = 0 → MSX Modem successfully started.
 1 → Parameter error.

Registers: AF.

NCUSTA (HL+2AH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Returns NCU status.

Input: None.

Output: HL – State.

- bit 15~bit 9 – Always 0.
- bit 8: 0 – No DTMF data.
 1 – Receiving DTMF data
- bit 7: 0 – External telephone on hook
 1 – External telephone off-hook
- bit 6: 0 – No ringing tone
 1 – 400 Hz ring tone detected
- bit 5: locks line polarity inversion

- b4,b3: 00 – Loop off
 - 01 – DC loop (LB)
 - 10 – DC loop (LA)
 - 11 – Undefined
- b2,b1: dialing mode
 - 00 – DTMF
 - 01 – Pulse (10 pps)
 - 10 – Pulse (20 pps)
 - 11 – Automatic
- bit 0: 0 – No bell signal (ring)
 - 1 – Bell signal (ring) present

Registers: All.

SPKCNT (HL+2DH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Turns the speaker on/off.

Input: A = 0 → Turns off the speaker.

A ≠ 0 → Turns on the speaker.

Output: CY = 1 if this function is not supported.

Registers: F.

LINSEL (HL+30H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Switch the line.

Input: A – bit 7~5 – Reserved (always 0).

b4~b3 – releases the line (puts the internal phone on the “hook”). Bit4 releases the speaker and bit3 releases the microphone).

b2~b1 – connect the built-in telephone to the modem to the outside line (bit2 = 1, connect speaker,

bit1 = 1, connect microphone).

bit 0 – Switches between modem and external telephone:

b0 = 0 → connect the internal modem;

b0 = 1 → connect the telephone connected to the “TEL” port of the modem.

Output: CY = 1 if there is an error in the parameters.

Registers: None.

DIALST (HL+33H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Connect the device to the line and “dial”.

Input: C – Dial mode:
 0 – DTMF (tone dialing)
 1 – Reserved for future expansions.
 2 – Pulses (20 pps)
 3 – Pulses (10 pps)
 4 – Automatic
 5 to 254 – Reserved for future expansions.
 255 – System default.

B – ID of the slot from the parameter table.

HL – Starting address of the dial data to be sent. Valid characters for “dial” are: “0”~“9”, “A”~“D”, “#”, “*”, “H”, “<”, “:.” and “T”. “H” means 1 second on-hook, “<” means three, “T” selects tone dialing and “:.” waits for second dial tone. The data list must end with a 00H byte.

Output: CY = 1 if there is an error in the parameters.

Registers: None.

DIALCH (HL+36H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS
 Function: Sends a single character at a time to “dial”.
 Input: A – character to be sent.
 C – dial mode (same as DIALST(HL+33H)).
 Output: CY = 1 if there is an error in the parameters.
 Registers: None.

DTMFST (HL+39H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS
 Function: Checks the status of the DTMF decoder.
 Input: None.
 Output: Z = 1 if DTMF code is in input mode.
 CY = 1 if this function is not supported.
 Registers: AF.

RDDTMF (HL+3CH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS
 Function: Read data from DTMF decoder.
 Input: None.
 Output: A – DTMF Code (in ASCII)
 CY = 1 if CTRL+STOP are pressed together or if this function is not supported.
 Registers: AF.

HOKCNT (HL+3FH/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO

Function: Connect or disconnect the line.

Input: A – 0 = On hook
1 = Off the hook

Output: CY = 1 if this function is not supported.

Registers: None.

CONFIG (HL+42H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO

Function: Returns hardware specifications.

Input: A – 0 to 255.

Output: HL – Specifications.

- When A = 0:

bit 15~09: always 0

bit 8 = 1 → CCITT V 32 9600 bps full duplex

bit 7 = 1 → CCITT V 29 9600 bps half duplex

bit 6 = 1 → CCITT V 27ter 4800 bps half duplex

bit 5 = 1 → CCITT V 23 1200 bps half duplex

bit 4 = 1 → CCITT V 22a 2400 bps full duplex

bit 3 = 1 → CCITT V 22 1200 bps full duplex

bit 2 = 1 → CCITT V 21 300 bps full duplex

bit 1 = 1 → BELL 212 At 1200 bps full duplex

bit 0 = 1 → BELL 103 300 bps full duplex

- When A = 1:

bit 15~08: always 0

bit 7 = 1 → support 10pps↔20pps change by software

bit 6 = 1 → DTMF – Soft pulse switching

bit 5 = 1 → supports "H"

bit 4 = 1 → support for "A" to "D"

bit 3 = 1 → automatic

bit 2 = 1 → pulse (20 pps)

bit 1 = 1 → pulse (10 pps)

bit 0 = 1 → DTMF

- When A = 2:

bit 15~8: always 0

bit 7 = 1 → support 10pps↔20pps change by software

bit 6~4: always 0

bit 3 = 1 → integrated handsfree phone

bit 2 = 1 → built-in standard telephone

bit 1 = 1 → internal modem

bit 0 = 1 → external telephone

- When A = 3:
 - bit 15~bit 13: always 0
 - bit 12 = 1 → long loop detection function
 - bit 11 = 1 → carrier control function
 - bit 10 = 1 → transmission power switching function
 - bit 9 = 1 → RS-232C
 - bit 8 = 1 → standard MSX cartridge
 - bit 7 = 1 → external telephone hook detection
(on-hook or off-hook).
 - bit 6 = 1 → “on hook” / “off hook” function
 - bit 5 = 1 → has speaker
 - bit 4 = 1 → has DTMF decoder
 - bit 3 = 1 → charging pulse detection
 - bit 2 = 1 → line polarity detection
 - bit 1 = 1 → call progress detection
 - bit 0 = 1 → touch signal detection
- When A is 4 to 255:
 - HL = 0000H

Registers: HL.

SPECIAL (HL+45H/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Implements special functions for each modem model.

Input: A = 0 → Send modem power switching function.
 C – transmission power value (dBm). If it is 255, it defaults to value.

A = 1 → Carrier wave control.
 C – 0 – Turns off the carrier.
 1 – Turns on the carrier.
 H – delay time up to RS ON ($n * 10$ mS)
 L – delay time from CS ON to RETURN ($n * 10$ mS)

A = 2 → Equalizer setting.
 C = 0 – Do not use equalizer.
 1 – Use the equalizer.
 2 – Automatic equalizer adjustment
 255 – Defaults.

Output: CY = 1 if selected function is not supported.

Registers: Depends on the called function.

9.5.5 – MSX-AUDIO

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Access extended BIOS functions

Input: A – 00H.

D – 0AH – MSX-Audio manipulation device.

E – 00H – Returns the pointer to the MSX-Audio information table.

B – Address table slot ID.

HL – Address of a 64-byte buffer for the table (should be on page 3).

Output: B – ID of the information table slot.

HL – HL is incremented by 4 and will point to the end of a table that reserves 4 bytes for MSX-Audio. The original HL value points to the beginning of the table, which has the following structure:

+00H – Slot ID

+01H – Lowest address

+02H – Highest address

+03H – Reserved for expansion

The slot ID (+00H) and the address (+01H,+02H) will point to a table with the following structure:

+00H VERSION Software version

+03H MBIOS Music BIOS

+06H AUDIO Initialization of MSX-Audio

+09H SYNTHE Calls the SYNTHE app

+0CH PLAYF State instruction PLAY

+0FH BGM Enable/cancel BGM mode

+12H MKTEMP Set recording time / musical keyboard playback

+15H PLAYMK Plays via musical keyboard

+18H RECMK Records the notes played on the musical keyboard

+1BH STOPM Keyboard playback / recording / ADPCM; stops command PLAY

+1EH CONTMK Continue recording by musical keyboard

+21H RECMOD Sets recording mode of the musical keyboard

+24H	STPPPLY	Stops the PLAY instruction
+27H	SETPCM	Protected Area ADPCM/PCM
+2AH	RECPCM	ADPCM/PCM Recording
+2DH	PLAYPCM	ADPCM/PCM Playback
+30H	PCMFREQ	Changing the frequency of ADPCM/PCM playback
+33H	MKPCM	Set/cancel data ADPCM for musical keyboard
+36H	PCMVOL	Sets the volume of ADPCM/PCM playback
+39H	SAVEPCM	Save ADPCM/PCM data
+3CH	LOADPCM	Load ADPCM/PCM data
+3FH	COPYPCM	Transfers ADPCM/PCM data
+42H	CONVP	Converts ADPCM to PCM data
+45H	CONVA	Converts PCM to ADPCM data
+48H	VOICE	Sets FM data
+4BH	VOICECOPY	Moves FM data

Registers: F.

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Access extended BIOS functions

Input: A – 00H.

D – 0AH – MSX-Audio manipulation device.

E – 01H – Returns how many MSX-Audio cartridges are connected to the MSX (maximum 2).

Output: A – 0 → There is no MSX-Audio connected.

1 → There is an MSX-Audio cartridge connected.

2 → There are two MSX-Audio cartridges connected.

Registers: BC, DE, HL.

9.5.5.1 – Startup routines

VERSION (HL+00H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: BIOS version. Usually 00H-00H-00H.

MBIOS (HL+03H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Call the MBIOS routines (Music BIOS).

Input: HL – Address of the MBIOS routine.
 IX and IY are used for interslot calling and must be defined
 in BUF (F55EH) as follows:
 BUF +00H/+01H – IX
 BUF +02H/+03H – IY

Output: Depends on MBIOS routine.

Registers: It depends on the MBIOS routine.

AUDIO (HL+06H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Initialize MSX-Audio.

Input: Set the following values in BUF (F55EH):

- +01H – Switch mode
- +02H – Number of FM instruments used to configure
MSX-Audio (0 to 9)
- +03H – Number of FM sound sources for the first string
(0 to 9)
- +04H – Number of FM sound sources for the second string
(0 to 8)
- +05H – Number of FM sound sources for the third string
(0 to 7)
- +06H – Number of FM sound sources for the fourth string
(0 to 6)
- +07H – Number of FM sound sources for the fifth string
(0 to 5)
- +08H – Number of FM sound sources for the sixth string
(0 to 4)
- +09H – Number of FM sound sources for the seventh
string (0 to 3)
- +0AH – Number of FM sound sources for the eighth string
(0 to 2)
- +0BH – Number of FM sound sources for the ninth string
(0 to 1)

Output: CY = 1 → Initialization failed.

Registers: All.

SYNTHE (HL+09H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Calls the built-in SYNTHE application.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

9.5.5.2 – PCM/ADPCM Routines

SETPCM (HL+27H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Initializes the audio file for PCM/ADPCM.

Input: Set the parameters in BUF (F55EH):

+00H – Audio file number (0 to 15).

+01H – Device number (0 to 5, except 4).

0 or 2 → external RAM

1 or 3 → external ROM

4 → CPU (cannot be used)

5 → VRAM

+02H – Mode (0 or 1).

+03H/+04H – Depends on the device number:

RAM: No need to define

ROM: +3H – File number. audio in ROM

+4H – Always 0.

VRAM: +3H – VRAM Address (LSB)

+4H – VRAM Address (MSB)

+05H/+06H – Length (LSB-MSB).

+07H/+08H – Sampling frequency (LSB-MSB).

+09H – Channel number (0 or 1).

Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, not configured.

Registers: All.

RECPCM (HL+2AH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Record audio file.

Input: Set the following parameters in BUF (F55EH):

+00H – Audio file number (0 to 15).

+01H – Synchronization (0 or 1).

+02H/+03H – Displacement (LSB-MSB).

+04H/+05H – Length (LSB-MSB). FFFFH to use values defined by SETPCM (HL+27H).

+06H/+07H – Sampling frequency (LSB-MSB). FFFFH to use values defined by SETPCM (HL+27H).

+08H – Channel number (0 or 1). FFH to use channel defined by SETPCM (HL+27H).

Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, write cancelled.

Registers: All.

PLAYPCM (HL+2DH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Play audio file.

Input: Set the parameters in BUF (F55EH):

+00H – Audio file number (0 to 15).

+01H – Repeat flag (0 or 1).

+02H/+03H – Displacement (LSB-MSB).

+04H/+05H – Length (LSB-MSB). FFFFH to use values defined by SETPCM (HL+27H).

+06H/+07H – Sampling frequency (LSB-MSB). FFFFH to use values defined by SETPCM (HL+27H).

+08H – Channel number (0 or 1). FFH to use channel defined by SETPCM (HL+27H).

Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, operation cancelled.

Registers: All.

PCMFREQ (HL+30H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Change the playback frequency.

Input: BC – First channel sampling frequency

DE – First channel sampling frequency

The frequency can vary from 1800 to 49,716 Hz. If there is no second channel, set DE value equal to BC.

Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error. The frequency is not changed.

Registers: All.

PCMVOL (HL+36H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Sets the PCM/ADPCM playback volume.

Input: BC – Volume of the first channel (0 to 63), where 63 is max.

DE – First channel volume (0 to 63), where 63 is max.

The initial value is 63 for ADPCM and 32 for PCM. If there is no second channel, set DE value equal to BC.

Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error. Volume is not set.

Registers: All.

SAVEPCM (HL+39H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Save PCM/ADPCM audio file to disk.

Input: A – Audio file number.

HL – Pointer to the filename. It must be enclosed in double quotes (22H) and end with byte 00H (Ex.

“FILENAME.PCM”,00H), as in MSX-BASIC.

Output: CY = 1 → Wrong audio file number. The file will not be saved.

Registers: All.

Note: If there are any errors during the save, control will be returned to the BASIC interpreter.

LOADPCM (HL+3CH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Load PCM/ADPCM audio file from disk.

Input: A – Audio file number.

HL – Pointer to the filename. It must be enclosed in double quotes (22H) and end with byte 00H (Ex. "FILENAME.PCM",00H), as in MSX-BASIC.

Output: CY = 1 → Wrong audio file number. The file will not be loaded.

Registers: All.

Note: If there are any errors during loading, control will be returned to the BASIC interpreter.

COPYPCM (HL+3FH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Transfer PCM/ADPCM data between audio files.

Input: Set the parameters in BUF (F55EH):

+00H – Source file number (0 to 15).

+01H – Destination file number (0 to 15).

+02H/+03H – Offset of source file (LSB-MSB).

+04H/+05H – Length (LSB-MSB).

+06H/+07H – Offset destination file (LSB-MSB).

+08H – Font specification (0 or 1).

Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, transfer cancelled.

Registers: All.

CONVP (HL+42H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Convert data from PCM format to ADPCM.

Input: Set the parameters in BUF (F55EH):

+00H – Source file number (0 to 15).

+01H – Destination file number (0 to 15).

Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, conversion cancelled.

Registers: All.

CONVA (HL+45H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Convert data from ADPCM format to PCM.
 Input: Set the parameters in BUF (F55EH):
 +00H – Source file number (0 to 15).
 +01H – Destination file number (0 to 15).
 Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, conversion cancelled.
 Registers: All.

MKTEMPO (HL+18H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Sets the time for recording and playback through the musical keyboard, with metronome function.
 Input: DE – Time in quarter notes per minute (25 to 360).
 Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, configuration cancelled.
 Registers: All.

MKPCM (HL+33H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Specify the ADPCM sound file to play with the musical keyboard.
 Input: A – Audio file number (0 to 15). To cancel, use FFH.
 Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, playback cancelled.
 Registers: All.

9.5.5.3 – Musical keyboard routines

PLAYMK (HL+15H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Plays recorded audio via musical keyboard.
 Input: DE – Starting address of reproduction.
 BC – Final address of reproduction.
 Output: None.
 Registers: All.

RECMK (HL+18H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Records audio through the musical keyboard.
 Input: DE – Starting address for recording.
 BC – Final address for recording.
 Output: None.
 Registers: All.

CONTMK (HL+1EH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Continue recording or playing musical keyboard audio that was interrupted by STOPM.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RECMOD (HL+21H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Sets the recording mode for the musical keyboard.

Input: A = 0 → Muting (do not record)

1 → Record

2 → Play

3 → Record and play simultaneously

Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, configuration cancelled.

Registers: All.

9.5.5.4 – FM synthesizer routines**PLAYF** (HL+0CH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Checks the status of the PLAY instruction.

Input: A – PLAY instruction channel number (0 = All channels).

Output: HL – 0000H → the specified channel is NOT playing.

FFFFH → the specified channel is playing
(when specified for all channels, HL will return FFFFH if any are active).

Registers: All.

BGM (HL+0FH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Specifies background execution.

Input: 0 – Does NOT perform background processing.

1 – Runs background processing (default). The functions available for the background are: playback via the PLAY command, ADPCM recording and playback via microphone, and recording and playback via the musical keyboard.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

STOPM (HL+1BH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Stop playback and recording.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

STPLY (HL+1BH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Stop playback of PLAY command only.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

VOICE (HL+48H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Sets the instrument for each FM channel.

Input: Define the following parameters in BUF (F55EH):

+0 → Voice 1 parameter block

+4 → Voice 2 Parameter Block

⋮

(n-1)*4 → Voice n parameter block

n*4 → End mark (FFH).

- Specifying instruments provided in ROM:

+0 → Channel number (0 to 8).

+1 → 00H.

+2 → Instrument number in ROM (0 to 63).

+3 → 00H.

- Specifying user instrument:

+0 → Channel number (0 to 8).

+1 → FFH.

+2/+3 → Instrument data address (LSB-MSB).

Output: CY = 1 → Parameter error, configuration cancelled.

Registers: All.

VOICECOPY (HL+4BH) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO

Function: Transfers data from FM instruments.

Input: Define the following parameters in BUF (F55EH):

- Transfer 0~63 instruments from ROM to 32~63 system instruments:

+0 → 00H

+1 → Source instrument number (0~63).

+2~+5 → 00H

- +6 → Target instrument number (32~63).
- +7~+9 → 00H
- Transfer 0~63 instruments from ROM to user data area:
- +0 → 00H
- +1 → Source instrument number (0~63).
- +2~+4 → 00H
- +5 → FFH
- +6~+7 → Destination address in the data area.
- +8~+9 → 00H
- Transfer instruments from user data area to 32~63 system instruments:
- +0 → FFH
- +1~+2 → Source address in the data area.
- +3~+5 → 00H
- +6 → Target instrument number (32~63).
- +7~+9 → 00H
- Transfer all 32~63 instruments from the system to the user data area:
- +0 → 00H
- +1 → FFH
- +2 ~ +4 → 00H
- +5 → FFH
- +6 ~ +7 → Destination address in the data area.
- +8 ~ +9 → Length of data in bytes.
- Transfers all instruments from the user data area to 32~63 system instruments:
- +0 → FFH
- +1 ~ +2 → Destination address in the data area.
- +3 ~ +4 → Length of data in bytes.
- +5 → 00H
- +6 → FFH
- +7 ~ +9 → 00H.

9.5.5.5 – MBIOS routines (Music BIOS)

The Music BIOS routines must be called through the MBIOS entry of the jump table, setting in HL the call address of the desired Music BIOS routine. The MBIOS format is as follows:

MBIOS (JumpTable+03H) – JumpTable value obtained via EXTPIO

Function: Call the MBIOS routines (Music BIOS).

Input: HL – Address of the MBIOS routine.

IX and IY are used for interslot calling and must be defined in BUF (F55EH) as follows:

BUF+00H/+01H – IX

BUF+02H/+03H – IY

Output: Depends on Music BIOS routine.

Registers: It depends on the Music BIOS routine.

The data tables used by Music BIOS are as follows:

CHDB (32 bytes)

+00	YCAO0_MULTI
+01	YCAO0_LS
+02	YCAO0_AR
+03	YCAO0_RR
+04	YCAO0_VELS
+05	YCAO0_VTL
+06~+07	Unused
+08	YCAO1_MULTI
+09	YCAO1_LS
+10	YCAO1_AR
+11	YCAO1_RR
+12	YCAO1_VELS
+13	YCAO1_VTL
+14~+15	Unused
+16~+17	YCA_VTRANS
+18~+19	YCA_TRANS
+20	YCA_TRIG
+21	YCA_VOL
+22	YCA_FB
+23	YCA_VEL
+24~+25	YCA_PITCH
+26	YCA_VOICE
+27	ZCA_FLAG
+28	ZC_CH
+29	ZC_OP
+30~+31	ZC_COUNT

MIDB (64 bytes)

+00~+01	Unused
+02	YM_TIM 1
+03	YM_TIM 2
+04~+17	Unused
+18	YMA_BIAS
+19~+24	Unused
+25	YMA_AUDIO
+26~+31	Unused
+32~+33	YMA_TRANS
+34	YMA_LFO
+35	YMA_RAM
+36	ZMA_FLAG
+37~+38	YMA_PDB
+39	ZMA_PH_FILTER
+40	ZMA_PH_TL
+41~+42	ZMA_PH_AR
+43~+44	ZMA_PH_DIR
+45	ZMA_PH_SL
+46~+47	ZMA_PH_D 2 R
+48~+49	ZMA_PH_RR
+50~+51	ZMA_PH_EG
+52	ZMA_PH_STAT
+53~+63	Unused

PDB (PCM Data Block)

+00	PDB_DEV	Defines the PCM/ADPCM device
+01	Unused	
+02~+03	PDB_ADDR	Data start address
+04~+05	PDB_SIZE	Data Block Size
+06~+07	PDB_SAMPLE	Sampling frequency (1800 to 16000 for ADPCM or 1800 to 12000 for PCM)
+08~+09	PDB_PCM	Initial value when ADPCM is tracked and converted to PCM.
+10~+11	PDB_STEP	Initial Quantize Width when ADPCM is tracked and converted to PCM
+12~+15	Unused	

The Music BIOS routines are as follows:

SV_RESET (0090H/MBIOS)

Function: Initialize the MBIOS.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

Note: Interruptions are disabled on return. Before re-enabling them, the MBIOS hook must be set.

SV_DI (0093H/MBIOS)

Function: Disables user interrupts.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

SV_EI (0096H/MBIOS)

Function: Allow user interrupts.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

SV_ADW (0099H/MBIOS)

Function: Write a byte of data into a Y8950 register.

Input: IY – Master/slave specification by MIDB address.
A – Byte of data to be written.
C – Registrar number.

Output: CY = 1 → there was an attempt to write to a non-existent slave device.

Registers: All.

SV_ADW_DI (009CH/MBIOS)

Function: Write a data byte in a Y8950 register, disabling loopback interrupts.

Input: IY – Master/slave specification by MIDB address.

A – Byte of data to be written.

C – Register number.

Output: CY = 1 → there was an attempt to write to a non-existent slave device.

IFF = 0 (Interrupts Disabled)

Registers: All.

SV_SETUP (00ABH/MBIOS)

Function: Initial setup of various functions.

Input: A – Function code.

0 – SM_AUDIO → tone setting.

1 – SC_CHDB → initialize CHDB desktop.

2 – SM_INST → initialize the instrument function.

3 – SM_MK → initialize musical keyboard reading.

Other parameters depend on the function.

Output: CY = 1 → Configuration failed (usually because the routine is called via interrupts).

Registers: All.

SM_AUDIO (00ABH/MBIOS)

Function: Set the FM synthesizer music tone mode.

Input: A – 0.

C –

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
0	0	0	0	0	N	M	S

0 – FM slave mode

1 – CSM slave mode

0 – FM master mode

1 – CSM master mode

0 – 9 channels

1 – 6 chan. + 5 drum pieces

DE – FM synthesizer tone channel.

bit0 = 1 → instrument in channel 0

bit1 = 1 → instrument on channel 1

⋮

bit8 = 1 → instrument on channel 8

(In 6 channel mode + 5 drum pieces, only channels 0 to 5 can be assigned).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

Note: This routine internally calls SC_CHDB and SM_INST.

SC_CHDB (00ABH/MBIOS)

Function: Launches the CHDB desktop.

Input: A – 1.

IX – CHDB address to be initialized.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SM_INST (00ABH/MBIOS)

Function: Initializes the instrument's tone with timbre #0.

Input: A – 2.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SM_MK (00ABH/MBIOS)

Function: Initializes music keyboard reading.

Input: A – 3.

B – 1 → connects the keyboard to the instrument.

0 → do not connect the keyboard.

C – speed when keys are pressed. 0 is the slowest and 15 is the fastest. Velocity is referenced in SV_MK (musical keyboard scan).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SV_REAL (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Perform real-time operations. This call is divided into several functions designated by codes that are as follows:

- 00 RM_MOVE_DI – Transfer. ADPCM/PCM data
- 01 RM_TRACE_DI – ADPCM Data Trace
- 02 RM_CONV_PCM_DI – ADPCM to PCM Conversion
- 03 RM_CONV_ADPCM_DI – Conversion PCM→ADPCM
- 04 RMA_DAC_BIAS – Volume for PCM playback
- 05 RMA_DAC_DI – PCM Data Playback
- 06 RMA_ADC_DI – PCM Data Write
- 07 RMA_ADPCM_BIAS – Configure ADPCM playback
- 08 RMA_ADPLAY_DI – Playback of ADPCM data
- 09 RMA_ADREC_DI – Writing ADPCM data
- 10 RMA_BREAK – Interrupt. playback/recording
- 11 RMA_ADPLAY – Playback of ADPCM data
- 12 RMA_ADREC – Writing ADPCM data
- 13 RMA_PHASE_SET_DI – Converts 256 bytes PCM
- 14 RMA_PHASE_EG – Configures the envelope
- 15 RMA_PHASE_EVENT – Pitch Sampling
- 16 RM_TIMER – Enables/disables interrupt timer.
- 17 RM_TIM1 – Sets timer 1
- 18 RM_TIM2 – Sets timer 2
- 19 RM_TEMPO – Defines the cycle of timer 2
- 20 RM_DAMP – FM generator stopping force
- 21 RM_PERC – Plays rhythm sound
- 22 RMA_MK – Returns musical keyboard status
- 23 RMA_LFO – Sets vibrato
- 24 RMA_TRANS – Configures sound transition
- 25 RMA_CSM_DI – Reproduction of CSM data
- 26 RM_READ_DI – Transf. 256 bytes ADPCM/PCM
- 27 RM_WRITE_DI – Transf. 256 bytes ADPCM/PCM
- 28 RM_UTEMPR – Converts the temperament pitch
- 29 RM_CTEMPR – Temper setting
- 30 RM_PITCH – Set current/subsequent pitch
- 31 RM_TSRAN – Configures sound transposition
- 32 RC_NOTE – Turns FM voice on/off
- 33 RC_LEGATO – Turns FM voice legato on/off
- 34 RC_DAMP – Interrupts FM voice
- 35 RC_KON – Turns on the FM generator voice
- 36 RC_LEGATO_ON – Turns on legato FM voice
- 37 RC_KOFF – Turns off FM generator voice
- 38 RCA_PARAM – FM real-time configuration

- 39 RCA_VOICE – Configures voice for the FM channel
- 40 RCA_VPARAM – Configures voice parameters
- 41 RCA_VOICEP – Configures voice for the FM channel
- 42 RMA_ADPLAYLP – Playback ADPCM data repeats
- 43 RMA_ADPLY_SAMPLE – ADPCM Playback
- 44 RM_PVEL – Sets rhythm sound speed
- ⋮
- 48 RI_DAMP FM – Generator stopping force
- 49 RI_ALLOFF – Activates all FM channels
- 50 RI_EVENT – Converts a note
- 51 RI_PCHB – Setting the pitch position
- 52 RI_PCHBR – Setting pitch pitch
- 53 RIA_PARAM – Realtime setting for FM
- 54 RIA_VOICE – FM Voice Configuration
- 55 RIA_VPARAM – Voice Definition for FM
- 56 RIA_VOICEP – Configure tone for FM

Input: A – function code.

Other parameters depend on the called function.

Output: CY = 1 → error in input parameters.

Other parameters depend on the called function.

Registers: Depends on the called function.

RC_NOTE (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Turns on a voice on the FM generator and turns off automatically after a specified time.

Input: A – 32.

IX – CHDB address with FM voice data.

DE – Range (0~32.767). The central value is 15,360 and a semitone corresponds to 256.

C – Speed (0~15). 0 is the slowest and 15 is the fastest.

B – Timer. Turns off when SV_TEMPO is called this number of times.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RC_LEGATO (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Turns on a voice on the FM generator and turns off automatically after a specified time. Unlike RC_NOTE, this function does not start wrapping.

Input: A – 33.
 IX – CHDB address with FM voice data.
 DE – Range (0~32.767). The central value is 15,360 and a semitone corresponds to 256.
 C – Speed (0~15). 0 is the slowest and 15 is the fastest.
 B – Timer. Turns off when SV_TEMPO is called this number of times.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RC_DAMP (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Forces the FM voice that is playing to stop.

Input: A – 34.
 IX – CHDB address with FM voice data.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RC_KON (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Connects an FM voice.

Input: A – 35.
 IX – CHDB address with FM voice data.
 DE – Range (0~32.767). The central value is 15,360 and a semitone corresponds to 256.
 C – Speed (0~15). 0 is the slowest and 15 is the fastest.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RC_LEGATO_ON (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Connects an FM voice. Unlike RC_KON, this function does not start wrapping.

Input: A – 36.
 IX – CHDB address with FM voice data.
 DE – Range (0~32.767). The central value is 15,360 and a semitone corresponds to 256.
 C – Speed (0~15). 0 is the slowest and 15 is the fastest.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RC_KOFF (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Turns off an FM voice.

Input: A – 37.

IX – CHDB address with FM voice data.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RCA_PARAM (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Adjust real-time parameters for an FM voice.

Input: A – 38.

IX – CHDB address with FM voice data.

C – Offset of the parameter to be adjusted in the CHDB list.

DE – Configuration data.

The data that can be configured with this function are as follows:

YCA_TRANS	YCA_TRIG	YCA_PITCH
YCA_VOL	YCA_VEL	

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RCA_VOICE (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Associate an instrument with an FM voice.

Input: A – 39.

IX – CHDB address with FM voice data.

C – Instrument pattern number in ROM (0~63). The available instruments are as follows:

0	Piano 1	32	Piano 3
1	Piano 2	33	Electric Piano 2
2	Violin	34	Santool 2
3	Flute 1	35	Brass
4	Clarinet	36	Flute 2
5	Oboe	37	Clavicode 2
6	Trumpet	38	Clavicode 3
7	Pipe Organ 1	39	Koto 2
8	Xylophone	40	Pipe Organ 2
9	Organ	41	PohdsPLA
10	Guitar	42	RohdsPRA
11	Santool 1	43	Orch L

12	Electric Piano 1	44	Orch R
13	Clavicode 1	45	Synth Violin
14	Harpsicode 1	46	Synth Organ
15	Harpsicode 2	47	Synth Brass
16	Vibraphone	48	Tube
17	Koto 1	49	Shamisen
18	Taiko	50	Magical
19	Engine 1	51	Huwawa
20	UFO	52	Wander Flat
21	Synthesizer bell	53	Hardrock
22	Chime	54	Machine
23	Synthesizer bass	55	Machine V
24	Synthesizer	56	Comic
25	Synth Percussion	57	SE-Comic
26	Synth Rhythm	58	SE-Laser
27	Harm Drum	59	SE-Noise
28	Cowbell	60	SE-Star 1
29	Close Hi-hat	61	SE-Star 2
30	Snare Drum	62	Engine 2
31	Bass Drum	63	Silence

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RCA_VPARAM (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Adjust parameters of an FM voice.

Input: A - 40.

IX - CHDB address with FM voice data.

C - Offset of the parameter to be adjusted in the CHDB list.

DE - Configuration data.

The data that can be configured with this function are as follows:

CA00_LS	CA01_LS	YCA00_MULTI
CA00_AR	YCA01_AR	CA01_MULTI
CA00_RR	YCA01_RR	YCA_VTRANS
CA00_VELS	YCA01_VELS	YCA_FB
CA00_VTL	YCA01_VTL	

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RCA_VOICEP (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Set an FM voice with tone data.

Input: A - 41.

IX - CHDB address with FM voice data.

BC - Pointer to the data, which occupy 32 bytes with the following structure:

```

0~7 V_NAME   Sound name
8~9 V_TRANS  Transposition value
10 V_ARG     Several configurations:
    bit7 - Tremolo level:
           0- 1dB; 1- 4,8 dB
    bit6 - Vibrato level:
           0- 7%; 1- 14%
    bit5 - Defines tremolo/vibrato:
           0- no; 1- configure
    bit4 - Defines fixed tone:
           0- normal tone; 1- fixed tone
    bit3~bit1 - Feedback level:
           000 - 0           100 -  $\pi/2$ 
           001 -  $\pi/16$        101 -  $\pi$ 
           010 -  $\pi/8$         110 -  $2\pi$ 
           011 -  $\pi/4$         111 -  $4\pi$ 
    bit0 - Type of operators connection:
           0- serial; 1- parallel
11~15 - Unused
16 VO0_MULTI - Data to be configured
              for registers 20H (voice 0) to
              35H (voice 1):
    bit7 - Amplitude modulation:
           0- no; 1- yes
    bit6 - Vibrato:
           0- no; 1- yes
    bit5 - EG-TYP (type of envelope):
           0- decaying; 1- sustained
    bit4 - KSR (Key Scale Rate):
           0- no; 1- yes
    bit3~bit0 - Multiple:
           00-½   04-4   08-8   12-12
           01-1   05-5   09-9   13-12
           02-2   06-6   10-10  14-15
           03-3   07-7   11-10  15-15

```

- 17 VO0_TL - Data to be configured for registers 40H (voice 0) to 55H (voice 1):
- bit7~bit6 - KSL (Key Scale Level):
 - 00 - 0 dB/octave
 - 01 - 1,5 dB/octave
 - 10 - 3 dB/octave
 - 11 - 6 dB/octave
 - bit7~bit6 - Total level:
 - bit0 - 0,75 dB
 - bit1 - 1,5 dB
 - bit2 - 3 dB
 - bit3 - 6 dB
 - bit4 - 12 dB
 - bit5 - 24 dB
- 18 VO0_AR - Data to be configured for registers 60H (voice 0) to 75H (voice 1):
- bit7~bit4 - Attack Rate:
 - 0dB to 96dB: 1111 - 0 mS
 - 1110 - 0,2 mS
 - 0000 - 2826 mS
 - 10% to 90%: 1111 - 0 mS
 - 1110 - 0,11 mS
 - 0000 - 1482 mS
 - bit7~bit4 - Decay Rate:
 - 0dB to 96dB: 1111 - 0 mS
 - 1110 - 2,4 mS
 - 0000 - 39280 mS
 - 10% to 90%: 1111 - 0 mS
 - 1110 - 0,51 mS
 - 0000 - 8212 mS
- 19 VO0_RR - Data to be configured for registers 80H (voice 0) to 95H (voice 1):
- bit7~bit4 - Sustain Level:
 - bit7 - 24 dB
 - bit6 - 12 dB
 - bit5 - 6 dB
 - bit4 - 3 dB
 - bit3~bit0 - Release Rate:
 - bit0 - 24 dB
 - bit1 - 12 dB
 - bit2 - 6 dB
 - bit3 - 3 dB

- 20 V00_VELS - Speed sensitivity performed by software via MBIOS.
 bit7~bit4 - Unused.
 bit3~bit0 - Sensitivity:
 0000 - Invalid
 0001 - Minimum
 1111 - Maximum
- 21~23 - Unused.
- 24 V01_MULTI (same as V00_MULTI but acts on operator 1)
- 25 V01_TL (same as V00_TL but acts on operator 1)
- 26 V01_AR (same as V00_AR but acts on operator 1)
- 27 V01_RR (same as V00_RR but acts on operator 1)
- 28 V01_VELS (same as V00_VELS but acts on operator 1)
- 29~31 - Unused.

RM_TIMER (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Enable/disable timer functions.

Input: A - 16.

C - bit7~bit2 - Unused.

bit1 - Timer 2: 0- Disable; 1- Activate.

bit0 - Timer 1: 0- Disable; 1- Activate.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_TIM1 (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Set the value of timer #1.

Input: A - 17.

C - Period with 80 uS step. Corresponds to 20.48 mS when C=0 and 80 uS when C=255.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_TIM2 (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Set the value of timer #2.

Input: A - 18.

C - Period with 80 uS step. Corresponds to 20.48 mS when C=0 and 80 uS when C=255.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_TEMPO (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Set timer cycle #2.

Input: A - 19.

C - Number of quarter notes per minute.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_DAMP (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Force stop of all active FM generator channels.

Input: A - 20.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_VEL (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets the speed of the five drum pieces (rhythm). This function can define more than one part at a time.

Input: A - 44.

C -

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
0	0	0	B	S	T	C	H



E - Speed. 0 is the fastest and 31 is the slowest.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_PERC (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Activates drum parts sound (rhythm). Several pieces can be played simultaneously.

Input: A - 21.

C -

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
0	0	0	B	S	T	C	H



E – Speed. 0 is the fastest and 31 is the slowest.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RMA_MK (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Returns the state of the musical keyboard.

Input: A – 22.

DE – Pointer to a 9-byte buffer.

IY – MIDB pointer indicating master/slave.

Output: The buffer pointed to by DE contains the following structure, where a pressed key corresponds to a set bit:

	bit7	bit6	bit5	bit4	bit3	bit2	bit1	bit0
0 →	0	C	B	A#	0	A	G#	G
1 →	0	F#	F	E	0	D#	D	C#
2 →	0	C	B	A#	0	A	G#	G
3 →	0	F#	F	E	0	D#	D	C#
4 →	0	C	B	A#	0	A	G#	G
5 →	0	F#	F	E	0	D#	D	C#
6 →	0	C	B	A#	0	A	G#	G
7 →	0	F#	F	E	0	D#	D	C#
8 →	0	C	0	0	0	0	0	0

Note: The note “C” (do) of the byte 8 corresponds to the second octave and “C” of the byte 0 corresponds to the sixth octave.

Registers: All.

RMA_LFO (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets vibrato and tremolo levels.

Input: A – 23.

C –	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	V	T


 Tremolo: 0=1dB, 1=4,8 dB
 Vibrato: 0=7%, 1=14%

IY – MIDB pointer indicating master/slave.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RMA_TRANS (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets the transition from the current tone to the subsequent tone.

Input: A – 24.

DE – Transposition value, in units corresponding to 1% of 100/256 (~0.0039).

IY – MIDB pointer indicating master/slave.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_UTEMPR (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Converts the temper tone to the set temper tone.

Input: A – 28.

D – Interval (The middle do (C) note is 60).

Output: DE – Converted tone.

Registers: All.

RM_CTEMPR (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Selects the temper.

Input: A – 29.

C – Temper:

00 – Pythagoras

01 – Meanone

02 – Werk Meister

03 – Werk Meister (modified)

04 – Werk Meister (another)

05 – Kirunker

06 – Kirunberger (modified)

07 – Valory Young

08 – Lamoo

09 – Balanced temperament (initial value)

10 – C (C minor)

11 – C# (C major)

12 – D (D minor)

13 – D# (D major)

14 – E (mi)

15 – F (F minor)

16 – F# (F major)

17 – G (minor G)

18 – G# (greater sun)

19 – A (minor A)

20 – A# (major)

21 – B (sol)

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_PITCH (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Adjusts the pitch of the current and subsequent notes. The pitch must be in the range 410~459, the initial value is 440.

Input: A – 30.
BC – Master channel.
DE – Slave channel.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_TRANS (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets the transition between the current tone and the subsequent tone. The transition value must be in the range -12,799 to +12,799 where the initial value is 0 and the values are in hundredths.

Input: A – 31.
BC – Master channel.
DE – Slave channel.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RI_DAMP (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Force all FM channels to stop.

Input: A – 48.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RI_ALLOFF (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Turns off all assigned FM channels.

Input: A – 49.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RI_EVENT (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Convert pitch and turn FM voice on or off.

Input: A – 50.

D – On: interval + 80H (central value: 60).

Off: interval (central value: 60).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RI_PCHB (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets the pitch bender position.

Input: A – 51.

DE – Pitch bender position (the 16 bits are valid in 2's complement, where 7FFFH defines the highest position, 0 the center and 8000H the lowest position)

Output: None.

Registers: All.

Note: This function calls RCA_PARAM (38) internally.

RI_PCHBR (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets the degree to which the pitch bender will give the pitch.

Input: A – 52.

C – Degree (0 to 12 times).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RIA_PARAM (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Adjusts real-time parameters for active FM voice. The parameters that can be adjusted by this function are YCA_TRANS and YCA_VOL.

Input: A – 53.

IY – MIDB pointer indicating master/slave.

C – Parameter offset in CHDB.

DE – Configuration parameters.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RIA_VOICE (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Assigns an instrument number to an FM channel.

Input: A – 54.

IY – MIDB pointer indicating master/slave and for the FM voice to be assigned.

C – Instrument number (0 to 63).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RIA_VPARAM (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets the parameters of an FM channel.

Input: A – 55.
 IY – MIDB pointer indicating master/slave and for the FM voice to be assigned.
 C – Parameter offset in CHDB.
 DE – Configuration parameters.

The following parameters can be set by this function:

CAO0_LS	CAO1_LS	YCAO0_MULTI
CAO0_AR	YCAO1_AR	CAO1_MULTI
CAO0_RR	YCAO1_RR	YCA_VTRANS
CAO0_VELS	YCAO1_VELS	YCA_FB
CAO0_VTL	YCAO1_VTL	

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RIA_VOICEP (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets an instrument to an FM channel.

Input: A – 56.
 IY – MIDB pointer indicating master/slave and for the FM voice to be defined.
 BC – Instrument data address.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RM_MOVE_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Transfer PCM/ADPCM data between devices.

Input: A – 0.
 IX – PDB address indicating the origin. The following fields are relevant:
 PDB_DEV (Device Number)
 PDB_ADDR (Starting address)
 PDB_SIZE (Transfer Data Size)
 IY – PDB address indicating the destination. The following fields are relevant:
 PDB_DEV (Device Number)
 PDB_ADDR (Starting address)

Output: CY = 1 → transfer error.

Registers: All.

RM_READ_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Transfers 256 bytes of PCM/ADPCM data to RAM.

Input: A – 26

DE – Destination address in RAM.

IX – PDB address indicating the origin. The following fields are relevant:

PDB_DEV (Device Number)

PDB_ADDR (Starting address)

Output: CY = 1 → transfer error.

Registers: All.

RM_WRITE_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Transfers 256 bytes of data from RAM to PCM/ADPCM.

Input: A – 27.

DE – Source address in RAM.

IX – PDB address indicating the destination. The following fields are relevant:

PDB_DEV (Device Number)

PDB_ADDR (Starting address)

Output: CY = 1 → transfer error.

Registers: All.

RM_TRACE_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Track ADPCM data based on initial prediction value and quantize width to find the next predicted value and next quantize width.

Input: A – 1.

C – Mode to start tracking:

0 – initial forecast at 8000H and quantization width at 007FH. The following data must be specified in the PDB:

PDB_DEV (device number)

PDB_ADDR (initial address)

PDB_SIZE (transfer size)

1 – initial prediction and quantization width specified in the PDB. In addition to the data for C=0, the following must also be specified:

PDB_PCM (initial predicted value)

PDB_STEP (initial quantization width)

Output: The following fields return valid in the PDB:

- PDB_ADDR (next start address)
- PDB_PCM (next expected value)
- PDB_STEP (next quantization width)
- If CY = 1, there was an error in the trace.

Registers: All.

RM_CONV_PCM_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Convert ADPCM data to PCM data based on initial prediction value and quantize width.

Input: A - 2.

C - Mode to start tracking:

- 0 → initial forecast at 8000H and quantization width at 007FH.
- 1 → initial prediction and quantization width specified in the PDB.

IX - Source PDB address with ADPCM data. The following fields must be completed:

- PDB_DEV (device number)
- PDB_ADDR (initial address)
- PDB_SIZE (conversion value)
- PDB_SAMPLE (sampling frequency)

- If C=1, also fill in:

- PDB_PCM (initial predicted value)
- PDB_STEP (initial quantization width)

IY - Destination PDB address with PCM data. The following fields must be completed:

- PDB_DEV (device number)
- PDB_ADDR (initial address)

Output: The following fields return valid in the source PDB:

- PDB_PCM (next expected value)
- PDB_STEP (next quantization width)
- If CY = 1, there was an error in the conversion.

Registers: All.

RM_CONV_ADPCM_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Convert PCM data to ADPCM data based on initial prediction value and quantize width for ADPCM data.

- Input:
- A – 3.
 - C – Mode to start tracking:
 - 0 → initial forecast at 8000H and quantization width at 007FH.
 - 1 → initial prediction and quantization width specified in the PDB.
 - IX – Address of the source PDB with PCM data. The following fields must be completed:
 - PDB_DEV (device number)
 - PDB_ADDR (initial address)
 - PDB_SIZE (conversion value)
 - PDB_SAMPLE (sampling frequency)
 - If C=1, also fill in:
 - PDB_PCM (initial predicted value)
 - PDB_STEP (initial quantization width)
 - IY – Destination PDB address with ADPCM data. The following fields must be completed:
 - PDB_DEV (device number)
 - PDB_ADDR (initial address)
- Output: The following fields return valid in the source PDB:
- PDB_SIZE (size after conversion)
 - PDB_SAMPLE (copy of sampling freq. from PCM source)
 - PDB_PCM (next expected value)
 - PDB_STEP (next quantization width)
 - If CY = 1, there was an error in the conversion.
- Registers: All.

RM_DAC_BIAS (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets the volume for PCM playback (sets the 17H register of the Y8950).

- Input:
- A – 4.
 - IY – MIDB pointer indicating master/slave and PCM channel (device) 0 or 1.
 - C – Volume (1 to 7). Volume 7 is the maximum.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RMA_DAC_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Play PCM data.

Input: A – 5.
 IY – Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.
 C – Filter specification (see ZMA_PH_FILTER).
 IX – PDB address with reproduction data. The following fields must be defined:
 PDB_DEV (device number)
 PDB_ADDR (initial address)
 PDB_SIZE (size)
 PDB_SAMPLE (sampling frequency)

Output: CY = 1 → playback error.

Registers: All.

RMA_ADC_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Write PCM data.

Input: A – 6.
 IY – Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.
 C – Filter specification (see ZMA_PH_FILTER).
 IX – PDB address with recording data. The following fields must be defined:
 PDB_DEV (device number)
 PDB_ADDR (initial address)
 PDB_SIZE (size)
 PDB_SAMPLE (sampling frequency)

Output: CY = 1 → write error.

Registers: All.

RMA_ADPCM_BIAS (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Sets the volume for ADPCM playback.

Input: A – 7.
 IY – MIDB pointer indicating master/slave and PCM channel (device) 0 or 1.
 C – Volume (0 to 63). Volume 63 is the maximum.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RMA_ADPLAY_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Play ADPCM data in non-local mode.

Input: A – 8.
 IY – Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.
 C – Filter specification (see ZMA_PH_FILTER).

IX – PDB address with reproduction data. The following fields must be defined:

PDB_DEV (device number)

PDB_ADDR (initial address)

PDB_SIZE (size)

PDB_SAMPLE (sampling frequency)

Output: CY = 1 → playback error.

Registers: All.

RMA_ADPLAY_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Record ADPCM audio in non-local mode.

Input: A – 9.

IY – Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.

C – Filter specification (see ZMA_PH_FILTER).

IX – PDB address with recording data. The following fields must be defined:

PDB_DEV (device number)

PDB_ADDR (initial address)

PDB_SIZE (size)

PDB_SAMPLE (sampling frequency)

Output: CY = 1 → write error.

Registers: All.

RMA_ADPAY_SAMPLE (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Changes the sampling frequency during playback in local mode.

Input: A – 43.

IY – Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.

DE – Frequency of sampling.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RMA_BREAK (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Stop recording or playback in local mode.

Input: A – 10.

IY – Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RMA_ADPLAY (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Play ADPCM data in local mode.

Input: A - 11.
 IY - Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.
 C - Filter specification (see ZMA_PH_FILTER).
 IX - PDB address with reproduction data. The following fields must be defined:
 PDB_DEV (device number)
 PDB_ADDR (initial address)
 PDB_SIZE (size)
 PDB_SAMPLE (sampling frequency)

Output: CY = 1 → playback error.
 Registers: All.

RMA_ADREC (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Play ADPCM data in local mode.

Input: A - 12.
 IY - Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.
 C - Filter specification (see ZMA_PH_FILTER).
 IX - PDB address with recording data. The following fields must be defined:
 PDB_DEV (device number)
 PDB_ADDR (initial address)
 PDB_SIZE (size)
 PDB_SAMPLE (sampling frequency)

Output: CY = 1 → write error.
 Registers: All.

RMA_ADPLAYLP (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Play ADPCM data in local loop mode. At the end, playback resumes indefinitely. To break, execute RMA_BREAK (Function 10).

Input: A - 42.
 IY - Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.
 C - Filter specification (see ZMA_PH_FILTER).
 IX - PDB address with reproduction data. The following fields must be defined:
 PDB_DEV (device number)
 PDB_ADDR (initial address)
 PDB_SIZE (size)
 PDB_SAMPLE (sampling frequency)

Output: CY = 1 → playback error.
 Registers: All.

RMA_PHASE_SET_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Take 256 bytes of PCM data in main RAM as waveform data, convert to ADPCM data and store in external RAM.

Ext RAM adr	Pitch	No. waveforms
0000H~07FFH	24H~36H	16
0800H~0FFFH	37H~42H	32
1000H~17FFH	43H~4EH	64
1800H~1FFFH	4FH~5AH	128

Input: A - 13.
 IY - Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.
 C - Filter specification (see ZMA_PH_FILTER).
 DE - PCM data address.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

Note: Before conversion, RMA_BREAK (Func. 10) is executed.

RMA_PHASE_EG (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Define the wrap data.

Input: A - 14.
 IY - Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.
 DE - Envelope data address (7 bytes):
 +0 Timer#1 value
 +1 Total level
 +2 Attack rate
 +3 Decay rate#1
 +4 Sustain Level
 +5 Decay rate#2
 +6 Release rate

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RMA_PHASE_EVENT (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: Turn on sampling of the specified tone or turn off keyboard sampling simulation.

Input: A - 115.
 IY - Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.
 D - On: interval + 80H (central value: 60).
 Off: interval (central value: 60).
 Valid range is 24H~5AH.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

RMA_CSM_DI (00AEH/MBIOS)

Function: CSM data playback.

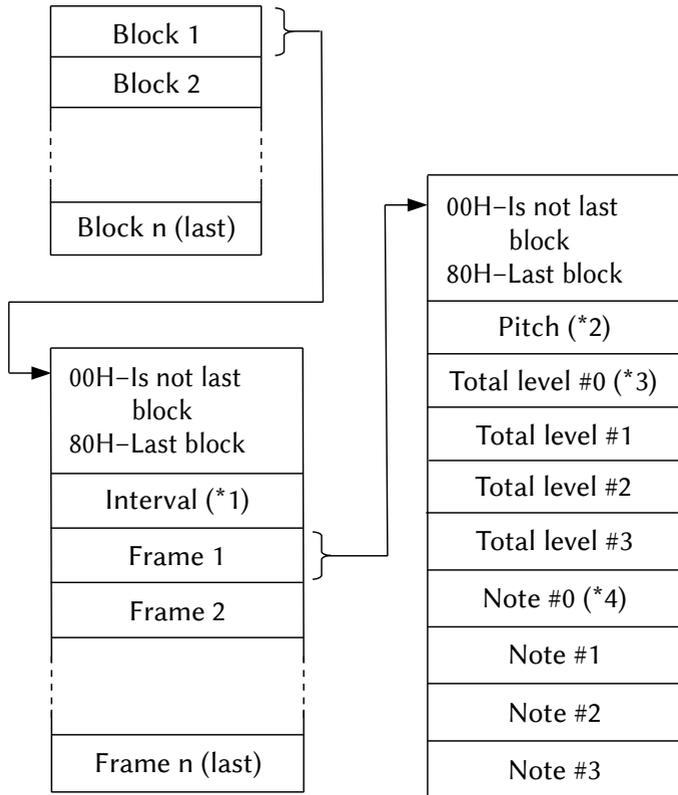
Input: A – 25.

IY – Pointer to MIDB indicating master/slave.

B – Volume (0 to 127, where 0 is the maximum volume).

C – Filter specification (see ZMA_PH_FILTER).

DE – Address of the CSM data, which have the following structure:

(*1) Interval: Timer 2 $\rightarrow 0 = 81.9 \text{ mS} / 255 = 0.32 \text{ mS}$ (*2) Pitch: Timer 1 $\rightarrow 0 = 20.9 \text{ mS} / 255 = 0.08 \text{ mS}$

(*3) Total level (volume data for each channel):

0 = maximum / 127 = minimum

(*4) Note (pitch data for each channel).

The upper 4 bits specify the octave from 0 to 7 and the lower 4 bits specify the scale. Values are:

00 – C#	08 – G
01 – D	09 – G#
02 – D#	10 – A
03 – None	11 – None
04 – E	12 – A#
05 – F	13 – B
06 – F#	14 – C
07 – None	15 – None

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SV_IRQ (00B4H/MBIOS)

Function: MSX-Audio interrupt handling (must configure HKEYI hook (FD9AH)).

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

9.5.6 – MSX-JE

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Access extended BIOS functions

Input: A – 00H.

D – 16H – MSX-JE manipulation device.

E – 00H – Returns the pointer to the table of input addresses of the MSX-JE routines.

B – Address table slot ID.

HL – Address of a 64-byte buffer for the table (should be on page 3).

Output: CY = 1 → there is no MSX-JE.

CY = 0 → HL is incremented by 4 for each MSX-JE found and will point to the end of a table that reserves 4 bytes for each MSX-JE. The original value of HL points to the beginning of the table, which has the following structure:

+00H – Capacity vector

+01H – Slot ID

+02H – Lowest address

+03H – Highest address

The capacity vector byte has the following structure:

Bit 0 – 0 → MSX-JE compatible

1 → incompatible

Bit 1 – 0 → there is virtual terminal interface

1 → there is no interface

Bit 2 – 0 → dictionary interface exists

1 → there is no dictionary

Bit 3 – 0 → there is register and deletion function.

1 → there is no register and deletion function.

bit 4~bit 7 → always 0.

Slot ID (+01H) and address (+02H,+03H) specify the entry point for MSX-JE functions. The call must be made through the CALSLT (0030H) routine of the Main-ROM, placing the function number in register A.

Registers: All.

9.5.6.1 – Calling MSX-JE functions

INQUIRY (Function 01H / MSX-JE)

Function: Returns the size of the desktop.

Input: A – 01H.

Output: HL – Maximum desktop size limit used by MSX-JE.
DE – Lower limit on the size of the desktop used by MSX-JE.
BC – Minimum size required for MSX-JE to use learning function

INVOKE (Function 02H / MSX-JE)

Function: Initializes the desktop.

Input: A – 02H.

HL – Address of the desktop protected by the AP.
DE – Size of the working area protected by the AP.

Output: None.

RELEASE (Function 03H / MSX-JE)

Function: Frees the memory protected by the AP.

Input: A – 03H.

HL – Address of the desktop protected by the AP.

Output: None.

CLEAR (Function 04H / MSX-JE)

Function: Clears the buffer for Kana – Kanji conversion.

Input: A – 04H.

HL – Address of the desktop protected by the AP.

Output: None.

SET_TTB (Function 05H / MSX-JE – Optional)

Function: Pass the text and read the data to be converted from the AP to the MSX-JE, configuring them in the MSX-JE's internal buffer. This function causes MSX-JE to reconvert the given text.

Input: A – 05H.

HL – Desktop address.

DE – Address of the text to be converted again.

BC – TTB (Transferable Text Block) address.

Output: A = 255 → function not supported.

DISPATCH (Function 06H / MSX-JE – Optional)

Function: Pass CPU control from AP to MSX-JE.

Input: A – 06H.

HL – Desktop address.

Output: HL – STB (Screen image Text Block) address.

A – Return status:

bit 0 = 1 → the AP displays the STB.

bit 1 = 1 → AP can get conversion result.

bit 2 = 1 → MSX-JE conversion finished.

Possible states with the combined bits:

000 – MSX-JE ignores the key (no key entry).

001 – Entry or conversion in progress.

01x – Partial conversion made.

10x – Conversion stopped and finished.

11x – Fully converted.

GET_RESULT (Function 07H / MSX-JE)

Function: Returns the result of the conversion.

Input: A – 07.

HL – Desktop address.

Output: HL – Start address of the conversion result, ending with a 00H byte.

GET_TTB (Function 08H / MSX-JE – Optional)

Function: Acquires text data obtained by GET_RESULT.

Check-in: A – 08.

HL – Desktop address.

Output: HL – TTB (Transferable Text Block) address. If this function is not supported, (HL) will point to a 00H byte.

INQUIRY_WINDOW_SIZE (Function 09H / MSX-JE – Optional)

Function: Defines the window format.

Input: A – 09:00.

HL – desktop address.

E – maximum length of the “tail”.

B – maximum height of the window.

C – maximum width of the window.

Output: HL – address of window specification data.

+00H – Type of window:

1 – Independent.

2 – “tail”.

+01H – Window width (1~255).

+02H – Window height (1~255).

CONFLICT_DETECT (Function 0AH / MSX-JE – Optional)

Function: Avoid key collision conflicts.

Input: A – 0AH.

HL – Desktop address.

Output: A – 00H → conflict not detected.

FFH → conflict detected.

9.5.6.2 – MSX-JE dictionary interface**HAN_ZEN** (Function 40H)

Function: Converts a one-byte character string to a two-byte character string.

Input: A - 40H.
 HL - Desktop address.
 DE - Source string address (one byte).
 BC - Address of the two-byte character string.

Output: A = 0 → successful conversion.
 A ≠ 0 → conversion error.

ZEN_HAN (Function 41H / MSX-JE)

Function: Converts a two-byte character string to a one-byte character string.

Input: A - 41H.
 HL - Desktop address.
 DE - Source string address (two byte).
 BC - Address of one-byte character string.

Output: A = 0 → successful conversion.
 A ≠ 0 → conversion error.

HAN_KATA (Function 42H / MSX-JE)

Function: Converts a one-byte character string from the roman alphabet, katakana, or a combination thereof to a two-byte katakana character string.

Input: A - 42H.
 HL - Desktop address.
 DE - Source string address (one byte).
 BC - Address of the katakana character string.

Output: A = 0 → successful conversion.
 A ≠ 0 → conversion error.

HAN_HIRA (Function 43H / MSX-JE)

Function: Converts a one-byte character string from the roman alphabet, katakana, or a combination thereof to a two-byte hiragana character string.

Input: A - 43H.
 HL - Desktop address.
 DE - Source string address (one byte).
 BC - Address of the hiragana character string.

Output: A = 0 → successful conversion.
 A ≠ 0 → conversion error.

KATA_HIRA (Function 44H / MSX-JE)

Function: Converts a two-byte katakana character string to a two-byte hiragana character string.

Input: A - 44H.

HL - Desktop address.

DE - Address of the two-byte katakana string.

BC - Address of the hiragana character string.

Output: A = 0 → successful conversion.

A ≠ 0 → conversion error.

HIRA_KATA (Function 45H / MSX-JE)

Function: Converts a two-byte hiragana character string to a two-byte katakana character string.

Input: A - 45H.

HL - Desktop address.

DE - Address of the two-byte katakana string.

BC - Address of the hiragana character string.

Output: None.

OPEN_DIC (Function 46H / MSX-JE)

Function: Reserved for future expansions.

Input: A - 46H.

HL - Desktop address.

DE - 0000H

Output: A - Always returns 5.

HENKAN (Function 47H / MSX-JE)

Function: Converts a 2-byte katakana and hiragana character string to a mixed Kanji-Kana string.

Input: A - 47H.

HL - Desktop address.

DE - Address of the string katakana/hiragana.

Output: A - Number of possible conversions. If there is none, it returns 0. The converted strings must be obtained by the JI_KOHO (48H) function.

JI_KOHO (Function 48H / MSX-JE)

Function: Acquires the next conversion obtained by HENKAN (47H).

Input: A - 48H.
 HL - Desktop address.
 DE - Address of the next converted Kanji-Kana string.
 BC - Secondary Kanji-Kana string address.

Output: A = 0 → No Kanji-Kana conversion acquired.
 A > 0 → Acquired Kanji-Kana conversion number.

ZEN_KOHO (Function 49H / MSX-JE)

Function: Acquires the previous conversion obtained by HENKAN (47H).

Input: A - 49H.
 HL - Desktop address.
 DE - Address of the former Kanji-Kana string converted.
 BC - Secondary Kanji-Kana string address.

Output: A = 0 → No Kanji-Kana conversion acquired.
 A > 0 → Acquired Kanji-Kana conversion number.

JI_BLOCK (4AH Function / MSX-JE)

Function: Creates a lower priority Kanji-Kana conversion group next to the main group.

Input: A - 4AH.
 HL - desktop address.

Output: A = 0 → group not created.
 A > 0 → number of lowest priority Kanji-Kana conversions.

ZEN_BLOCK (4BH Function / MSX-JE)

Function: Creates a higher priority Kanji-Kana conversion group next to the main group.

Input: A - 4BH.
 HL - Desktop address.

Output: A = 0 → Group not created.
 A > 0 → Highest priority number of Kanji-Kana conversions.

KAKUTEI1 (4CH Function)

Function: Confirms the result of Kanji-Kana conversion.

Input: A - 4CH.
 HL - Desktop address.
 E - Kanji-Kana conversion number within the group.
 BC - Kanji-Kana translation buffer address.

Output: BC - 0AH + "natto curry".

KAKUTEI2 (4DH Function)

Function: Confirms the result of Kanji-Kana conversion.

Input: A - 4DH.

HL - Desktop address.

E - Kanji-Kana conversion number within the group

BC - Kanji-Kana translation buffer address.

Output: A - Size in bytes of the Kanki-Kana string.

BC - 04H + "natto".

CLOSE_DIC (4EH Function)

Function: Function not implemented.

Input: A - 4EH.

Output: A - Always 0.

TOUROKU (4FH Function)

Function: Provides reading data, word data and part of text, and includes the specified word in the dictionary.

Input: A - 4FH.

HL - Desktop address.

DE - Read buffer address.

BC - Address of word inclusion buffer.

Output: A - 00H → word successfully added.

01H → insufficient free space.

02H → word parity overflow.

04H → incorrect reading data.

08H → incorrect word data.

10H → part of text is incorrect.

FFH → not supported.

SAKUJO (50H Function)

Function: Provides reading data, word data and part of text excluding the specified word from the dictionary.

Input: A - 50H.

HL - Desktop address.

DE - Read buffer address.

BC - Address of the word exclusion buffer.

Output: A - 00H → word successfully deleted.
 01H → word to be deleted was not found.
 04H → incorrect reading data.
 08H → incorrect word data.
 10H → part of text is incorrect.
 FFH → not supported.

9.5.7 – MSX UNAPI

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = 00H – Gets the number of implementations of the specified API.
 A > 00H → Returns the parameters of the specified API.
 D = 22H → MSX UNAPI manipulation device.
 E = 22H → Returns data from the specified API.
 (F487H) – API specification identifier, which must be an alphanumeric string of up to 15 characters ending in 00H, not case sensitive.

Output: A = 00H → B – Number of implementations of the specified API.
 A > 00H → A – Implementation routine slot ID.
 B – Implementation mapper segment (FFH = not in the mapper).
 HL – Entry point address of the implementation routines (if it is on physical page 3, the values of A and B are disregarded).

Registers: AF, BC, HL.

9.5.7.1 – RAM Helper

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = FFH → API: RAM helper
 D = 22H → MSX UNAPI manipulation device.
 E = 22H → Returns API parameters.
 HL = 0000H

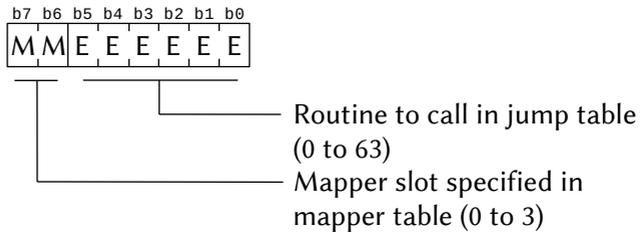
Output: HL = 0000H → RAM helper not installed.
 HL > 0000H → HL = Jump table address on page 3.
 BC – Address of the mapping table.
 A – Number of entries in the jump table, which has the following structure:
 +00H CALMAP calls routine mapper
 +03H RDBYTE reads byte from RAM
 +06H CALSEG calls routine in RAM

Registers: AF, BC, HL.

CALMAP (HL+00H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Calls a routine on a mapped RAM segment.
 Input: IYh – Slot ID.
 IYl – Mapper segment number.
 IX – Routine address (must be on physical page 1).
 AF, BC, DE, HL – Parameters for the called routine.
 Output: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY – Routine return parameters.
 Registers: Depends on the called routine.

RDBYTE (HL+03H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Reads a byte from a segment of the mapped RAM.
 Input: A – Slot ID.
 B – Segment number.
 HL – Address to be read (highest two bits are ignored).
 Output: A – byte read at specified address.
 Registers: A.

CALSEG (HL+06H) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Calls a routine a segment of the mapped RAM using inline parameters.
 Input: AF, BC, DE and HL can contain parameters for the called routine (do not use IX and IY).
 Inline call parameters, in the following format:
 CALL <routine address>
 DB <routine ID>
 DB <segment number>
 Routine ID:



- The jump table starts at address 4000H, where index 0 means 4000H, index 1 means 4003H, and so on up to the value 63, every three bytes.
- The mapper table occupies 8 bytes, reserving two bytes for each mapper, being able to manage up to 4 mappers (0 to 3), and has the following structure:
 - +0 – Slot ID of first mapper
 - +1 – Number segments available in the 1st mapper
 - +2 – Second mapper slot ID
 - +3 – Number segments available in the 2nd mapper
 - +4 – Third mapper slot ID
 - +5 – Number segments available on the 3rd mapper
 - +6 – Fourth mapper slot ID
 - +7 – Number segments available on the 4th mapper

Note: if the mapper has 4 Mbytes, the number of segments will be FEH, since the FFH value has been reserved for the system.

Output: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX and IY can contain valid values.

Registers: Depends on the called routine.

9.5.7.2 – API for Ethernet cartridges

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = 00H → Gets the number of implementations of the specified API.

A > 00H → Returns the parameters of the specified API.

D = 22H → MSX UNAPI manipulation device.

E = 22H → Returns data from the specified API.

(F487H) – "ETHERNET"

Output: A = 00H → B – Number of API implementations.
 A > 00H → A – Implementation routine slot ID.
 B – Implementation mapper segment
 (FFH = not in the mapper).
 HL – Entry point address of the implementation routines
 (if it is on physical page 3, the values of A and B are
 disregarded).

Registers: AF, BC, HL.

ETH_GETINFO (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Returns the version and name of the implementation.

Input: A = 0.

Output: HL – Implementation name string address.
 B – Version of the API implementation (primary).
 C – Version of the API implementation (secondary).
 D – API version specification (primary).
 E – API version specification (secondary).

Registers: All.

ETH_RESET (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Returns the hardware and state variables to their initial
 condition (condition right after computer reset).

Input: A = 1.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

ETH_GET_HWADD (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Returns Ethernet address.

Input: A = 2.

Output: L-H-E-D-C-B – Address.

Registers: All.

ETH_GET_NETSTAT (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Checks the network connection status.

Input: A = 3.

Output: A = 0 → no connection to an active network.
 1 → there is an active network connection.

Registers: All.

ETH_NET_ONOFF (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO

Function: Enables or disables the network.

Input: A = 4.

B = 0 → returns the current networking state.

1 → enable networking.

2 → disable networking.

Output: A = 1 → network enabled.

2 → network disabled.

Registers: All.

ETH_DUPLEX (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO

Function: Sets duplex mode.

Input: A = 5.

B = 0 → returns to current mode.

1 → select half-duplex mode.

2 → selects full-duplex mode.

Output: A = 1 → half-duplex mode selected.

2 → half-duplex mode selected.

3 → unknown mode or duplex mode is not applicable.

ETH_FILTERS (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO

Function: Configures frame reception filters.

Input: A = 6.

B = bit 7 – 0 → no action.

1 → returns current setting.

bit 6 – reserved.

bit 5 – reserved.

bit 4 – 0 → disable promiscuous mode.

1 → enable promiscuous mode.

bit 3 – reserved.

bit 2 – 0 → reject “broadcast” frames.

1 → accepts “broadcast” frames.

bit 1 – 0 → reject frames smaller than 64 bytes.

1 → accept frames smaller than 64 bytes.

bit 0 – Reserved.

Output: A = filter configuration after execution (same format as register B on input).

Registers: All.

ETH_IN_STATUS (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Checks the availability of received frames.

Input: A = 7.

Output: A – 0 → No incoming frames available.
 1 → At least one received frame is available.
 BC – Oldest frame size available.
 HL – Bytes 12 and 13 of the oldest frame available.

Registers: All.

ETH_GET_FRAME (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Recovers the oldest frame.

Input: A = 8.

 HL = 0 → Discard the frame.
 Other value → frame destination address.

Output: A – 0 → Frame retrieved or discarded.
 1 → There are no received frames available.
 BC – Retrieved frame size.

ETH_SEND_FRAME (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Sends a frame.

Input: A = 9.

 HL – Destination address of the frame in memory.
 BC – Frame size.
 D – Execution mode: 0 – Synchronous.
 1 – Asynchronous.

Output: A – 0 → Frame sent or transmission started.
 1 → Invalid frame size.
 2 → Ignored.
 3 → Lost carrier.
 4 → Excessive number of collisions.
 5 → Asynchronous mode not supported.

Registers: All.

ETH_OUT_STATUS (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Recovers the oldest frame.

Input: A = 10.

Output: A – 0 → no frame sent since last reset.
 1 → transmitting at this time.

- 2 → transmission completed successfully.
- 3 → lost carrier.
- 4 → excessive number of collisions.

Registers: All.

ETH_SET_HWADD (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Selects Ethernet address.

Input: A = 11.

L-H-E-D-C-B – Ethernet address to be set.

Output: L-H-E-D-C-B – Ethernet address after execution.

Registers: All.

9.5.8 – MemMan

EXTBIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = 00H

D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.

E = 32H – Returns information about alternative inputs for MemMan functions.

B – 0 → Input address for FastUse0 (func. 0)

1 → Input address for FastUse1 (func. 1)

2 → Input address for FastUse2 (func. 2)

3 → Input address for FastTsrCall (fn. 63)

4 → Input address for BasicCall

5 → Input address for FastCurSeg (fn. 32)

6 → Input address for handler of MemMan functions

7 → Returns MemMan version (VerMM:#H.L)

8 → Input address for FastXTsrCall (f. 61)

Output: HL – Address or version.

Registers: All.

9.5.8.1 – Fast Calls (Preferred alternative entries)

FastUse0 (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIOS

Function: Enables a segment on physical page 0 (0000H~3FFFH).

Enabling is only possible if the segment contains the entry points to the standard slot switching routines.

Input: HL – Segment number.
 Output: A – 00H → segment enabled successfully.
 FFH → segment enable failed.
 Note: This function is identical to function 0 (Use0).

FastUse1 (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO
 Function: Enables a segment on physical page 1 (4000H~7FFFH).
 Input: HL – Segment number.
 Output: A – 00H → segment enabled successfully.
 FFH → segment enable failed.
 Note: This function is identical to function 1 (Use1).

FastUse2 (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO
 Function: Enables a segment on physical page 2(8000H~BFFFFH).
 Input: HL – Segment number.
 Output: A – 00H → segment enabled successfully.
 FH → segment enable failed.
 Note: This function is identical to function 2 (Use2).

FastTsrCall (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO
 Function: Calls a TSR driver routine.
 Input: BC – TSR function ID code.
 AF, DE, HL – Parameters for the TSR.
 Output: AF, BC, DE, HL – TSR return parameters.
 Note: This function is identical to function 63 (TsrCall), except
 here the DE register can be used without problems.

BasicCall (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO
 Function: Calls a routine from Main-ROM.
 Input: IX – Routine address on physical page 0 or 1.
 AF, BC, DE, HL – Parameters to be passed to the routine.
 Output: AF, BC, DE, HL – Routine return parameters.
 Note: Interrupts are disabled.

FastCurSeg (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTPIO
 Function: Returns the current segment number of a page.
 Input: B – Physical page (0, 1, 2 or 3).

Output: HL – Segment number.
 A – Type of segment: 00H → PSEG.
 FFH → FSEG.

Note: This function is identical to function 32 (CurSeg).

MemMan (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Directly call a MemMan function.
 Input: E – Function number.
 AF, BC, HL – Parameters to be passed to the routine.
 Output: AF, BC, DE, HL – Routine return parameters.

VerMM (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Returns the MemMan version number.
 Input: None.
 Output: HL – “H.L” format version.

FastXTsrCall (HL/ExtBIOS) – HL value obtained via EXTBIO
 Function: Calls driver input from a TSR.
 Input: IX – ID code of the called TSR input.
 AF, BC, DE, HL – Parameters to be passed to the routine.
 Output: AF, BC, DE, HL – Routine return parameters.
 Note: This function is identical to function 61 (XtrsCall).

9.5.8.2 – MemMan Functions

Use0 (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIO
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 00H – Use0 function. Enables a segment on physical page 0 (0000H~3FFFH). Enabling is only possible if the segment contains the entry points to the standard slot switching routines.
 HL – segment number.
 Output: A – 00H → segment enabled successfully.
 FFH → segment enable failed.
 Note: Preferably use the FastUse0 input of the 32H function (Info) of MemMan.

Use1 (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIOS

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = 00H.

D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.

E = 01H – Use0 function. Enables a segment on physical page 1 (4000H~7FFFH).

HL – segment number.

Output: A – 00H → segment enabled successfully.

FFH → segment enable failed.

Note: Preferably use the FastUse1 input of the 32H function (Info) of MemMan.

Use2 (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIOS

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = 00H.

D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.

E = 02H – Use2 function. Enables a segment on physical page 2 (8000H~BFFFH).

HL – segment number.

Output: A – 00H → segment enabled successfully.

FFH → segment enable failed.

Note: Preferably use the FastUse2 input of the 32H function (Info) of MemMan.

Alloc (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIOS

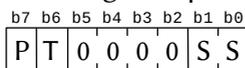
Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = 00H.

D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.

E = 0AH – Alloc function. Allocates a segment.

B – Segment preference code:



Segment type:

00–PSEG0000 10–PSEG8000

01–PSEG4000 11–FSEG

1 – Prefer TPA (Standard MSXDOS RAM).

1 – Prefer not expanded slot.

Output: HL – Segment number (0000H → no segments free).

- SetRes** (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIO
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 0BH – SetRes function. Assigns to a segment the
 “reserved” status.
 HL – Segment number.
 Output: None.
- DeAlloc** (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIO
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 14H – DeAlloc function. Frees a segment.
 HL – Segment number.
 Output: None.
- IniChk** (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIO
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = Control code.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 1EH – IniChk function. Start MemMan before
 a program.
 Output: A – Control code + “M”.
 DE – Version number in “D:E” format.
- Status** (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIO
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 1FH – Status Function. Return status information
 of MemMan.
 Output: HL – Number of segments available.
 BC – Number of free segments.
 DE – Number of segments controlled simultaneously
 through MemMan and DOS2.
 A – Hardware connection status:
 bit0 – 0 → DOS2 mapper support not available.
 1 → DOS2 mapper support installed.
 bit1~bit 7 → always 0.

- CurSeg** (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIOS
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 20H – CurSeg function. Returns the segment number on a page.
 B – Physical page number (0, 1, 2 or 3).
 Output: HL – Segment number.
 A – Type of segment: 00H → PSEG.
 FFH → FSEG.
 Note: Preferably use the FastCurSeg entry of the 32H (Info) function of MemMan.
- StoSeg** (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIOS
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 28H – StoSeg function. Stores the state of the current segment.
 HL – Address of a 9-byte buffer.
 Output: None.
- RstSeg** (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIOS
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 29H – RstSeg function. Reactivates the state of a segment that has been stored.
 HL – Address of a 9-byte state buffer.
 Output: None.
- XtsrCall** (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXTBIOS
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 3DH – XTsrCall function. Call an entry from the TSR driver.
 IX = ID code of the called TSR input.
 AF, BC, HL – Parameters to be passed to the routine.

Output: AF, BC, DE, HL – Routine return parameters.
 Note: Preferably use the FastXtrsCall entry of the 32H (Info) function of MemMan.

GetTsrID (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXT BIO
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 3EH - GetTsrID function. Determines the TSR ID code.
 HL – Pointer to TsrName. Unused positions must be padded with spaces.
 Output: CY = 0 → Not found; 1 → ID found.
 BC → TSR ID code.

TsrCall (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXT BIO
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 3FH – TsrCall function. Call an entry from the TSR driver.
 BC – ID code of the called TSR input.
 AF, HL – Parameters to be passed to the routine.
 Output: AF, BC, DE, HL – Routine return parameters.
 Note: Preferably use the FastTrsCall entry of the 32H (Info) function of MemMan.

HeapAlloc (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXT BIO
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.
 Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 46H – HeapAlloc function. Allocates space in the “heap”.
 HL – Size of the space to be allocated.
 Output: HL – 0000H → insufficient memory for allocation.
 Other value → start address of allocated space.

HeapDeAlloc (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXT BIO
 Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 47H – HeapDeAlloc Function. Frees up space allocated in the “heap”.
 HL – Size of the space to be allocated.

Output: None.

HeapMax (FFCAH/Work Area) – Execution via EXT BIO

Function: Accesses extended BIOS functions.

Input: A = 00H.
 D = 4DH – MEMMAN manipulation device.
 E = 48H – HeapMax function. Returns the maximum size of space available in the “heap”.

Output: HL – Available space in the “heap”.

9.5.9 – System commands

EXT BIO (FFCAH/Work Area)

Function: Access extended BIOS functions

Input: A = 00H.
 D = FFH – System Device.
 E = 00H – Returns the starting address, slot ID and manufacturer code of the device.
 B – ID of the slot from the parameter table.
 HL – Address of the parameter table.

Output: CY = 1 → there are no devices.
 0 → there are devices.
 B – ID of the slot from the parameter table.
 HL – Starting address of the parameter table.

Note: Each device occupies 5 bytes in the table pointed to by HL, with the following structure:

- +00H – Reserved. Always 0.
- +01H – Manufacturer code.
- +02H – MSB address of the jump table.
- +03H – LSB address of the jump table.
- +04H – Device slot ID.

Manufacturers are as follows:

- 00 – ASCII
- 01 – Microsoft
- 02 – Canon
- 03 – Casio Computer
- 04 – Fujitsu
- 05 – General Fujitsu
- 06 – Hitachi, Ltd.
- 07 – Kyocera
- 08 – Matsushita (Panasonic)
- 09 – Mitsubishi Electric Corporation
- 10 – NEC
- 11 – Yamaha (Nippon Gakki)
- 12 – Japan Victor Company (JVC)
- 13 – Philips
- 14 – Pioneer
- 15 – Sanyo Electric
- 16 – Sharp Japan
- 17 – Sony
- 18 – Spectravideo
- 19 – Toshiba
- 20 – Mitsumi Electric
- 21 – Telematica
- 22 – Gradient Brazil
- 23 – Sharp do Brasil
- 24 – GoldStar (LG)
- 25 – Daewoo
- 26 – Samsung
- 128 – Image Scanner (Matsushita)
- 170 – Darky (SuperSoniqs)
- 171 – Darky (SuperSoniqs) second setting
- 212 – 1chipMSX / Zemmix Neo (KdL firmware)
- 254 – MPS2 (ASCII)

9.6 – DISC INTERFACE ROUTINES

9.6.1 – Interface Initialization

The routines below are executed only once during the system initialization at power up or after a reset, in the sequence INIHRD, DRIVES, INIENV. Their calling address is different for each interface.

INIHRD (????H/Disk interface).

Function: Initializes the hardware as soon as control is passed to the disk interface cartridge.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

DRIVES (????H/Disk Interface).

Function: Checks the physical drives connected to the system.

Input: Flag Z = 0 → Two logical units are assigned to one physical unit.

1 → Only one logical drive is assigned to a physical drive.

Output: L – Number of connected drives.

Registers: F, HL, IX, IY.

INIENV (????H/Disk Interface).

Function: Initializes the disk interface desktop.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

9.6.2 – Standard interface routines**MALLOC** (01CBH/Disk Interface)

Function: Allocates a buffer for a segment for MSXDOS2.

Input: Number of bytes to reserve.

Output: A > 0 → Allocation error.

A = 0 → Allocation made.

HL – Buffer start address.

(HL-2, HL-1) – Buffer size + 2.

Registers: All.

DEALLOC (2D0FH/Disk Interface)

Function: Reallocates a buffer to a segment for MSXDOS2.

Input: HL – Initial buffer address.

(HL-2, HL-1) → Buffer size + 2.

Output: Unknown.

Registers: All.

DSKIO (4010H/Disk Interface)

Function: Direct reading/writing of sectors.

Input: HL – Pointer to TPA (clipboard).

DE – Number of the first sector to read
or write.

B – Number of sectors to read or write.

A – Drive number (0=A:, 1=B:, 2=C:, etc).

C – Disk formatting ID:

F0H – 63 sectors per track (for HD's).

F8H – 80 tracks, 9 sectors per track, single face.

F9H – 80 tracks, 9 sectors per track, double sided.

FAH – 80 tracks, 8 sectors per track, single face.

FBH – 80 tracks, 8 sectors per track, double sided.

FCH – 40 tracks, 9 sectors per track, single face.

FDH – 40 tracks, 9 sectors per track, double sided.

CY = 0 → reading.

1 → writing

Output: B – Number of sectors effectively transferred.

CY = 1 → Transfer successfully executed.

0 → Transfer error. The error code is returned in
register A.

A – Error code:

00 – Write protected.

02 – Not ready.

04 – CRC error (sector not accessible).

06 – Seek error.

08 – Record not found.

10 – Write fault.

12 – Other errors.

MSXDOS2 or higher only:

18 – Not a DOS disk.

20 – Incorrect MSXDOS version.

22 – Unformatted disk.

24 – Disk swapped.

Remaining: disk error.

Registers: All.

DSKCHG (4013H/Disk Interface)

Function: Check the swap status of the disk.

Input: A – Drive number (0=A:, 1=B:, 2=C:, etc).
 B – Always 00H.
 C – Disk formatting ID (same as DISKIO/4010H).
 HL – Pointer for the respective DPB.

Output: CY = 0 → successfully verified.
 CY = 1 → execution error.
 A – Error code (same as DISKIO/4010H).
 B – 00H → unknown state.
 01H → disk not exchanged.
 FFH → disk swapped.

Registers: All.

GETDPB (4016H/Disk Interface)

Function: Return the disk drive DPB.

Input: A – Drive number
 B – First byte of FAT (disk ID).
 C – Disk formatting ID (same as DISKIO/4010H).
 HL – Pointer to the DPB to be filled (18 bytes).

Output: HL – DPB initial address filled in:

+00H	DRIVE	Drive number (0=A:, etc)
+01H	MEDIA	Media Type (F8H~FFH)
+02H	SECSIZ	Sector Size (must be 2^n)
+04H	DIRMSK	(SECSIZ/32) – 1
+05H	DIRSHFT	Number of bits 1 in DIRMSK
+06H	CLUSMSK	(Sectors per cluster) – 1
+07H	CLUSHFT	(Num of 1 bits in CLUSMSK) – 1
+08H	FIRFAT	Logical sector number of 1st FAT
+0AH	FATCNT	Number of FATs
+0BH	MAXENT	Number of root directory entries
+0CH	FIRREC	First sector data area
+0EH	MAXCLUS	(Total of clusters) + 1
+10H	FATSIZ	Number of sectors used
+11H	FIRDIR	First directory sector
+13H	FATDIR	FAT address in RAM

Registers: All.

CHOICE (4019H/Disk Interface)

Function: Returns the address of the disk format message.

Input: None.

Output: HL – Message address, which ends with a 00H byte. If there is no choice (only one formatting type is supported), HL returns 0000H.

Registers: All.

DSKFMT (401CH/Disk Interface)

Function: Format a disk.

Input: A – Choice of formatting by the user (CHOICE /4019H routine). It can range from 1 to 9.

D – Drive number (00H=A:, 01H=B:, etc).

HL – Starting address of the workspace used by the formatting routine.

BC – Size of the workspace used by the formatting routine.

Output: CY – 0 → Formatting completed successfully.
1 → Error during formatting.

A – Error code:

00 – Write protected.

02 – Not ready.

04 – Data error (CRC).

06 – Seek error.

08 – Record not found.

10 – Write fault.

12 – Bad parameter.

14 – Insufficient memory.

16 – Other errors.

Registers: All.

MTROFF (401FH/Disk Interface)

Function: Stop the motor of the drives.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

Note: This function is implemented in only some interfaces. If the interface does not have this function implemented, the value of address 401FH will be 00H. Therefore, it is necessary to verify that the function exists by reading address 401FH before calling it.

CALBAS (4022H/Disk Interface)

Function: Call the BASIC interpreter.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

FORMAT (4025H/Disk Interface)

Function: Format a disk displaying message.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

STPDRV (4029H/Disk Interface)

Function: Stop the motor of the drives.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

SLTDOS (402DH/Disk Interface)

Function: Returns the DOS Kernel slot ID.

Input: None.

Output: A – Slot ID (same as RDSLT (000CH/Main)).

Registers: All.

HIGMEM (4030H/Disk Interface)

Function: Returns the highest address available in RAM.

Input: None.

Output: HL – Address.

Registers: All.

BLKDOS (402DH/Disk Interface)

Function: Returns the current MSXDOS2 block.

Input: None.

Output: A – Current block number (0 to 3).

Registers: All.

Note: The 64 Kbytes of MSXDOS2 Kernel ROM are split into 4 segments that can be active only on physical page 1. Therefore, they are constantly swapped during processing.

9.6.3 – Routines for accessing standard IDE Hard-Disks

IDBYT (7F80H/IDE Interface)

Function: Interface ID in 3 bytes. ("ID#" for IDE interfaces).

RDLBLK (7F89H/IDE Interface)

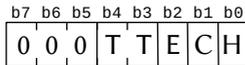
Function: Read logical sectors from disk or device.

Input: CDE – Sector number.

HL – RAM address for read data.

B – Number of sectors to read.

A – Device ID:



- 1- ATA device (hard disk).
- 1- ATAPI dev. (CDROM, etc).
- 0- CHS addressing only.
- 1- supports LBA.
- 00- HDD, ZIP, CF, etc.
- 01- CD-ROM, DVD-ROM.
- 10- reserved.
- 11- reserved.
- Always 0.

Output: HL – Pointer to the read data.

CY = 1 → Read error.

A – Error code for IDE devices:

- 00 – Write protected.
- 02 – Not ready.
- 04 – CRC error (sector not accessible).
- 06 – Seek error.
- 08 – Record not found.
- 10 – Write fault.
- 12 – Other errors.
- MSXDOS2 or higher only:
 - 18 – Not a DOS disk.
 - 20 – Incorrect MSXDOS version.
 - 22 – Unformatted disk.
 - 24 – Disk swapped.
- Remaining: other errors.

Registers: All.

Note: This routine can also read sectors from the CD-ROM, which have 2048 bytes instead of 512 bytes of the HD's.

WRLBLK (7F8CH/IDE Interface)

Function: Write logical sectors of the disk.

Input: CDE – Sector number.

HL – Starting address of the data to be written.

B – Number of sectors to write.

A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Output: CY = 1 → Writing error.

A – Error code. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Registers: All.

SELDEV (7FB9H/IDE Interface)

Function: Select master/slave for ATAPI devices.

Input: A – bit0 = 0 → Master.

1 → Slave.

bit1~bit7: reserved. Always 0.

Output: CY = 1 → time-out error occurs.

Registers: A, BC, IX.

PACKET (7FBCH/IDE Interface)

Function: Send a sequence of ATAPI commands to the selected device.

Input: HL – Pointer to 12-byte ATAPI command packet (cannot be on page 1 – 4000H~7FFFH).

DE – Address for data transfer (if any).

Output: CY = 1 → execution error.

Z = 1 → time-out error.

A = Error code. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Registers: All.

Attention: This entry has different function on SCSI interfaces.

DRVADR (7FBFH/IDE Interface)

Function: Returns the desktop address.

Input: A – Unit number (0 to 7).

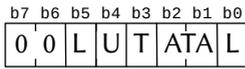
0~5 – Drive number (0=A:~5 = F:)

6 – Device Y Infobytes.

7 – 18 bytes of free space (used internally for sending ATAPI command strings).

Output: HL – Pointer to start of data:

+00H – Device Codebyte:



Partition type:

0 – Master; 1 – Slave.

00 – ATA (=harddisk).

01 – Direct access ATAPI.

10 – ATAPI CDROM.

0 – Media changed.

1 – Media not exchanged.

0 – Partition in use.

1 – Unused/disabled partition.

0 – Drive released.

1 – Drive blocked.

+01H~+03H – Partition start sector (bits 0~23).

+04H~+06H – (Size of partition in sectors) – 1 (bits 0~23).

+07H – Additional information about the partition.

For BIOS 3.0 or higher:

+08H – Partition start sector (bits 24~31).

+08H – (Size of partition in sectors) – 1 (bits 24~31).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX.

9.6.4 - Routines added by NEXTOR

GSLOT1 (402DH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Returns the current driver slot.

Input: None.

Output: A – Slot identifier.

Registers: AF.

Note: This routine cannot be called directly. It must be called through

CALBNK (4042H), as follows:

```
XOR A
```

```
LD IX,GSLOT1
```

```
CALL CALBNK
```

RDBANK (403CH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Reads a byte from any Kernel bank.

Input: A – Bank number.

HL – Address (must be on physical page 1).

Output: A – Byte read.

Registers: AF.

Note: This routine cannot be called directly. It must be called through CALBNK (4042H), as follows:

```
LD A,<bank number>
```

```
LD HL,<byte address>
```

```
LD IX, RDBANK
```

```
CALL CALBNK
```

CALLB0 (403FH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Temporarily switch the Kernel's main bank (usually bank 0, but will be 3 when running in MSX-DOS 1 mode), and then call the routine whose address is in CODE_ADD (F1D0H).

Input: CODE_ADD – Address of the routine to be called.

AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY – Parameters for the routine.

Output: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY – Return data from the routine.

Registrars: All.

CALBNK (4042H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Call routine in another Kernel bank.

Input: A – Bank number.

IX – Routine address (must be on physical page 1).

AF' – Input parameter for the called routine. (will be passed as AF to the called routine).

BC, DE, HL, IY – Parameters for the called routine.

Output: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX, IY – Routine output values.

Registrars: All.

GWORk (4045H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Get the address of the 8-byte SLTWRK input for the past slot or for the current slot on page 1. The first two bytes of this area will contain a pointer to the page 3 work area allocated for this driver (as requested in the routine DRV_INIT), or zero if no workspace has been allocated.

Input: A – Slot number (0 for current slot on page 1).

Output: A – Current page 1 slot (if 0 on input). Unchanged if not 0 in input).

IX – Address of the 8-byte SLTWRK entry

Registers: F

Note: This routine cannot be called directly. It must be called through CALBNK (4042H), as follows:

```
LD A,<slot number or 0>
```

```
EX AF, AF'
```

```
XOR A
```

```
LD IX, GWORK
```

```
CALL CALBNK
```

K_SIZE (40FEH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: This address contains a byte that tells how many banks make up the Kernel Nextor (or alternatively, the driver's first bank number).

CUR_BANK (40FFH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: This address contains a byte with the current bank number. For the first driver bank, this value is the same as K_SIZE and increases by one for each additional driver bank (if any).

CHGBNK (7FD0H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Make the specified bank visible on page 1 of the Z80. This routine is available in all banks, not just bank 0. Normally, the driver code will not need to use this routine, but will use CALBNK instead.

Input: A – Bank number

Output: None

Registers: AF

PROMPT (41E8H / Kernel NEXTOR v2.1.0)

Function: Display the message “Insert disk to drive X: and press a key when ready” and wait for the requested action.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registrars: All.

Note: This routine cannot be called directly. It must be called through CALLB0 (403FH), as follows:

PROMPT: EQU 041E8H

CODE_ADD: EQU 0F1D0H

CALLB0: EQU 0403FH

LD HL, PROMPT

LD (CODE_ADD),HL

CALL CALLB0

NOTE: The “zero-based” drive number is obtained from TARGET (F33FH) and the HPROGRAM hook (F24FH) is called with the “zero-based” drive number in A before the routine is performed.

9.6.4.1 – Routines for disk device drivers

DRV_SIGN (4100H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Valid driver signature. Used by the Kernel at startup to verify that the driver bank contains a valid driver. Consists of the string “NEXTOR_DRIVER”, without the quotes, zero-terminated and capitalized.

DRV_FLAGS (410EH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Flags byte containing driver information:

bit 0: 0 – Drive-based driver.

1 – Device-based driver.

bit 1: Reserved, must be zero.

bit 2: 1 – The driver implements the DRV_CONFIG routine (used by Nextor from version 2.0.5 onwards).

bits 3-7: Reserved, always zero.

RESERVED (410FH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Reserved byte, must be zero.

DRV_NAME (4110H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: String containing the driver name. Must consist of 32 printable ASCII characters (codes 32 to 126). It must be left justified and right padded with spaces.

DRV_TIMI (4130H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Entry point for the driver's interrupt routine, called 50 or 60 times per second depending on the selected VDP frequency. If the driver does not need an interrupt, this entry must be filled with RETs.

This input will only be called if DRV_INIT returns CY=1 on its first run.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

DRV_VERSION (4133H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Return the driver version.

Input: None.

Output: A – Major version number.

B – Minor version number.

C – Revision number.

Registers: All.

DRV_INIT (4136H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Driver initialization routine. Drive-based drivers should return the number of drive units needed in the output of the first run of this routine. Device-based drivers can optionally request an initial number of drives to be allocated at boot time by implementing the DRV_CONFIG routine, thus replacing the automatic mapping procedure. This routine is called by the Kernel twice:

*1. First run, for information gathering.

Input: A = 0.

B = Number of available drive letters.

HL = Maximum Allocable Desktop Size on page 3.

C = Boot Flags:

bit 5: Requests a reduced unit count.

Output: A = Number of drive units controlled (for unit-based drivers only).

HL = Required desktop size on page 3

C = Boot Flags:

bit 5: Requests a reduced unit count.

CY = 1 if DRV_TIMI is to be connected to the interrupt timer do, 0 otherwise.

*two. Second run, for desktop and hardware boot.

Input: A = 1.

B = Number of drive letters actually allocated to this controller.

Registrars: All.

Note: If 8 bytes or less are required, this routine should return HL = 0 on its first run, and the 8-byte space reserved by the system for this slot in SLTWRK should be used as the workspace:

```
XOR A
```

```
EX AF, AF'
```

```
XOR A
```

```
LD IX, GWORK
```

```
CALL CALBNK
```

```
; IX points to desktop
```

```
; of 8 bytes
```

If more than 8 bytes are needed, this routine should return the space needed in HL, getting pointer to the space allocated from the first two bytes of the space reserved by the system for this slot in SLTWRK:

```
XOR A
```

```
EX AF, AF'
```

```
XOR A
```

```
LD IX, GWORK
```

```
CALL CALBNK
```

```
LD L, (IX)
```

```
LD H,(IX+1)
```

```
; Use the space pointed to by HL as
```

```
; workspace
```

```
DRV_BASSTAT (4139H / Kernel NEXTOR)
```

Function: Input to the Extended Instruction Handler

BASIC ("CALLs"). It works in the same way as the standard handlers, except that if the handled instructions have parameters, the MSX BIOS routine CALBAS cannot be used directly; instead, routine CALLB0 on page 0 of the Kernel should be used. If the driver does not handle BASIC extended statements, it must set the transport flag (CY=1) and return.

Input: Depends on the called routine.

Output: Depends on the called routine.

Registers: Depends on the called routine.

CY = 1 if there is no instruction handler.

DRV_BASDEV (413CH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Input to BASIC's Extended Device Handler. It works in the same way as standard handlers. If the driver does not handle BASIC extended devices, it should make CY=1 return.

Input: Depends on the called routine.

Output: Depends on the called routine.

Registers: Depends on the called routine.

CY = 1 if there is no instruction handler.

DRV_EXTBIO (413FH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Extended BIOS Handler. It works in the same way as the standard handlers, except that it must return a value in D'(D in the register set alternatives).

Input: Depends on the called routine.

Output: D' = 0 → Return immediately.

D' = 0 → Execute Kernel and/or Extended System BIOS Handler.

Other registers: Depends on the called routine.

DRV_DIRECT0 (4142H / Kernel NEXTOR)

DRV_DIRECT1 (4145H / Kernel NEXTOR)

DRV_DIRECT2 (4148H / Kernel NEXTOR)

DRV_DIRECT3 (414BH / Kernel NEXTOR)

DRV_DIRECT5 (414EH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Inputs for direct driver calls. Calls to any of the five available entry points at addresses 7850h to 785Ch in Kernel ROM (bank 0 or 3) will map to a call to the corresponding DRV_DIRECT entry point. All registers except IX and AF' are passed unmodified.

Input: Depends on the called routine.

Output: Depends on the called routine.

Registers: Depends on the called routine.

DRV_CONFIG (4151H / Kernel NEXTOR v2.0.5)

Function: Allow the driver to provide configuration information at boot time. Currently, all configured settings only apply to drivers based on on device. This routine is called twice.

Input: A – Configuration index.

BC, DE, HL – Depends on configuration.

Output: A = 0 – Okay.

1 – Configuration not available for index provided or unknown config index

BC, DE, HL = Depends on configuration.

*1. To get the number of units at boot time.

Input: A = 1.

B = 0 for DOS mode 2, 1 for DOS mode 1

C = Boot Flags

bit 5: The user is requesting a unit summary count.

Output: B – Number of units.

*two. Get the default configuration for the unit

Input: A = 2.

B = 0 for DOS 2 mode, 1 for DOS 1 mode.

C = Relative unit number at boot time.

Output: B = Device Index.

C = LUN Index.

RESERVED (4155H to 415FH / Kernel NEXTOR)

Area is reserved for future expansion (padded with zeros).

DRV_DSKIO (4160H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Read or write sectors from the mass storage device associated with a drive drive. Unlike standard MSX-DOS routines, this routine will never receive a request to transfer data to/from page 1.

Input: A – Drive unit, starting at 0

CY – 0 for read, 1 for write

B – Number of sectors to read/write

C – First sector number for read/write (bits 22-16) if bit 7 is not set or Media ID byte if bit 7 is set.

DE – First sector for read/write (bits 15-0).

HL – Origin/destination address for the transfer.

Output: CY = 1 if there was an error in the operation

A – error code (only in case of error):

- 0 – write protected
- 2 – Not ready
- 4 - Data error (CRC)
- 6 - Search error
- 8 – Record not found
- 10 - Recording failure
- 12 - Other mistakes
- B – Number of sectors actually read (only in case of error)

DRV_DSKCHG (4163H / Kernel NEXTOR)

Function: Obtain information about the change state of the media associated with a given drive unit.

Input: A – Drive unit, starting at 0.

B = C – Media Descriptor.

HL – Base address for DPB –1.

Output: CY = 1 if there is an error.

A – Error code (only in case of error).

The same codes as DRV_DSKIO are used.

B – Media states (if CY = 0):

1 – The media has not changed since the last time this routine was called.

0 – Unknown.

-1 – The media has changed since the last time this routine was called.

Note: If the state of the media is "Changed" or "Unknown", the routine should generate a DPB to disk and copy it to the address passed in HL plus one. The DPB format is described in the DRV_GETDPB routine.

DRV_GETDPB (4166h)

Function: Get a DPB (Drive Parameter Block) for the media associated with a given driver drive.

Input: A = driver unit, starting at 0.

B = C = Media Descriptor.

HL – Base address for DPB-1.

Output: HL points to the filled DPB (The DPB must be copied to the address passed in HL plus one).

The format of the 18-byte DPB is as follows:

HL +00: Media descriptor byte (F0h to FFh)

+01: Sector size in 2 bytes (must be power of 2).

- +03: Directory mask (sector size/32 - 1).
- +04: Change of directory (No. 1 in the Directory mask).
- +05: Cluster mask (sectors per cluster - 1).
- +06: Cluster change (# of bits 1 cluster mask + 1).
- +07: Number of the first sector of the FAT.
- +08: Number of FATs.
- +0A: Number of directory entries (maximum 254).
- +0B: Number of the first data sector (2 bytes).
- +0D: Maximum number of cluster (# of clusters + 1).
- +0F: Total number of sectors.
- +10: Number of the first sector of the root directory.

DRV_CHOICE (4169h)

Function: Returns a format choice string for a disk.

Input: None.

Output: HL – Address of choice string in Kernel slot. This routine is called by the Kernel when a FORMAT command is executed, in order to show the formatting options to the user.

DRV_FORMAT (416Ch)

Function: Formats a disk and initializes its boot sector, FAT and root directory.

Input: A – Formatting choice, from 1 to 9 (see DRV_CHOICE).

D – Drive unit, starting at 0.

HL – Address of the desktop in memory.

DE – Size of the workspace.

Output: CY – 1 if there is an error..

A – Error code (only in case of error):

0 – Write protected.

2 – Not ready.

4 – CRC error.

6 – Search error.

8 – Record not found.

10 – Write failure.

12 – Bad parameter.

14 – Insufficient memory.

16 – Other errors.

DRV_MTOFF (416Fh)

Function: Stop the motor of all drives. Useful for floppy drives only.

Input: None.

Output: None.

9.6.4.2 – Routines for drivers of other devices**DEV_RW (4160h)**

Function: Read or write absolute sectors to or from a device.

Input: CY – 0 for reading; 1 for writing.

A – Device Index (1 to 7).

B – Number of sectors to read or write.

C – Logical unit index (1 to 7).

HL – Transfer address (cannot be on page 1).

DE – Address for storing the 4-byte sector number (cannot be on page 1).

Output: A – Error code (same codes as MSXDOS2):

00H: There was no error.

B5H: Invalid logical device/drive number.

F3H: Fetch error.

F7H: Disk not formatted.

F8H: Write protected or read-only drive.

F9H: Sector not found.

FAH: CRC error while reading.

FCH: Not ready.

FDH: Disk error.

FEH: Writing error.

FFH: Incompatible disk.

B – Number of sectors actually read or written (only in case of error).

DEV_INFO (4163h)

Function: Return information about a device.

Input: A – Device Index (1 to 7)

B – 0 → Basic information.

1 → String containing the manufacturer's name.

2 → String containing the device name.

3 → String containing the serial number.

HL – Pointer to buffer (cannot be on page 1).

Output: A – Error code:

0 → There was no error.

1 → Device / information not available or invalid index.

HL – Buffer filled with the text string or with basic information in the following format:

+0: Number of logical units (1 to 8). Must be 1 if there are no logical drives.

+1: Flags with device capabilities (00H in current version).

DEV_STATUS (4166h)

Function: Check availability and change the state of a device or logical unit.

Input: A – Device Index (1 to 7)

B – Logical unit number (1 to 7) or 0 to return the state of the device itself

Output: A – State for the specified logical unit or for the device if 0 was specified:

0 – The device or logical unit is not available, or the device / logical unit number is invalid.

1 – The device or logical drive is available and has not changed since the last state check.

2 – The device or logical drive is available and has changed since the last state check (for

devices, the device was disconnected and another was connected to which the same index was assigned; for logical drives, the media has been changed).

3 – The device or logical drive is available, but it is not possible to determine whether or not it has changed since the last state check.

LUN_INFO (4169h)

Function: Get information for a logical drive.

Input: A – Device index (1 to 7).

B – Logical unit index (1 to 7).

HL – Pointer to buffer (cannot be on page 1).

Output: A – 0 → Ok, buffer filled with information.

1 → Device or logical drive not available or invalid.

HL – 12-byte buffer filled.

+0: Media type:

0 – Lock device.

1 – CD or DVD reader or writer.

2-254 – Not used (reserved for future use).

255 – Another type.

+1: Sector size in 2 bytes (0 if this information does not apply or is not available).

+3: Total available sectors in 4 bytes (0 if this information does not apply or is not available).

+7: Logical drive flags:

bit 0: 1 if the media is removable.

bit 1: 1 if the media is read-only.

bit 2: 1 if the logical drive is a floppy drive.

bit 3: 1 if the logical drive is not to be used for automapping.

bits 4-7: Not used (always 0).

+8: Number of cylinders (2 bytes).

+10: Number of heads (1 byte).

+11: Number of sectors per track (1 byte).

9.6.4 – Routines for accessing standard SCSI Hard-Disks

IDBYT (7F80H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Interface ID in 3 bytes. (Ex.: “HD#”).

INISYS (7F83H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Starts SCSI interface.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

TRMACT (7F86H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Terminates HDD actions.

Input: None.

Output: A – SCSI interface status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).
 D – Current Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).
 E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).
 Registers: AF, DE.

RDLBLK (7F89H/SCSI Interface)

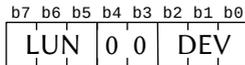
Function: Read logical sectors from disk or device.

Input: CDE – Sector number.

HL – RAM address for read data.

B – Number of sectors to read.

A – Device ID:



Número do dispositivo SCSI
 (0 a 7, ou 000 a 111).

LUN – Logical Unit Number.
 (Normalmente 0)

Output: HL – Pointer to the read data.

A – SCSI interface status.

00H – There was no error.

02H – Check condition.

04H – “MET” condition.

08H – Device busy.

0CH – Booking conflict.

10H – Intermediate condition.

14H – Intermediate condition “MET”.

18H – Reservation conflict.

22H – Command finished.

28H – Full queue.

30H – ACA active.

40H – Operation aborted.

D – Current device status.

00H – There was no error.

02H – Check condition.

04H – “MET” condition.

08H – Device busy.

0CH – Booking conflict.

10H – Intermediate condition.

- 14H – Intermediate condition “MET”.
- 18H – Reservation conflict.
- 22H – Command finished.
- 28H – Full queue.
- 30H – ACA active.
- 40H – Operation aborted.
- E – Messages:
 - 00H – Complete command.
 - 01H, xx, 00H – Modify given pointers.
 - 01H, xx, 01H – Request for transfer synchronous data.
 - 01H, xx, 03H – Request for transfer total data.
 - 02H – Save data pointers.
 - 03H – Restore pointers.
 - 04H – Disconnect.
 - 05H – Initialization error.
 - 06H – Abort.
 - 07H – Message rejected.
 - 08H – No operation.
 - 09H – Message parity error.
 - 0AH – Command attached complete.
 - 0BH – Complete attached command (with flag).
 - 0CH – Reset on device bus.
 - 0DH – Abort TAG.
 - 0EH – Clean/Empty Queue.
 - 0FH – Start recovery.
 - 10H – Release recovery.
 - 11H – End I/O process.
 - 20H – Single row tag.
 - 21H – Queue header tag
 - 22H – Ordered queue tag.
 - 23H – Ignore waste.
 - 80H ~ 0FFH – Identify.

Registers: All.

Note: This routine can also read sectors from the CD-ROM, which have 2048 bytes instead of 512 bytes from the HD's.

WRLBLK (7F8CH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Write logical sectors of the disk.

- 06H – Unit requires attention
- 07H – Data protected
- 08H – Blank verification
- 09H – Manufacturer Specific
- 0AH – Copy aborted
- 0BH – Command aborted
- 0DH – Volume overflow
- 0EH – Agreement error
- 0FH – Completed
- +03H~+06H – Information
- +07H – Additional "sense" length (n-7)
- +08H~+11H – Command specific information
- +12H – Additional "sense" code
- +13H – Additional "sense" code qualifier
- +14H – Replaceable unit code
- +15H – Bit7 = 0 → There is no valid information
1 → There is valid information
- +15H (bit6~bit0)~+17H – Manufacturer specific information

Registers: AF, BC, DE.

INQUIRY (7F92H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns SCSI device information.

Input: HL – Buffer address for read information.

A – Device ID.

Output: CY = 1 → reading error.

A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

CY = 0 → HL – Points to the beginning of the buffer:

+00H – device code.

+01H – bit7 → RMB (removable media)
bit6~bit0 → device type

+02H – Interface version:

00H – Not specified

01H – SCSI 1

02H – SCSI 2

+03H – bit7~bit4 → Reserved.

bit3~bit0 → Response data format.

- +04H – Additional length, contains how many subsequent bytes are valid.
- +05H~+07H – Reserved.
- +08H~+15H – Name (Ex. SEAGATE).
- +16H~+31H – Device ID (in ASCII).
- +32H – Hardware revision.
- +33H – Firmware revision.
- +34H – ROM revision.
- +35H – Reserved.

Registers: All.

RDSIZE (7F95H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns the total space of the SCSI device.

Input: HL – Buffer address for read information.

A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Output: CY = 1 → reading error.

A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

CY = 0 → data read successfully.

(HL+0)~(HL+3) → total number of sectors (MSB/LSB).

(HL+4)~(HL+7) → sector size in bytes

(MSB/LSB). Typically 512 (00H-00H-02H-00H).

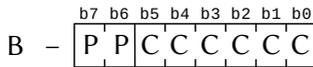
Registers: All.

MDSSENS (7F98H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns the “sense” parameters of the current mode.

Input: HL – Buffer address for read information.

A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).



Page code

Page control field

Output: CY = 1 → reading error.

A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

CY = 0 → HL – Points to the beginning of the buffer:

+00H – Operating parameters (SEAGATE).

+01H – Error recovery parameters.

+02H – Disconnected parameters.

+03H – Format parameters.

+04H – Geometry parameters.

+05H~+1FH – Reserved.

+20H – Drive serial number.

+3FH – Returns all pages.

Registers: All.

MDSEL (7F9BH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Mode selection. Used to boot HD.

Input: HL – Buffer address.

A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

B – Size of the parameter list.

Output: CY = 1 → reading error.

A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

CY = 0 → HL points to the parameter list.

Registers: AF, BC, HL, IX.

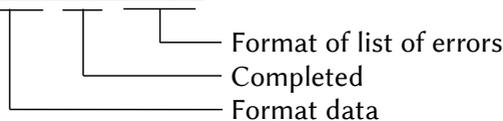
HDFORM (7F9EH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Format the SCSI drive.

Input: A – Unit ID.

B –

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
0	0	0	F	C	D	D	D



DE – Interleave (MSB-LSB).

HL – Data address.

Output: CY = 1 → reading error.

A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

CY = 0 → Formatted successfully.

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL.

TESTRD (7FA1H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Tests whether the SCSI device is ready.

Input: A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Output: A = 85H → device is ready.

A = 42H → the device is NOT ready.

Registers: All.

SFBOOT (7FA4H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Softboot the SCSI device.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

Note: This entry must not be used.

INSWRK (7FA7H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Mounts SCSI device table (installs desktop).

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

Note: This input must not be used (internal routine).

CLRLIN (7FAAH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Cleans to end of line (prints ESC sequence).

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: All.

VERIFY (7FADH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Device verification.

Input: A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

B – Size to be checked (in blocks).

CDE – Logical block number.

HL – Address.

Output: A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Registers: AF, BC, HL, IX.

STRSTP (7FB0H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Starts or stops the drive.

Input: A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

B = 0 → Stops drive.

1 → Start the drive.

Output: A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Registers: All.

SNDDGN (7FB3H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Sends diagnostics.

Input: A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Output: A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Registers: All.

RESERV (7FB6H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Reserved.

RESER2 (7FB9H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Reserved.

COPY (7FBCH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Read “default” list.

Input: A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

DE – Length of the parameter list.

HL – Data address.

Output: A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

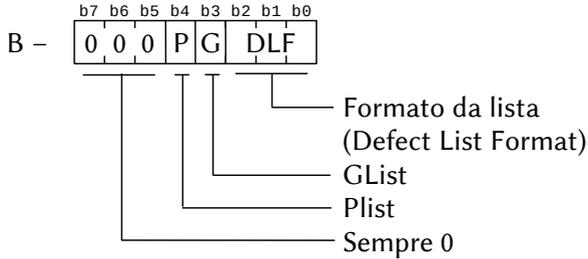
E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Attention: This input has different function on IDE interfaces. It is not advisable to use this call.

RDEFCT (7FBFH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns corrupted data.

Input: A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).



DE – Size of allocated space.

HL – Data address.

Output: A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

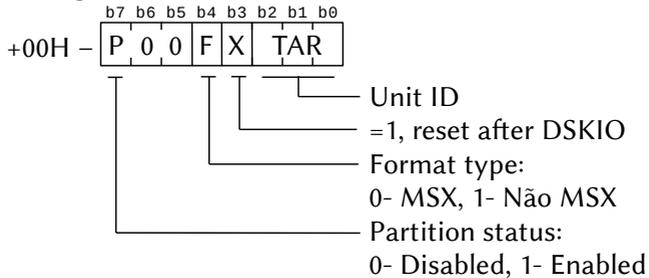
Registers: All.

GETWRK (7FC2H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns the desktop address.

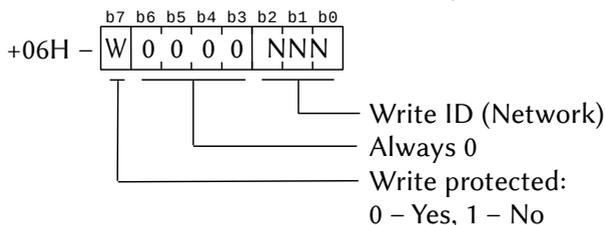
Input: None.

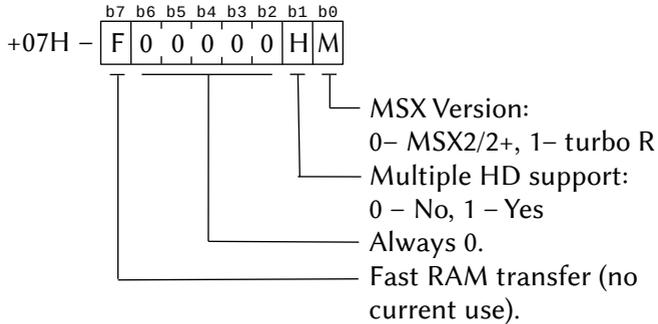
Output: HL = IX = Pointer to start of workspace. 8 bytes are reserved for each logical drive (there can be up to 6 logical drives, A: through F:). The structure for each unit is as follows:



+01H~+03H – Primeiro setor da partição.

+04H~+05H – Número de setores da partição.





Registers: AF, BC, HL, IX.

PRTINF (7FC5H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns information about the partition.

Input: A - Drive number

Output: HL = IX = Pointer to the beginning of the workspace of the specified drive. There are 8 bytes with the same structure as GETWRK (7FC2H).

Registers: AF, BC, DE, HL, IX.

GTUNIT (7FC8H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns the number of active units.

Input: None.

Output: A - Number of active units.

C - Vector ID.

D - Host ID.

Registers: AF, BC, DE.

HOSTID (7FCBH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Select the Host ID.

Input: A - Host ID (4~7)

Output: CY = 1 → error.

Registers: AF, D.

TARGID (7FCEH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Select the Target ID.

Input: A - Target ID (0~3)

Output: CY = 1 → error.

Registers: AF, D.

GTTARG (7FD1H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns the Target ID.

Input: None.

Output: A – Target ID.

Registers: AF.

GTHOST (7FD4H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns the Host ID.

Input: None.

Output: A – Host ID.

Registers: AF.

GTSENS (7FD7H/SCSI Interface)

Function: Returns “sense” data.

Input: A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Output: A – Key “sense”.

C – Additional “sense” code.

D – Target Status

IX – Address data “sense”. Same as RQSENS (7F8FH).

Registers: AF, BC, DE.

MEDREM (7FDAH/SCSI Interface)

Function: Prevent media removal.

Input: A – Device ID. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

B = 0 → allows removal

1 → prevent removal

Output: A – SCSI Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

D – Device Status. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

E – Messages. Same as RDLBLK (7F89H).

Registers: All.

9.7 – MSX-MUSIC ROUTINES (FM/OPLL)**WRTOPL** (4110H/FM-BIOS)

Function: Writes a byte of data into an OPLL register.

Input: A – OPLL Register

E – Data byte to be written

Output: None.

Registers: None.

INIOPL (4113H/FM-BIOS)

Function: Initializes the FM-BIOS/OPLL desktop.

Input: HL – Desktop start (must be even).

Output: None.

Registers: All.

MSTART (4116H/FM-BIOS)

Function: Starts playing music.

Input: HL – Music queue address.

A = 0 → Infinite loop.

1~254 → Number of repetitions.

255 → Reserved. Do not use.

The musical queue has the structure described below.

Header for 6 FM voices + 5 drum pieces:

```
+00~+01 0EH, 00H
+02~+03 Address for FM1CH
+04~+05 Address for FM2CH
+06~+07 Address for FM3CH
+08~+09 Address for FM4CH
+10~+11 Address for FM5CH
+12~+13 Address for FM6CH
+14 ... Data area
```

Header for 9 FM voices:

```
+00~+01 12H, 00H
+02~+03 Address for FM1CH
+04~+05 Address for FM2CH
+06~+07 Address for FM3CH
+08~+09 Address for FM4CH
+10~+11 Address for FM5CH
+12~+13 Address for FM6CH
+14~+15 Address for FM7CH
+16~+17 Address for FM8CH
+18~+19 Address for FM9CH
+20 ... Data area
```

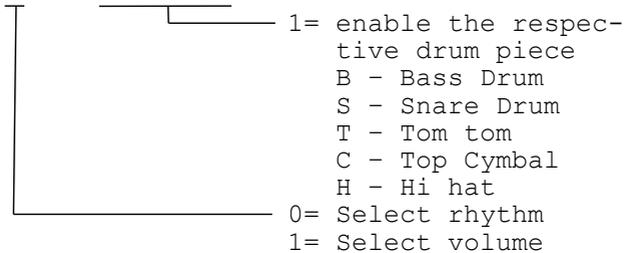
Data area for melody:

```
+00H~+5FH Specifies the pitch. This number
    represents all musical scales, including
    the "pitch"
+60H~+6FH Volume
+70H~+7FH Instrument
+80H Release of "Sustain"
```

+81H Maintenance of "Sustain"
 +82H Enable ROM instrument (0 to 63)
 +83H Specify User Instrument
 +84H Turn off legato
 +85H Turn on legato
 +86H Q designation (1 to 8). When legato is on, the Q assignment is not performed.
 +87H~+FEH Not used
 +FFH End of data for each voice

Data area for rhythm:

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
V	0	1	B	S	T	C	H



FFH → end of rhythm data.

Instrument data storage format:

+0	AM	VIB	EG TYP	KSR	MULTIPLE	
+1						
+2	KSL M		TOTAL LEVEL			
+3	KSL C		XX	DC	DM	FEEDBACK
+4	ATTACK RATE				DECAY RATE	
+5						
+6	SUSTAIN LEVEL				RELEASE RATE	
+7						

Output: None.
 Registers: All.

MSTOP (4119H/FM-BIOS)

Function: Stop the music.
 Input: None.
 Output: None.
 Registers: All.

RDDATA (411CH/FM-BIOS)

Function: Returns instrument data from ROM.

Input: HL – Buffer address for read data.
A – Instrument number (0 to 63).

Output: None.

Registers: F.

OPLDRV (411FH/FM-BIOS)

Function: Input for OPLL driver. It is the routine that plays the music and must be called by the interrupt handler via the HTIMI hook.

Input: None.

Output: None.

Registers: None.

TSTBGM (4122H/FM-BIOS)

Function: Checks if there is still data in the music queue.

Input: None.

Output: A = 0 → no music being played
A ≠ 0 → music is being played.

Registers: AF.

10 – MSX-HID (Human Interface Device)

Formula for the unique ID byte:

$$\text{HIDID} = (\text{byte1} \ll 4 | 0 \times \text{F}) \& (\text{byte2} | 0 \times \text{C0}) \& (\text{byte1} \ll 2 | 0 \times 3\text{F}) \& 0 \times \text{FF}$$

10.1 – FINGERPRINTS OF MSX DEVICES

Unconnected, or MSX-joystick	3Fh, 3Fh, 3Fh
Mouse	30h, 30h, 30h
Trackball	38h, 38h, 38h
Touchpad(1)	39h, 3Dh, 39h
Touchpad(2)	3Dh, 3Dh, 3Dh
Lightgun	2Fh, 2Fh, 2Fh
Arkanoid Vaus Paddle	3Eh, 3Eh, 3Eh
Time encoded devices (each bit of “xx” is zero for each analog channel present)	xxh, 3Fh, 3Fh
MSX-Paddle	3Eh, 3Fh, 3Fh
Yamaha MMP-01 music pad	3Ch, 3Fh, 3Fh
IBM-PC DA15 joystick adapter	3Ah, 3Fh, 3Fh
Atari dual-paddle adapter	36h, 3Fh, 3Fh
Dual-axis analog controller	30h, 3Fh, 3Fh

10.2 – FINGERPRINTS OF SEGA COMPATIBLE DEVICES

Megadrive 3-button joystick	3Fh, 33h, 3Fh
Megadrive 6-button joystick	3Fh, 33h, 3Fh, 33h, 3Fh, 30h
Megadrive Multi-Tap	33h, 3Fh, 33h
Saturn digital joystick	3Ch, 3Fh, 3Ch
Saturn Mouse	30h, 3Bh, 30h
Sega 3line-handshake device	31h, 31h, 31h

10.3 – FINGERPRINTS OF DEVICES THAT CONFLICT

The following devices can conflict with other MSX-HID devices. If necessary, both cases can be distinguished from the other device with one extra detection step.

Micomsoft XE1-AP analog mode	2Fh, 2Fh, 2Fh
Sega-Mouse (Megadrive)	30h, 30h, 30h

10.4 – HOMEBREW DEVICES

Ninja-tap	3Fh, 1Fh, 3Fh
3D glasses	3Fh, 37h, 3Fh
3D glasses + light gun	2Fh, 27h, 2Fh
Passive PS/2 mouse adapter	3Fh, 3Eh, 3Fh

10.5 – RESERVED FINGERPRINTS (DO NOT USE)

- Any fingerprints that can be produced by a standard MSX joystick.
- Any fingerprints that set both the pin-6 and pin-7 of the joystick port to 0 simultaneously on the two first bytes.

11 – Z80/R800 MNEMONICS

11.1 – 8-BIT LOAD GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
LD r,r'	r ← r'	• • • • • •	01 r r'	--	04	05	01	01
LD r,n	r ← n	• • • • • •	00 r 110 ← n →	--	07	08	02	02
LD u,u'	u ← u'	• • • • • •	11 011 101 01 u u'	DD --	08	10	02	02
LD v,v'	v ← v'	• • • • • •	11 111 101 01 v v'	FD --	08	10	02	02
LD u,n	u ← n	• • • • • •	11 011 101 00 u 110 ← n →	DD -- --	11	13	03	03
LD v,n	u ← n	• • • • • •	11 111 101 00 v 110 ← n →	FD -- --	11	13	03	03
LD r, (HL)	r ← (HL)	• • • • • •	01 r 110	--	07	08	02	04
LD r, (IX+d)	r ← (IX+d)	• • • • • •	11 011 101 01 r 110 ← d →	DD -- --	19	21	05	07
LD r, (IY+d)	r ← (IY+d)	• • • • • •	11 111 101 01 r 110 ← d →	FD -- --	19	21	05	07
LD (HL), r	(HL) ← r	• • • • • •	01 110 r	--	07	08	02	04
LD (IX+d), r	(IX+d) ← r	• • • • • •	11 011 101 01 110 r ← d →	DD -- --	19	21	05	07
LD (IY+d), r	(IY+d) ← r	• • • • • •	11 111 101 01 110 r ← d →	FD -- --	19	21	05	07
LD (HL), n	(HL) ← n	• • • • • •	00 110 110 ← n →	36 --	10	11	03	05
LD (IX+d), n	(IX+d) ← n	• • • • • •	11 011 101 01 110 110 ← d → ← n →	DD 36 -- --	19	21	05	07

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
LD (IY+d),n	(IY+d) ← n	• • • • • •	11 111 101 01 110 110 ← d → ← n →	FD 36 -- --	19	21	05	07
LD A, (BC)	A ← (BC)	• • • • • •	00 001 010	0A	07	08	02	04
LD A, (DE)	A ← (DE)	• • • • • •	00 011 010	1A	07	08	02	04
LD A, (nn)	A ← (nn)	• • • • • •	00 111 010 ← n → ← n →	1A -- --	13	14	04	06
LD (BC), A	(BC) ← A	• • • • • •	00 000 010	02	07	08	02	04
LD (DE), A	(DE) ← A	• • • • • •	00 010 010	22	07	08	02	04
LD (nn), A	(nn) ← A	• • • • • •	00 110 010 ← n → ← n →	32 -- --	13	14	04	06
LD A, I	A ← I	• ↓ I ↓ • •	11 101 101 01 010 111	ED 57	09	11	02	02
LD A, R	A ← R	• ↓ I ↓ • •	11 101 101 01 011 111	ED 5F	09	11	02	02
LD I, A	I ← A	• • • • • •	11 101 101 01 000 111	ED 47	09	11	02	02
LD R, A	R ← A	• • • • • •	11 101 101 01 001 111	ED 4F	09	11	02	02

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
r, r'	B	C	D	E	H	L	•	A
u, u'	B	C	D	E	IXH	IXL	•	A
v, v'	B	C	D	E	IYH	IYL	•	A

TZ - Z80 T Cycles

Z1 - Z80 + M1

TR - R800 T Cycles

RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected

↓ = Flag affected according operation results

I = The IFF content is copied to the P/V flag.

11.2 – 16-BIT LOAD GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
LD dd,nn	dd ← nn	• • • • • •	00 dd0 001 ← n → ← n →	-- -- --	10	11	03	03
LD IX,nn	IX ← nn	• • • • • •	11 011 101 00 100 001 ← n → ← n →	DD 21 -- --	14	16	04	04
LD IY,nn	IY ← nn	• • • • • •	11 111 101 00 100 001 ← n → ← n →	FD 21 -- --	14	16	04	04
LD HL, (nn)	H ← (nn+1) L ← (nn)	• • • • • •	00 101 010 ← n → ← n →	2A -- --	16	17	05	07
LD dd, (nn)	dd _H ← (nn+1) dd _L ← (nn)	• • • • • •	11 101 101 01 dd1 011 ← n → ← n →	ED -- -- --	20	22	06	08
LD IX, (nn)	IX _H ← (nn+1) IX _L ← (nn)	• • • • • •	11 011 101 00 101 010 ← n → ← n →	DD 2A -- --	20	22	06	08
LD IY, (nn)	IY _H ← (nn+1) IY _L ← (nn)	• • • • • •	11 111 101 00 101 010 ← n → ← n →	FD 2A -- --	20	22	06	08
LD (nn),HL	(nn+1) ← H (nn) ← L	• • • • • •	00 100 010 ← n → ← n →	22 -- --	16	17	05	07
LD (nn),dd	(nn+1) ← dd _H (nn) ← dd _L	• • • • • •	11 101 101 01 dd0 011 ← n → ← n →	ED -- -- --	20	22	06	08
LD (nn),IX	(nn+1) ← IX _H (nn) ← IX _L	• • • • • •	11 011 101 01 100 010 ← n → ← n →	DD 22 -- --	20	22	06	08

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
LD (nn), IY	(nn+1) \leftarrow IY _H (nn) \leftarrow IY _L	• • • • • •	11 111 101 01 100 010 \leftarrow n \rightarrow -- \leftarrow n \rightarrow --	FD 22	20	22	06	08
LD SP, HL	SP \leftarrow HL	• • • • • •	11 111 001	F9	06	07	01	01
LD SP, IX	SP \leftarrow IX	• • • • • •	11 011 101 11 111 001	DD F9	10	12	02	02
LD SP, IY	SP \leftarrow IY	• • • • • •	11 111 101 11 111 001	FD F9	10	12	02	02
PUSH qq	(SP-2) \leftarrow qq _L (SP-1) \leftarrow qq _H SP \leftarrow SP - 2	• • • • • •	11 qq0 101	--	11	12	04	06
PUSH IX	(SP-2) \leftarrow IX _L (SP-1) \leftarrow IX _H SP \leftarrow SP - 2	• • • • • •	11 011 101 11 100 101	DD E5	15	17	05	07
PUSH IY	(SP-2) \leftarrow IY _L (SP-1) \leftarrow IY _H SP \leftarrow SP - 2	• • • • • •	11 111 101 11 100 101	FD E5	15	17	05	07
POP qq	qq _H \leftarrow (SP+1) qq _L \leftarrow (SP) SP \leftarrow SP + 2	• • • • • •	11 qq0 001	--	10	11	03	05
POP IX	IX _H \leftarrow (SP+1) IX _L \leftarrow (SP) SP \leftarrow SP + 2	• • • • • •	11 011 101 11 100 001	DD E1	14	16	04	06
POP IY	IY _H \leftarrow (SP+1) IY _L \leftarrow (SP) SP \leftarrow SP + 2	• • • • • •	11 111 101 11 100 001	FD E1	14	16	04	06

	00	01	10	11
dd	BC	DE	HL	SP
qq	BC	DE	HL	AF

TZ - Z80 T Cycles
Z1 - Z80 + M1
TR - R800 T Cycles
RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:
• = Flag not affected

11.3 – 8-BIT ARITHMETIC GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
ADD r	$A \leftarrow A + r$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	10 000 r	--	04	05	01	01
ADD p	$A \leftarrow A + p$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 011 101 10 000 r	DD --	08	10	02	02
ADD q	$A \leftarrow A + q$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 111 101 10 000 r	FD --	08	10	02	02
ADD (HL)	$A \leftarrow A + (HL)$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	10 000 110	86	07	08	02	04
ADD (IX+d)	$A \leftarrow A + (IX+d)$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 011 101 10 000 110 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$	DD 86 --	19	21	05	07
ADD (IY+d)	$A \leftarrow A + (IY+d)$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 111 101 10 000 110 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$	FD 86 --	19	21	05	07
ADD n	$A \leftarrow A + n$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 000 110 $\leftarrow n \rightarrow$	C6	07	08	02	02
ADC r	$A \leftarrow A + r + CY$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	10 001 r	--	04	05	01	01
ADC p	$A \leftarrow A + p + CY$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 011 101 10 001 r	DD --	08	10	02	02
ADC q	$A \leftarrow A + q + CY$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 111 101 10 001 r	FD --	08	10	02	02
ADC (HL)	$A \leftarrow A + (HL) + CY$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	10 001 110	8E	07	08	02	04
ADC (IX+d)	$A \leftarrow A + (IX+d) + CY$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 011 101 10 001 110 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$	DD 8E --	19	21	05	07
ADC (IY+d)	$A \leftarrow A + (IY+d) + CY$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 111 101 10 001 110 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$	FD 8E --	19	21	05	07
ADC n	$A \leftarrow A + n + CY$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 0 \uparrow$	11 001 110 $\leftarrow n \rightarrow$	CE	07	08	02	02
SUB r	$A \leftarrow A - r$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 1 \uparrow$	10 010 r	--	04	05	01	01
SUB p	$A \leftarrow A - p$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 1 \uparrow$	11 011 101 10 010 r	DD --	08	10	02	02
SUB q	$A \leftarrow A - q$	$\uparrow \downarrow v \downarrow 1 \uparrow$	11 111 101 10 010 r	FD --	08	10	02	02

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
SUB (HL)	A ← A - (HL)	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	10 010 110	96	07	08	02	04
SUB (IX+d)	A ← A - (IX+d)	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 011 101 10 010 110 ← d →	DD 96 --	19	21	05	07
SUB (IY+d)	A ← A - (IY+d)	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 111 101 10 010 110 ← d →	FD 96 --	19	21	05	07
SUB n	A ← A - n	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 010 110 ← n →	D6	07	08	02	02
SBC r	A ← A - r - CY	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	10 011 r	--	04	05	01	01
SBC p	A ← A - p - CY	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 011 101 10 011 r	DD --	08	10	02	02
SBC p	A ← A - q - CY	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 111 101 10 011 r	FD --	08	10	02	02
SBC (HL)	A ← A - (HL) - CY	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	10 011 110	8E	07	08	02	04
SBC (IX+d)	A ← A - (IX+d) - CY	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 011 101 10 011 110 ← d →	DD 8E --	19	21	05	07
SBC (IY+d)	A ← A - (IY+d) - CY	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 111 101 10 011 110 ← d →	FD 8E --	19	21	05	07
SBC n	A ← A - n - CY	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 011 110 ← n →	CE	07	08	02	02
INC r	r ← r + 1	• ↓ v ↓ 0 ↓	00 r 100	--	04	05	01	01
INC (HL)	(HL) ← (HL) + 1	• ↓ v ↓ 0 ↓	00 110 100	--	11	12	04	07
INC (IX+d)	(IX+d) ← (IX+d) + 1	• ↓ v ↓ 0 ↓	11 011 101 00 110 100 ← d →	DD 34 --	23	25	07	10
INC (IY+d)	(IY+d) ← (IY+d) + 1	• ↓ v ↓ 0 ↓	11 111 101 00 110 100 ← d →	FD 34 --	23	25	07	10
DEC r	r ← r - 1	• ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	00 r 101	--	04	05	01	01
DEC (HL)	(HL) ← (HL) - 1	• ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	00 110 101	--	11	03	04	07

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z P/V S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
DEC (IX+d)	(IX+d)← (IX+d)-1	• ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 011 101 00 110 101 ← d →	DD 34 --	23	25	07	10
DEC (IY+d)	(IY+d)← (IY+d)-1	• ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 111 101 00 110 101 ← d →	FD 34 --	23	25	07	10
MULB r	HL ← A * r	↓ ↓ 0 0 • •	11 101 101 11 r 001	ED --	--	--	14	14

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
r	B	C	D	E	H	L	•	A
P	•	•	•	•	IXH	IXL	•	•
q	•	•	•	•	IYH	IYL	•	•

TZ - Z80 T Cycles

Z1 - Z80 + M1

TR - R800 T Cycles

RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected.

↓ = Flag affected according operation results.

0 = Flag off.

1 = Flag on.

V = the P/V flag contains the overflow status: V=1 -> overflow;
V=0 -> there was no overflow.P = the P/V flag contains the parity status. P=1 means the
parity of the result is even; P=0 means it is odd.

11.4 – 16-BIT ARITHMETIC GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z P _v S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
ADD HL,ss	HL ← HL + ss	↓ • • • 0 ?	00 ss1 001	--	11	12	01	01
ADD IX,pp	IX ← IX + ss	↓ • • • 0 ?	11 011 101 00 pp1 001	DD --	15	17	02	02
ADD IY,rr	IY ← IY + ss	↓ • • • 0 ?	11 111 101 00 rr1 001	FD --	15	17	02	02
ADC HL,SS	HL ← HL + ss + CY	↓ ↓ V ↓ 0 ?	11 101 101 01 ss1 010	ED --	15	17	02	02
SBC HL,SS	HL ← HL - ss - CY	↓ ↓ V ↓ 1 ?	11 101 101 01 ss0 010	ED --	15	17	02	02
INC ss	ss ← ss + 1	• • • • • •	00 ss0 011	--	06	07	01	01
INC IX	IX ← IX + ss	• • • • • •	11 011 101 00 100 011	DD 23	10	12	02	02
INC IY	IY ← IY + ss	• • • • • •	11 111 101 00 100 011	FD 23	10	12	02	02
DEC ss	ss ← ss - 1	• • • • • •	00 ss1 011	--	06	07	01	01
DEC IX	IX ← IX - ss	• • • • • •	11 011 101 00 101 011	DD 2B	10	12	02	02
DEC IY	IY ← IY - ss	• • • • • •	11 111 101 00 101 011	FD 2B	10	12	02	02
MULW HL,tt	DE:HL ← HL * tt	↓ ↓ 0 0 • •	11 101 101 11 tt0 011	ED --	--	--	36	36

	00	01	10	11
ss	BC	DE	HL	SP
pp	BC	DE	IX	SP
rr	BC	DE	IY	SP
tt	BC	•	•	SP

TZ - Z80 T Cycles
Z1 - Z80 + M1
TR - R800 T Cycles
RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected.
↓ = Flag affected according operation results.
0 = Flag off.
1 = Flag on.
? = Flag unknown.
V = the P/V flag contains the overflow status: V=1 -> overflow;
V=0 -> there was no overflow.
P = the P/V flag contains the parity status. P=1 means the
parity of the result is even; P=0 means it is odd.

11.5 – EXCHANGE GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
EX DE,HL	DE \leftrightarrow HL	• • • • • •	11 101 011	EB	04	05	01	01
EX AF,AF'	AF \leftrightarrow AF'	• • • • • •	00 001 000	08	04	05	01	01
EXX	BC \leftrightarrow BC' DE \leftrightarrow DE' HL \leftrightarrow HL'	• • • • • •	11 011 001	D9	04	05	01	01
EX (SP),HL	H \leftrightarrow (SP+1) L \leftrightarrow (SP)	• • • • • •	11 100 011	E3	19	20	05	07
EX (SP),IX	IX _H \leftrightarrow (SP+1) IX _L \leftrightarrow (SP)	• • • • • •	11 011 101 11 100 011	DD E3	23	25	06	08
EX (SP),IY	IY _H \leftrightarrow (SP+1) IY _L \leftrightarrow (SP)	• • • • • •	11 111 101 11 100 011	FD E3	23	25	06	08

TZ - Z80 T Cycles
Z1 - Z80 + M1
TR - R800 T Cycles
RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected

11.6 – BLOCK TRANSFER GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
LDI	(DE) ← (HL) DE ← DE+1 HL ← HL+1 BC ← BC-1	• • ↓ • 0 0	11 101 101 10 100 000	ED A0	16	18	04	07
LDIR	(DE) ← (HL) DE ← DE+1 HL ← HL+1 BC ← BC-1 {Até BC=0}	• • 0 • 0 0	11 101 101 10 110 000	ED B0	21	23	04	?
					16	18	04	07
LDD	(DE) ← (HL) DE ← DE-1 HL ← HL-1 BC ← BC-1	• • ↓ • 0 0	11 101 101 10 101 000	ED A8	16	18	04	07
LDDR	(DE) ← (HL) DE ← DE-1 HL ← HL-1 BC ← BC-1 {Até BC=0}	• • 0 • 0 0	11 101 101 10 111 000	ED B8	21	23	04	?
					16	18	04	07

TZ - Z80 T Cycles

Z1 - Z80 + M1

TR - R800 T Cycles

RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected

↓ = Flag affected according operation results

0 = Flag off

NOTE: When there are two descriptions of cycles, they refer to the two conditions that the instruction can assume. Thus, for LDIR, the time in T cycles for the Z80 is 21; when BC reaches 0, 16 T cycles are spent.

11.7 – SEARCH GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
CPI	A ← (HL) HL ← HL+1 BC ← BC-1	• ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ 1 ↓	11 101 101 10 100 001	ED A1	16	18	04	06
CPIR	A ← (HL) HL ← HL+1 BC ← BC-1 {Até BC=0 ou A=(HL) }	• ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ 1 ↓	11 101 101 10 110 001	ED B1	21	23	05	?
CPD	A ← (HL) HL ← HL-1 BC ← BC-1	• ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ 1 ↓	11 101 101 10 101 001	ED A9	16	18	04	06
CPDR	A ← (HL) HL ← HL-1 BC ← BC-1 {Até BC=0 ou A=(HL) }	• ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ 1 ↓	11 101 101 10 111 001	ED B9	21	23	05	?
					16	18	05	08

TZ - Z80 T Cycles

Z1 - Z80 + M1

TR - R800 T Cycles

RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected

↓ = Flag affected according operation results

1 = Flag on

NOTE: When there are two descriptions of cycles, they refer to the two conditions that the instruction can assume. Thus, for LDIR, the time in T cycles for the Z80 is 21; when BC reaches 0, 16 T cycles are spent.

11.8 – COMPARISON GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
CP A,r	A - R	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	10 111 r	--	04	05	01	01
CP A,p	A - p	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 011 101 10 111 p	DD --	08	10	02	02
CP A,q	A - q	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 111 101 10 111 p	FD --	08	10	02	02
CP A, (HL)	A - (HL)	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	10 111 110	BE	07	08	02	04
CP A, (IX+d)	A - (IX+d)	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 011 101 10 111 110 ← d →	DD BE --	19	21	05	07
CP A, (IY+d)	A - (IY+d)	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 111 101 10 111 110 ← d →	FD BE --	19	21	05	07
CP A,n	A - n	↓ ↓ v ↓ 1 ↓	11 111 110 ← n →	FE --	07	08	02	02

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
r	B	C	D	E	H	L	•	A
p	•	•	•	•	IXH	IXL	•	•
q	•	•	•	•	IYH	IYL	•	•

TZ - Z80 T Cycles

Z1 - Z80 + M1

TR - R800 T Cycles

RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

↓ = Flag affected according operation results.

1 = Flag on.

V = the P/V flag contains the overflow status: V=1 -> overflow;
V=0 -> there was no overflow.

11.9 – LOGICAL GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
AND r	$A \leftarrow A \wedge r$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	10 100 r	--	04	05	01	01
AND p	$A \leftarrow A \wedge p$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 011 101 10 100 p	DD --	08	10	02	02
AND q	$A \leftarrow A \wedge q$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 111 101 10 100 p	FD --	08	10	02	02
AND (HL)	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (HL)$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	10 100 110	A6	07	08	02	04
AND (IX+d)	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (IX+d)$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 011 101 10 100 110 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$	DD A6 --	19	21	05	07
AND (IY+d)	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (IY+d)$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 111 101 10 100 110 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$	FD A6 --	19	21	05	07
AND n	$A \leftarrow A \wedge n$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 100 110 $\leftarrow n \rightarrow$	E6 --	07	08	02	02
OR r	$A \leftarrow A \vee r$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	10 110 r	--	04	05	01	01
OR p	$A \leftarrow A \vee p$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 011 101 10 110 p	DD --	08	10	02	02
OR q	$A \leftarrow A \vee q$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 111 101 10 110 p	FD --	08	10	02	02
OR (HL)	$A \leftarrow A \vee (HL)$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	10 110 110	B6	07	08	02	04
OR (IX+d)	$A \leftarrow A \vee (IX+d)$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 011 101 10 110 110 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$	DD B6 --	19	21	05	07
OR (IY+d)	$A \leftarrow A \vee (IY+d)$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 111 101 10 110 110 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$	FD B6 --	19	21	05	07
OR n	$A \leftarrow A \vee n$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 110 110 $\leftarrow n \rightarrow$	F6 --	07	08	02	02
XOR r	$A \leftarrow A \oplus r$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	10 110 r	--	04	05	01	01
XOR p	$A \leftarrow A \oplus p$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 011 101 10 110 p	DD --	08	10	02	02
XOR q	$A \leftarrow A \oplus q$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	11 111 101 10 110 p	FD --	08	10	02	02
XOR (HL)	$A \oplus (HL)$	0 \downarrow P \downarrow 0 1	10 110 110	B6	07	08	02	04

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z P _V S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
XOR (IX+d)	$A \leftarrow A \oplus (IX+d)$	0 ↓ P ↓ 0 1	11 011 101 10 110 110 ← d →	DD B6 --	19	21	05	07
XOR (IY+d)	$A \leftarrow A \oplus (IY+d)$	0 ↓ P ↓ 0 1	11 111 101 10 110 110 ← d →	FD B6 --	19	21	05	07
XOR n	$A \leftarrow A \oplus n$	0 ↓ P ↓ 0 1	11 110 110 ← n →	F6 --	07	08	02	02

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
r	B	C	D	E	H	L	•	A
P	•	•	•	•	IXH	IXL	•	•
q	•	•	•	•	IYH	IYL	•	•

TZ - Z80 T Cycles

Z1 - Z80 + M1

TR - R800 T Cycles

RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

↓ = Flag affected according operation results

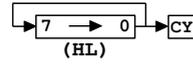
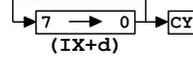
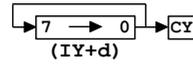
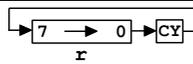
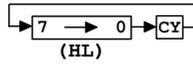
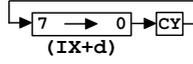
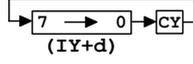
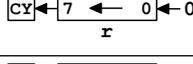
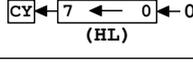
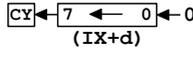
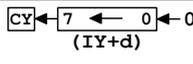
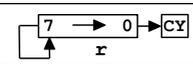
0 = Flag off

1 = Flag on

P = the P/V flag contains the parity status. P=1 means the parity of the result is even; P=0 means it is odd.

11.10 – ROTATE AND SHIFT GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z P _V S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
RLCA		↓ • • • • 0 0	00 000 111	07	04	05	01	01
RLA		↓ • • • • 0 0	00 010 111	0F	04	05	01	01
RRCA		↓ • • • • 0 0	00 001 111	17	04	05	01	01
RRA		↓ • • • • 0 0	00 011 111	1F	04	05	01	01
RLC r		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 001 011 00 000 r	CB --	08	10	02	02
RLC (HL)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 001 011 00 000 110	CB 06	15	17	05	08
RLC (IX+d)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 011 101 11 001 011 ← d → 00 000 110	DD CB -- 06	23	25	07	10
RLC (IY+d)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 111 101 11 001 011 ← d → 00 000 110	FD CB -- 06	23	25	07	10
RL r		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 001 011 00 010 r	CB --	08	10	02	02
RL (HL)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 001 011 00 010 110	CB 16	15	17	05	08
RL (IX+d)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 011 101 11 001 011 ← d → 00 010 110	DD CB -- 16	23	25	07	10
RL (IY+d)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 111 101 11 001 011 ← d → 00 010 110	FD CB -- 16	23	25	07	10
RRC r		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 001 011 00 001 r	CB --	08	10	02	02

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $P_{\frac{V}{V}}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
RRC (HL)		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 001 011 00 001 110	CB 0E	15	17	05	08
RRC (IX+d)		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 011 101 11 001 011 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$ 00 001 110	DD CB -- 0E	23	25	07	10
RRC (IY+d)		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 111 101 11 001 011 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$ 00 001 110	FD CB -- 0E	23	25	07	10
RR r		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 001 011 00 011 r	CB --	08	10	02	02
RR (HL)		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 001 011 00 011 110	CB 1E	15	17	05	08
RR (IX+d)		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 011 101 11 001 011 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$ 00 011 110	DD CB -- 1E	23	25	07	10
RR (IY+d)		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 111 101 11 001 011 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$ 00 011 110	FD CB -- 1E	23	25	07	10
SLA r		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 001 011 00 100 r	CB --	08	10	02	02
SLA (HL)		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 001 011 00 100 110	CB 26	15	17	05	08
SLA (IX+d)		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 011 101 11 001 011 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$ 00 100 110	DD CB -- 26	23	25	07	10
SLA (IY+d)		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 111 101 11 001 011 $\leftarrow d \rightarrow$ 00 100 110	FD CB -- 26	23	25	07	10
SRA r		$\downarrow \downarrow P \downarrow 0 0$	11 001 011 00 101 r	CB --	08	10	02	02

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z P _V S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
SRA (HL)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 001 011 00 101 110	CB 2E	15	17	05	08
SRA (IX+d)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 011 101 11 001 011 ← d → 00 101 110	DD CB -- 2E	23	25	07	10
SRA (IY+d)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 111 101 11 001 011 ← d → 00 101 110	FD CB -- 2E	23	25	07	10
SRL r		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 001 011 00 111 r	CB --	08	10	02	02
SRL (HL)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 001 011 00 111 110	CB 3E	15	17	05	08
SRL (IX+d)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 011 101 11 001 011 ← d → 00 111 110	DD CB -- 3E	23	25	07	10
SRL (IY+d)		↓ ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 111 101 11 001 011 ← d → 00 111 110	FD CB -- 3E	23	25	07	10
RLD		• ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 101 101 01 101 111	ED 6F	18	20	05	08
RRD		• ↓ P ↓ 0 0	11 101 101 01 100 111	ED 67	18	20	05	08

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
r	B	C	D	E	H	L	•	A

TZ - Z80 T Cycles

Z1 - Z80 + M1

TR - R800 T Cycles

RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected

↓ = Flag affected according operation results

0 = Flag off

P = the P/V flag contains the parity status. P=1 means the parity of the result is even; P=0 means it is odd.

11.11 – BIT SET, RESET AND TEST GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z P/V S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
BIT b,r	$z \leftarrow \overline{r}_b$	0 ↓ ? ? 0 1	11 001 011 01 b r	CB --	08	10	02	02
BIT b,(HL)	$z \leftarrow \overline{(HL)}_b$	0 ↓ ? ? 0 1	11 001 011 01 b 110	CB --	12	04	03	05
BIT b,(IX+d)	$z \leftarrow \overline{(IX+d)}_b$	0 ↓ ? ? 0 1	11 011 101 11 001 011 ← d → 01 b 110	DD CB -- --	20	22	05	07
BIT b,(IY+d)	$z \leftarrow \overline{(IY+d)}_b$	0 ↓ ? ? 0 1	11 111 101 11 001 011 ← d → 01 b 110	FD CB -- --	20	22	05	07
SET b,r	$\overline{r}_b \leftarrow 1$	• • • • •	11 001 011 11 b r	CB --	08	10	02	02
SET b,(HL)	$\overline{(HL)}_b \leftarrow 1$	• • • • •	11 001 011 11 b 110	CB --	15	17	05	08
SET b,(IX+d)	$\overline{(IX+d)}_b \leftarrow 1$	• • • • •	11 011 101 11 001 011 ← d → 11 b 110	DD CB -- --	23	25	07	10
SET b,(IY+d)	$\overline{(IY+d)}_b \leftarrow 1$	• • • • •	11 111 101 11 001 011 ← d → 11 b 110	FD CB -- --	23	25	07	10
RES b,r	$\overline{r}_b \leftarrow 0$	• • • • •	11 001 011 10 b r	CB --	08	10	02	02
RES b,(HL)	$\overline{(HL)}_b \leftarrow 0$	• • • • •	11 001 011 10 b 110	CB --	15	17	05	08
RES b,(IX+d)	$\overline{(IX+d)}_b \leftarrow 0$	• • • • •	11 011 101 11 001 011 ← d → 10 b 110	DD CB -- --	23	25	07	10

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
RES b, (IY+d)	$\overline{(IY+d)}_b \leftarrow 0$	• • • • • •	11 111 101 11 001 011 ← d → 10 b 110	FD CB -- --	23	25	07	10

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
r	B	C	D	E	H	L	•	A
b	b0	b1	b2	b3	b4	b5	b6	b7

TZ - Z80 T Cycles
Z1 - Z80 + M1
TR - R800 T Cycles
RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected
↓ = Flag affected according operation results
0 = Flag off
1 = Flag on
? = Flag unknown

11.12 – JUMP GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
JP nn	PC ← nn	• • • • • •	10 000 011 ← n → ← n →	C3 -- --	10	11	03	05
JP cc,nn	If cc=true, PC ← nn	• • • • • •	10 cc 011 ← n → ← n →	-- -- --	10	11	03	03 05
JR e	PC ← PC+e	• • • • • •	00 011 000 ← e-2 →	18 --	12	13	03	03
JR C,e	If CY=1, PC ← PC+e	• • • • • •	00 111 000 ← e-2 →	38 --	07 12	08 13	02 03	02 03
JR NC,e	If CY=0, PC ← PC+e	• • • • • •	00 110 000 ← e-2 →	30 --	07 12	08 13	02 03	02 03
JR Z,e	If Z=1, PC ← PC+e	• • • • • •	00 101 000 ← e-2 →	28 --	07 12	08 13	02 03	02 03
JR NZ,e	If Z=0, PC ← PC+e	• • • • • •	00 100 000 ← e-2 →	20 --	07 12	08 13	02 03	02 03
JP (HL)	PC ← HL	• • • • • •	11 101 001	E9	04	05	01	03
JP (IX)	PC ← IX	• • • • • •	11 011 101 11 101 001	DD E9	08	10	02	04
JP (IY)	PC ← IY	• • • • • •	11 111 101 11 101 001	FD E9	08	10	02	04
DJNZ e	B ← B-1 If B0, PC ← PC+e	• • • • • •	00 010 000 ← e-2 →	10 --	08 13	09 14	02 03	02 03

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
cc	NZ	Z	NC	C	PO	PE	P	M

TZ - Z80 T Cycles
Z1 - Z80 + M1
TR - R800 T Cycles
RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected

NOTE: When there are two descriptions of cycles, they refer to the two conditions that the instruction can assume. Thus, for LDIR, the time in T cycles for the Z80 is 21; when BC reaches 0, 16 T cycles are spent.

11.13 – CALL AND RETURN GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z P _v S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
CALL nn	(SP-1)←PC _H (SP-2)←PC _L PC ← nn	• • • • • •	11 001 101 ← n → ← n →	CD -- --	17	18	05	08 07
CALL cc,nn	If cc=true, (SP-1)←PC _H (SP-2)←PC _L PC ← nn	• • • • • •	11 cc 100 ← n → ← n →	CD -- --	10	11	03	07 03 08
RET	PC _H ←(SP+1) PC _L ←(SP)	• • • • • •	11 101 001	C9	10	11	03	05
RET cc	If cc=true, PC _H ←(SP+1) PC _L ←(SP)	• • • • • •	11 cc 000	--	05	06	01	01 05
RETI	Return from Interrupt	• • • • • •	11 101 101 01 001 101	ED 4D	14	16	05	07
RETN	Return from non maskable Interrupt	• • • • • •	11 101 101 01 000 101	ED 45	14	16	05	07
RST p	(SP-1)←PC _H (SP-2)←PC _L PC _H ← 0 PC _L ← t*8	• • • • • •	11 t 111	--	11	12	04	06 07

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
cc	NZ	Z	NC	C	PO	PE	P	M
p	00H	08H	10H	18H	20H	28H	30H	38H

TZ - Z80 T Cycles
Z1 - Z80 + M1
TR - R800 T Cycles
RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected

NOTE: When there are two descriptions of cycles, they refer to the two conditions that the instruction can assume. Thus, for LDIR, the time in T cycles for the Z80 is 21; when BC reaches 0, 16 T cycles are spent.

NOTE1: Tests have shown that a CALL followed by a series of NOPs takes 8 cycles, while if followed by a combined RET or POP AF it takes 12 cycles (7 for CALL + 5 for RET/POP AF). This also applies to the RST (only applicable to the RW highlighted value for the R800).

11.14 – INPUT AND OUTPUT GROUP

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z $\frac{P}{V}$ S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
IN A, (n)	A ← (n)	• • • • •	11 011 011 ← n →	28 --	11	12	03	10 09
IN r, (C)	r ← (C)	• ↓ P ↓ 0 ↓	11 101 101 01 r 000	ED --	12	14	03	10 09
INI	(HL) ← (C) B ← B-1 HL ← HL+1	• ↓ ? ? 1 ?	11 101 101 10 100 010	ED A2	16	18	04	12 11
INIR	(HL) ← (C) B ← B-1 HL ← HL+1 {Até B=0}	• 1 ? ? 1 ?	11 101 101 10 110 010	ED B2	21	23	04	? 11 12
IND	(HL) ← (C) B ← B-1 HL ← HL-1	• ↓ ? ? 1 ?	11 101 101 10 101 010	ED AA	16	18	04	12 11
INDR	(HL) ← (C) B ← B-1 HL ← HL-1 {Até B=0}	• 1 ? ? 1 ?	11 101 101 10 111 010	ED BA	21	23	04	? 11 12
OUT (n), A	(n) ← A	• • • • •	11 010 111 ← n →	D3 --	11	03	03	10 9
OUT (C), r	(C) ← r	• • • • •	11 101 101 01 r 001	ED --	11	12	03	10 9
OUTI	(C) ← (HL) B ← B-1 HL ← HL+1	• ↓ ? ? 1 ?	11 101 101 10 100 011	ED A3	16	18	04	12 11
OTIR	(C) ← (HL) B ← B-1 HL ← HL+1 {Até B=0}	• 1 ? ? 1 ?	11 101 101 10 110 011	ED B3	21	23	04	? 11 12
OUTD	(C) ← (HL) B ← B-1 HL ← HL-1	• ↓ ? ? 1 ?	11 101 101 10 101 011	ED AB	16	18	04	12 11

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z P/V S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
OTDR	(C) ← (HL)	• 1 ? ? 1 ?	11 101 101 10 111 011	ED BB	21	23	04	?
	B ← B-1							
	HL ← HL-1 {Até B=0}				16	18	03	12

	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
r	B	C	D	E	H	L	F	A

TZ - Z80 T Cycles
Z1 - Z80 + M1
TR - R800 T Cycles
RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

- = Flag not affected
- ↓ = Flag affected according operation results
- 0 = Flag off
- 1 = Flag on
- ? = Flag unknown
- P = the P/V flag contains the parity status. P=1 means the parity of the result is even; P=0 means it is odd.

- NOTE:** In the INI, IND, OUTI e OUTD instructions, the flag Z is set when B-1=0 and is reset otherwise.
- NOTE1:** In the 'IN A,(n)' e 'OUT (n),A' instructions, 'n' is sent to A0~A7 and A is sent to A8~A15. In the other instructions, 'C' content is sent to A0~A7 and 'B' content is sent to A8~A15.
- NOTE2:** The I/O instructions are aligned to the bus clock, so an extra wait is inserted depending on the alignment. This means that between two OUTs there may be a reduction of one cycle (applicable only to the RW value highlighted for the R800).

11.15 – GENERAL PURPOSE AND CONTROL GROUPS

Mnemonic	Operation	C Z P/V S N H	Binary	Hex	TZ	Z1	TR	RW
CCF	$CY \leftarrow \overline{CY}$	1 0 ?	00 111 111	3F	04	05	01	01
CPL	$A \leftarrow \overline{A}$	. . . . . 1 1	00 101 111	2F	04	05	01	01
DAA	Converts A to BCD	↓ ↓ P ↓ . ↓	00 100 111	27	04	05	01	01
DI	$IFF \leftarrow 0$	. . . . . .	11 110 011	F3	04	05	02	02
EI	$IFF \leftarrow 1$	. . . . . .	11 111 011	FB	04	05	01	01
HALT	Halts CPU	. . . . . .	01 110 110	76	04	05	02	02
IM 0	Interrupt mode 0	. . . . . .	11 101 101 01 000 110	ED 46	08	10	03	03
IM 1	Interrupt mode 1	. . . . . .	11 101 101 01 010 110	ED 56	08	10	03	03
IM 2	Interrupt mode 2	. . . . . .	11 101 101 01 011 110	ED 5E	08	10	03	03
NEG	$A \leftarrow 0 - A$	↓ ↓ V ↓ 1 ↓	00 101 101 01 000 100	ED 44	08	10	02	02
NOP	No operation	. . . . . .	00 000 000	00	04	05	01	01
SCF	$CY \leftarrow 1$	1 0 0	00 110 111	37	04	05	01	01

TZ - Z80 T Cycles
 Z1 - Z80 + M1
 TR - R800 T Cycles
 RW - R800 + Wait

Flags notation:

• = Flag not affected
 ↓ = Flag affected according operation results
 0 = Flag off
 1 = Flag on
 ? = Flag unknown
 V = the P/V flag contains the overflow status: V=1 -> overflow;
 V=0 -> there was no overflow.
 P = the P/V flag contains the parity status. P=1 means the
 parity of the result is even; P=0 means it is odd.

NOTE: IFF indicates the flip-flop of interrupt activation circuit.
 CY indicates the flip-flop of the overflow circuit.

12 – STANDARD CHIPS REGISTERS MAPS

12.1 – MAP OF THE REGISTERS OF THE V9918/38/58

Regist.	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short description			
R#0	W	•	•	•	•	•	•	m3	EV	Mode Register #1 (9918)		
		b7~b2	Not used (always “000 000”)									
		b1	m3: Screen mode (together with R#1)									
		b0	EV: 0=disable external input; 1=enable									
		•	DG	IE2	IE1	m5~m3		•	Mode register #1 (9938/58)			
		b7	Not used (always 0)									
		b6	DG: 0=normal; 1=color bus in input mode									
		b5	IE2: Lightpen input (eliminated in the 9958)									
		b4	IE1: 0=enable line interrupt #1; 1=disable									
		b3~b1	M5~M3: Screen mode (together with R#1)									
		b0	Not used (always 0)									
R#1	W	16K	BL	IE0	m2~m1		BC	SI	MA	Mode register #2		
		b7	(9918) → 0=4027(4K x 1-bit); 1=4108(8K x 1-bit)/4116(16K x 1-bit)									
		b6	(9938/58) → Not used (always 0)									
		b5	BL: 0=screen off; 1=screen on									
		b5	IE0: 9918: 0=enable interrupt; 1=disable interrupt 9938/58: 0=enable line interrupt #0; 1=disable									
		b4~b3	M2~M1: Screen mode (together with R#0)									
			M5	M4	M3	M2	M1	b4	b3	→ (de R#25/9958)		
			0	0	0	1	0	0	0	Screen 0 wth 40		
			0	1	0	1	0	0	0	Screen 0 wth 80		
			0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Screen 1		
			0	0	1	0	0	0	0	Screen 2		
			0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Screen 3		
			0	1	0	0	0	0	0	Screen 4		
			0	1	1	0	0	0	0	Screen 5		
	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	Screen 6				
	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	Screen 7				
	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	Screen 8				
	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	Screen 10/11				
	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	Screen 12				

R#10	W	0	0	0	0	0	a16	a15	a14	Pattern color table adress
R#11	W	0	0	0	0	0	0	a16	a15	Sprites attributes table
R#12	W	f3~f0				b3~b0				f3~f0 – Blink forecolor b3~b0 – Blink backcolor
R#13	W	e3~e0 unit: 1/6 second				o3~o0 unit: 1/6 second				Blink R#7/R#12 e3~e0 – Even page o3~o0 – Odd page
R#14	W	0	0	0	0	0	a16	a15	a14	Base VRAM address
R#15	W	.	.	.	.	0 ~ 9				Status register pointer
R#16	W	.	.	.	.	0 ~ 15				Palette register pointer
R#17	W	AI	.	R#0 a R#46						Pointer control
R#18	W	Vert -8 a +7				Hor -8 a +7				Screen adjust
R#19	W	Line number (0 a 255)								Line interrupt register
R#20	W	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Color Burst #1
R#21	W	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	Color Burst #2
R#22	W	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Color Burst #3
R#23	W	Line number (0 a 255)								Vertical scroll / adjust
R#24	W	---.---								This register not exist

Registadores adicionados para o V9958

R#25	W	.	CMD	VDS	YAE	YJK	WTE	MSK	SP	Mode register #5
		b7	Not used (always 0)							
		b6	0=VDP commands in 5~7 screen modes only 1=VDP commands in all screen modes							
		b5	VDS: 0=CPUCLK output; 1=VDS output							
		b4	YAE: 0=YJK only; 1=YJK+RGB							
		b3	YJK: 0=RGB mode; 1=YJK mode							
		b2	WTE: 0=wait function off; 1=wait function active							
		b1	MSK: 0=scroll mask off; 1=scroll mask active							
		b0	SP: 0=1-page horizontal scroll; 1=2-page hor scroll							

R#26	W	.	.	h8	h7	h6	h5	h4	h3	Horizontal scroll	
R#27	W	.	.	.	.	.	h2	h1	h0	
Command Registers (V9938 e V9958)											
R#32	W	x7	x6	x5	x4	x3	x2	x1	x0	Source horizontal coordinate (0 a 511)	
R#33	W	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	x8	
R#34	W	y7	y6	y5	y4	y3	y2	y1	y0	Source vertical coordinate (0 a 1023)	
R#35	W	.	.	.	.	.	.	y9	y8	
R#36	W	x7	x6	x5	x4	x3	x2	x1	x0	Destination horizontal coordinate (0 a 511)	
R#37	W	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	x8	
R#38	W	y7	y6	y5	y4	y3	y2	y1	y0	Destination vertical coordinate (0 a 1023)	
R#39	W	.	.	.	.	.	.	y9	y8	
R#40	W	x7	x6	x5	x4	x3	x2	x1	x0	Number of points in horizontal direction(0 a 511)	
R#41	W	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	x8	
R#42	W	y7	y6	y5	y4	y3	y2	y1	y0	Number of points in vertical direction (0 a 1023)	
R#43	W	.	.	.	.	.	.	y9	y8	
R#44	W	Cor (0~3; 0~15; 0~255)							Color register		
R#45	W	.	MC	MD	MS	DIY	DIX	EQ	MAJ	Argument register	
		b7	Not used (always0)								
		b6	MXC: 0=VRAM; 1=expanded VRAM (std memory)								
		b5	MXD: 0=VRAM; 1=expanded VRAM (dest memory)								
		b4	MXS: 0=VRAM; 1=expand. VRAM (source memory)								
		b3	DIY: 0=down; 1=up								
		b2	DIX: 0=to right; 1=to left								
		b1	EQ: 0=specified color; 1=other color (end of SRCH)								
		b0	MAJ: 0=horizontal major side; 1=vertical major side								
R#46	W	Command(0~15)			Logopr (0~15)			Command register			
		b7~b4	Command code (OP-CODE) 0 0 0 0 STOP Stop command 0 0 0 1~0 0 1 1 Not implemented								

		b3~b2	Not used (always 11)							
		b1	EO: 0=1st screen showed; 1=2nd screen showed							
		b0	CE: 0=VDP free; 1=VDP executing command							
S#3	R	x7	x6	x5	x4	x3	x2	x1	x0	Coordinate X+12 (Sprites collision)
S#4	R	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	x8	
S#5	R	y7	y6	y5	y4	y3	y2	y1	y0	Coordinate Y+8 (Sprites collision)
S#6	R	.	.	.	.	.	.	y9	y8	
S#7	R	Cor (0~3; 0~15; 0~255)								Color of specified point
S#8	R	x7	x6	x5	x4	x3	x2	x1	x0	Horizontal coordinate of the point (SRCH command)
S#9	R	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	x8	

12.1.1 – Access ports for VDPs V9918/38/38

Porta	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short description		
P#0	98H	R/W	Byte de dados						Write/read VRAM data		
P#1	99H	R	FLG	5S	C	5° sprite (0~31)			Read status register		
			b7	FLG: Vertical interrupt flag							
			b6	5S: 0=normal; 1=more than 4 (ou 8) sprites same line							
			b5	C: 0=normal; 1=two sprites colliding							
			b4~b0	Number of 5th (ou 9th) sprite							
P#1	99H	W	a7~a0 address						Select VRAM address		
			0	f	a13~a8 address				f: 0=read; 1=write		
			Data byte						Write control reg (9918)		
			1	0	N° reg. (0~46)				Select register. (9938/58)		
P#2	9AH	W	0	r	r	r	0	b	b	Write in palette registers	
			0	0	0	0	0	g	g		g
P#3	9BH	W	Data byte						Write in indirect register		

12.1.2 – Standard color chart

The color chart illustrated below is the standard color chart for the MSX1. For MSX2 onwards, the table is loaded when the computer is reset.

Palette number	Color	Red Level	Blue Level	Green Level
0	Transparent	0	0	0
1	Black	0	0	0
2	Green	1	1	6
3	Light Green	3	3	7
4	Deep Blue	1	7	1
5	Blue	2	7	3
6	Deep Red	5	1	1
7	Light Blue	2	7	6
8	Red	7	1	1
9	Light Red	7	3	3
10	Yellow	6	1	6
11	Light Yellow	6	3	6
12	Deep Green	1	1	4
13	Purple	6	5	2
14	Grey	5	5	5
15	White	7	7	7

12.2 – MAP OF THE V9990 REGISTERS

Reg		b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short description	
R#0	W	a7	a6	a5	a4	a3	a2	a1	a0	Write address in VRAM AI = 0 → autoincrement	
R#1	W	a15	a14	a13	a12	a11	a10	a9	a8		
R#2	W	AI	•	•	•	•	a18	a17	a16		
R#3	W	a7	a6	a5	a4	a3	a2	a1	a0	Read address in VRAM AI = 0 → autoincrement	
R#4	W	a15	a14	a13	a12	a11	a10	a9	a8		
R#5	W	AI	•	•	•	•	a18	a17	a16		
R#6	R/W	DSPM		DCKM		XIMM		CLRM		Screen mode	
		b7~b6		XIMM		00-Y=256pixels 01-Y=512pixels		10-Y=1024pixels 11-Y=2048pixels			
		b5~b4		DSPM		00-P1 mode 01-P2 mode		10-Bit Map 11-Stand-by			
		b3~b2		DCKM		00-XTAL=1/4 01-XTAL=1/2		10-XTAL=1/1 11 – N/A			
		b1~b0		CLRM		00-2 bits/pixel 01-4 bits/pixel		10-8 bits/pixel 11-16 bits/pixel			
R#7	R/W	•	CM	S1	S2	PL	EO	IL	HS	Screen mode	
		b7		Not used (always 0)							
		b6		C25M	0-other modes			1-B6 mode			
		b5		SM1	0-262 lines			1-263 lines			
		b4		SM	0-1H=fsc/228			1-1H=fsc/227.5			
		b3		PAL	0-NTSC			1-PAL			
		b2		EO	0-Y=normal			1-Y=doubled			
		b1		IL	0-no interlace			1-interlaced			
		b0		HSCN	0-other modes			1-B5-B6 modes			
R#8	R/W	DP	SP	YS	VE	VM	DM	V1~V0		System control	
		b7		DISP 0=Backcolor only, 1=Normal display							
		b6		SPD 0=Show sprite/cursor, 1=Not show							
		b5		YSE 0=YS signal out disabled, 1=Enabled							
		b4		VWTE 0=VRAM serial data bus output; 1=input							

		b3	VWM VRAM write digitization: 0=No, 1=While horizontal blank								
		b2	DMAE 0=DREQ output in high level, 1=Enabled								
		b1~b0	VSL1/0 00=64K x 4-bit, 128K total 01=128K x 8-bit, 256K total 10=256K x 4-bit, 512K total								
R#9	R/W	•	•	•	•	•	IE	IH	IV	Interrupt control	
		b7~b3	Not used (always "00 000")								
		b2	IECE 0-interrupt disabled, 1-enabled								
		b1	IEH 0-line interrupt disabled, 1-enabled								
		b0	IEV 0-frame interrupt disabled, 1-enabled								
R#10	R/W	I7	I6	I5	I4	I3	I2	I1	I0	Interrupt line num (I9~I0)	
R#11	R/W	IE	•	•	•	•	•	I9	I8	IEHM – 0=specific line 1=all lines	
R#12	R/W	•	•	•	•	ix3	ix2	ix1	ix0	Interrupt horizontal position (IX) × (64) × (master clock)	
R#13	W	PLTM	IE	AI	PLTO5~2				Palette control		
		b7~b6	PLTM - 00=palette; 01=256 colors; 10=YJK; 11=YUV								
		b5	YAE – 0=YJK/YUV only; 1=YJK/YUV + RGB								
		b4	PLTAIH – Autoinc palette read (0=Yes, 1=No)								
		b3~b0	PLTO5-2 – Palette offset (0 a 15)								
R#14	W	PLTA5~0				PL2~1		Palette control			
		b7~b2	PLTA – Num of the color in the palette (0 a 63)								
		b1~b0	PLTP – 00-Red; 01-Green; 10-Blue; 11-N/C								
R#15	R/W	•	•	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Backcolor	
R#16	R/W	ADJV (-8 a +7)				ADJH (-8 a +7)			Screen adjust		
R#17	R/W	SCAY (b7~b0)							Scroll control		
R#18	R/W	ROLL	•	SCAY (b12~b8)						Y-coord in the plane "A"	
		b7~b0	SCAY – Y-coordinate of start of display for the "A"								
		b4~b0	plane of P1 mode and the screens of other modes								
		b5	Not used (always "0")								
		b7~b6	ROLL – Direct. Y scroll: 00-full screen 10-512 lines 01-256 lines 11-N/C								

R#19	R/W	•	•	•	•	•	•	SX (b2~b0)	Scroll control		
R#20	R/W	SCAX (b10~b3)							"A" plane X-coord and B0~B7		
R#21	R/W	SCBY (b7~b0)							Scroll control		
R#22	R/W	A	B	•	•	•	•	•	b8	"B" plane Y-coord	
		b7~b0	SCBY – Start Y-coord for showing "B" plane in the P1 mode (b8~b0)								
		b0	SDB – If=1, disable sprites and "A" plane								
		b7	SDB – If=1, disable sprites and "A" plane								
		b6	SDB – If=1, disable sprites and "B" plane								
		b5~b1	Not used (always "00000")								
R#23	R/W	•	•	•	•	•	•	BX(b2~b0)	SCBX- Start X-coord for showing "B" plane		
R#24	R/W	•	•	SCBX (b8~b3)							
R#25	R/W	•	•	•	•	a17	a16	a15	•	Pattern sprites adress (P1)	
		•	•	•	•	a18	a17	a16	a15	Pattern sprites adress (P2)	
R#26	R/W	•	•	•	VR	PNS	PL	PD	PNE	LCD panel control	
		b7~b5	Not used (always "000")								
		b4	VRI 0=equal CRT 1=one line vertical blank								
		b3	PNSL 0=400 vertical points 1=480 vert points								
		b2	PLVO 0=Greyscale (D3~0 pins) 1=Color (CB7~0 pins)								
		b1	PDUAL 0=one screen 1=two screens								
		b0	PNEN 0=CRT cycle 1=LCD cycle								
R#27	R/W	•	•	•	•	PRY	PRX	P1 mode priority			
		b7~b4	Not used (always "0000")								
		b3~b2	PRX – 00 – X=256				10 – X=128				
			01 – X=64				11 – X=192				
		b1~b0	PRY – 00 – Y=256				10 – Y=128				
			01 – Y=64				11 – Y=192				
R#28	W	•	•	•	•	CSPO (b5~b2)	Cursor palette offset				
		The R#29 to R#31 registers not exist									

R#32	W	SX, SA, KA (b7~b0)					VDP Commands – SOURCE X,Y-coordinates (SX, SY) Linear address (SA) Kanji-ROM address (KA)					
R#33	W	•	•	•	•	•				SX(b10~b8)		
R#34	W	SY (b7~b0); SA, KA (b15~b8)								VDP Commands – DEST X,Y-coordinates (DX, DY) Linear address (DA)		
R#35	W	•	•	•	•	•						
		•	•	•	•	•	SA(b18~b16)					
		•	•	•	•	•	•	K(b17~16)				
R#36	W	DX, DA (b7~b0)					VDP Commands – DIVS Number of pixels to transfer XY (NX, NY) No of bytes to transfer (NA) Major side of the line (MJ) Minor side of the line (MI)					
R#37	W	•	•	•	•	•				DX(b10~b8)		
R#38	W	DY (b7~b0); DA (b15~b8)								VDP Commands – ARG Argument reg (write only)		
R#39	W	•	•	•	•	•						
		•	•	•	•	•	DA(b18~b16)					
R#40	W	NX, NA, MJ (b7~b0)					VDP Commands – LOG Logical operation					
R#41	W	•	•	•	•	•				MJ (b11~b8)		
		•	•	•	•	•				NX(b10~b8)		
R#42	W	NY, MI (b7~b0); NA (b15~b8)								VDP Commands – TRAN Transparent color		
R#43	W	•	•	•	•	•	NY,MI(b11~b8)					
		•	•	•	•	•	NA(b18~b16)					
R#44	W	•	•	•	•	DIY	DIX	NEQ	MAJ	Argument reg (write only)		
		b7~b4	Not used (always “0000”)									
		b3	DIY: 0 – Down; 1 – Up;									
		b2	DIX: 0 – To right; 1 – To left.		Note: BMXL and BMLX are fixed em “+” and BMLL, X and Y are fixed in same direction.							
		b1	NEQ (SRCH end): 0=spec color 1=other color									
		b0	MAJ (LINE maj side): 0=horizontal 1=vertical									
R#45	W	•	•	•	T	Logopr		Logical operation				
		b7~b5	Always “000”									
		b4	Transparent color: 0=make logical operation 1=not make logical operation									

		b3~b0		Logopr							0 0 0 1 WC = not (SC .or. DC) 0 0 1 1 WC = not (SC) 0 1 1 0 WC = SC .xor. DC 0 1 1 1 WC = not (SC .and. DC) 1 0 0 0 WC = SC .and. DC 1 0 0 1 WC = not (SC .xor. DC) 1 1 0 0 WC = SC 1 1 1 0 WC = SC .or. DC
R#46	W	m7	m6	m5	m4	m3	m2	m1	m0	Write mask Bit=1 → read allowed Bit=0 → not allowed	
R#47	W	m15	m14	m13	m12	m11	m10	m9	m8		
In P1 mode, R#46 is used for “A” plane and R#47 for “B” pl.											
R#48	W	f7	f6	f5	f4	f3	f2	f1	f0	Forecolor	
R#49	W	f15	f14	f13	f12	f11	f10	f9	f8		
R#50	W	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Backcolor	
R#51	W	b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8		
R#52	W	OP-CODE			AY	AX	Operation control				
		b7~b4		Command code (OP-CODE) 0 0 0 0 STOP Stop command 0 0 0 1 LMMC Transf. CPU → VRAM (coord) 0 0 1 0 LMMV Draw rectangle in the VRAM 0 0 1 1 LMCM Transf. VRAM → CPU (coord) 0 1 0 0 LMMM Transf. VRAM → VRAM (coord) 0 1 0 1 CMMC Transf. character CPU → VRAM 0 1 1 0 CMMK Transf. Kanji ROM → VRAM 0 1 1 1 CMMM Transf. character. VRAM → VRAM 1 0 0 0 BMXL VRAM → VRAM (linear → coord) 1 0 0 1 BMLX VRAM → VRAM (coord → linear) 1 0 1 0 BMLL VRAM → VRAM (linear → linear) 1 0 1 1 LINE Draw a line 1 1 0 0 SRCH Search point (dot) color code 1 1 0 1 POINT Read point color code 1 1 1 0 PSET Draw a point and advance coord. 1 1 1 1 ADVN Advanced coord without drawing							

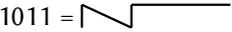
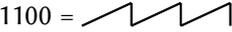
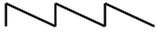
		b3~b2	AY: 00-no move		10-move down					
		b1~b0	01-no move		11-move up					
			AX: 00-(DX,DY) is used		10-move to right					
			01-no movr		11-move to left					
R#53	R	x7	x6	x5	x4	x3	x2	x1	x0	Horizontal coord of the point (SRCH sucessfully)
R#54	R	x10	x9	x8	

12.2.1 – Access ports to V9990

Porta		b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short description			
P#0	60H	R/W	Byte de dados							VRAM access			
P#1	61H	R/W	\overline{YS}	.	.	Red (0~31)				Color palette access			
			.	.	.	Green (0~31)							
			.	.	.	Blue (0~31)							
P#2	62H	R/W	Data byte							Hardware commands			
P#3	63H	R/W	b7~b0 adress (R#0)							VRAM address (AI=0 → autoincrement)			
			b15~b8 adress (R#1)										
			AI	.	.	.	.	b18~b16(R#2)					
P#4	64H	W	WI	RI	Register number					Registers selection			
P#5	65H	R	TR	VR	HR	BD	.	CS	EO	CE	Status port		
			b7	TR: 0=VDP not ready for data; 1=VDP ready									
			b6	VR: 0=vertical non-display period; 1=displaying									
			b5	HR: 0=horiz. Non-display period; 1=displaying									
			b4	BD: 0=SRCH not found; 1=sucessfully									
			b3	Not used (always 0)									
			b2	MCS: copy of the MCS bit of P#7									
			b1	EO: 0=1st screen is being displayed; 1=2nd screen									
			b0	CE: 0=VDP free; 1=VDP executing command									

P#6	66H	R/W	•	•	•	•	•	CE	HI	VI	Interrupt flag
			b7~b3	Not used (always “00 000”)							
			b2	CE – Command end flag							
			b1	HI – Horizontal interrupt flag							
			b0	VI – Vertical interrupt flag							
P#7	67H	W	•	•	•	•	•	•	SR	MC	System control
			b7~b2	Not used (always “000 000”)							
			b1	SRS: if set in “1”, all VDP ports will put in the reset state (but not this).							
			b0	MCS: select master clock: 0=XTAL pin; 1=MCKIN pin							
P#8	68H	W	•	•	a5	a4	a3	a2	a1	a0	Kanji-ROM adr (low) – 1
P#9	69H	R/W	•	•	a11	a10	a9	a8	a7	a6	Kanji-ROM adress (high) and data - '1'
			Byte de dados								
P#A	6AH	W	•	•	a5	a4	a3	a2	a1	a0	Kanji-ROM adr (low) – 2
P#B	6BH	R/W	•	•	a11	a10	a9	a8	a7	a6	Kanji-ROM adress (high) and data - '2'
			Byte de dados								

12.3 – MAP OF PSG REGISTERS (AY-3-8910)

Reg	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short description
R#0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Channel "A" frequency
R#1	•	•	•	•	11	10	9	8	111860,87 / F_num (b11~b0)
R#2	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Channel "B" frequency
R#3	•	•	•	•	11	10	9	8	111860,87 / F_num (b11~b0)
R#4	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Channel "C" frequency
R#5	•	•	•	•	11	10	9	8	111860,87 / F_num (b11~b0)
R#6	•	•	•	4	3	2	1	0	White noise frequency 111860,87 / F_num (b4~b0)
R#7	ioB	ioA	rC	rB	rA	tC	tB	tA	Enable/disable sounds
	b0~b2	Enable/disable tones (0=enable)							
	b5~b4	Enable/disable white noise (0=enable)							
	b6	Configures "A" I/O port (0=in, 1=out)							
	b7	Configures "B" I/O port (0=in, 1=out)							
R#8	•	•	•	m	v	v	v	v	Volume of channel A
R#9	•	•	•	m	v	v	v	v	Volume of channel B
R#10	•	•	•	m	v	v	v	v	Volume of channel C
	b7~b5	Not used (always "000")							
	b4	0=Not use envelope; 1=Use envelope							
	b3~b0	0000=Minimum volume; 1111=Maximum volume							
R#11	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Envelope frequency
R#12	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	6983,3 / F_num (b15~b0)
R#13	•	•	•	•	e	e	e	e	Envelope shape
	b7~b4	Not used (always "0000")							
	b3~b0	Defines envelope shape:							
		00xx =		1011 =					
		01xx =		1100 =					
		1000 =		1101 =					
		1001 =		1110 =					
		1010 =		1111 =					
R#14	a7	a6	a5	a4	a3	a2	a1	a0	Read/write "A" I/O port
R#15	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Read/write "B" I/O port

12.3.1 – Access ports to PSG

Porta		b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short description
A0H	W	•	•	•	•	Reg.num. (0~15)				Select register
A1H	W	Data byte							Write data in the PSG	
A2H	R	Data byte							Read data from PSG	

12.4 – MAP OF FM-OPLL REGISTERS (YM2413)

Reg	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short Description
\$00H	AM	VIB	EGT	KSR	Multiple				→ (m) – Modulated wave
\$01H	AM	VIB	EGT	KSR	Multiple				→ (c) – Carrier wave
	b7	b6	b5	b4	b0~b3				AM: 0=tremolo off; 1=tremolo on VIB: 0=vibrato off; 1=vibrato on EGT: 0=decaying sound; 1=sustained sound KSR: 0=same level; 1=frequency attenuation (KSL) Multiplication factor (0=1/2, 1=1, 2=2,, 15=15)
\$02H	KSL(m)		Total level modul. (m)			Instrument definition			
	b6~b7	b6~b0	KSL (m): 00=0dB/oct, 01=1,5dB, 10=3dB, 11=6dB Total level: b0=0,75dB, b1=1,5dB,, b5=24dB						
\$03H	KSL(c)		•	DC	DM	Feedback		Instrument definition	
	b6~b7	b5	b4	b3	b2~b0				KSL (c): 00=0dB/oct, 01=1,5dB, 10=3dB, 11=6dB Not used (always 0) DC: 0=integer carrier wave, 1=half-wave DM: 0=integer modulated wavw, 1=half-wave Feedback: (0=0; 1=π/16; 2=π/8; ...; 6=2π; 7=4π)
\$04H	Attack (m)			Decay (m)			Attack (0dB a 48dB → min. 0,14 mS; max 1730 mS)		
\$05H	Attack (c)			Decay (c)			Decay (0dB a 48dB → min. 1,27 mS; max 20 926 mS)		
\$06H	Sustain (m)			Release (m)			Sustain (b7=24dB, b6=12dB, b5=6dB, b4=3dB)		
\$07H	Sustain (c)			Release (c)			Release (0dB a 48dB → min. 1,27 mS; max 28926 mS)		
\$0EH	•	•	R	BD	SD	TOM	TCY	HH	Rhythm control
	b7~b6	b5	b0~b4							Not used (always “00”) 0=melody mode; 1=rhythm mode 0=rhythm instrument off; 1=on BD–Bass Drum SD–Snare Drum TOM–Tom tom TCY–Top cymbal HH–Hi-hat

\$0FH	b7	•	b5	•	b3	b2	b1	b0	OPLL test register
	b7		b5		b3	b2	b1	b0	1=Reset the LFOs (max amplitude, zero phase deviation) 1=Select waveform 1=Updates the LFO every sample (the frequency of the tremolo is multiplied by 64 and vibrato by 1024) 1=Hold but resets the waveform to “0”. 1=Hold but resets the LFO phase to “0”. 1=Put the envelope generators (modulator and carrier) in the maximum volume.
\$10H ⋮ \$18H	Frequency LSB (8 bits)							Registers used to select the frequencies of the tone generator	
\$20H ⋮ \$28H	•	•	Sustain	Key	Octave		Freq.	Frequency MSB 1 bit Octave Key / Sustain on/off	
	b7~b6		Not used (always “00”)						
	b5		0=No sustain; 1=Release Rate will decay gradually						
	b4		0=key off; 1=key on						
	b3~b1		Octave setting. The fourth is 011.						
	b0		MSB Frequency 1 bit. The A 440 Hz central note is obtained with b0=1 and \$10H~18H=00 100 000						
\$30H ⋮ \$38H	Instruments			Volume			Registers used to select the instruments and volume		
	b7~b4		Instruments: 0000 – To be defined 1000 – Organ 0001 – Violin 1001 – Horn 0010 – Guitar 1010 – Synthesizer 0011 – Piano 1011 – Harpsichord 0100 – Flute 1100 – Vibraphone 0101 – Clarinet 1101 – Synthesizer Bass 0110 – Oboé 1110 – Acoustic Bass 0111 – Trumpet 1111 – Electric Guitar						

	b3~b0	Volume (0000=minimum; 1111=maximum)			
Register map for Rhythm mode (\$0EH, b5=1)					
\$36H	•	•	•	•	BD volume
\$37H	HH volume			SD volume	Volume registers for the rhythm sounds
\$38H	TOM volume			TCY volume	

12.4.1 – Access ports to OPLL

Porta	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short Description
7CH	W	Nº do registrador (00H a 38H)							Select register
7DH	W	Byte de dados							Write data in the OPLL

12.5 – MSX-AUDIO REGISTERS MAP (Y8950)

Reg	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short Description
\$01H	b7	b6	•	•	b3	b2	b1	b0	Test register
	b7	b6	b3	b2	b1	b0	1=Reset the LFOs (max amplitude, zero phase deviation) 1=Affect bit-0 (PCMBSY) of the status register. 1=Updates the LFO every sample (the frequency of the tremolo is multiplied by 64 and vibrato by 1024) 1=Hold but resets the waveform to “0”. 1=Hold but resets the LFO phase to “0”. 1=Put the envelope generators (modulator and carrier) in the maximum volume.		
\$02H	1st Timer (80 μ S)							Time registers	
\$03H	2nd Timer (320 μ S)								
\$04H	IRQ	T1M	T2M	EOS	BR	•	ST2	ST1	Flags register
	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	IRQ – If write 1, reset all flags. T1M – If write 1, b0 will reset. T2M – If write 1, b1 will reset. EOS – B3 mask, indicating the end of current operation BR – ADPCM / Audio memory mask (1=enable) Not used (always0) ST2 – \$03 Start/stop control (1=start counter) ST1 – \$02 Start/stop control (1=start counter)
\$05H	External keyboard (input)							Registers for access to external musical keyboard	
\$06H	External keyboard (output)								
\$07H	STA	REC	MEM	REP	OFF	•	•	RST	Control register (1)
	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	STA – Must be 1 to start data read/write REC – Must be 1 to write data in the memory MEM – Must be 1 to access audio memory REP – When 1, enable ADPCM data repeat OFF – When 1, cut off audio output Not used (always“00”) RST – When 1, puts ADPCM in the initial state

\$08H	CSM	SEL	.	.	SAM	DAD	64K	ROM	Control register (2)	
	b7	b6	b5~b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	CSM – 1=composite sinusoidal modulation mode SEL – External keyboard octaves separation point Not used (always “00”) SAM – 0=start DA conversion; 1=start AD conversion DAD – 0=conv. AD / mus. output; 1=\$15-\$16 → output 64K – Memory size: 0=256K; 1=64K ROM – Memory type: 0=RAM; 1=ROM		
\$09H	Start address (b7~b0)							Start and end addresses for CPU and ADPCM accesses		
\$0AH	Start address (b15~b8)									
\$0BH	End address (b7~b0)									
\$0CH	End address (b15~b8)									
\$0DH	f7	f6	f5	f4	f3	f2	f1	f0	ADPCM frequency	
\$0EH	.	.	.	.	.	f10	f9	f8	3580 / F_num (1,8~16 KHz)	
\$0FH	ADPCM data							Data register		
\$10H	i7	i6	i5	i4	i3	i2	i1	i0	ADPCM interpolation factor	
\$11H	i15	i14	i13	i12	i11	i10	i9	i8	(i15~i0) = 1310,72 *sampling rate	
\$12H	ADPCM volume							ADPCM volume (0~255)		
\$15H	f9	f8	f7	f6	f5	f4	f3	f2	DA conversion data	
&16H	f1	f0	.	.	.	.	.	.	$\text{Out: } V_{cc}/2 + V_{cc}/4 * (-1 + f_9 + f_8 * 2^{-1} + \dots + f_1 * 2^{-8} + f_0 * 2^{-9} + 2 - 10) * 2^{-E}$	
\$17H	.	.	.	.	.	S2	S1	S0	$E = S_2 * 4 + S_1 * 2 + S_0 * 1 \quad (S_0 + S_1 + S_2 > 0)$	
\$18H	.	.	.	.	I/O control			I/O ports control		
\$19H	.	.	.	.	I/O data			(\$18H → 0=input; 1=output)		
\$1AH	ADPCM data							Data register		
\$20H	AM	VIB	EGT	KSR	Multiple			Instruments definition		
⋮										
\$35H	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3~b0					AM (1=tremolo on – Frequency: 3,7Hz) VIB (1=vibrato on – Frequency: 6,4Hz) EG-TYP (0=decaying sound; 1=sustained sound) If 0, KSR → 0~3; If 1, KSR → 0~15 Multiplication factor (0=1/2, 1=1, 2=2, 3=3, ..., 15=15)

\$40H ⋮ \$55H	KSL		Total level				KSL (00= 0dB/octave, 01=1,5dB, 10=3dB, 11=6dB) Total level (b0=0,75dB, b1=1,5dB b5=24dB)			
\$60H ⋮ \$75H	Attack Rate (AR)			Decay Rate (DR)			Attack (0dB a 96dB → min. 0,2 mS; max 2826 mS) Decay (0dB a 96dB → min. 2,4 mS; max 39 280 mS)			
\$80H ⋮ \$95H	Sustain Level (SL)			Release Rate (RL)			Sustain (b7=24dB, b6=12dB, b5=6dB, b4=3dB) Release (0dB a 96dB → min. 2,4 mS; max 39 280 mS)			
\$A0H ⋮ \$A8H	Frequency (LSB 8 bits)						FM frequency (b7~b0)			
\$B0H ⋮ \$B8H	•	•	KEY	Octave		Freq. MSB 2 bits	FM Frequency (b9~b8) Octave (FM) Key on/off (FM)			
	b7~b6		Not used (always“00”)							
	b5		0=key off; 1=key on (voice on)							
	b4~b2		Octave definition. The fourth is 011.							
	b1~b0		MSB Frequency 2 bits. The C central note of 440 Hz is obtained with b1~b0=10 and \$A0H~A8H=01 000 001							
	Operators (para\$20H~\$35H e\$A0H~\$A8H)									
	Oper: 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09									
	Voz: 1 2 3 1 2 3 4 5 6									
	Reg: \$20\$21\$22\$23\$24\$25\$28\$29\$2A									
	Freq:\$A0\$A1\$A2\$A0\$A1\$A2\$A3\$A4\$A5									
	Oper: 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18									
	Voz: 4 5 6 7 8 9 7 8 9									
	Reg: \$2B\$2C\$2D\$30\$31\$32\$33\$34\$35									
	Freq:\$A3\$A4\$A5\$A6\$A7\$A8\$A6\$A7\$A8									
	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> <p>The operators are associated as below:</p> <p>\$20/\$40/\$60/\$80/\$A0/\$B0/\$C0 ou \$23/\$43/\$63/\$83/\$A0/\$B0/\$C0</p> </div>									
\$BDH	AM	VIB	BAT	BD	SD	TOM	TCY	HH	FM rhythm control	

	b7	Tremolo level (0=1dB. 1=4,8dB)										
	b6	Vibrato level (0=7%; 1=14%)										
	b5	0=Melody mode; 1=Rhythm mode										
	b4	1=Bass Drum										
	b3	1=Snare Drum										
	b2	1=Tom-tom										
	b1	1=Top Cymbal										
	b0	1=High-Hat										
\$C0H ⋮ \$C8H	•	•	•	•	Feedback				CON	FM Feedback factor and connection type		
	b7~b4	Not used (always“0000”)										
	b3~b1	Feedback (0=0; 1= $\pi/16$; 2= $\pi/8$; ...; 6= 2π ; 7= 4π)										
	b0	Operators connection type (0=série; 1=paralelo)										
STAT	INT	T1	T2	EOS	BUF	•	•	PCM	Status register			
	b7	Will be 1 when one or more bits b3 to b6 contains 1										
	b6	Will be 1 after timer 1 ends counting (\$02)										
	b5	Will be 1 after timer 2 ends counting (\$03)										
	b4	Will be 1 when ADPCM analysis/synthesis ends										
	b3	Will be 1 at the end of read/write/analysis/synthesis										
	b2-b1	Not used (always“00”)										
	b0	Will be 1 during the ADPCM analysis/synthesis (if b7 of \$07 are 1)										

12.5.1 – MSX-Audio access ports

Porta	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short Description		
C0H	W	Register number (01H a C8H)							Select register		
	R	INT	T1	T2	EOS	BUF	•	•	PCM	Read status register	
C1H	W/R	Data byte							Write/read data in the/from MSX Audio		

12.6 – MAP OF THE OPL4 REGISTERS (YMF278)

12.6.1 – Register Array #0

FM generator – Register Array 0 (A1 = “1”)										
Reg	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short Description	
\$00H \$01H	Test								Test registers	
\$02H \$03H	1st Timer (80,8 μ S) 2nd Timer (323,1 μ S)								Time registers	
\$04H	RST	MT1	MT2	•	•	•	ST2	ST1	Flag register	
	b7	RST – If write 1, resets b5, b6 and b7.								
	b6	MT1 – If write 1, b0 will be 0.								
	b5	MT2 – If write 1, b1 will be 0.								
	b4-b2	Not used (always “000”)								
	b1	ST2 – \$03 Start/stop control (1=start counter)								
	b0	ST1 – \$032Start/stop control (1=start counter)								
\$05H	Only in the Register Array 1									
\$08H	•	NTS	•	•	•	•	•	•	Keyboard configuration	
	b7	Not used (always “0”)								
	b6	NTS – If 0, the separation point is determined by the higher 2 bits of F_number. If 1, the separation point is determined only by the MSB of F_number.								
	b5~b0	Not used (always “000 000”)								
\$20H ⋮ \$35H	AM	VIB	EGT	KSR	Multiple			Instruments definition		
	b7	AM (1=tremolo on (Frequency: 3,7Hz)								
	b6	VIB (1=vibrato on (Frequency: 6,4Hz)								
	b5	EG-TYP (0=decaying sound; 1=sustained sound)								
	b4	If 0, KSR→0~3; If 1, KSR→0~15								
	b3~b0	Multiplication factor (0=1/2, 1=1, 2=2, 3=3, ..., 15=15)								
\$40H ⋮ \$55H	KSL		Total level					KSL (00= 0dB/octave, 01=1,5dB, 10=3dB, 11=6dB) Total level (b0=0,75dB, b1=1,5dB b5=24dB)		
\$60H ⋮	Attack Rate (AR)			Decay Rate (DR)			Attack (0dB a 96dB → min. 0,2 mS; max 2826 mS)			

\$75H									Decay (0dB a 96dB → min. 2,4 mS; max 39 280 mS)
\$80H ⋮ \$95H	Sustain Level (SL)		Release Rate (RL)						Sustain (b7=24dB, b6=12dB, b5=6dB, b4=3dB) Release (0dB a 96dB → min. 2,4 mS; max 39 280 mS)
\$A0H ⋮ \$A8H	Frequency (LSB 8 bits)								Frequency (b7~b0)
\$B0H ⋮ \$B8H	•	•	KEY	Octave		Freq. MSB 2 bits			Freq. MSB 2 bits (b9~b8) Octave (FM) Key on/off (FM)
	b7~b6	Not used (always“00”)							
	b5	0=key off; 1=key on (voice active)							
	b4~b2	Define the octave. The fourth is 011.							
	b1~b0	Frequency MSB 2 bits. The C central note of 440 Hz is obtained with b1~b0=10 and \$A0H~A8H=01 000 110							
\$BDH	AM	VIB	BAT	BD	SD	TOM	TCY	HH	Controle da bateria do FM
	b7	Tremolo level (0=1dB. 1=4,8dB)							
	b6	Vibrato level (0=7%; 1=14%)							
	b5	0=Melody mode; 1=Rhythm mode							
	b4	1=Bass Drum							
	b3	1=Snare Drum							
	b2	1=Tom-tom							
	b1	1=Top Cymbal							
	b0	1=High-Hat							
\$C0H ⋮ \$C8H	•	•	•	•	Feedback		CON	Feedback factor; connect type	
	b7~b4	Not used (always“0000”)							
	b3~b1	Feedback factor (0=0; 1=π/16; 2=π/8; ...; 6=2π; 7=4π)							
	b0	Connection type (0=serie; 1=paralell)							
		For 4 operators:							
		A1	Channel	CNT(n)			CNT(n+3)		
		0	1	C0H			C3H		
		0	2	C1H			C4H		

		<p>0 3 C2H C5H</p> <p>1 4 C0H C3H</p> <p>1 5 C1H C4H</p> <p>1 6 C2H C5H</p> <p>CNT(n)=0 CNT(n+3)=0</p> <p>CNT(n)=1 CNT(n+3)=0</p> <p>CNT(n)=0 CNT(n+3)=1</p> <p>CNT(n)=1 CNT(n+3)=1</p>
	<p>Operators (for \$20H~\$35H and \$C0H~\$C8H)</p> <p>Oper: 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09</p> <p>Voz: 1 2 3 1 2 3 4 5 6</p> <p>Reg: \$20 \$21 \$22 \$23 \$24 \$25 \$28 \$29 \$2A</p> <p>Freq: \$A0 \$A1 \$A2 \$A0 \$A1 \$A2 \$A3 \$A4 \$A5</p> <p>Oper: 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18</p> <p>Voz: 4 5 6 7 8 9 7 8 9</p> <p>Reg: \$2B \$2C \$2D \$30 \$31 \$32 \$33 \$34 \$35</p> <p>Freq: \$A3 \$A4 \$A5 \$A6 \$A7 \$A8 \$A6 \$A7 \$A8</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-left: 20px;"> <p>The operators are associated as below:</p> <p>\$20/\$40/\$60/\$80/\$A0/\$B0/\$C0</p> <p style="text-align: center;">or</p> <p>\$23/\$43/\$63/\$83/\$A0/\$B0/\$C0</p> </div>	
\$E0H	• • • • • Wave Select	Waveform select
⋮	b7~b3	Not used (always "00 000")
\$F5H	b2~b1	Waveform select:
	000	
	001	
	010	
	011	
	100	
	101	
	110	
	111	

12.6.2 – Register Array #1

FM generator – Register Array 1 (A1 = "H")									
Reg	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short Description

\$00H \$01H	Test				Test registers			
\$02H \$03H	Only in the Register Array 0							
\$04H	•	•	Connection SEL				4-operators selection	
	b7~b6 b5~b0	Not used (always“00”) Enable 4-operators mode for the respective slot: Bit: b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0 Slot: 6 5 4 3 2 1						
\$05H	•	•	•	•	•	NEW2	NEW	Expansion register
	b7~b2 b1 b0	Not used (always“000 000”) b1 If 1, enable OPL4 mode (Register Array 1) b0 If 1, enable OPL3 mode (Register Array 0)						
\$08H	Only in the Register Array 0							
\$20H ⋮ \$35H	AM	VIB	EGT	KSR	Multiple			
	b7 b6 b5 b4 b3~b0	AM (1=trêmolo on (frequency: 3,7Hz) VIB (1=vibrato on (frequency: 6,4Hz) EG-TYP (0=decaying sound; 1=sustained sound) If 0, KSR→0~3; If 1, KSR→0~15 Multiplication factor (0=1/2, 1=1, 2=2, 3=3, ..., 15=15)						
\$40H ⋮ \$55H	KSL	Nível total				KSL (00= 0dB/octave, 01=1,5dB, 10=3dB, 11=6dB) Total level (b0=0,75dB, b1=1,5dB b5=24dB)		
\$60H ⋮ \$75H	Attack Rate (AR)		Decay Rate (DR)			Attack (0dB a 96dB → min. 0,2 mS; max 2826 mS) Decay (0dB a 96dB → min. 2,4 mS; max 39 280 mS)		
\$80H ⋮ \$95H	Sustain Level (SL)		Release Rate (RL)			Sustain (b7=24dB, b6= 12dB, b5=6dB, b4=3dB) Release (0dB a 96dB → min. 2,4 mS; max 39 280 mS)		
\$A0H ⋮ \$A8H	Frequency (LSB 8 bits)				Frequency (b7-b8)			

\$B0H ⋮ \$B8H	• •	KEY	Octave	Freq. MSB 2 bits	Freq. MSB 2 bits (FM) Octave (FM) Key on/off (FM)																																								
	b7~b6 b5 b4~b2 b1~b0	Not used (always“00”) 0=key off; 1=key on (active voice) Defines the octave. The fourth is 011. Frequency MSB 2 bits. The C central note of 440 Hz is obtained with b1~b0=10 and \$A0H~A8H=01 000 110																																											
\$BDH	Only in the Register Array 0																																												
\$C0H ⋮ \$C8H	• •	• •	Feedback	CON	Feedback factor/connect type																																								
	b7~b4 b3~b1 b0	Not used (always“0000”) Feedback factor (0=0; 1=π/16; 2=π/8; ...; 6=2π; 7=4π) Connection type (0=serie; 1=paralell) For 4 operators: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>A1</th> <th>Canal</th> <th>CNT(n)</th> <th>CNT(n+3)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>C0H</td><td>C3H</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>2</td><td>C1H</td><td>C4H</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>3</td><td>C2H</td><td>C5H</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>4</td><td>C0H</td><td>C3H</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>5</td><td>C1H</td><td>C4H</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>6</td><td>C2H</td><td>C5H</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>CNT(n)=0 CNT(n+3)=0</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>CNT(n)=0 CNT(n+3)=1</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>CNT(n)=1 CNT(n+3)=0</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>CNT(n)=1 CNT(n+3)=1</p> </div> </div>				A1	Canal	CNT(n)	CNT(n+3)	0	1	C0H	C3H	0	2	C1H	C4H	0	3	C2H	C5H	1	4	C0H	C3H	1	5	C1H	C4H	1	6	C2H	C5H												
A1	Canal	CNT(n)	CNT(n+3)																																										
0	1	C0H	C3H																																										
0	2	C1H	C4H																																										
0	3	C2H	C5H																																										
1	4	C0H	C3H																																										
1	5	C1H	C4H																																										
1	6	C2H	C5H																																										
Operators (para\$20H~\$35H e\$C0H~\$C8H)																																													
<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Oper:</td> <td>19</td> <td>20</td> <td>21</td> <td>22</td> <td>23</td> <td>24</td> <td>25</td> <td>26</td> <td>27</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Voz:</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>4</td> <td>5</td> <td>6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reg:</td> <td>\$20</td> <td>\$21</td> <td>\$22</td> <td>\$23</td> <td>\$24</td> <td>\$25</td> <td>\$28</td> <td>\$29</td> <td>\$2A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Freq:</td> <td>\$A0</td> <td>\$A1</td> <td>\$A2</td> <td>\$A0</td> <td>\$A1</td> <td>\$A2</td> <td>\$A3</td> <td>\$A4</td> <td>\$A5</td> </tr> </table>						Oper:	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	Voz:	1	2	3	1	2	3	4	5	6	Reg:	\$20	\$21	\$22	\$23	\$24	\$25	\$28	\$29	\$2A	Freq:	\$A0	\$A1	\$A2	\$A0	\$A1	\$A2	\$A3	\$A4	\$A5
Oper:	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27																																				
Voz:	1	2	3	1	2	3	4	5	6																																				
Reg:	\$20	\$21	\$22	\$23	\$24	\$25	\$28	\$29	\$2A																																				
Freq:	\$A0	\$A1	\$A2	\$A0	\$A1	\$A2	\$A3	\$A4	\$A5																																				

The operators are associated as below:
 \$20/\$40/\$60/\$80/\$A0/\$B0/\$C0
 or
 \$23/\$43/\$63/\$83/\$A0/\$B0/\$C0

	Oper: 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36											
	Voz: 4 5 6 7 8 9 7 8 9											
	Reg: \$2B\$2C\$2D\$30\$31\$32\$33\$34\$35											
	Freq: \$A3\$A4\$A5\$A6\$A7\$A8\$A6\$A7\$A8											
\$E0H ⋮ \$F5H	•	•	•	•	•	Wave Select		Waveform select				
	b7~b3		Not used (always“00 000”)									
	b2~b1		Waveform select									
	000				011				110			
	001				100				111			
	010				101							

12.6.3 – Wave synthesis

Wave synthesis									
Reg	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short Description
\$00H \$01H	Test								Test registers
\$02H	ID disp		Wave header		MT	MM	Special functions		
	b7~b5 b4~b2		OPL4-ID (b7=0; b6=0; b7=1) Wave table header: 000=0 to 511 (000 000H) 100=384 to 511 (200 000H) 001=384 to 511 (080 000H) 101=384 to 511 (280 000H) 010=384 to 511 (100 000H) 110=384 to 511 (300 000H) 011=384 to 511 (180 000H) 111=384 to 511 (380 000H)						
	b1		Audio memory type (0=ROM; 1=RAM)						
	b0		Audio memnry access (0=OPL4; 1=CPU)						
\$03H	•	•	a21	a20	a19	a18	a17	a16	Audio memory adress
\$04H	a15	a14	a13	a12	a11	a10	a9	a8	
\$05H	a7	a6	a5	a4	a3	a2	a1	a0	

\$06H	Memory data				Data register	
\$08H ⋮ \$1FH	Wave table number LSB (n7~n0)				24 registers with the LSB number (n7~n0) of the wave table	
\$20H ⋮ \$37H	F_number (f6~f0)			Tab Wave (n8)	24 registers with the 7 bits LSB frequency and MSB wave table number (n8)	
\$38H ⋮ \$4FH	Octave (o3~o0)	Pseudo-rev	F_number (f9~f7)		Octave (-7 a +7) Pseudo-reverberation Frequency (3 bits MSB)	
	b7~b0 b7~b6 b3 b7~b4	<p>With “b0” (n8) select up to 512 samples (0~511) With “b2-b1-b0” (f9~f7) defines the frequency If “1” turn pn the pseudo-reverberation; if “0”, turn off Octave. Range from -7 to +7 (-8 can't used). With F_number defines the frequency. For octave = 1 and F_number = 0, the frequency is 44,1 KHz.</p> $f(\text{¢}) = 1200 * (\text{octave} - 1) + 1200 * \log_2 \frac{1024 + F_number}{1024}$				
\$50H ⋮ \$67H	Total level (l6~l0)			DL	Total level 7 bits (l6~l0) Direct level	
	b7~b1 b0	<p>Total level (b7=-24dB, b6=-12dB, ... b1=-0,375dB) Direct level (0=change envelope during interpolation; 1=change envelope immediately)</p>				
\$68H ⋮ \$7FH	Key on	Damp	LFO RST	CH	Panpot	miscellaneous functions and stereo balancing (Panpot)
	b7 b6 b5 b4 b3~b0	<p>0=key on; 1=key off 0=Damp off; 1=Damp on LFO RST (0=turn on the LFO; 1=turn off the LFO) 0=Wave mixed with FM; 1=No mixing</p> <p>Panpot: 0 1 2 ... 6 7 8 9 ... 13 14 15 Left (dB) 0 -3 -6 ... -18 -∞ -∞ 0 ... 0 0 0 Right (dB) 0 0 0 ... 0 0 -∞ -18 ... -9 -6 -3</p>				
\$80H ⋮	•	•	LFO (s2~s0)	VIB (v2~v0)	Tremolo and vibrato frequency (LFO)	

\$97H					Vibrato level (VIB)
	b7~b6 b5~b3 b2~b0	Not used LFO (0=0,168Hz, 1=2,019Hz, ... 7=7,066Hz) Vibrato level (0=off, 1=3,378; 2=5,065, ... 7=79,31)			
\$98H ⋮ \$AFH	Attack Rate	Decay Rate (1)		Attack Rate 10-90% → (1=3715 mS; 14=0,23 mS) Decay 1 Rate 10-90% → (1=19040 mS; 14=1,18 mS)	
\$B0H ⋮ \$C7H	Decay Level	Decay Rate (2)		Decay Level (b7=-24; b6=-12; b5=-6; b4=-3 dB) Decay 2 Rate 10-90% → (1=19040 mS; 14=1,18 mS)	
\$C8H ⋮ \$DFH	Rate Correction	Release Rate		Rate Correction Release Rate	
	b7~b4 b3~b0	Rate Correction: (RATE = (OCT + RC)*2 + f9 + RD) OCT = Octave (-7 a +7 in \$38H~\$4FH) RC = Rate correction (0~14 in \$C8H~\$DFH) f9 = bit "f9" of F_number (\$38H~\$4FH) RD = AR, D1R, D2R e RR values (0001=04; 0010=08; ...; 1111=63) Release Rate 10-90% → (1=19040 mS; 14=1,18 mS)			
\$E0H ⋮ \$F7H	• • b7~b3 b2~b0	• • •	• • •	AM(a2~a0)	Tremolo level
\$F8H	• • b7~b6 b5~b3 b2~b0	Mix FM_R	Mix FM_L	Nível de saída FM	
	b7~b6 b5~b3 b2~b0	Not used (always "00") Right FM level (0=0; 1=-3; 2=-6; ... 6=-18dB; 7=∞) Left FM level (0=0; 1=-3; 2=-6; ... 6=-18dB; 7=∞)			
\$F9H	• • b7~b6 b5~b3 b2~b0	Mix PCM_R	Mix PCM_L	PCM output level	
	b7~b6 b5~b3 b2~b0	Not used (always "00") Right PCM level (0=0; 1=-3; 2=-6; ... 6=-18dB; 7=∞) Left PCM level (0=0; 1=-3; 2=-6; ... 6=-18dB; 7=∞)			

12.6.4 – OLP4 access ports

Porta	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Short Description	
C4H	W	Register number (00H a F5H)							Select reg. FM array 0	
	R	IRQ	FT1	FT2	•	•	•	LD	BSY	Read status register
	b7	IRQ – Interrupt Request (will be “1” when FT1 or FT2 be “1”)								
	b6	FT1 – Will be “1” when timer 1 end counting								
	b5	FT2 – Will be “1” when timer 2 end counting								
b4~b2	Not used (always “000”)									
b1	LD – Will be “1” during PCM header reading by the OPL4 (Valid when 05H_NEW2 bit of the array 1 is “1”.)									
b0	BUSY – Will be “1” during registers data writing (Valid when 05H_NEW2 bit of the array 1 is “1”.)									
C5H	W	Data byte						Write data in the register		
C4H	W	Register number (00H a F5H)							Select FM reg array 0	
C7H	R	Mirror of C5H							C5H access is preferred	
7EH	W	Register number (00H a F9H)							Select PCM registers	
7FH	W/R	Data byte						Read/write data in regs		

12.6.5 – Wave table synthesis header

End	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	
00H	d1	d0	s21	s20	s19	s18	s17	s16	d1, d0 → 00=8bits; 01=12 bits; 10=16 bits s21~s0 = start adress
01H	s15	s14	s13	s12	s11	s10	s9	s8	
02H	s7	s6	s5	s4	s3	s2	s1	s0	
03H	l15	l14	l13	l12	l11	l10	l9	l8	Loop adress
04H	l7	l6	l5	l4	l3	l2	l1	l0	
05H	e15	e14	e13	e12	e11	e10	e9	e8	End adress
06H	e7	e6	e5	e4	e3	e2	e1	e0	

07H	•	•	f2	f1	f0	v2	v1	v0	LFO freq. and vibrato level
08H	ar3	ar2	ar1	ar0	dr3	dr2	dr1	dr0	Attack Rate; Decay 1 Rate
09H	dl3	dl2	dl1	dl0	dr3	dr2	dr1	dr0	Decay Level; Decay 2 Rate
0AH	rc3	rc2	rc1	rc0	rr3	rr2	rr1	rr0	Rate correct; Release Rate
0BH	•	•	•	•	•	am2	am1	am0	AM level (tremolo)

12.6.6 – Wave data length

16 bits	d15	d14	d13	d12	d11	d10	d9	d8	+00H
	d7	d6	d5	d4	d3	d2	d1	d0	+01H
12 bits	d11	d10	d9	d8	d7	d6	d5	d4	+00H
	d3	d2	d1	d0	d3	d2	d1	d0	+01H
	d11	d10	d9	d8	d7	d6	d5	d4	+02H
8 bits	d7	d6	d5	d4	d3	d2	d1	d0	+00H

12.7 – MAP OF THE SCC REGISTERS (2212/2312)

Adresses	Short Description (SCC)																
9800H~981FH	Waveform of the voice #1																
9820H~983FH	Waveform of the voice #2																
9840H~985FH	Waveform of the voice #3																
9860H~987FH	SCC : Write/read: Waveform of the voices #4 e #5 SCC+: Read: Waveform of the voice #4																
9880H~9881H	Frequency of the voice #1																
9882H~9883H	Frequency of the voice #2																
9884H~9885H	Frequency of the voice #3																
9886H~9887H	Frequency of the voice #4																
9888H~9889H	Frequency of the voice #5																
	Example: 9880= <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td>f7</td><td>f6</td><td>f5</td><td>f4</td><td>f3</td><td>f2</td><td>f1</td><td>f0</td></tr></table> 9881= <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>f11</td><td>f10</td><td>f9</td><td>f8</td></tr></table> $F_{\text{tone}} = \frac{F_{\text{clock}}}{32 * ((f_{11} \sim f_0) + 1)} \quad (F_{\text{clock}} = 3,579545 \text{ MHz})$	f7	f6	f5	f4	f3	f2	f1	f0	•	•	•	•	f11	f10	f9	f8
f7	f6	f5	f4	f3	f2	f1	f0										
•	•	•	•	f11	f10	f9	f8										
988AH	Volume of the voice #1 (0 to 15)																
988BH	Volume of the voice #2 (0 to 15)																
988CH	Volume of the voice #3 (0 to 15)																
988DH	Volume of the voice #4 (0 to 15)																
988EH	Volume of the voice #5 (0 to 15)																
998FH	<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>v5</td><td>v4</td><td>v3</td><td>v2</td><td>v1</td></tr></table> v5=1 → turn on voice #5 v4=1 → turn on voice #4, etc	•	•	•	v5	v4	v3	v2	v1								
•	•	•	v5	v4	v3	v2	v1										
9890H~989FH	Mirror of 9880H~988FH																
98A0H	SCC: no function SCC+: waveform read of the voice #5 (no write allowed)																
98A1H~98BFH	Mirrors of 98A0H																
98C0H	SCC: Mirror of 98A0H SCC+: Deformation register																

98C1H~98DFH	SCC: Mirror of 98A0H SCC+: Mirror of 98C0H								
98E0H	SCC: Deformation register <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>R</td><td>R</td><td>.</td><td>.</td><td>.</td><td>.</td><td>P</td><td>P</td> </tr> </table> PP: 11/10→Ftone*16; 01→Ftone*256; 00→ Ftone*1 RR: 11 → white noise voices 4 and 5 cfe waveform 01 → continuous white noise 00 → no white noise SCC+: No function	R	R	P	P
R	R	P	P		
98E1H~98FFH	Mirrors of 98E0H								

12.7.1 – Access addresses for SCC

Endereços	Short Description (SCC+)																
B800H~B81FH	Voice #1 waveform																
B820H~B83FH	Voice #2 waveform																
B840H~B85FH	Voice #3 waveform																
B860H~B87FH	Voice #4 waveform																
B880H~B89FH	Voice #5 waveform																
B8A0H~B8A1H	Voice #1 frequency																
B8A2H~B8A3H	Voice #2 frequency																
B8A4H~B8A5H	Voice #3 frequency																
B8A6H~B8A7H	Voice #4 frequency																
B8A8H~B8A9H	Voice #5 frequency																
	Example: B8A0= <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>f7</td><td>f6</td><td>f5</td><td>f4</td><td>f3</td><td>f2</td><td>f1</td><td>f0</td> </tr> </table> B8A1= <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>.</td><td>.</td><td>.</td><td>.</td><td>f11</td><td>f10</td><td>f9</td><td>f8</td> </tr> </table> $F_{tone} = \frac{F_{clock}}{32 * ((f_{11} \sim f_0) + 1)}$ (F_clock=3,579545 MHz)	f7	f6	f5	f4	f3	f2	f1	f0	f11	f10	f9	f8
f7	f6	f5	f4	f3	f2	f1	f0										
.	.	.	.	f11	f10	f9	f8										
B8AAH	Voice #1 volume (0 to 15)																
B8ABH	Voice #2 volume (0 to 15)																
B8ACH	Voice #3 volume (0 to 15)																
B8ADH	Voice #4 volume (0 to 15)																

B8AEH	Voice #5 volume (0 to 15)								
B8AFH	<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>•</td><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>v5</td><td>v4</td><td>v3</td><td>v2</td><td>v1</td> </tr> </table> v5=1 → turn on voice #5 v4=1 → turn on voice #4, etc	•	•	•	v5	v4	v3	v2	v1
•	•	•	v5	v4	v3	v2	v1		
B8B0H~B8BFH	Mirror of B8A0H~B8AFH								
B8C0H	<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>R</td><td>R</td><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>•</td><td>P</td><td>P</td> </tr> </table> – Deformation register PP: 11/10→Ftone * 16; 01→Ftone*256; 00→ Ftone*1 RR: 11 → white noise voices 4 and 5 cfe waveform 01 → continuous white noise 00 → no white noise	R	R	•	•	•	•	P	P
R	R	•	•	•	•	P	P		
B8C1H~B8DFH	Mirrors of B8C0H								
B8E0H~B8FFH	No function								
B900H~BFFDH	???								
BFFEH~BFFFH	<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>•</td><td>•</td><td>S</td><td>M</td><td>•</td><td>B3</td><td>B2</td><td>B1</td> </tr> </table> – Mode register S – SCC mode (0=SCC; 1=SCC+) M – Memory mode (0=bank select; 1=RAM) B3 – Memory bank #3 (0=bank select; 1=RAM) B2 – Memory bank #2 (0=bank select; 1=RAM) B1 – Memory bank #1 (0=bank select; 1=RAM)	•	•	S	M	•	B3	B2	B1
•	•	S	M	•	B3	B2	B1		

BIBLIOGRAPHIC REFERENCES

APROFUNDANDO-SE NO MSX

Piazzzi – Maldonado – Oliveira (Editora Aleph, 1986)

CARTÃO DE 80 COLUNAS & RS232C – MANUAL DE OPERAÇÕES

Gradiente (1989)

FM MUSIC MACRO YRM-104 – Owner's Manual

Yamaha (1984)

FUDEBA ASSEMBLER – Manual de Referência e Arquitetura MSX

Felipe Bergo (2002)

GR8NET Technical Databook and Programmer's Guide

Age Labs (2019)

HBI-232MKII – Basic Manual

Age Labs & Ebsoft (2014)

LIVRO VERMELHO DO MSX, O (The Red Book)

McGraw Hill / Avalon Software (1988 / 1985)

MANUAL DE INSTRUÇÕES DA INTERFACE DE DRIVE DDX

MANUAL DO MICROPROCESSADOR Z-80

William Barden Jr. (Editora Campus, 1985)

MIDI MACRO MONITOR YRM-303 – Owner's Manual

Yamaha (1986)

MSX DATAPACK volumes 1, 2 e 3

ASCII Corporation (1991)

MSX-DOS version 2 – The advanced disk operating system for
MSX 2 computers – ASCII Corp (1988)

MSX MAGAZINE, Edição Dezembro de 1990
ASCII Corporation (1990)

MSX MAGAZINE, Edição ???
ASCII Corporation (1990)

MSX MOZAÏK, Edição nº 33
Editora desconhecida, Ano desconhecido

MSX TECHNICAL GUIDE BOOK
Ayumu Kimura (ASCAT Ashigaka, NIPPON, 1992)

MSX TECHNICAL DATA BOOK
Sony Corp (1984)

MSX turbo R TECHNICAL HANDBOOK
ASCII Corporation (1991)

MSX2 TECHNICAL HANDBOOK
ASCII Corporation (1985)

NEXTOR 2.0 User Manual
Konamiman (2014)

Nextor 2.1 Driver Development Guide
Konamiman (2020)

OPL4 YMF278B – APPLICATION MANUAL
Yamaha Corporation (1994)

PROGRAMAÇÃO AVANÇADA EM MSX
Figueredo – Maldonado – Rosseto (Editora Aleph, 1986)

PX-7 P-BASIC Reference Manual
Pioneer (1985)

TMS9918A/TMS9928A/TMS9929A Video Display Processors Data
Manual – Texas Instruments (1982)

V9938 MSX-VIDEO – APPLICATION MANUAL
Nippon Gakki Co. Ltd. (Yamaha, 1985)

V9938 MSX-VIDEO – TECHNICAL DATA BOOK
Nippon Gakki Co. Ltd. (Yamaha, 1985)

V9958 MSX-VIDEO – TECHNICAL DATA BOOK
Yamaha Corporation (1989)

V9990 E-VDP-III – APPLICATION MANUAL
Yamaha Corporation (1992)

Y9850 MSX-AUDIO – APPLICATION MANUAL
Nippon Gakki Co. Ltd. (Yamaha, 1985)

YM2413 FM OPERATOR TYPE LL (OPLL) – APPLICATION MANUAL
Yamaha Corporation (1987)

<https://www.gigamix.jp/ds2/>

[https://www.msx.org/wiki/l/
O_Ports_List#The_register_of_internal_I.2FO_ports_control](https://www.msx.org/wiki/l/O_Ports_List#The_register_of_internal_I.2FO_ports_control)

<http://msxbanzai.tni.nl/v9990/manual.html>

[https://github.com/Konamiman/MSX-UNAPI-specification/
tree/master/docs](https://github.com/Konamiman/MSX-UNAPI-specification/tree/master/docs)

<http://www.symbos.de/>

<https://www.msx.org/wiki/MSX-HID>

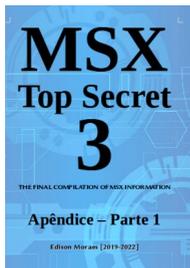
OTHER BOOKS BY THE AUTHOR



YBYMARÃ – A Cidade do Outro Lado



MSX Top Secret 2

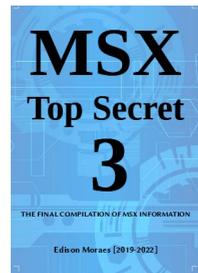


MSX Top Secret 3 – Appendix I

MSX Top Secret 3 – Appendix II



MSX Top Secret



MSX Top Secret 3

